耶鲁专升本
—老牌子更专业—

河南省普通高等学校专科毕业生
进入本科阶段学习考试教材

河南专升本考试

应试点津英语系列

公共英语篇

GONG GONG YING YU PIAN

耶鲁教育教学研究中心　编

郑州大学出版社

VISIT…

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

应试点津英语系列·公共英语篇/耶鲁教育教学研究中心编.
—郑州 ：郑州大学出版社，2016.8（2022.9重印）

ISBN 978-7-5645-3278-9
Ⅰ.①应… Ⅱ.①中… Ⅲ.①英语－成人高等教育
－升学参考资料 Ⅳ.①H31

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2016）第180997号

郑州大学出版社出版发行
郑州市大学路40号　　邮政编码：450052
出版人：孙保营　　发行电话：0371-66966070
全国新华书店经销
河南美图印刷有限公司
开本：889mm×1 194mm　1/16
总印张：48.5
总字数：1 763千字
版次：2016年8月第1版　　印次：2022年9月第5次印刷

ISBN 978-7-5645-3278-9　　总定价：112.00元（共2册）

本书如有印装质量问题，由本社负责调换

作者名单

（排名不分先后）

孙光晓　郭瑾莹　魏　蕾　蔡春春
赵晓丹　付　琛　陈会坡　石浩辰
潘文波　安　静　张佳妍　袁　华
秦　慧　张哑芳

前言（一）

河南省普通高等学校选拔优秀专科毕业生进入本科阶段学习考试（以下简称专升本），是河南省应届专科毕业生（含高职高专学生）刷新学历背景、提高就业竞争力的明智选择，被考生视为“人生的第二次高考”而受到高度重视。耶鲁教育集团是专业从事专升本考试培训的机构，良好的培训效果赢得了广大专升本学子的信赖。

为了帮助河南专升本考生提高分数，耶鲁教育集团联合河南省专升本教学研究中心精心编写了专升本“应试点津英语系列”丛书。本丛书共2册：《公共英语篇》《专业英语篇》。作为河南省专升本考试英语科目优秀辅导书，本套丛书具有以下特点：

1. **信息新颖。**本丛书紧跟河南专升本考试的脚步，收录了英语考试的历年真题，使读者能够及时掌握考试动向，有针对性地进行学习和备考。

2. **内容翔实。**本丛书就专升本考试所涉及的语法、词汇、阅读、写作和翻译等方面均做了详细的阐释，有助于考生在较短的时间里全面准确地把握专升本考试知识点。

3. **重点突出。**本丛书的编者都是多年从事专升本教学和命题的专家，对考试的考点能够做到有的放矢，使考生可以轻松把控考试的重难点。

《专业英语篇》一书在内容结构上安排具有以下特点：

1. **针对性强。**专升本考试中，专业英语的考点和公共英语很相似，但是在考题的难度和分值上有所不同。故此，本书对专业英语进行了特别的示例和解析，并有针对性的辅助练习。

2. **受众独特。**本书是专门为参加专升本考试的英语专业的考生精心编写的。作为市面上较难寻觅的专业英语辅导书籍，本书为专业英语考生提

供了便利和指导。

最后，感谢河南省专升本命题研究中心为本套书的编写提供的宝贵资料和信息。同时来自郑州大学、河南财经政法大学、郑州轻工业大学、郑州航空管理学院、华北水利水电大学、河南农业大学等多所高校，长期从事专升本阅卷和相关科目教学的几位教授，他们在繁忙的教学、科研之余，对书籍的编写提供了许多宝贵的意见，我们在此一并表示深深的谢意。由于书籍编写时间紧促，虽然我们尽力精益求精，书中难免存在不妥或有待商榷之处，恳请读者指教并提出宝贵的意见。

耶鲁教育教学研究中心

2022 年 7 月

前言（二）

从历年河南专升本考试试卷分析可以看出，个别年份题型和分值较往年有些许变化。2001年是河南省专升本统考第一年，卷面总分是100分，从2002年起卷面分以150分计算，语法词汇题也固定了30道题，分值30分，从2006年开始调整为40道题，分值为40分，卷面总分仍为150分。2021年《公共英语》满分依然是150分，但与之前相比，题型有较大变动。存在多年的语法词汇题被其他题型所替代，比如判断语句正误、选词填空等题型。2022年《公共英语》满分150分，考试题型与2021一致，没有变化。为了帮助各位考生复习时把握最新的考察方向，我们对2022年真题试卷进行了详细的分析。

一、题型

第一题：阅读理解（4篇文章，2分*20道题，共计40分）
第二题：完形填空（1篇文章，1分*20道题，共计20分）
第三题：判断语句正误（1篇文章，2分*5道题，共计10分）
第四题：英译汉选择（2分*5道题，共计10分）
　　　　选词填空（1篇文章，3分*5道题，共计15分）
　　　　汉译英翻译（3分*5道题，共计15分）
第五题：改错（2分*10道题，共计20分）
第六题：写作（20分*1道题，共计20分）

二、测试要求

结合最新试卷结构，不难发现河南专升本英语考试更加侧重考察考生对语法词汇的综合运用能力和阅读能力。

1. 阅读理解

该题型一直是专升本英语考试的重中之重，分值较高，主要考察考生语言知识的综合运用能力，包括阅读能力、理解能力、归纳概括能力、逻辑推理能力等。试题中所选的阅读文章难度中等，但题材多样化，涉及生活百科，社会热点，名人传记，科学技术等各个方面。

2. 完型填空

该题型有一定难度，不仅考察考生对英语一些基本知识的应用，比如词汇辨析，

固定搭配，以及基本的语法知识点等，而且还考察考生根据上下文提供的信息进行分析，推理，判断的能力。

3. **判断语句正误**

虽为新增题型，但整体难度不大，题目为阅读理解中事实细节题的改编，将类似于“Which of the following statements is (not) true?”的题目改成了五个语句的判断正误。解题的关键在于对文章细节性信息的把握，记住原文复现或同义表达均正确哦!

4. **翻译 & 选词填空**

①翻译

较往年相比，有一定变化，英译汉的形式由主观题变为了客观的选择题；汉译英分值上升。该题型侧重考察两个方面。一方面是考生对一些重点词组和核心句型的运用能力，另一方面是考生对语法知识的应用能力，比如时态，语态，从句，倒装等。

②选词填空

该题型为新增题型，要求考生从所给的若干词或词组中选出一个最佳的选项，有一定难度。它集词的用法与搭配、词语辨析、语法、单句理解、语篇理解等考察于一体，既考察了考生的语言知识水平，又检测了考生的分析判断能力和综合运用语言知识的实践能力；同时也是做好完型填空题的基础。

5. 改错

该题的目的是测试考生发现、判断、纠正一些词法、句法、及行文逻辑等方面错误的能力。它侧重考察考生的语法知识，基础知识要打牢，此外还需注意词汇的固定搭配及改错的形式。

6. 写作

该题型命题源于日常生活和有关社会，文化，科技等方面，不涉及专业性太强内容。主要考察考生的语言组织能力，分析问题的能力和英语知识的综合运用能力。

三、总论

2022年河南专升本英语整体难度适中。语法词汇依旧是考察的基础，但更侧重于对文章的理解，偏向考察考生对英语语言的综合运用能力，因此需要注意日常语法和词汇知识的学习，只要把基础打好，解题时就能够游刃有余。

耶鲁教育教学研究中心
2022年7月

CONTENTS

目 录

Part One Vocabulary 词汇

考点分析 …… 2
真题演练 …… 3

Part Two Grammar 语法

第一章 名词 …… 32
第二章 冠 词 …… 37
第三章 数 词 …… 40
第四章 形容词和副词 …… 45
第五章 代 词 …… 51
第六章 连 词 …… 53
第七章 动词的时态 …… 57
第八章 被动语态 …… 63
第九章 非谓语动词 …… 66
第十章 独立主格结构 …… 78
第十一章 情态动词 …… 82
第十二章 虚拟语气 …… 86

第十三章　主谓一致 …… 94
第十四章　反义疑问句 …… 100
第十五章　倒装结构 …… 105
第十六章　名词性从句 …… 112
第十七章　定语从句 …… 116
第十八章　状语从句 …… 121
第十九章　强调句和 it 用法 …… 125

Part Three　Reference　参考答案

词汇部分 …… 130
语法部分 …… 159

Part Four　Cloze Test　完形填空

第一章　完形填空分析与技巧 …… 206
第二章　完形填空习题精解 …… 211

Part Five　Reading Comprehension　阅读理解

第一章　阅读理解的基本介绍 …… 228
第二章　阅读理解的命题原则和解题方法 …… 234
第三章　阅读理解部分历年真题精解 …… 247

Part Six　True or False　判断正误

第一章　判断正误分析与技巧 …… 306
第二章　判断正误习题讲解 …… 311

Part Seven　Translation　翻译

第一章　测试概况及题型 …… 320
第二章　汉译英的翻译难点及应试策略 …… 321
第三章　英译汉的翻译难点及应试策略 …… 326
第四章　翻译历年典型真题详解 …… 335
第五章　翻译历年真题及答案 …… 338
第六章　选词填空 …… 357

Part Eight　Error Correction　改错

第一章　考试概况及要求 …… 364
第二章　考点分析及应对策略 …… 365
第三章　改错典型真题详解 …… 374
第四章　历年真题 …… 376

Part Nine　Composition　作文

第一章　英语考试作文分析与要求 …… 386
第二章　短文写作方法 …… 388
第三章　短文写作的固定表达 …… 401
第四章　写作常用模版 …… 417
第五章　图表、图画作文 …… 423
第六章　应用文写作 …… 439
第七章　短文写作历年真题及范文 …… 449

Part One

Vocabulary
词　汇

格言

Living without an aim is like sailing without a compass.

生活没有目标，犹如航海没有罗盘。

考点分析

从历年河南专升本考试的试卷分析可以看出：词汇测试主要集中在词义的记忆和辨析、词汇的搭配和用法等项目上，归纳起来，可大致分为以下几种：

1. 近义词辨析。词汇区分是词汇测试的一个重要方面，它主要是对同义词或近义词在含义和用法上进行区别。这类题的选项是四个词性相同、词义相同或相近的词。测试的目的在于检测学生辨别词义和运用词汇的能力。词汇区分一直是学生在学习英语过程中遇到的一大难题，这主要是由于他们没有掌握汉英两种语言在词汇方面的差异，往往只注意英语的汉语释义，而忽略了其本身的内在含义和用法。

The shop assistant was dismissed as she was ________ of cheating customers.（2011）

A. accused　　B. charged　　C. scolded　　D. cursed

【翻译】店员被解雇了，因为她被指控欺骗了顾客。

【解析】accuse“指控，控告”，且经常与 of 搭配，含义为“控告某人做某事”；charge 也有“控告”之意，但常与 with 搭配；scold“责骂、责备”；curse“诅咒”。故正确选项为 A。

2. 形近词辨析。英语词汇中，有一些很相似，但他们的词义或词性却不同。专升本英语考试的一条命题规律就是用形近词来干扰考生做出正确的选择，其目的是要检测学生辨别词性和运用词汇的能力。如果考生平时不善于对形近词进行自觉的对比，对他们的差异不甚了解，那就会在答题时徘徊不定，难以做出正确的选择，甚至张冠李戴。

He ________ a knowledge of this language by careful study.（2009）

A. acquired　　B. required　　C. inquired　　D. requested

【翻译】他通过认真学习获得了这门语言的知识。

【解析】get /acquire knowledge“获得知识”，为固定搭配，其余均不符合。require 意为“要求”；inquire 意为“询问”；request 意为“请求、要求”。故选 A。

3. 词组辨析。动词短语是英语的难点之一，它是由动词＋副词、动词＋介词、动词＋副词＋介词几种方式构成的惯用组合，具有自己独特的意义。其意义、语法、用法等常使考生感到困惑。首先，动词短语的词义不是动词和副词、介词等词的简单组合，往往难以从字面上理解。许多情况下望文猜意是行不通的。其次，动词短语的使用场合及范围不易弄清楚。即使知道了字面的意思也往往难以做出正确的判断。要学好英语，必须学会使用动词短语。测试动词短语的题目在词汇题中占有很大的比例，其目的是测试考生辨析和运用动词短语，尤其是同一动词与不同的介词和副词所构成的动词短语的能力。

They have ________ most carefully the time and the materials needed to complete the project.（2011）

A. picked up　　B. left out　　C. taken out　　D. figured out

【翻译】他们极其细致地算出了完成这项工程所需要的时间和材料。

【解析】pick up“捎带、拣、获得（知识或信息）”；leave out“省略、删减”；take out“取出”；figure out“计算出、指出”。故正确选项为 D。

4. 习惯搭配。英语习语（English idiom）具有约定俗成的结构形式，如“步行”，要说 on foot，不说 by foot ；而“乘车”要说 by bus，不说 on bus。为什么是这样而不是那样？即使有理由，可谁又能说得清楚，透彻。再如：anything but 与 nothing but 两个词组意义完全不同。anything but 基本意思相当于 not at all，而 nothing but 的基本意思相当于 only。英语中的习语令人眼花缭乱，其构成形式有的甚至无规律可循。他们通常由两个或两个以上的词组成，不能任意拆开。其意义往往不是单词本意的简单结合，而是另外具有新的意义。因此，应把词组作为一个整体来记。此类试题测试的目的是检验考生对常用词组的理解和运用能力。

Under heavy gunfire，those cameramen risked their lives to give ________ battlefield reports.（2003）

A. word-for-word　B. face-to-face　C. down-to-earth　D. on-the-spot

【翻译】尽管炮火纷飞，这些摄影记者仍冒着生命危险做现场战地报道。

【解析】D. word-for-word 意思是“逐字的、一字不变的”；face-to-face 意思是“面对面的、直接的”；down-to-earth“切合实际的、现实的”；on-the-spot“在现场的、实地的”。故只有选项 D 为正确选项。

小结：学生面对这些貌似杂乱无章，没有规律可循的习惯表达法，一方面要广读多看，博闻强记；另一方面还要学会找寻规律，学会归纳，避免机械记忆，这样才能事半功倍。总而言之，解答词汇题的先决条件是对词汇的理解和辨析。因此考生平时要注意弄清楚词的内涵和外延关系，尤其是要注意了解名词、动词、形容词等实词彼此之间的以及它们与介词或副词之间的搭配关系。与此同时，还要留心词的习惯用法，把习语作为一个整体储存在脑海里。

真题演练

2001 年

1. ________ closed his eyes than the doorbell rang.

A. Hardly had he　B. Scarcely he had　C. No sooner had he　D. As soon as he had

2. ________ we have finished the course，we shall start doing some revision work.

A. Now that　B. Since then　C. For now　D. By now

3. He was asked to speak louder ________ all the students in the classroom could hear him.

A. as　B. so as to　C. so that　D. than

4. Tom succeeded in getting a ________ of ＄3，000 from the bank to buy a new house.

A. debt　B. fund　C. loan　D. payment

5. The ________ into the fire accident was carried out by two policemen.

A. question B. doubt C. investigation D. information

6. We advised them to take a rest, but they ________ on finishing the work.

A. insisted B. persisted C. existed D. resized

7. Not being able to speak English, they felt rather ________ in the USA.

A. strange B. puzzled C. alone D. lonely

8. The manager of our company asked me if it was possible for me to ________ the marketing plan within a week.

A. set out B. work out C. make out D. put out

9. Having a good command of English is ________ an easy thing.

A. by all means B. by any means C. by every means D. by no means

10. Problems may ________ .

A. rise B. jump C. arise D. lift

11. He said that he was ________ aware of the difficulty of being a father.

A. highly B. fully C. soundly D. firmly

12. I really hope that you will ________ your trip to Canada and get back as soon as possible when people have to consult you about the knowledge of the law.

A. prefer B. refer C. enjoy D. infer

13. Such problems ________ air, water, and noise pollution are becoming more and more serious in some big cities.

A. like B. as C. of D. about

14. Television keeps us informed about ________ events and the latest developments in science and politics.

A. current B. past C. fashionable D. new

15. As there was a power failure in the hospital, the doctor had to ________ operation.

A. call for B. call off C. call on D. call out

2002 年

1. What he said is worthy ________ note.

A. in B. of C. to D. on

2. It was such a hot day that everyone ________ swimming in the river.

A. felt like B. tended to C. made for D. turned out

3. I didn't know what to do then suddenly an idea ________ to me.

A. happened B. entered C. occurred D. hit

4. Although he is talkative, he is ________ to tell us anything about his family.

A. willing B. reluctant C. alert D. complacent

5. I'm ________ of what he is going to do.

A. void B. composed C. ignorant D. cautious

6. Under the dim light，she could only see the house number ________ .

A. instinctively B. slightly C. uneasily D. vaguely

7. ________ the fact that I don't like my job，I must work very hard.

A. In spite of B. Instead of C. As to D. In case of

8. He stays ________ till eleven o'clock every morning.

A. in bed B. in a bed C. in the bed D. on the bed

9. I didn't go to his party last night，because ________，I changed my mind.

A. on a second thought B. by second thoughts

C. on second thoughts D. on the second thought

10. Michael is home after a year in Germany. He looks just ________ before.

A. same like B. as same as C. the same D. the same as

2003 年

1. Mary said that Hemingway was her ________ writer and that she had read nearly all of his novels.

A. famous B. popular C. common D. favorite

2. Once a decision is made，it must be firmly ________ .

A. carried on B. carried out C. carried away D. carried off

3. The color ________ from yellow through green to black.

A. ranges B. constitutes C. composes D. consists

4. Experiments ________ that accurate measurements be made.

A. show B. prove C. demand D. head

5. I tried to catch the ball but it was ________ my reach.

A. beyond B. besides C. in addition to D. as well as

6. Those scientists were conducting an experiment and expected a good ________ .

A. effect B. result C. consequence D. affect

7. Under heavy gunfire，those cameramen risked their lives to give ________ battlefield reports.

A. word-for-word B. face-to-face C. down-to-earth D. on-the-spot

8. The rain was heavy and ________ the house was damaged.

A. consequently B. constantly C. consistently D. continuously

9. When it ________ school work，the professor will treat his students equally.

A. comes to evaluate B. comes to evaluating

C. will come to evaluate D. will come to evaluating

10. ________ new products have been successfully trial-produced.

A. A great deal B. A large amount of

C. A plenty of D. A large number of

11. What they have done for us can't be measured in ________ of money.

A. way B. means C. terms D. place

12. You must pack plenty of food for the journey; ________, you'll need warm clothes, so pack them too.

A. on the whole B. otherwise C. however D. likewise

13. Meat easily ________ in hot weather.

A. turns badly B. becomes badly C. goes bad D. changes worse

14. It is ________ impossible to find a good educational computer program in this city.

A. barely B. merely C. hardly D. nearly

2004 年

1. ________ a young woman, the office was empty.

A. But for B. Except for C. Besides D. Except

2. They liked the area, but they could not ________ the traffic noise.

A. get on with B. put up with C. put on with D. get up with

3. You can speak ________ in front of George, but you can't eat ________ in his restaurant.

A. freely; free B. free; freely C. free; free D. freely; freely

4. His speech was so interesting that it was constantly ________ by applause.

A. interfered B. interrupted C. troubled D. disturbed

5. He has planned to ________ some money every month so that he can buy a house in the future.

A. set aside B. set up C. set in D. set along

6. He tried to make up ________ the lost time ________ staying up late.

A. with; by B. for; by C. with; with D. for; with

7. There are no ________ medicines for Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome.

A. effect B. effective C. efficient D. efficacy

8. He had no sooner finished his speech ________ he withdrew.

A. than B. that C. when D. as

9. He was caught in the rain yesterday; ________, he fell ill this morning.

A. on the contrary B. in contrast C. in other words D. as a result

2005 年

1. He wanted to become a cleaner, but his father didn't think it was a ________ profession.

A. respectful B. respective C. respecting D. respectable

2. They are ________ to arrive in time owing to the heavy snowstorm.

A. impossible B. unlikely C. unseemly D. probably

3. They made every effort to ________ the costs of the construction project.

A. bring off B. bring down C. bring back D. bring up

4. His son is quite well now, ________ a slight fever.

A. except B. besides C. in addition to D. except for

5. The violinist who had been praised very highly ________ to be a great disappointment.

A. turned up B. turned out C. turned in D. turned over

6. A lot of new difficulties ________ when the tax system came into existence.

A. raised B. aroused C. arose D. rose

7. What you are saying has nothing to do with the question ________ discussion.

A. at B. on C. in D. under

8. Hemingway spoke highly of such ________ as loyalty，courage and determination known by human beings in his works.

A. features B. appearances C. virtues D. characteristics

9. The applicant felt ________ and uncomfortable when he couldn't answer the interviewer's questions.

A. amused B. ease C. awkward D. alone

10. We should value the rich legacy of literature which the old generation has ________ to us.

A. handed out B. handed over C. handed in D. handed down

11. The news came as a shocking blow that the young man had ________ suicide.

A. acted B. committed C. performed D. made

12. She was so ________ in the computer games that she forgot to have class.

A. attracted B. concentrated C. involved D. drawn

13. There is no ________ arguing about it，just do as you are told.

A. reason B. way C. point D. meaning

2006 年

1. We plan to increase the output of the machine ________ 7.4 percent this year.

A. at B. in C. by D. with

2. Henry looked very much ________ when he was caught cheating in the exam.

A. discouraged B. embarrassed C. disappointed D. pleased

3. We are interested in the weather because it ________ us so directly.

A. benefits B. affects C. guides D. effects

4. Hardly had he entered the classroom ________ the bell rang

A. than B. then C. when D. so

5. John puts up his hand ________ the teacher asks a question.

A. every time B. in time C. some time D. at times

6. We object ________ carrying out the plan.

A. for B. to be C. about D. to

2007 年

1. I have to ________ my expenditure to my income.

A. transfer　B. adjust　C. direct　D. add

2. With the development of industry，this region will surely ________ .

A. develop　B. profit　C. succeed　D. thrive

3. Mum is getting old，so her memory is not very ________ these days.

A. true　B. forgettable　C. reliable　D. credit

4. Which door does this key ________ to?

A. set　B. fit　C. become　D. belong

5. Much ________ my regret，I am unable to accept your kind invitation.

A. to　B. at　C. with　D. by

6. It ought to be you ________ me that sign the letter.

A. but　B. in spite of　C. rather　D. rather than

7. Literature must consist of words，________ music must consist of sounds.

A. even though　B. so that　C. just as　D. ever since

8. I prefer walking ________ .

A. to drive　B. to driving　C. than drive　D. than driving

9. The committee ________ a conclusion only after days of discussion.

A. achieved　B. reached　C. arrived　D. completed

10. Generally speaking，nodding your head is ________ to saying yes.

A. contrary　B. equivalent　C. secondary　D. relevant

11. ________，that step is not safe!

A. Look around　B. Look up　C. Look out　D. Look down

12. I saw a traffic ________ this morning.

A. event　B. conflict　C. damage　D. accident

13. Finding it difficult to ________ to the climate in the city，he decided to move to the north.

A. fit　B. adopt　C. suit　D. adapt

14. He climbed up into the tree and picked all the fruit ________ reach.

A. within　B. beyond　C. off　D. inside

15. Those opinions are now out of ________ .

A. order　B. form　C. mood　D. fashion

16. Just because he failed once，it does not ________ that he will fail.

A. follow　B. happen　C. appear　D. seem

17. He plays not only the piano ________ the violin.

A. and also　B. but also

C. but as well as　D. but as well

18. The population of the world is growing at a dangerous ________ .

A. step　　B. measure　　C. rate　　D. progress

2008 年

1. Great ________ the difficulties are, we must do our best to succeed.

A. while　　B. as　　C. although　　D. however

2. A man who wants to start a business must have some ________ .

A. currency　　B. income　　C. wealth　　D. capital

3. He has a ________ habit of biting his lips when he is puzzled.

A. particular　　B. specific　　C. peculiar　　D. general

4. The manager claimed that his company had the ________ right of publication.

A. single　　B. unique　　C. lonely　　D. sole

5. At the conference he expressed some personal views which brought him into ________ with the Party leadership.

A. action　　B. crisis　　C. conflict　　D. power

6. The actual cost of the building was much higher than our original ________ .

A. consideration　　B. judgement　　C. estimate　　D. plan

7. There was more than ________ rain and snow last year, so some parts of the country have been flooded this spring.

A. extra　　B. efficient　　C. effective　　D. adequate

8. Illness ________ him till his death but he never gave up his lofty goal in his life.

A. persisted　　B. pursued　　C. tracked　　D. tolerated

9. The students are encouraged to provide ________ service to the poor students.

A. valuable　　B. volcano　　C. voluntary　　D. voyage

10. It was almost dark in the street ________ a few very powerful spotlights.

A. excluding　　B. except for　　C. except　　D. but for

11. Although the United States has long been known as a nation of immigrants, ________ discrimination still exists.

A. radical　　B. racial　　C. crucial　　D. diplomatic

12. When they had finished playing, the children were made to ________ all the toys they had taken out.

A. put off　　B. put up　　C. put out　　D. put away

13. I hope my teacher will take my recent illness into ________ when judging my examination.

A. regard　　B. counting　　C. account　　D. observation

14. If you don't feel well, please ________ the doctor .

A. answer　　B. promise　　C. teach　　D. consult

15. Mary and Jane are twin sisters. They look exactly ________ .

A. like　B. same　C. alike　D. same ones

16. You can stay here ________ you keep quiet.

A. as long as　B. unless　C. in case　D. in order

17. In other words, all mammals, ________ their sizes are, breathe once for every four heartbeats.

A. however　B. regardless　C. whatever　D. according

18. We have still tremendous ________ to overcome before we achieve our goal.

A. obligations　B. objections　C. obstacles　D. objects

19. People are ________ to smoke at a gas station.

A. prevented　B. forbidden　C. stopped　D. objected

20. I hope to meet you again ________ next year.

A. sometimes　B. some times　C. sometime　D. some time

21. It wasn't an accident. He did it on ________ .

A. reason　B. intention　C. purpose　D. determination

22. Applying for a ________ in the office of the local newspaper, he was told to see the manager.

A. position　B. career　C. profession　D. location

23. People living in cities ________ to suffer from stress more than people in the countryside.

A. intend　B. lean　C. tend　D. incline

24. It took him several months to ________ the wild horse.

A. cultivate　B. breed　C. tend　D. tame

2009 年

1. I was so ________ the night before my examination that I could not sleep.

A. worrying　B. tired　C. happy　D. nervous

2. Whether you learn or not is entirely ________ you.

A. up to　B. as to　C. about to　D. due to

3. I finally ________ to study much harder in the future.

A. prepared　B. made up my mind　C. worked out　D. made out

4. The old couple decided to ________ a boy though they had three of their own.

A. adapt　B. bring　C. receive　D. adopt

5. The population of the world is growing at a dangerous ________ .

A. pace　B. measure　C. progress　D. rate

6. Alice trusts you; only you can ________ her to give up the foolish idea.

A. suggest　B. attract　C. tempt　D. persuade

7. When Mary paid the bill she was given a ________ for her money.

A. cheque　B. receipt　C. ticket　D. label

8. You must walk slowly if you want the children to ________ you.

A. put up with　B. come up with　C. keep up with　D. go on with

9. Little John caught a ________ fish this morning.

A. alive B. alone C. lonely D. living

10. I took the medicine, but it didn't have any ________ on me.

A. effect B. relation C. touch D. affect

11. The age of the students in this class ________ from eighteen to twenty.

A. changes B. ranges C. alters D. limits

12. It would be ________ a risk to let the child go to school by himself.

A. following B. passing C. running D. carrying

13. He ________ a knowledge of this language by careful study.

A. acquired B. required C. inquired D. requested

14. We develop trade with that company for our shared ________ .

A. honour B. reward C. benefit D. prize

15. If you take this medicine twice a day, it should ________ your cold.

A. heal B. cure C. treat D. recover

16. We object ________ punishing a whole group for one person's fault.

A. against B. about C. to D. for

17. Her face is ________ to me, but I can't remember where I saw her.

A. similar B. friendly C. alike D. familiar

18. You'll have to book the tickets for the holiday in ________ .

A. front B. advance C. ahead D. forward

19. Children who are overprotected by their parents may become ________ .

A. hurt B. spoiled C. damaged D. harmed

20. Kids are very curious ________ .

A. at heart B. in person C. by nature D. on purpose

21. Your brother is very tall. What is his exact ________ ?

A. size B. length C. height D. breadth

2010 年

1. The fire must have ________ after the shop was closed.

A. broken out B. broken down C. broken in D. broken through

2. Finally he got time for a glance ________ this report.

A. off B. round C. on D. at

3. Your idea seems to be good but it isn't ________ .

A. practical B. possible C. plentiful D. precious

4. The manager lost his ________ just because his secretary was ten minutes late.

A. mood B. temper C. mind D. passion

5. There are several characteristics of the textbook ________ attention.

A. worthwhile B. worth of C. worthy D. worthy of

6. The new building ________ all the other buildings in the town.

A. dwarfs B. distorts C. deserts D. depresses

7. The Internet has brought ________ big changes in the way we work.

A. about B. out C. back D. up

8. He is a man who is always ________ fault with other people.

A. putting B. seeking C. finding D. looking for

9. The factory had to ________ a number of employees because of the economic crisis in the country.

A. lay out B. lay off C. lay aside D. lay down

10. Would you spare some time to have a chat with me ________ a cup of coffee?

A. for B. with C. during D. over

11. Ten days ago the young man ________ his boss ________ his intention to resign.

A. informed…of B. informed…on C. informed…in D. informed…to

12. On his way to the airport, it ________ to him that he had forgotten to take his passport.

A. happened B. occurred C. reflected D. took place

13. The information technology has greatly ________ people's life.

A. affected B. effect C. impact D. infected

14. Having a good command of English is ________ an easy thing.

A. by all means B. by any means C. by every means D. by no means

15. He never ________ to his customers in his business except occasionally for some special reasons. This time he cut the price by half, which really shocked me.

A. leaked B. drew C. quoted D. yielded

16. It is useful to be able to predict the extent ________ which a price change will influence supply and demand.

A. from B. with C. to D. for

17. Undergraduate students ________ the rare books in the school library.

A. have access for B. keep access in C. keep access on D. have access to

2011 年

1. The shop assistant was dismissed as she was ________ of cheating customers.

A. accused B. charged C. scolded D. cursed

2. Needless to say, he ________ his good looks and sense of humor from his mother.

A. inherited B. carried C. inhabited D. resembled

3. They have ________ most carefully the time and the materials needed to complete the project.

A. picked up B. left out C. taken out D. figured out

4. He will pass two milestones ________, that is, he will receive his master's degree and find a

challenging job.

A. long ago B. not long ago C. before long D. long before

5. Some diseases are ________ by certain water animals.

A. transported B. transmitted C. transformed D. transplanted

6. Our hopes ________ at the first sight of the doctor.

A. arose B. raised C. rose D. aroused

7. Eating too much fat can ________ heart disease and cause high blood pressure.

A. attribute to B. contribute to C. attend to D. devote to

8. I don’t think it will rain，but I’ll take an umbrella ________ it does.

A. as if B. in case C. as though D. even if

9. This hall can ________ 1000 people. You can ________ where you like.

A. hold…seat B. be seated…seated C. seat…be seated D. hold…seating

10. Smoking should be ________ in all public places like theatres，cinemas and restaurants.

A. banned B. specified C. passed D. preserved

2012 年

1. The police are ________ for the thief in the region now.

A. running B. reaching C. searching D. charging

2. The college is planning to offer more English courses to ________ the needs of beginners of English.

A. meet with B. meet C. supply D. satisfy with

3. He had never given a speech to so many people，so he felt ________ .

A. exciting B. stupid C. disappointed D. nervous

4. Once you arrive in a new place，you’d better ________ the local custom.

A. keep B. make C. follow D. return

5. The manner ________ which he talked reminded us ________ his grandfather.

A. on；towards B. at；in C. for；by D. in；of

6. All of us still remember the terrible earthquake that ________ Wenchuan four years ago.

A. interrupted B. struck C. knocked D. exploded

7. His fellow workers saw him fall down and blood came out from the open ________ .

A. wound B. injury C. hurt D. damage

8. He is the sort of businessman who would do anything in his ________ of profit.

A. pursuit B. catch C. grasp D. master

9. Tom’s bedroom was in a ________，for books and papers were here and there.

A. litter B. disorder C. rubbish D. mess

10. A car ________ Jane’s cat and sped away.

A. ran over B. ran into C. ran through D. ran down

2013 年

1. In his opinion，success in life mainly ________ on how we get along with other people.

A. keeps B. depends C. insists D. spends

2. Our company's service is ________ in nearly 80 countries around the world.

A. available B. relative C. natural D. careful

3. It is true that ________ drinking is bad for the health.

A. sufficient B. little C. enough D. excessive

4. Rising prices may ________ the rise in demand for these goods.

A. reflect B. remind C. convey D . explain

5. The airplane arrived one hour behind ________ .

A. plan B. date C. time D. schedule

6. Fresh air，enough exercise and nutritious food ________ to good health.

A. contribute B. add C. attribute D. distribute

7. Our English professor is a man of French ________ .

A. birth B. origin C. source D. breed

8. Any man who wants to start a business must have some ________ .

A. currency B. income C. wealth D. capital

9. Jim was caught ________ drugs into the country.

A. steal B. smuggling C. smug D. giggling

10. The defense computers calculate way to ________ the enemy missiles.

A. spoil B. harm C. destroy D. damage

11. Today，household chores have been made much easier by electrical ________ .

A. facilities B. equipment C. appliances D. utilities

2014 年

1. Education cannot be ________in any country.

A. rejected B. deleted C. neglected D. refused

2. Although it's tough finding a job these days，Henry got a ________in a famous company.

A. place B. position C. post D. patch

3. The doctor said that mental ________is the major cause of his sleeping problem.

A. tension B. sadness C. anger D. relaxation

4. The last time I saw her was ________my brother's wedding ceremony three years ago.

A. to B. at C. in D. during

5. He might have been killed ________the arrival of the police.

A. except for B. with C. for D. but for

6. Some areas，________their severe weather conditions，are sparsely populated.

A. due to B. but for C. in spite of D. with regard to

7. No agreement was ________ in the discussion as neither side would give way to the other.

A. arrived B. obtained C. reached D. gained

8. A loud noise ________ my attention from cooking and everything was burnt.

A. divided B. diverted C. focused D. separated

9. Before using your new pressure cooker，read the following ________ carefully.

A. notices B. orders C. advertisements D. instructions

10. It is very expensive to ________ the fashion.

A. go along with B. get on with C. keep up with D. carry on with

11. If I have a good sleep I’ll be ________ to work out the problem.

A. possible B. able C. capable D. reasonable

12. If you get into difficulties，don’t hesitate to ________ help.

A. ask about B. ask after C. ask for D. ask in

13. All of them are ________ at Lana’s achievement.

A. amazed B. interested C. fond D. proud

14. The football match was ________ on account of rain.

A. called up B. called on C. called off D. called for

15. Students should develop a good attitude ________ tests.

A. for B. with C. on D. towards

16. I’m ________ in this argument：I don’t care who wins.

A. natural B. central C. neutral D. middle

17. She passed me in the street，but took no ________ of me.

A. attention B. watch C. sight D. notice

18. Tolerance ________ respecting the opinions of others.

A. consists in B. consists of C. insists on D. depends on

19. The weather was good except for an ________ shower.

A. optional B. intentional C. additional D. occasional

20. No one should blind himself ________ the well-known fact.

A. with B. to C. for D. over

21. The color of the skirt does not ________ that of the coat.

A. balance B. match C. corresponding D. accord

22. The boy is eager to ________ knowledge in different fields.

A. accomplish B. absorb C. arrange D. approach

23. In my bedroom，there is a pair of scissors，a stack of books and ________ flowers on my desk.

A. a piece of B. a pocket of C. a slice of D. a bunch of

24. As far as the professor ________，college students should get into the habit of studying by

themselves.

A. concern　B. concerns　C. concerned　D. is concerned

25. Nobody could ________ a satisfactory explanation of the accident.

A. come up with　B. come through　C. come upon　D. come into

26. ________ my delight, our school football team won the game easily.

A. In　B. Of　C. To　D. For

27. ________ driving to work, Mr. Lead usually goes to his office downtown by train.

A. Without　B. Instead of　C. In case of　D. In spite of

2015 年

1. Both the pink and blue dresses are pretty but I like the ________ better.

A. earlier　B. beginner　C. former　D. first

2. He made a ________ to let all children learn English, but he soon found it impossible without an online course.

A. confinement　B. commitment　C. conception　D. commission

3. The people living in these apartments have free ________ to that swimming pool.

A. access　B. excess　C. excursion　D. recreation

4. He ________ the old man with 10 pounds for bringing back the lost dog.

A. rewarded　B. prized　C. gave　D. paid

5. He said he would never be intimidated ________ what he didn' t like by big names.

A. do　B. to do　C. did　D. into doing

6. I' m sorry to have ________ you with so many questions on such an occasion.

A. interfered　B. offended　C. impressed　D. disturbed

7. I only work ________ weekdays, not ________ weekends.

A. on…on　B. at…at　C. on…at　D. at…on

8. She grabbed the soap and washed ________.

A. thoroughly　B. thorough　C. although　D. though

9. Piano is a popular ________.

A. machine　B. instrument　C. equipment　D. tool

10. There are many proverbs in Chinese. ________, there are also many proverbs in English.

A. Meanwhile　B. Similarly　C. Usually　D. Typically

11. Many youngsters ________ pop songs to old songs. They think pop singers are very cool.

A. suppose　B. prefer　C. suggest　D. expect

12. The engineer tried to ________ the problem with several drawings.

A. recognize　B. impress　C. illustrate　D. identify

13. She ________ to book a seat on the next flight.

A. pushed　B. drew　C. rushed　D. stroke

14. His favorite ________ is playing drums.

A. pastime B. action C. habit D. moment

15. ________ weather may be too hot to the tourists.

A. So B. Such C. What D. Which

16. He ________ yesterday morning，and would stay for three days.

A. checked up B. checked on C. checked out D. checked in

17. There is absolutely no need to ________. We will return to the airport very soon.

A. panic B. terror C. fright D. rage

18. I' d like to ________ my parents' greetings to you and your family.

A. confront B. display C. consult D. convey

19. The new look of the city has ________ a deep impression on those foreign visitors.

A. left B. kept C. marked D. remained

20. It is ________ impossible to work with this noise around.

A. especially B. absolutely C. unreasonably D. unusually

21. A ________ person is extremely thin，in a way that you find unattractive.

A. lonely B. mean C. brave D. skinny

22. Over-working can be a ________ on both body and mind.

A. task B. burden C. bother D. weight

23. The fire soon ________ the whole town.

A. spread through B. spread down C. spread over D. spread out

24. The accident in which two people were seriously injured resulted ________ careless driving.

A. in B. from C. on D. of

25. Law school doesn' t ________ as many years as medical school does.

A. take B. cost C. spend D. pay

26. When I saw the expression on his face，I realized he is ________ agreement with me.

A. in B. for C. to D. on

27. She is very ________ to her ugly appearance.

A. sensible B. sensitive C. sense D. sentimental

28. It was only a ________ injury，not all that serious.

A. slight B. special C. similar D. substantial

29. They were ________ white.

A. dressed B. put on C. dressed up D. dressed in

30. Because they are ________ a date，many of us believe that they are in love.

A. in B. on C. out D. at

2016 年

1. The disabled children need many things，but ________，they need love.

A. first of all B. not at all C. after all D. all in all

2. The coal industry in the north of China is now barely half its ________ size.

A. formal B. former C. latter D. later

3. The football player is hoping to ________ to another team soon.

A. transfer B. transport C. transplant D. transact

4. Her ________ to the job left her with very little free time.

A. devotion B. faith C. trust D. interest

5. The children have been ________ since their father left.

A. out of style B. under control C. out of control D. in style

6. A great cheer went up from the crowd as they caught ________ of the hero.

A. vision B. view C. sight D. glance

7. —Did you enjoy the TV program last night?

—No， ________ not.

A. particularly B. obviously C. surprisingly D. normally

8. We are sometimes ________ of selfishness in our lives，though we are mostly generous in personality.

A. miserable B. greedy C. guilty D. sorry

9. The teacher doesn't allow his students ________ on the exam.

A. cheated B. cheating C. cheat D. to cheat

10. Most computer users are ________ threat from computer viruses.

A. within B. upon C. towards D. under

11. David told the truth ________ to annoy her，and she was angry for being betrayed by her good friend.

A. on purpose B. in need C. in detail D. at all

12. The classroom is quite clean ________ some waste paper on the floor.

A. except for B. besides C. except D. without

13. The bad weather ________ the building program by several weeks.

A. went on B. put on C. set back D. built up

14. They naturally hope that their choice of the play will be ________ with the school and parents.

A. pleasing B. welcome C. kind D. popular

15. These two pictures are so ________ that it's very difficult to tell them apart.

A. exact B. familiar C. likely D. similar

16. These tickets for the performance are ________ until the end of the month.

A. acceptable B. available C. advisable D. applicable

17. Please ________ the water tap when you have finished your washing.

A. turn on B. turn off C. turn out D. turn over

18. Don’t associate with bad boys ________ your whole life will be ruined.

A. or　B. but　C. and　D. so that

19. I shall have a companion in the house after all these ________ years.

A. alone　B. lonely　C. single　D. simple

20. The bank has established ________ in many big cities in the world.

A. parts　B. twigs　C. benches　D. branches

21. While studying he financially depended ________ his wife.

A. on　B. of　C. to　D. from

2017 年

1. Only one little boy ________ the accident；everyone else was killed.

A. survived　B. submitted　C. suffered　D. succeeded

2. I don’t know whether what he said is true，but I’ll try to ________ it.

A. confine　B. confess　C. conform　D. confirm

3. My camera can be ________ to take pictures in cloudy or sunny conditions.

A. treated　B. adjusted　C. adopted　D. remedied

4. Children who are overprotected by their parents may become ________.

A. hurt　B. damaged　C. spoiled　D. harmed

5. I think the whole paper has to be rewritten；only the first few paragraphs may be ________.

A. sustained　B. contained　C. retained　D. maintained

6. The boat ________，throwing the boys into the water.

A. turned on　B. turned down　C. turned off　D. turned over

7. The teacher asked a difficult question，but finally Peter ________ a good answer.

A. came up to　B. came up for　C. came up with　D. came up against

8. Mr. Wang is getting too old for football. He decides to ________ tennis instead.

A. take in　B. take up　C. take for　D. take over

9. Not long ago，a person who，I know very well was ________ an accident.

A. related to　B. included in　C. involved in　D. subjected to

10. It is our ________ policy that we will achieve unity through peaceful means.

A. consistent　B. considerate　C. continual　D. continuous

11. Many people complain of the rapid ________ of modern life.

A. rate　B. pace　C. speed　D. growth

12. We discussed this problem for several days，but couldn’t come to a(n) ________.

A. result　B. end　C. conclusion　D. judgment

13. I am ________ every day by the slow bus service in this city.

A. annoyed　B. confused　C. horrified　D. irritated

14 . No one likes him because his action doesn’t ________ his words.

A. correspond with　B. agree on　C. communicate with　D. consist of

15. His knowledge of English literature is ________mine.

A. superior than　B. superior to

C. superior more than　D. superior better to

16. He rarely goes to the cinema as his work ________almost all his time.

A. takes away　B. takes over　C. takes up　D. takes in

17. The world-cup football match will be televised ________to the world.

A. alive　B. living　C. live　D. lively

18. The restaurant is busy on Sundays，so I' ll phone up today and ________a table.

A. preserve　B. reserve　C. observe　D. deserve

19. Never waste anything，but ________never waste time.

A. after all　B. all in all　C. above all　D. all over

20. Generally speaking，a business letter should be written in formal style ________in a personal one.

A. rather than　B. other than　C. less than　D. more than

2018 年

1. There is a growing ________of Australian wines among consumers.

A. relativity　B. regularity　C. popularity　D. population

2. Because of ________of time，I didn' t go shopping with my sister yesterday.

A. lack　B. shortage　C. zero　D. poverty

3. Jane，my closest friend，often ________her secrets with me.

A. speaks　B. shares　C. reports　D. finds

4. When he came for the interview，Sam felt ________at first，but soon calmed down.

A. nervous　B. exciting　C. curious　D. anxiously

5. We would like you to know that we greatly ________your timely help.

A. appreciate　B. thank　C. accept　D. admire

6. The manager told his secretary to ________a contract.

A. draw in　B. draw on　C. draw out　D. draw up

7. Careless driving may ________your life.

A. cost　B. spend　C. pay　D. buy

8. We ________have thirty full-time and fifteen part-time employees in our company.

A. currently　B. mostly　C. likely　D. internationally

9. The ________of my new job were better than the old one.

A. conditions　B. position　C. boss　D. pay

10. The rich man ________his poor neighbors.

A. looked down to　B. looked down upon

C. saw down to　D. saw down on

11. Hard work can often ________ a lack of intelligence.

A. make for B. make up for C. make at D. make out at

12. The car was badly smashed up，but the driver got away without serious ________.

A. damage B. wound C. pain D. injury

13. You must give us more time，________ we shall not be able to make a good job of it.

A. otherwise B. whether C. therefore D. consequently

14. You may speak ________；say what you like.

A. readily B. willingly C. freely D. independently

15. The autumn air felt ________ so she went to fetch a coat for her son.

A. chilly B. shivery C. chill D. cool

16. He is very ________ about his ugly appearance.

A. sensible B. sensitive C. senseless D. sentimental

17. Since she is angry，we ________ leave her alone.

A. had better to B. had rather C. might have D. might as well

18. Because the company was doing more business，it was necessary to ________ the factory.

A. extend B. increase C. rise D. grow

19. Breakfast is ________ in the dining room from 8 to9：30 a. m.

A. served B. made C. cooked D. eaten

20. The date of the meeting has been ________ from the 5th to 8th June.

A. postponed B. advanced C. put forward D. brought of

2019 年

1. Researchers have ________ to the conclusion that your personality is affected by your genes.

A. come B. got C. reached D. arrived

2. She kept practicing ________ she could win the National Speaking Competition.

A. to B. in order to C. so that D. because of

3. Carl wasn't very good at mountain climbing as he's afraid of ________.

A. highs B. heights C. highness D. heightening

4. Harry and Sam both denied that the fight was their ________.

A. blame B. criticism C. cause D. fault

5. The government should do more for ________ people.

A. usual B. everyday C. ordinary D. typical

6. Some drugs produce bad side ________.

A. consequences B. results C. products D. effects

7. It is wise to ________ your property against storm damage.

A. insure B. assure C. reassure D. ensure

8. Joe told me a joke today but I didn't ________ it at all.

A. get B. bring C. collect D. fetch

9. I think she ________ her fortune in the shipping industry.

A. took B. won C. made D. saved

10. I really don't ________ the point of taking the exam when you are not ready for it.

A. look B. see C. have D. mind

11. The debate will ________ place tonight.

A. be B. take C. have D. make

12. Ivan tells me he really ________ himself at your barbecue last week.

A. pleased B. enjoyed C. played D. interested

13. What's the ________ between New York and Chicago?

A. length B. space C. distance D. gap

14. They were accused of interfering in China's internal ________.

A. matter B. affairs C. thing D. concern

15. Please don't forget to ________ your essays during Friday's lesson.

A. handle in B. hand in C. hand D. handle

16 . The teacher asked some questions to make ________ that the student understand the text.

A. good B. true C. sure D. believe

17. She is finding ________ with the way I do my hair.

A. flaw B. mistake C. fault D. error

18. Joe stared at me for a moment and then reluctantly ________ his hand.

A. extended B. increased C. raised D. put

19. The earth ________ the necessary amount of heat and light from the sun.

A. supplies B. receives C. provides D. requires

20. Slow down! I can't ________ with you!

A. get on B. put down C. drop out D. keep up

2020 年

1. Our Prime Minister is trying his best to promote the new ________ policy.

A. economic B. economical C. economy D. economics

2. The strikers were ________ with dismissal if they did not return to work.

A. treated B. threatened C. warned D. told

3. No one will stand ________ if you really want to work in that company.

A. on your way B. in your way C. by the way D. out of the way

4. It is hard to distinguish the twins because they ________.

A. look like B. look likely C. look alike D. look same

5. Their youngest child is ________ because he is always given whatever he wants.

A. wasted B. spoiled C. destroyed D. uneducated

6. His answer was so confusing that I could hardly make any ________ of it at all.
A. explanation B. meaning C. interpretation D. sense

7. They climbed to the top of the hill ________ they could get a bird's eye of the city.
A. in case B. for fear that C. in order that D. as a result

8. Once a ________ is formed，It is very difficult to shake it off.
A. usage B. custom C. practice D. habit

9. There is a ________ of vegetables at the moment because of the hot weather.
A. need B. want C. shortage D. desire

10. After we finished dinner，Jimmy asked the waiter to bring him the ________.
A. count B. account C. tip D. bill

11. Advertising can sometimes ________ us to buy things that are not necessary.
A. persuade B. improve C. announce D. make

12. The trip to the Western Europe has been ________ due to the outbreak of COVID—19.
A. insisted B. canceled C. reduced D. inferred

13. His birthday was ________ in a restaurant and attended by about 20 people.
A. inspected B. installed C. celebrated D. interfered

14. Generally ________，that city is less crowded than the others in the province.
A. talking B. telling C. saying D. speaking

15. Literature and art have a great influence ________ people's way of thinking.
A. to B. on C. for D. onto

16. It took us some minutes to understand his ________ to the suggestion.
A. insight B. opinion C. reaction D. comment

17. He doesn't have the slightest ________ of buying a new house in two years.
A. attitude B. intention C. statement D. temptation

18. In the big flood，only 20 percent of the people in that village ________.
A. remained B. stayed C. lived D. survived

19. Yesterday she was knocked down by a motor—car and lay ________ on the side of the road.
A. asleep B. thoughtless C. unconscious D. unaware

专升本考试必备短语

一、系表结构短语

动词 be 构成的系表结构短语：
be absent from 不在，缺席
be anxious about/for 忧虑，担心
be appropriate for/to 适当，合适
be ashamed of 羞愧，害臊
be aware of 意识到
be bound for 开往……
be capable of 能够
be careful of/about/with 小心，注意
be certain of/about 确信，肯定
be close to 接近，亲近
be conscious of 察觉到，意识到
be content with 满足于
be contrary to 违反
be curious about 好奇，想知道
be equal to 相等，胜任
be equivalent to 等于，相当于
be familiar to sb 为……熟悉
be familiar with sth 熟悉……
be favorable to 支持，赞成……
be fit for 适于
be fond of 喜欢
be free of/from 未受……；免费
be guilty of 有……之罪
be impatient at sth 对……不耐烦
be invisible to 不可见的
be liable for 对……有责任
be loyal to 忠于
be mad at/with sb. 生气，愤怒
be opposite to 在对面
be particular about 挑剔，讲究
be relative to 与……有关
be rich in 富于
be responsible for 对……负责
be sensitive to 对……敏感
be short of 缺少
be skilled at/in 善于
be sufficient for 足够的
be subject to/for 受制于，易于
be superior to 优于，级别高于
be suitable for/ to 适合于
be tired of 对……不再感兴趣
be uncertain of/about 不确知
be absorbed in 专心致志于
be accustomed to 习惯于
be acquainted with 开始了解；开始认识
be aware of 知道，意识到
be to blame 该受责备；应该负责
be busy with 忙于
be all ears 全神贯注地倾听者
be full of 充满
be in the habit of 有……习惯
be hard up 短缺，在急需中
be inferior to（质量等）比……差
be keen about 喜爱，对……着迷
be keen on 喜爱，渴望

be known as 以……知名；被认为是
be known for 因……而众所周知
be known to 为……所知
be located in 位于……，坐落于

二、动词短语

（1）**blow**：
blow out 吹熄（灯火等）
（2）**break**：★
break away 突然离开；逃跑；脱身
break down 打破；发生事故；中止
break in 训练；强行进入；打断
break into 破门而入，突然……起来
break off（使）折断；中断；断绝
break out（战争等）爆发；逃出
break through 突破，冲垮，突围
break up 打碎；（关系）破裂
（3）**bring**：★
bring into effect 实行，实现，实施
bring about 带来；使（船）掉过头来
bring back 带回来；使恢复
bring down 降低（温度等）；使倒下
bring forward 提出（建议等）；显示
bring in 收获（庄稼等）；生产
bring out 使……显示出来；公布
bring together 使……团结起来
bring up 教育；提出（供讨论等）
（4）**build**：
build up 树立；逐步建立；增大
（5）**burn**：
burn out 烧坏；烧尽；筋疲力尽
burn up（炉火等）烧旺起来
（6）**burst**：
burst into laughter 突然笑起来
burst out laughing 突然笑起来
（7）**call**：★
call back 叫回来，收回（错话等）
call for 需求，需要；提倡
call in 收回（某物）
call off 取消
call on 访问；号召，呼吁
call up 征召（服役），动员
（8）**can**：
cannot but 不得不，不会不
cannot help 不得不；忍不住
cannot…too…越……越好，再……也不过分
（9）**take**：★
take care 当心，注意
take care of 爱护，照顾，照料
take a chance 冒险，投机
take effect（药等）见效
take one’s chance 碰运气，听任命运
take charge of 掌管，负责，看管
（10）**carry**：★
carry back 运回；使回想起
carry off 拿走，夺去……的生命
carry on 继续开展，进行下去
carry out 进行（到底），开展
carry through 进行（到底）；贯彻
（11）**catch**：
catch on 理解，明白；变得流行
catch up with 赶上
（12）**check**：
check in 办理登记手续；报到
check out 结账后离开；检验合格
（13）**cheer**：
cheer up 使高兴，使高兴起来
（14）**clear**：
clear away 把……清除掉；（云）消失
clear off 消除，摆脱（负担等）

clear out 把……清出（或出空）

clear up 消除（误会等）；整理

（15）close：

close about 围住，包围

close down（工厂等）关闭，倒闭

close in 包围；迫近；渐短

close up 关闭；堵塞；靠近

（16）come：★

come to a close 结束，中止

come about 发生；（风等）改变方向

come across 偶遇

come at 袭击；达到；得到

come down 败落；倒塌

come into 进入，得到

come off（计划等）实现；举行

come on（劝说等）来吧，开始

come out 出版；说明；显现

come round（非正式的）来访；绕道

come through 经历（困难）；获得成功

come to 苏醒；共计；达到

come to terms with 达成协议；妥协；让步

come true 实现，达到

come up 走进；（从土中）长出

come up against 碰到（困难、反对等）

come up to 达到；符合

come up with 追上，赶上；提出

（17）consist：

consist in 在于，存在于

consist of 由……构成，包含有

（18）consult：

consult with 与……商量（协商）

（19）contribute：

contribute to 有助于……，促成

（20）cope：

cope with 对付……，妥协处理

（21）cry：

cry for 哭着要；恳求

cry off 取消（买卖、契约等）

cry out 大声呼喊；大声抱怨

（22）cut：★

cut across 抄近路穿过

cut back 修剪（树枝等）；削减

cut down 砍倒；消减；缩短

cut in（汽车）超车；抢挡；插嘴，插入

cut into 侵犯（利益等）；削减

cut off 切掉；切断；阻隔

cut out 切掉；删掉；停止

cut through（抄近路）穿过；穿透

cut up 切碎，齐根切掉

（23）draw：

draw in 引诱；（火车，汽车）进站；接近黄昏；把……拉进去

draw a conclusion 得出结论

draw away 拉开；引开；离开

draw back 收回（已付关税等）

draw into 使卷入

draw to a close 结束；终结

draw up 起草，制订

（24）deal：

deal in 经营

deal out 分配，分给

deal with 做买卖；处理；安排

（25）decide：

decide for 做对……有利的决定

decide on 选定，决定

（26）devote：

devote oneself to 献身于；致力于

（27）die：

die away 变弱；逐渐平息

die for 渴望，切望

die from 由于……而死，因……致死

die of illness 病死

die out 消失，灭绝，熄灭

（28）make：★

make a deal with 与……做买卖；和……妥协
make a difference 有影响，有关系
make no difference 没有影响，都一样
（29）dig：
dig down 挖下去；掘倒
dig in 掘土以掺进（肥料等）
dig out 掘出；挖掉
dig up 掘起；挖出
dig into 浸一浸；掏；翻阅一下
（30）do：
do away with 废除，去掉；弄死
do sb good 对某人有益处
do one’s best 尽力，尽最大努力
do one’s bit 尽一份力
do up 维修；使整洁；包扎
do with 与…相处；忍受；对付
do wrong 做错；作恶，犯罪
（31）drop：
drop by 顺便走访，非正式访问
drop off 睡着；（让……）下车
drop out 退出，退学；掉落
drop over 顺便来访
（32）end：
end in 以……结束
end off 结束
end up 结束，告终，竖着
end up with 以……而结束
（33）fall：★
fall back on 求助于，转而依靠
fall behind 落在……后面，跟不上
fall in love with sb. 爱上某人
fall in with 偶尔遇到；同意；赞许
fall into 落入；陷于；河流注入
（34）feed：
feed on 以……为食物
feed up 供给…营养
feed with 加上（油、煤等）
（35）figure：
figure on 把……估计在内；指望
figure out 计算出；估计；理解
figure up 计算……，把……总加起来
（36）find：
find oneself in…发现自己处于……
find out 查明；找到；发现
（37）fix：
fix one’s eyes on 注意，注视
fix up 修补，修理好，解决
（38）get：★
get across 使通过；使被理解
get along 相处融洽；进展
get along with 与……友好相处；有进展
get away 逃脱；离开；出发
get down 从……下来；下车；写下
get down to 开始认真考虑或对待
get in 收获；收（税等）；抵达
get into 对……发生兴趣；卷入
get out 离去；（消息等）泄露
get out of 逃避；摆脱；改掉
get over 克服（困难等）
get through 到达；完成；接通电话
get up 起床；爬上；达到
（39）give：
give away 泄露（秘密等）；赠送
give back 归还；恢复；后退
give in 屈服；交上去；听任
give off 发出或放出（蒸汽等）
give out 分发；发出（气味等）
give up 放弃；投降；抛弃
give way to 让位于；给……让路
（40）go：★
go about 从事；着手做；闲逛
go after 追逐，追求；设法得到
go ahead 前进，领先；取得进展
go back on 违背，毁（约）

go by 走过，放过；依照

go down 下去；（船等）下沉

go for 为……去；努力获取

go into 进入；投入；调查

go into action 开始行动

go off 离去；去世；被发射

go over 检查；从头至尾温习

go on 继续下去，进行，接近

go up 上升；（物价等）上涨

go with 与……持同一看法；伴随

（41）hand：★

hand down 把……传下来；传给

hand in 交上；递上；交进

hand in hand 手拉手；联合

hand out 分派；把……拿出来

hand over 交出，移交；让与

（42）hear：

hear of 听到，听说

hear from 收到……的来信

（43）head：

head for 朝……方向走去

head on 迎面地，正面地

head up 在……上加盖子

（44）help：

help oneself 自取所需（食物等）

help sb. out 帮助，帮忙

help sb. with sth. 在……帮助某人

（45）hold：

hold back 踌躇，退缩不前，阻止

hold down 压制；抑制（热情等）

hold in 约束，抑制

hold on 握住不放；坚持下去

hold out 伸出；坚持；支持

hold up 举起；耽搁；抢劫

（46）interfere：

interfere in 干涉，干预

interfere with 打扰（某人），妨碍

（47）join：

join hands with 互相合作，携起手来

join in 参加（活动）

join up 参军，入伍；联合起来

（48）keep：

keep away 站开；使离开

keep back 留在后面；阻止；隐瞒

keep company with 和……交往

keep down 控制；压服；缩减开支

keep from 阻止；使免于；隐瞒

keep in mind 记住

keep off 避开；不让……接近

keep on 继续进行；反复去做

keep out of 躲开；（使）置身之外

keep up 继续；坚持；维持

keep up with 跟上，不落后

（49）knee：

bend one’s knee to 向……跪下，屈服于

drop to one’s knees 跪下

fall on one’s knees 跪下（请求等）

（50）knock：

knock down 撞倒；击落；拆除

knock off 把什么敲掉；击倒；停工

knock out 敲空；（拳击中）击倒

（51）lay：

lay down 放下；铺设（铁路）

lay off 停止；（临时）解雇

lay out 花费；布置；摆开

lay over 涂，覆盖；压倒

lay up 贮存，储蓄；暂停使用

（52）learn：

learn from 学习，向……学习

learn of 听到；获悉……的事

learn off 记熟，背下来

（53）leave：

leave alone 不管，不理会；不打扰

leave out 忽略，遗漏；省略

（54）let：
let alone 不干涉；不碰、更不用说
let down 放下；降低；使……失望
let go 放开；释放；发射
let in 让……进入；放……出来
let off 放（炮）；开（枪）；宽恕
let out 放掉（水等）；发出

（55）lie：
lie down 躺下；（故意）躺下不干
lie in 在于；分娩；睡懒觉
lie on 依赖；压迫；折磨（人）

（56）line
line up 排队，使排成一行

（57）live：
live off 住在……之外；靠……生活
live on 靠……生活；以……为食
live out 活过（某一段时间）
live through 经历过；度过；经受住
live up to 无愧于；做到；符合
live with 接受；忍受；承认；与……同居

（58）look：
look after 照顾；目送；负责处理
look at 看着；注视；查看
look back 回顾；回想；停止不前
look down upon 蔑视；看不起
look for 寻找；寻求；指望
look forward to 盼望；期待
look in 顺便看望；顺便访问
look into 观察；调查；窥视
look on 旁观；观看；面向
look out 留神，往外看，照料
look over 从……上面看过去；检查
look round 掉头看；观光；察看
look through（从头到尾）浏览；温习
look up 向上看；查出
look up to sb. 尊敬，敬仰

（59）make：
make up of 由……组成，由……构成
make away（急忙）离去；逃跑
make away with 携……而逃；摧毁；浪费
make fun of 嘲笑；开……玩笑
make off with 携……而逃
make out of 用……制造出；理解
make up 拼凑；组成；补偿
make up for 补偿，弥补

（60）mark：
mark time 原地踏步，停止不前
mark out for 使……注定要
mark out 划分出；规划
mark off 划分出

Part Two

Grammar

语法

格言

Sleep now, dream will come out; Study now, dream will come true.

此刻打盹，你会做梦；此刻学习，梦想成真。

考点分析

第一章　名词

第一节　考点分析

名词按照数来分，可分为可数名词与不可数名词。

考点1

1. 可数名词

单数可数名词做主语，谓语动词用单数。

复数可数名词做主语，谓语动词用复数。

注：单数可数名词不可单独使用，需在前面加 a，an，the，my 等。

2. 单数变复数原则

（1）一般直接加-s　books，caps…

（2）以-s，-x，-ch，-sh 结尾的名词，在词尾加-es

glasses，boxes，watches，brushes…

（3）以辅音字母加-y 结尾，把-y 变-ies

stories，countries…

（4）以字母-o 结尾时，一般加-s

piano→pianos 钢琴
bamboo→bamboos 竹
studio→studios 工作室
photo→photos 相片
radio→radios 收音机
cuckoo→cuckoos 杜鹃

但下面几个特殊词后加-es

tomato→tomatoes 西红柿
potato→potatoes 土豆
hero→heroes 英雄
Negro→Negroes 黑人

（5）以-f，-fe 结尾时，先把-f，-fe 变为 v，再加-es

leaf→leaves 树叶
knife→knives 刀
half→halves 半
life→lives 生命
shelf→shelves 架
thief→thieves 贼

注意：个别只加-s。

roof→roofs 屋顶

gulf→gulfs 海湾

proof→proofs 证据

belief→beliefs 信念

chief→chiefs 酋长

handkerchief→handkerchiefs 手帕

（6）复合名词的复数形式多在主体名词上变化

shopkeeper→shopkeepers 店主

classroom→classrooms 教室

son-in-law→sons-in-law 女婿

looker-on→lookers-on 旁观者

passer-by→passers-by 过客

editor-in-chief→editors-in-chief 总编

comrade-in-arms→comrades-in-arms 战友

good-for-nothing→good-for-nothings 无用的人

（7）不规则复数形式的构成。有很多名词的复数形式是不规则的。有些名词以改变元音的方法变为复数，有些辅音也有变化。

man→men 男人

woman→women 女人

foot→feet 脚

tooth→teeth 牙

mouse→mice 鼠

goose→geese 鹅

ox→oxen 公牛

child→children 儿童

phenomenon→phenomena 现象

crisis→crises 危机

（8）单数和复数为同一形式

deer，fish，sheep，means，Japanese，Swiss，Chinese，aircraft，works（工厂），crossroads（十字路），series（系列），species（种类）等名词单复数同形。

sheep→ two sheep 绵羊

fish→ two fish 鱼

Chinese→ two Chinese 中国人

Japanese→ two Japanese 日本人

Swiss→ two Swiss 瑞士人

a deer→two deer 鹿

考点2 不可数名词

1. 无单复数变化。

2. 做主语时，谓语动词用单数。

3. 常见的不可数名词：bread，weather，water，advice，information，furniture，fun 等。

4. 既可数，又不可数的名词

paper	[C] 报纸，论文	room	[C] 房间	work	[C] 作品
	[U] 纸张		[U] 空间		[U] 工作
hair	[C]（几根）头发	time	[C] 次数	experience	[C] 经历
	[U] 整头头发，发型		[U] 时间		[U] 经验
chicken	[C] 小鸡	orange	[C] 橙子	glass	[C] 玻璃杯
	[U] 鸡肉		[U] 橙汁		[U] 玻璃

考点3 名词所有格

名词所有格表示所属关系。有’s 所有格和 of 所有格两种。

1. ’s 所有格

（1）表示有生命的东西的名词所有格在名词末尾加上’s。

the teacher’s house 教师的家

the People’s Republic 人民共和国

the Women’s Society 妇女社团

children’s toys 儿童玩具

Charlie Champlin’s films 查理·卓别林的电影

（2）词尾是-s 或-es 的复数名词末尾只加’。

the boys’ house 男孩们的房子

the soldiers’ horses 士兵们的马

the students’ textbooks 学生们的课本

April Fools’ Day 愚人节

注意：在某些以-s 结尾的专有名词后，也只加 ’。

James’ eyes 詹姆斯的眼睛

Engels’ praise 恩格斯的赞扬

（3）如果某物为两人共有，则只在后一个名词的词尾加’s；如果表示各自所有关系时，则各个名词词尾都加’s。

my father and mother’s friend 我爸妈的朋友

his father-in-law’s new car 他岳父的新车

my father’s and mother’s friends 爸爸的朋友们和妈妈的朋友们（分别所有）

（4）不以-s 结尾的复数名词加’s。

women’s dress 妇女的衣服

men’s work 男人的工作

the children’s room 孩子的房间

（5）表示时间、距离、重量、地方等无生命的名词，也可以用’s 或 s’构成所有关系。

a few days’ time 几天的时间

a week’s holiday 一周的假期

today’s newspaper 今天的报纸

ten minutes’ ride 乘车十分钟的路程

one pound’s weight 一磅的重量

2. of 所有格

（1）of 所有格是以“of+名词”构成的一种词组形式，主要用于表示无生命东西的名词，表示所有关系。形式：B of A 译为“A 的 B”。

the windows of the classroom 教室的窗户

the colors of the flowers 鲜花的颜色

the foot of the mountain 山脚

the noise of the tractors 拖拉机的噪音

（2）表示有生命东西的名词，也可用 of 所有格表示所有关系，或者表示主谓关系、动宾关系或事物的来源等。

the death of Stalin 斯大林的逝世

the arrival of the chairman 主席的到来

the laws of Newton 牛顿定律

3. 双重所有格

’s 所有格和 of 所有格结合在一起表示所属关系，叫作“双重所有格”，有两种形式：

（1）of+名词所有格

He is a friend of my brother’s. 他是我弟弟的一位朋友。

（2）of+名词性物主代词

I’m staying with a friend of mine. 我打算和我的一位朋友住在一起。

第二节　能力拓展

1. All the ________ have three ________ each.

A. hero；photo　　B. heros；photos　　C. heroes；photoes　　D. heroes；photos

2. A group of ________ are eating ________ and ________ at the foot of the hill.

A. sheep；grass；leaves　　B. sheeps；grasses；leaves

C. sheep；grass；leaf　　D. sheeps；grass；leafs

3. All the ________ are made of ________，not plastics.

A. glass；glass　　B. glasses；glass　　C. glass；glasses　　D. glasses；glasses

4. ________ fish are there in that bowl？

A. How much　　B. How many

C. Do you know how much　　D. What 's the number of

5. ________ is needed in cold countries.

A. A lot of clothes　　B. Much clothing

C. Many a cloth　　D. Lots of clothes

6. I tried every ________ to make him give up smoking，but failed.

A. mean　　B. way　　C. meaning　　D. means

7. ________ are sold in the new store.

A. Man and child's shoes　　B. Men's and children's shoes

C. Men and children shoes　　D. Men's and child's shoes

8. They are ________ in name，but they are no longer in practice.

A. woman doctors　　B. women doctors　　C. women doctor　　D. ladies doctors

9. Julie went to the ________ to buy a pair of shoes.

A. shoes store　　B. shoe store　　C. shoe's store　　D. shoes'store

10. —What would you like to drink?

—I'll have ________，please.

A. a coffee cup　　B. small coffee　　C. a little coffee　　D. a cup coffee

11. In Britain ________ are all painted red.

A. letter boxes　　B. letters boxes　　C. letter box　　D. letters box

12. Biology is ________.

A. science of life　　B. science of the life

C. the science of the life　　D. the science of life

13. I'll give you ________ to finish it.

A. two-weeks time　　B. two weeks time　　C. two weeks' time　　D. two week's time

14. ________ is more useful than gold.

A. Irons　　B. Iron　　C. An iron　　D. The iron

15. ________ are a hardworking people.

A. The Germany B. The German C. The Germans D. The Germen

16. Mike and John's ________ .

A. father is a teacher B. fathers are teachers C. father are teachers D. fathers are teacher

17. How many ________ do you want?

A. bread B. breads C. piece of bread D. pieces of bread

18. Miss Smith is a friend of ________ .

A. Mary's mother's B. Mary's mother C. mother's of Mary D. Mary mother

19. If these trousers are too big，buy a smaller ________ .

A. set B. one C. copy D. pair

20. The number of people invited ________ fifty，but a number of them ________ absent for different reasons.

A. were；was B. was ； was C. was ； were D. were；were

21. Mathematics ________the language of science. （2018. 3）

A. is B. has been C. are D. have been

第二章　冠　　词

第一节　考点分析

冠词是一种虚词，一般位于名词前，起限定说明的作用，不能单独使用。冠词有两种：定冠词（the）和不定冠词（a/an）。不用冠词的情况又叫零冠词。

考点1　不定冠词（a/an）的用法

1. a 用在以辅音发音开头的单词前，an 用在以元音发音开头的单词前；如：a teacher/university/European，an hour/example/umbrella.

2. 不定冠词用于第一次提到某人或某事物时，表类别，指某一类人或事物中的一个 .

3. 不定冠词用于单数可数名词前，泛指一类人或事物，相当于 any.

4. 不定冠词用于姓氏前，表“某一个”，相当于 a certain.

5. 固定搭配：a few，a little，a lot of.

【例】I found her sitting in the corner，reading ________ newspaper，with ________ in her eyes.（2012）

A. a；tear　　B. a piece；tears　　C. a；tears　　D. a piece of；tear

【解析】C. 本题考查冠词用法。第一个空，泛指一份报纸，用不定冠词，newspaper 报纸，是可数名词，所以填 a；第二个空，眼泪一般用复数 tears。所以正确答案为 C。

【翻译】我发现她坐在角落里，流着眼泪看报纸。

考点2　定冠词（the）的用法

1. 定冠词用于单数可数名词前，或与形容词连用，特指一类人或事物；如：the poor.

2. 定冠词用于姓氏复数名词前，表一家人；如：the Whites.

3. 定冠词可用于乐器，序数词以及形容词、副词最高级前；如：the first/ piano/best.

4. 定冠词用在世界上独一无二的事物前 the sun/moon/earth.

5. 定冠词可放在江、河、湖、海、山、杂志、报纸等专有名词前；如：the Atlantic 大西洋。

【例】________ idea of Tom’s sounds much better than Mary’s.

A. The　　B. A　　C. An　　D. /

【解析】A. 本题考查冠词用法。特指某人的主意，用定冠词 the。所以正确答案为 A。

【翻译】Tom 的主意听起来比 Mary 的好多了。

考点3 零冠词的几种情况

1. 国名，人名前不加冠词.

2. 物质名词表一般概念时一般不加冠词，表特定含义时加定冠词.

3. 抽象名词表一般概念时一般不加冠词.

4. 季节、月份、节日、日期、星期等时间名词前不加冠词.

5. 称呼、官衔、职位等名词前不加冠词.

6. 三餐、球类运动、交通工具、通信手段等名词前不加冠词.

7. 两个或以上名词并用时常不加冠词.

8. 序数词前有物主代词时，做副词时前面不加冠词.

9. 固定搭配中：at first，arm in arm，by chance.

【例】When he left ________ college，he got a job as ________ reporter in a newspaper office.

A. /；a　　B. /；the　　C. a；the　　D. the；the

【解析】A. 本题考查冠词用法。首先 leave college 表示大学毕业，leave the college 特指离开某具体大学，leave a college 泛指离开某地；第二个空，含有“一个”的概念，且 reporter 以辅音发音开头，填 a。所以正确答案为 A。

【翻译】当他大学毕业以后，他在一个新闻工作室找了一份记者的工作。

考点4

1. 两个名词前都有冠词，表两个不同的人或事；后一个名词前无冠词，则表示一人或一物。

2. 不定冠词位置。

（1）当名词前的形容词被副词 as，so，too，how，however，enough 修饰时，不定冠词放形容词后面；如：so short a time 如此短的时间。

（2）quite，rather 与单数名词连用时，冠词放后面；当前面仍有形容词时，前后均可；如：rather a cold day 或 a rather cold day 这么冷的天。

（3）在 as，though 引导的让步状语从句中，通常用于“adj/adv/v/n＋as＋主＋谓”的结构；如：Brave as he is，he trembles at the sight of snakes. 尽管他很勇敢，可他见到蛇还是会发抖。

3. 定冠词通常位于名词或名词修饰语前，但放在 all，both，double，half，twice，three times 等词之后，名词之前。

【例】All the students in the class went out. 班里的所有学生都出去了。

4. 序数词前一般加定冠词 the 表示顺序，但序数词前加不定冠词 a（n），表示“另一个；又一个”。

【例】________ singer and dancer is coming.

A. The　　B. A　　C. An　　D. /

【解析】A. 本题考查冠词用法。特指一个人用定冠词 the，所以正确答案为 A。

【翻译】这个既是歌手又是舞者的人来了。

第二节　能力拓展

1. If we expect ________ much cleaner world，we should attract ________ world's attention to protecting the world.

A. a；a　　B. a；/　　C. a；the　　D. the；/

2. First impressions are the most lasting. After all，you never get ________ second chance to make ________ first impression.

A. a；the　　B. the；the　　C. a；a　　D. the；a

3. There are over 58，000 rocky objects in ________ space，about 900 of which could fall down onto ________ earth.

A. the；the　　B. /；the　　C. the；/　　D. a；the

4. During the camp trip，children were fascinated by ________ wonders of ________ nature.

A. /；/　　B. /；the　　C. the；/　　D. the；the

5. It is clear that ________ little money the invention will bring him can hardly support so large ________ company.

A. /；the　　B. a；the　　C. a；/　　D. the；a

6. Washing machines made by China have won ________ worldwide attention and Haier has become ________ popular name.

A. a；the　　B. /；a　　C. /；the　　D. the；a

7. The chairman will be pleased at ________ scene that everything is in ________ place.

A. a；a　　B. the；the　　C. the；/　　D. /；the

8. —What do you think about ________ dress in the shop window?

—Oh，it's beautiful. You may give it to Linda as ________ birthday present.

A. a；a　　B. the；a　　C. a；the　　D. the；the

9. In ________ most countries，a university degree can give you ________ flying start in life.

A. the；a　　B. the；/　　C. /；/　　D. /；a

10. What ________ pity that you could not be there to receive ________ prize!

A. a；a　　B. the；a　　C. a；the　　D. the；the

第三章　数　　词

第一节　考点分析

一、基数词

考点1

基数词如：ten，hundred，thousand，million，dozen 等与确切数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”．

【例】eight hundred students 800 个学生；three million workers 300 万名工人

但在表示概数时，如“成千上万”等，基数词要加“s”，且与 of 连用。

【例】hundreds of birds 数百只鸟；dozens of eggs 几打鸡蛋

考点2

基数词可以表示书页，房间，邮政编码，住所等的编号。

【例】Page 10 第十页；Bus 906 第 906 路公交汽车

考点3

表示几十岁，用“in＋one’s＋数词复数”

【例】He was already in his forties. 他已经四十多岁了。

考点4

表示“年代”，用“in＋the＋年份复数”

【例】in the 1940s 在 20 世纪 40 年代

二、序数词

考点1　**序数词的形式**

序数词中除了前三个（first，second，third）形式特殊外，其余序数词都有变化规则，多数以

th 结尾，如：fifth，eighth，ninth，twelfth 等。以-ty 结尾的基数词变成序数词时，需将 y 变成 i 再加-eth。如：twentieth，thirtieth 等。两位数的基数词变成序数词时，只需将个位数变成序数词，十位数不变。如：twenty-one～twenty-first。

考点2 序数词的缩写形式

【例】first～1st，second～2nd，third～3rd，thirty-first～31st，eightieth～80th 等。

考点3 分数表达法的构成

基数词代表分子，序数词代表分母。分子大于 1 时，分母序数词用复数。

【例】one-third，$\frac{1}{3}$；three-sevenths，$\frac{3}{7}$

【例】________ of the land in that district ________ covered with trees and grass.（2011）

A. Two fifth…is　B. Two fifths…are　C. Two fifth…are　D. Two fifths…is

【解析】D. 此题考查分数表达法，当分子大于 1 时，分母要用复数，排除 A，C 选项，分数加 of 修饰名词时，谓语动词要与名词的数保持一致，谓语动词要用单数。

【翻译】这个区域的土地的$\frac{2}{5}$被树和草覆盖。

三、倍数表达法

考点1 倍数表达法

1. 主语＋谓语＋倍数＋as＋adj. /adv. 原级＋as

【例】He is three times as tall as you. 他有你三倍那么高。

2. 主语＋谓语＋倍数＋the size（amount，length…）of…

【例】The earth is 49 times the size of the moon. 地球是月球的 49 倍。

3. 主语＋谓语＋倍数＋形容词（副词）比较级＋than…

【例】The grain output is 8 percent higher this year than that of last year. 今年比去年的粮食产量增加 8%。

4. 还可以用 by＋倍数，表示增加多少倍。

【例】The production of grain has been increased by four times this year. 今年粮食的产量增加了 4 倍。

【例】Staying in a hotel costs ________ renting a room in an apartment for a week.（2006）

A. twice as more as　B. as more twice as　C. twice as much as　D. as much twice as

【解析】C. 此题考查倍数表达法，倍数应该放在 as…as 的前面，且 as…as 中间用形容词或副词原级。

【翻译】住一周旅馆的花费是租一周公寓的花费的两倍。

第二节　真题演练

1. It is very convenient for me to go to work every day because the bus runs ________.（2005）

A. every-ten-minute　　B. every tenth minute

C. every tenth minutes　　D. every ten minute

2. There are fifty-five students applying for the position，________ are girls.（2005）

A. two-third of whom　　B. second-thirds of them

C. second-threes of whom　　D. two-thirds of whom

3. The new campus is ________ as the old one.（2007）

A. twice as big　　B. as twice big　　C. twice big　　D. big as twice

4. The new model costs twice ________ last year's.（2008）

A. more than　　B. as much as　　C. as many as　　D. than

5. My daughter and I took a ________ tour around New York City.（2009）

A. two day　　B. two day's　　C. two-days　　D. two-day

6. John is ________ the age of Mary.（2011）

A. old　　B. twice　　C. double　　D. as old as

第三节　能力拓展

1. He failed once. Then he tried ________ time.

A. two　　B. the second　　C. a second　　D. seconds

2. About ________ of the workers in that steel works are young people.

A. third fifths　　B. three fives　　C. three fifths　　D. three fifth

3. There are ________ days in a year.

A. three hundreds sixty-five　　B. three hundreds and sixty-five

C. three hundred and sixty-five　　D. three hundred and sixty five

4. There are ________ students in this school.

A. eight hundreds and forty-six　　B. eight hundred and forty six

C. eight hundred and forty-six　　D. eight hundred forty-six

5. ________ people visit this museum every day.

A. Hundred　　B. Hundreds　　C. Hundred of　　D. Hundreds of

6. There are two ________ people in the meeting room.

A. hundred　　B. hundreds　　C. hundreds of　　D. hundred of

7. There are ________ months in a year. December is the ________ month of the year.

A. twelve；twelve　　B. twelve；twelfth　　C. twelfth；twelve　　D. twelve；twelveth

8. Now let me have ________ .

A. the third try　B. a third try　C. third try　D. this third try

9. Two ________ died of cold last winter.

A. hundreds old peoples　B. hundred old people

C. hundreds old people　D. hundred old peoples

10. The hero of the story is an artist in his ________ .

A. thirtieth　B. thirty　C. thirty's　D. thirties

11. In ________ Marx began to learn Russian.

A. the 1870s　B. 1870's　C. 1870s　D. his 1870's

12. Shortly after the accident, ________ policemen were sent to the spot to keep order.

A. dozens of　B. dozens　C. dozen of　D. dozen

13. ________ of the students in our class are from the north.

A. Two nineth　B. Two ninth　C. Two ninths　D. Two nineths

14. In Pisa, there is ________ leaning tower.

A. an 180-foot-high　B. a 180-feet-high　C. a 180-foot-high　D. an 180-feet-high

15. He was only in ________ at the time.

A. his 20's　B. the 20's　C. his twenties　D. the twenties

16. The two great men wrote those letters in ________ .

A. 1870's　B. 1870s　C. the 1870　D. the 1870s

17. I wonder if I can ask him ________ time.

A. four　B. fourth　C. the fourth　D. a fourth

18. He came out ________ in the track events.

A. first　B. one　C. the first　D. the one

19. You'll have to spend ________ writing your report here.

A. one day or two days　B. one day or two

C. a day or two　D. two days or one

20. Every year, ________books are given away to the poor children in the countryside.

A. thousand　B. thousands of　C. thousand of　D. thousands

21. The earth is nearly ________ the moon.

A. 50 time the size of　B. 50 times the size of　C. 50 times as size as　D. 50 times as that of

22. ________ of the population here are peasants.

A. 20 percents　B. 20 percent　C. the 20 percent　D. the 20 percents

23. They sold ________ boxes of such sweets last week.

A. four dozen　B. four dozens　C. four dozens of　D. four dozen of

24. It took me ________ days to finish drawing a beautiful horse.

A. a half dozen　B. half a dozen　C. half dozens　D. half dozen

25. ________ people were sent there to help fight against the flood.

A. Three scores of　B. Three score of　C. Three score　D. Three scores

26. He has ________ books in his study.

A. several thousands B. some thousands of C. some thousands D. some thousand of

27. On National Day ________ people take part in all kinds of celebration.

A. hundreds of millions of B. millions of hundred of

C. hundreds millions of D. millions hundreds of

28. It's ________ walk from here to my school.

A. two-hours B. two hours C. two-hour D. a two-hour

29. He went to the market and bought ________ eggs and some meat.

A. three dozen of B. three dozen C. three dozens D. three dozens of

30. Shortly after the accident two ________ police were sent to the spot to keep order.

A. dozen of B. dozens C. dozen D. dozens of

31. We have been there for ________times. （2018. 4）

A. hundred of B. hundreds C. hundreds of D. hundred

第四章　形容词和副词

第一节　考点分析

考点1　多个形容词排序

排序原则：县官行令色国材

“县”即限定词，如 these、those、this、that、a、an、the、some、many 等；

“官”表示观点的形容词，如 beautiful，bad，cold 等；

“行”表示大小、长短、高低、形状的形容词，如 round，square 等；

“令”表示年龄、新旧的形容词，如 new、old、twenty years old 等；

“色”表示颜色的形容词，如 blue、green、black、red 等；

“国”表示国籍或地区的形容词，如 Japanese、Chinese、British 等；

“材”表示材料的形容词，如 wooden，woolen，stone，silk 等；

例：some beautiful little red flowers　一些美丽的小红花

a high red brick wall　一堵高高的红砖墙

a beautiful white Japanese military jeep　一辆漂亮的白色日本军用吉普车

【例】That ________ lady is their English teacher.（2011）

A. young beautiful foreign　　B. beautiful young foreign

C. young foreign beautiful　　D. foreign young beautiful

【解析】B. beautiful 属于“官”，主观评价，young 属于“令”，foreign 属于“国”，因此答案为 B。

【翻译】那个年轻漂亮的外国女士是他们的英语老师。

考点2　形容词/副词的原级

1. A＋谓＋as＋原级＋as＋B 表示“A 和 B 一样……”

【例】This girl is as beautiful as that one. 这个女孩和那个女孩一样漂亮。

2. A＋谓（否定）＋as/so＋原级＋as＋B 表示“A 和 B 一样不……”“A 不如 B……”

【例】You don’t eat so much as I. 你吃的和我不一样多。

3. 当 as…as 中间有名词时采用以下形式：①as＋adj＋a/an＋名词单数＋as；②as＋many＋名词复数＋as；③as＋much＋名词不可数＋as。

【例】Lucy is as good a teacher as Tom. 露西和汤姆都是好老师。

I can carry as much paper as you can. 你能搬多少纸，我也能。

4. too＋形容词/副词＋to do“太……而不能……”

形容词/副词＋enough＋to do“足够……能够……”

【例】He is ________ join the army. （2010）

A. too young to　　B. enough young to　　C. very young to　　D. young enough to

【解析】A. 固定句型。

【翻译】他太年轻了而不能参军。

考点3　形容词/副词的比较级

基本形式：比较级＋than。可用程度副词 a little，a bit，much，rather，far，even，still，any 修饰比较级。

【例】I have more apples than you. 我的苹果比你的多。

Lucy is much older than Lily. 露西比莉莉大得多。

【例】He speaks English ________ better than I. （2007）

A. very　　B. much　　C. too　　D. to

【解析】B. much 修饰比较级。

【翻译】他说英语比我说的好。

1. “比较级 and 比较级”表示“越来越……”

【例】Our city is becoming more and more beautiful.

我们的城市变得越来越美丽了。

注意：多音节词用此结构时应为 more and more＋形、副

2. “the 比较级，the 比较级”“越……，越……”。

【例】The more careful you are，the fewer mistakes you’ll make.

你越认真，犯的错误越少。

【例】The higher you stand，________ . （2004）

A. the farther you can see　　B. you can see father

C. the more farther you can see　　D. the farther can you see

【解析】A. 固定句型，the＋比较级，the＋比较级。far 的比较级 farther，不用加 more，因此选 A。

【翻译】你站得越高，也就看得越远。

3. 比较级的特殊用法：

more A than B＝less B than A 与其说 B 不如说 A。

（A，B 是形容词）

【例】He is more lazy than slow at his work. 他工作时，与其说是反应慢不如说是懒。

more of A than B＝less of B than A 与其说 B 不如说 A。

（A，B 是名词）

【例】Jack is more of a writer than an actor. 与其说杰克是演员不如说是作家。

【例】Between you and me that boy of Mary's was ________.（2004）

A. as fat as strong　　B. fatter than stronger

C. more fat than strong　　D. not so fat as strong

【解析】C. 固定句型。more A than B。

【翻译】咱俩私下说，玛丽的孩子与其说壮，倒不如说胖。

4. 用 the last 表示“最不可能的”、“最不适合的”、“最不希望的”等。

【例】The last thing I want to do is to offend you.

我最不愿意做的就是惹你生气。

He is the last man I want to see.

他是我最不希望见的人。

考点4　形容词/副词的最高级

常与表范围的 in，of，among 短语连用，最高级前要有 the 表示特指，但最高级为副词时，the 可省略。

【例】Shanghai is the biggest city in China.

上海是中国最大的城市。

He runs fastest in our class.

在我们班他跑的最快。

注意：句型一：one of the＋最高级/序数词＋n.（复数）表示“最……之一”

【例】He is one of the greatest writers in China.

句型二：the＋最高级＋单数名词＋in/of 短语表示“……中最……的”。

【例】Tom is the tallest student in his class/of all the students.

汤姆是他们班上/所有学生当中最高的。

第二节　真题演练

1. Mary said it was ________ box for me to carry.（2006）

A. a too heavy　　B. too a heavy　　C. too heavy a　　D. too heavy

2. The large passenger jets have made the traffic problems ________ at airports.（2008）

A. the worse than before　　B. worse than ever before

C. more bad as before　　D. more bad than it was

3. The more he tried to please her, ________ she seemed to appreciate it.（2010）

A. less　　B. lesser　　C. the less　　D. the lesser

4. Susan is ________ to lift the heavy box.（2011）

A. strong　　B. enough strong　　C. strong enough　　D. strong too

5. He knows little of Maths, and ________ of chemistry.（2011）

A. much less　　B. much more　　C. even more　　D. still more

6. The actress is not so beautiful ________the local newspaper described. （2020）

A. that B. which C. as D. so

第三节 能力拓展

1. I didn’t even speak to him， ________ discuss your problems with him.

A. much more B. less C. more D. much less

2. — How large is your city?

— It’s ________ yours.

A. larger three times than B. larger than three times

C. as three times large as D. three times as large as

3. — Is Mr. White out of danger?

— No， ________ than before，I’m afraid.

A. no better B. a little better C. not worse D. no worse

4. Mary’s biology is ________ than ________ in the class.

A. a lot of better；anyone else’s B. far better；anyone’s else’s

C. much better；anyone else D. a lot better；anyone else’s

5. —The disease he suffers is not easy to cure.

— I know，but is he ________ better?

A. much B. rather C. any D. little

6. He is more diligent than ________ in his class.

A. all the students B. anyone C. any other student D. everyone

7. There was a ________ change in the weather，and the rain came pouring down.

A. quick B. slow C. fast D. sudden

8. Tom will not be at the picnic， ________ to the family’s disappointment.

A. much B. more C. too much D. much more

9. — I have seen so little of Mike ________ . Is he away on business?

— Oh，no. He just leaves for his office early and comes back very ________ .

A. later；lately B. later；later C. lately；late D. late；lately

10. From his ________ voice on the phone I know everything is well under way.

A. satisfactory B. satisfying C. satisfied D. satisfaction

11. — He is ________ a brave man.

— We can’t admire his courage ________ .

A. actually；very much B. indeed；too a lot

C. really；too much D. truly；a bit

12. The Education Minister suggests teachers should receive ________ education to catch up with the ________ development.

A. farther；late B. farther；later

C. further；lately D. further；latest

13. — Why did she spend so much time searching shop after shop only for a blouse?

— Oh，she was very ________ about her clothes.

A. pleased B. particular C. worried D. curious

14. His voice was quite ordinary，and not ________ angry.

A. a little B. very much C. a bit D. plenty of

15. Oh，boy，why are you killing your time this way? Can't you find something else ________ doing at all?

A. useful B. valuable C. worth D. good

16. — Hi，I hear you're going to World Park this weekend.

— ________，I was going to，but I have changed my plans.

A. Usually B. Finally C. Actually D. Normally

17. — Mum，we've got to be ________ and buy only what we need.

— Oh，I'm glad to hear that.

A. practical B. content C. familiar D. actual

18. Mr. Smith was ________ with the boys who had picked flowers in his garden without his permission.

A. strict B. gentle C. delighted D. cross

19. — If you're free tonight，I'd like to invite you to a football match.

— That's nice of you，but are you ________ ?

A. rich B. careful C. serious D. true

20. Attention please，everybody! Please keep ________ for a moment. And let me take a photo.

A. calm B. still C. silent D. quiet

21. Good ways of doing things mean saving time，and ________ it is important for us to find them.

A. otherwise B. however C. besides D. therefore

22. Fred is second to none in maths in our class，but believe it or not，he ________ passed the last exam.

A. easily B. hardly C. actually D. successfully

23. That night I felt especially tired and went to bed ________ earlier than usual.

A. quite B. rather C. fairly D. so

24. — She seems a ________ waitress.

— Yes，each of us always feels ________ with her good manners and service.

A. pleased；pleased B. pleasant；pleasant

C. pleased；pleasant D. pleasant；pleased

25. Sending short messages by mobile phones has become a ________ way to send festival greet-

ings in recent years in China.

A. welcome B. popular C. general D. simple

26. I think whoever makes ________ contributions to the company than others should get ________ income.

A. greater; the higher B. more greater; a higher

C. greater; a higher D. more greater; the highest

27. While tidying the room, Jim found the ________ toy bought for him as a birthday present.

A. fine plastic small B. plastic fine small

C. small fine plastic D. fine small plastic

28. The number of people present at the concert was ________ than expected. There were many tickets left.

A. much smaller B. much more C. much larger D. many more

29. In ________ Chinese culture, marriage decisions were often made by parents for their children.

A. traditional B. historic C. peaceful D. civil

30. The traffic in the city was ________ today, so I got home earlier than usual.

A. hard B. weak C. heavy D. light

第五章 代词

第一节 考点分析

考点1 人称代词

人称	主格		宾格		形容词性物主代词		名词性物主代词	
	单数	复数	单数	复数	单数	复数	单数	复数
第一人称	I	we	me	us	my	our	mine	ours
第二人称	you	you	you	you	your	your	yours	yours
第三人称	he/she/it	they	him/her/it	them	his/her/ its	their	his/hers/its	theirs

考点2 指示代词

this —— these（复数）

that —— those（复数）

that 可用来指代上文提到的不可数名词。

【例】The weather in Kunming is better than ________ in Zhengzhou.

A. it　B. that　C. one　D. ones

【解析】B. 此空应用来指代前文提到的 weather，而 weather 是不可数名词，只有 that 可用来指代上文提到的不可数名词。

【翻译】昆明的天气比郑州的天气好得多。

考点3 不定代词

1. 常见的不定代词

all，both，every，each，either，neither，more，little，few，much，many，another，other，some，any，one，no，以及 something，anything，everything，somebody，someone，anybody，anyone，nothing，nobody，no one，none，everyone 等。

2. 复合不定代词做主语（something，everything 等），谓语动词用单数。

3. 形容词修饰不定代词，形容词放不定代词之后。

第二节　真题演练

1. He announced that the company had been transferred to ________city.（2016）

A. another　　B. others　　C. the other　　D. one another

2. The pen I am writing my letter with is different from ________.（2003）

A. that one　　B. one　　C. the one　　D. the ones

第三节　能力拓展

1. Could you tell me where you bought your beautiful handbag? I want to buy ________ too.

A. one　　B. that　　C. this　　D. it

2. The cost of renting a house in Beijing is higher than ________ in any other city of China.

A. one　　B. it　　C. that　　D. this

3. My friend's office is closer to the bus stop than ________ .

A. I　　B. me　　C. mine　　D. my

4. There are ________ people in the street because it is very late.

A. a few　　B. few　　C. a little　　D. little

5. His theory is very difficult，but ________ people understand it.

A. a few　　B. few　　C. a little　　D. little

6. It is impossible for so ________ workers to do so ________ work in just one day.

A. few，much　　B. few，many　　C. little，much　　D. little，many

第六章　连　　词

连词是一种虚词，用于连接单词、短语、从句或句子，在句子中不单独用作句子成分。连词按其性质可分为并列连词和从属连词。并列连词用于连接并列的单词、短语、从句或句子，如 and，but，or，for 等；从属连词主要引出名词性从句（主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句等）和状语从句（时间状语从句、条件状语从句、目的状语从句等），引出名词性从句的连词如 that，whether 等，引出状语从句的连词如 when，because，since，if 等。

第一节　考点分析

一、并列连词和连词短语

并列连词用来连接平行的词、词组或从句。常见的连词有 and，but，or，so，both…and，either…or，neither…nor，not only…but also 等。

1. and

（1）and 表示“和、且”在肯定句中连接并列的成分。

【例】He is laughing and talking.

（2）祈使句＋and…，“and”表示“那么”之意。

【例】Study hard and you will succeed. 努力学习，你就会成功。

2. but

表示转折关系的连词，意为“但是”

【例】He is poor，but honest. 他不富有，但很诚实。

3. or

（1）or 有“或”的意思，表示一种选择

【例】Would you like tea or water? 你要喝茶还是白开水？

（2）“祈使句……，or…”or 表示否则。

【例】Study hard，or you will fail. 努力学习吧，否则你将会失败的。

（3）or 用在否定句中表示并列关系

【例】He can’t read or write. 他既不能读也不能写。

4. both

（1）both“两者都”，后面的名词、动词都用复数。

【例】Both the answers are right. 两个答案都是对的。

（2）both of…

【例】Both of us are students. 我们两个都是学生。

（3）both…and…

【例】Both you and she are right. 你和她都是对的。

5. either/ either…or

（1）either“两者当中任何一个”，后有 of 时接名词的复数形式，无 of 时接单数名词，动词用单数形式。

【例】You may wear either of the hats. 你可以戴两顶帽子中的任何一个。

（2）either…or… “不是……就是……，或者……或者……”。

动词与临近的主语保持一致，即“就近原则”。

【例】Either you or he has to go = Either he or you have to go. 要不是你要不是他必须去。

6. neither /neither…nor…

（1）neither“两者当中都不”，后有 of 时接名词的复数形式，无 of 时接单数名词，动词用单数形式。

【例】Neither of the answers is right. 两个答案都不对。

（2）neither…nor… “既不……也不……” 动词与临近的主语保持一致，即“就近原则”。

【例】Neither you nor I am right. = Neither I nor you are right. 我和你都不对。

二、从属连词

从属连词是引导从句的连词。

1. 引导宾语从句的连词

（1）that 连接由陈述句转变而来的宾语从句。

（2）who，whom，what，which，whose，when，where，why，how 连接由特殊疑问句转变而来的宾语从句。

（3）if/ whether 连接由一般疑问句转变而来的宾语从句。

2. 引导状语从句的连词（常见的如下）

（1）时间状语从句：when，before，if，until，as soon as（主将从现）

（2）条件状语从句：if，unless，as long as，in case

（3）原因状语从句：because，for，since，as，now that

（4）地点状语从句：where

（5）结果状语从句：so…that…，such…that…，for fear that，lest，in case

（6）让步状语从句：though /although，as，even though/even if，however，whatever

（7）目的状语从句：so that/in order that

3. 不能同时出现在一个句子中的连词

（1）because，so 不能同时出现在一个句子里，只用其中之一。

【例】Because we are in the same school，~~so~~ I have no trouble in finding him.

（2）though /although，but 不能同时出现在一个句子里，只用其中之一。但 though 可以与

yet，still 同时出现在一个句子中。

【例】Though Australia is very large，but the population is quite small.

4. 用 whether 不用 if 的情况

（1）discuss 和介词后的宾语从句用 whether。

We are discussing ________ we'll hold a meeting.

I'm worried about ________ she can come to the meeting.

（2）和不定式、or not 连用必须用 whether。

I don't know ________ to leave or not.

第二节　能力拓展

1. He is very old，________ he still works very hard.

A. but　B. if　C. when　D. as

2. ________ you are dismissed.

A. Neither you go nor　B. Either you go or　C. Whether you go or　D. Both you go and

3. They had camped once before，________ they knew what to take.

A. because　B. now　C. so　D. since

4. Why these things happened was ________ the driver had been careless.

A. because of　B. owing to　C. due to　D. that

5. Although it's raining，________ are still working in the fields.

A. they　B. but they　C. and they　D. so they

6. ________ we have satisfied you，you have no grounds of complaint.

A. So　B. Since that　C. Now that　D. By now

7. Write clearly ________ your teacher can understand you correctly.

A. since　B. for　C. because　D. so that

8. You'll miss the train ________ you hurry up.

A. unless　B. as　C. if　D. until

9. Francis did the task ________ his brother.

A. as good as　B. as better as　C. as well as　D. as best as

10. The size of the audience，________ we had expected，was well over twenty thousand.

A. as　B. what　C. that　D. whom

11. I thought he hated the TV. You are right，________ he still watches the program.

A. yet　B. besides　C. also　D. then

12. I want to know ________.

A. whom is she looking for　B. whom she is looking

C. whom is she looking　D. whom she is looking for

13. ________ to New York，her father has not heard from her.

A. Because she went B. After she went C. When she went D. Since she went

14. ________ he daydreamed，Peter saw figures in the sky.

A. Despite B. Since C. While D. During

15. We arrived at the station ________ the train had left.

A. after B. before C. since D. when

16. ________ he was in poor health，he worked just as hard as everyone else.

A. But B. Although C. Even if D. If

17. Give me one more minute ________ I'll have finished it.

A. so B. until C. and D. when

18. The worker hunted for jobs in New York for months，________ he could not find any work.

A. and B. yet C. or D. and but

19. Hurry up，________ you'll be late.

A. or B. and C. so D. yet

20. Do not make the same mistake ________ I did.

A. so B. as C. like D. that

21. Don' t talked about such things of ________you are not sure.

A. which B. as C. whom D. what

22. We should pay attention ________ to industry ________ to agriculture.

A. either，or B. neither，nor C. not，but D. both，and

23. He ran off ________ I could stop him.

A. before B. after C. since D. when

24. We thought there were 35 students in the dining hall，________，in fact，there were 40.

A. while B. whether C. what D. which

25. He found it increasingly difficult to read，________ his eyesight was beginning to fail.

A. and B. for C. but D. or

26. He was about halfway through his meal ________ a familiar voice came to his ears.

A. why B. where C. when D. while

27. I grew up in Africa，________ at least I should say that I spent much of the first ten years of my life there.

A. and B. or C. so D. but

28. Start out right away，________ you'll miss the first train.

A. and B. but C. or D. while

29. The book is not easy. ________ it's rather difficult.

A. On the one hand B. On the contrary C. On the other hand D. On the other contrary

30. A man cannot smile like a child，________ a child smiles with his eyes，while a man smiles with his lips alone.

A. so B. but C. and D. for

第七章　动词的时态

第一节　考点分析

考点1　一般现在时

1. 定义：表示经常发生的动作、目前存在的状态及普遍真理和客观事实。

2. 构成：主语＋do/does＋其他

主语＋am/is/are＋其他

3. 时间状语：often，usually，seldom，always，every day/week/month/year 等

注：含有宾语从句的句子，即使主句是一般过去时，但当宾语从句表示客观真理、科学规律、名言警句时，宾语从句也要用一般现在时。

例：Columbus proved that the earth is round. 哥伦布证实了地球是圆的。

考点2　一般过去时

1. 定义：表示过去发生的动作或存在的状态。

2. 构成：主语＋did＋其他

主语＋was/were＋其他

3. 时间状语：yesterday，the day before yesterday，last night/week/month/year 等。

注：used to do sth. 过去常常做某事

be/get used to doing sth. 习惯于做某事

【例】People ________ believe that the sun went around the earth.（2015）

A. would　　B. be used to　　C. will　　D. used to

【解析】D. used to do sth. 表示过去常常做某事（现在不做了），be/get used to doing sth. 表示习惯于做某事，根据题意答案为 D。

【翻译】人们过去常常认为太阳绕着地球转。

考点3　一般将来时

1. 定义：用于谈论将来，表示将来要发生的事情或存在的状态。

2. 构成：主语＋will/shall do

主语＋am/is/are going to do

主语＋am/is/are to do

主语＋am/is/are about to do

注：当用 shall 时，主语为 I/we。

3. 时间状语：tomorrow，the day after tomorrow，next week/month/year

4. 主将从现

在 when，until，as soon as，if，unless，in case，as long as 等引导的时间和条件状语从句中，主句用一般将来时，从句用一般现在时表将来。

【例】In case he ________，please tell me. （2004）

A. has come　　B. will come　　C. comes　　D. would come

【解析】C. in case 引导的为从句，从句要用一般现在时，故答案为 C。

【翻译】万一他来了，请告诉我。

考点4　现在进行时

1. 定义：表示说话时或现阶段正在进行的动作或发生的情况，常见的时间状语有 now、these days 等。

2. 构成：主语＋am/is/are doing

3. 短暂性动词，如：come，go，arrive，leave，start，begin，return，die 的现在进行时表达将来的含义。

例：I am leaving tomorrow. 明天我就要走了。

考点5　过去进行时

1. 定义：表示过去的某个时刻正在进行的动作或发生的情况。

2. 构成：主语＋was/were doing

3. 表示发生在过去同一时段内的两个动作，长动作用过去进行时，短动作用一般过去时。

【例】Mary ________ a dress when she cut her finger.

A. made　　B. is making　　C. was making　　D. makes

【解析】C. 题干中的 cut 为一般过去时，故句子的时态不可能为选项 B 和选项 D 中的现在进行时和一般现在时。该题答案为 C，表示过去同一时段内发生的长动作要用过去进行时。

【翻译】玛丽在做裙子时伤到了手指。

考点6　将来进行时

1. 定义：表示将来某时发生的动作，或按预测将来会发生的事情。

2. 构成：主语＋will be doing

例：She will be coming soon. 她会很快来的。

考点7　现在完成时

1. 定义：表发生在过去的动作对现在造成的影响，或动作从过去持续到现在。

2. 构成：主语＋have/has done＋其他

3. 时间状语：already，yet，ever，never，recently，in the past few days，so far，by now，up to/till now，since＋过去时间/一般过去时的句子

4. 固定句型

It/This is the first/second/third time that＋句子（现在完成时）

这是第……次……。

It/This is the＋形容词最高级＋名词＋that＋句子（现在完成时）

这是最……的……。

注：have/has gone to 去了某地（还未回来）

have/has been to 去过某地（已经回来）

【例】 A new analysis indicates that the output of cotton ________ by 20% by now.（2005）

A. will have gone up　B. would go up　C. will go up　D. has gone up

【解析】 D. by now（到目前为止）是现在完成时的标志，故答案为 D。

【翻译】 一项新的分析表明到目前为止棉花的产量上升了 20%。

考点8 过去完成时

1. 定义：在过去不同时间发生的两个动作中，先发生的用过去完成时，后发生的用一般过去时。过去完成时强调“过去的过去”。

2. 构成：主语＋had done＋其他

3. 时间状语：by/until＋过去时间

by the end of＋过去时间

before＋过去时间/一般过去时的句子

by the time＋一般过去时的句子

【例】 Until then，his family ________ from him for six months.（2012）

A. didn’t hear　B. hasn’t been hearing

C. hasn’t heard　D. hadn’t heard

【解析】 D. then（那时），为过去时间，until＋过去时间是过去完成时的标志，故答案为 D。

【翻译】 直到那时，他的家人已经六个月没有收到他的来信了。

考点9 将来完成时

1. 定义：在将来某个时间或动作之前已经完成的动作。

2. 构成：主语＋will have done＋其他

时间状语：by/until＋将来时间

by the end of＋将来时间

before＋将来时间/一般现在时的句子

by the time＋一般现在时的句子

【例】 We ________ building the bridge by the end of next month.（2013）

A. are finishing　B. would finish　C. have finished　D. will have finished

【解析】D. by the end of＋将来时间是将来完成时的标志，故答案为 D。

【翻译】到下个月底，我们将会完成桥的建设。

第二节　真题演练

1. By the time you arrive in London，we ________ in Europe for two weeks. （2006）

A. shall stay　　B. will have stayed　　C. have stayed　　D. have been staying

2. John and I ________ friends for eight years. We first got to know each other at a Christmas party. But we ________ each other a couple of times before that. （2008）

A. had been；have seen　　B. have been；have seen

C. had been；had seen　　D. have been；had seen

3. By the end of this term，we ________ the textbook. （2011）

A. finish　　B. have finished　　C. will finish　　D. will have finished

第三节　能力拓展

1. By the end of next month he ________ everything in school.

A. will finish　　B. would finished　　C. finishes　　D. will have finished

2. Great changes ________ in our province. Many tall buildings ________ .

A. has been taken place；have been set up　　B. have taken place；have been set up

C. has been taken place；have been set up　　D. was taken place；were set up

3. I know a little bit about Italy as my wife and I ________ there several years ago.

A. went　　B. had been　　C. are going　　D. have been

4. Until now，his family ________ from him for six months.

A. didn't hear　　B. hadn't been hearing

C. haven't heard　　D. hadn't heard

5. This is the longest bridge that ________ over Changjiang River.

A. is ever built　　B. was ever built　　C. has ever been built　　D. had ever built

6. By next year he ________ in New York for five years.

A. has worked　　B. has been working　　C. works　　D. will have worked

7. When I was at college，I ________ three foreign languages but I ________ all except a few words of each.

A. spoke；had forgotten　　B. had spoken；had forgotten

C. spoke；have forgotten　　D. had spoken；have forgotten

8. — What do you think of the movie?

— It's fantastic. The only pity is that I ________ the beginning of it.

A. missed　　B. had missed　　C. miss　　D. would miss

9. — My mum is not in Beijing now. She has gone to Paris.

— Oh, can you tell me when she ________?

A. is leaving　B. would leave　C. has left　D. left

10. ________ a concert next Saturday?

A. There will be　B. Will there be　C. There can be　D. There are

11. If they come, we ________ a meeting.

A. have　B. will have　C. had　D. would have

12. If it ________ tomorrow, we'll go roller-skating.

A. isn't rain　B. won't rain　C. doesn't rain　D. doesn't fine

13. They ________ an English evening next Sunday.

A. are having　B. are going to have　C. will having　D. is going to have

14. —Did you have a discussion with him about the matter?

—No. When I saw him, he ________his history project busily.

A. has prepared　B. prepares　C. was preparing　D. prepared

15. I first met Lisa three years ago. She ________ at a radio shop at the time.

A. has worked　B. was working　C. had been working　D. had worked

16. She ________ her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband ________ home.

A. has left; comes　B. had left; would come

C. had left; came　D. left; had come

17. Zhao Lan ________ already ________ in this school for two years.

A. was ; studying　B. will ; study　C. has ; studied　D. are ; studying

18. We ________ Xiao Li since she was a little girl.

A. know　B. had known　C. have known　D. knew

19. Harry Potter is a very nice film. I ________ it twice.

A. will see　B. have seen　C. saw　D. see

20. We'll go to play with snow if it ________ tomorrow.

A. snow　B. snows　C. will snow　D. snowed

21. The boy ________ English on the radio when I ________ his door.

A. learned…was opening　B. was learning…opened

C. learned…opened　D. is learning…opened

22. He ________ some cooking at that time, so he ________ me.

A. did…heard　B. did…didn't hear

C. was doing…heard　D. was doing…didn't hear

23. —I've not finished with my dinner yet.

—But our friends ________ for us for the time being.

A. will wait　B. wait　C. have waited　D. are waiting

24. Judy is going to marry the sailor she ________ in Rome last year.

A. meets B. met C. has met D. would meet

25. He will come to see you as long as he ________ his work.

A. will finish B. finishes C. would finish D. had finished

26. — What kind of sports do you prefer in winter?

—I used to ________ skating in Michigan every winter，but I am used to ________ swimming.

A. go；go B. go；going C. going；going D. going；go

27. My grandmother said that the oil ________ unable to sink in water when I was ten years old.

A. was B. is C. are D. were

28. Listen! The girl ________ in the room.

A. sings B. singing C. is singing D. are singing

29. I ________ here two years ago.

A. moved to B. have moved C. have moved to D. moved

30. It is the most interesting book that I ________.

A. had read B. have read C. read D. am reading

31. By the time you get to New York，I ________for London. （2018. 5）

A. would be leaving B. am leaving C. have already left D. shall have left

第八章　被动语态

第一节　考点分析

英语中时态很多，但语态只有两种：主动语态和被动语态。主语是动作发出者时为主动语态；主语是动作接受者时为被动语态。主动句变被动句就是将主动句的宾语变成被动句的主语，谓语动词用被动形式，主动句的主语变成由 by 引导的短语，执行者可省略。

“被动语态”的基本构成是：主语＋be＋done（动词的过去分词）（by＋名词/人称代词的宾格）

考点1　被动语态的形式

被动语态是动词的一种形式，有人称、时态和数的变化。常考的有八种：

1. 一般现在时的被动语态：主语＋am/is/are done；
2. 一般过去时的被动语态：主语＋was/were done；
3. 一般将来时的被动语态：主语＋will/shall be done；
4. 现在进行时的被动语态：主语＋am/is/are being done；
5. 过去进行时的被动语态：主语＋was/were being done；
6. 现在完成时的被动语态：主语＋have/has been done；
7. 过去完成时的被动语态：主语＋had been done；
8. 将来完成时的被动语态：主语＋will/shall have been done

【例】Tom got very angry when he realized he ________.（2004）

A. was being made fun of　　B. is made fun of
C. had made fun of　　D. has been made fun of

【解析】A. 本题考查被动语态。前面 got 是一般过去式，所以排除 B（一般现在时被动）、C（过去完成时被动）、D（现在完成时被动）；而 A 表示过去进行时被动，故选 A。

【翻译】当 Tom 意识到自己正在被人嘲笑时，他变得非常生气。

考点2　情态动词的被动语态

构成：情态动词＋be＋done

The book must be returned within a week. 必须在一周内把这本书归还/这本书必须在一周内还回去。

The job can't be done. 这个工作不能做。

考点3　无被动语态的情况

1. 不及物动词和短语无被动语态，如：appear，belong to，break down，break out，consist of，come true，disappear，occur to，take place，happen 等。

2. 表事物属性的动词，如：wash，sell，read，wear，write，cost 等。

3. 系动词无被动，如：be，look，sound，smell，taste，feel，stay，remain，keep 等。

【例】 He ________ by his sister at that moment. （2012）

A. happened to see　　B. was happened to see

C. was happened to be seen　　D. happened to be seen

【解析】 D. 本题考查被动语态。不及物动词和短语无被动语态，排除 B、C；因为是“被看到”，排除 A；正确答案为 D。

【翻译】 那个时候他刚好被他妹妹看到了。

考点4　主动表被动的情况

当 need，want，require 后面接 doing 时，表被动含义，等于 to be done。worth 后面接 doing 时，表被动含义。即 sth be worth doing “某事值得被做”。

【例】 My mobile phone is not working. It ________ . （2010）

A. needs being repaired　　B. needs repairing

C. needs to repair　　D. needs repaired

【解析】 B. 本题考查被动语态。need repairing ＝ need to be repaired 主动表被动，it 是第三人称，need 用单三形式 needs。正确答案为 B。

【翻译】 我的手机不工作了，需要修理。

考点5　固定搭配

It is said＋that 从句/sb（sth）be said to do，意为“据说”，可以用两种被动语态的句子表示。常用的动词有：believe，think，report，expect，know 等。

主动 People say he is rich. 人们说他富有。

被动 It is said that he is rich. 或 He is said to be rich. 据说他富有。

第二节　真题演练

1. He bought a new mobile phone last Sunday，because his old one ________. （2006）

A. had stolen　　B. had been stolen　　C. was stolen　　D. stolen

2. Every means ________ but without much result. （2007）

A. have been tried　　B. has been tried　　C. have tried　　D. has tried

第三节　能力拓展

1. —How long ________ at this job?

—Since 1990.

A. were you employed　　B. have you been employed

C. had you been employed　　D. will you be employed

2. By the end of last year，another new gymnasium ________ in Beijing.

A. would be completed
B. was being completed
C. has been completed
D. had been completed

3. If city noises ________ from increasing，people ________ shout to be heard even at the dinner table 20 years from now.

A. are not kept；will have to
B. are not kept；have to
C. do not keep；will have to
D. do not keep；have to

4. The price ________，but I doubt whether it will remain so.

A. went down
B. will go down
C. has gone down
D. was going down

5. You can't move in right now. The house ________.

A. has painted
B. is painted
C. is being painted
D. is painting

6. —Have you got your test result?

—Not yet. The papers ________.

A. are not correcting
B. have not corrected
C. are still being corrected
D. have already been corrected

7. Do I have to take this medicine? It ________ so terrible.

A. tastes
B. is tasting
C. is tasted
D. has tasted

8. Don't take the magazine away. It ________ me.

A. is belonged to
B. belongs to
C. was belonged to
D. is belonging to

9. Is this the third time that you ________ late?

A. have been
B. am
C. was
D. had been

10. A storm ________ by a calm.

A. is often being followed
B. was often followed
C. is often followed
D. has often been followed

11. —Do you like the new pen?

—Yes，it ________ very well.

A. is written
B. is writing
C. writes
D. wrote

12. As she ________ the newspaper，Granny ________ asleep.

A. read；was falling
B. was reading；fell
C. was reading；was falling
D. read；fell

13. By this time tomorrow the machine ________.

A. have repaired
B. will have been repaired
C. will repair
D. would be repaired

14. I don't think Jim saw me；he ________ into space.

A. just stared
B. was just staring
C. has just stared
D. had just stared

15. They ________ a snowstorm on their way home.

A. caught in
B. had caught
C. were caught
D. were caught in

第九章　非谓语动词

我们把在句子中充当除谓语动词以外的动词形式称作非谓语动词。包括三类：动名词（doing），不定式（to do），分词（done），不能单独做谓语，却能在句子中充当主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、补语等。

非谓语产生的原因：英语中，在一句话中，若无连词，有且只能有一个谓语动词。若一句话中无连词，要有两个动词，只能是一个谓语，一个非谓语。

		一般式	完成式	进行式
to do	主动	to do	to have done	to be doing
	被动	to be done	to have been done	
doing	主动	doing	having done	
	被动	being done	having been done	
done	被动	done		

第一节　考点分析

考点1

非谓语做主语，谓语动词用单数。

doing 和 to do 可做主语，但含义不同。doing 做主语往往表示一种习惯性经常性的动作，而 to do 做主语却表示一次性的动作。当 doing 和 to do 做主语太长时可用 it 做形式主语，而把真正的主语放后面。例：

1. doing 做主语

Painting is his hobby. 绘画是他的爱好。

Talking mends no holes. 空谈无济于事。

Waiting here is no use. 在这里等是没用的。

It is no use waiting here.（it 是形式主语，真正的主语是后面的 waiting here）

Sitting in front of the television all day long is a waste of time. 整天坐在电视机旁边是浪费时间的。

It is a waste of time sitting in front of the television all day long.（it 做形式主语，真正的主语是后面的 sitting in front of the television all day long）

Searching for him is worthwhile. 找他是值得的。

It is worthwhile searching for him.（it 做形式主语，真正的主语是后面的 searching for him）

固定句式总结：

It is no use/useless doing sth. 做……是没有用处的

It is no good doing sth. 做……是没有好处的

It is a waste of time/money doing sth. 做……是浪费时间/金钱的

It is worthwhile doing sth. 做……是值得的

【例】It is no use ________ me not to worry about his injury.（2009）

A. for you to tell　B. your telling　C. you tell　D. having told

【解析】B. 固定句式：It is no use（形容词性物主代词）doing sth.

【翻译】你告诉我别担心他的伤势是没用的。

2. to do 做主语：

To finish the work in ten minutes is very hard. 十分钟之内完成这项工作是很难的。

To lose your heart means failure. 灰心意味着失败。

动词不定式短语做主语时，常用 it 做形式主语，真正的主语不定式置于句后，例如上面两句可用如下形式：

It is very hard to finish the work in ten minutes. 十分钟之内完成这项工作是很难的。

It means failure to lose your heart. 灰心意味着失败。

常用句式有：a. It＋is＋形容词＋（for sb.）＋to do sth. 这类形容词是表示主观的形容词，例如 important，hard/difficult，easy，impossible 等。

b. It takes/took sb＋时间/金钱＋to do sth。做……花费……的时间/金钱。

c. It＋is＋形容词＋of sb＋to do sth。某人做……太……了。这类形容词是表示人品质的形容词：careless，clever，good，foolish，honest，kind，lazy，nice，right，silly，stupid，wise 等表示赞扬或批评的形容词，不定式前的 sb 可做其逻辑主语。

考点2

宾语可分作两类，动词宾语和介词宾语。非谓语动词中，to do 和 doing 做宾语。有些动词后只能跟 doing 做宾语，有些动词后只能跟 to do 做宾语，而有的动词后既可跟 to do 还可跟 doing 做宾语但含义不同。下面我们一一进行讲解。

1. doing 做宾语

（1）下列动词只能跟 doing 做宾语

避免错过（少）延期	avoid，miss，delay/postpone
建议完成（多）练习	suggest/advise，finish，practise
喜欢想象禁不住	enjoy/appreciate，imagine/fancy，can't help/resist
承认否定与嫉妒	admit/allow，deny，envy
逃脱冒险莫原谅	escape，risk，pardon/excuse/forgive
忍受保持（不）介意	stand，keep/keep on，mind

【例】Would you mind turning down your radio a little, please? 你把收音机音量调小一点，

好吗?

The squirrel was lucky that it just missed being caught. 这松鼠幸运得很，刚逃避了被逮住的厄运。

【例】 I really appreciate ________ to help me，but I am sure that I will be able to manage it by myself.（2013）

A. you to offer　　B. that you offer

C. your offering　　D. you to have offered

【解析】 C. 因为 appreciate 后要用 doing 做宾语，所以可以直接选出答案。

【翻译】 我真的很感谢你提供帮助，但是我确定我能够自己做好它。

（2）介词后面若跟动词，只能跟其 doing 形式。而英语中 to 这个词很特殊，to 多用于动词不定式，同时还可做介词，做介词的情况比较少。下列词组中 to 为介词：

confess to（坦白）
be used to（习惯于）
look forward to（盼望）
contribute to（有助于）
object to（反对）
stick to（坚持）
be devoted to（专心于）
devote oneself to（致力于）
be accustomed to（习惯于）
turn to（求助于）
pay attention to（重视）
when it comes to（当谈论到）

【例】 When it comes to building a bridge over the river，all the representatives present raised their hands. 当谈论到在河上建座桥时，所有的与会代表都举手同意了。

【例】 We object ________ carrying out the plan.（2006）

A. for　　B. to be　　C. about　　D. to

【解析】 D. object to doing sth 反对做某事。

【翻译】 我们反对执行这个计划。

在下面几类句子中，介词 in 经常被省略。

have trouble/difficulty（in）doing sth 做……有困难

spend 时间/金钱（in）doing sth 做……花费时间/金钱

be busy（in）doing sth 忙于做……

lose no time（in）doing sth 立即做……

【例】 I have some difficulty（in）finishing all of the housework. 完成所有的家务活有难度。

They spent two hours（in）getting home. 他们花了两小时才到家。

The students are busy（in）preparing their final test. 那些学生在忙于准备期末考试。

Cinderella decided to lose no time（in）reading this book. Cinderella 决定马上读这本书。

2. to do 做宾语

下列动词后只能跟 to do 做宾语：

hope，wish，manage，fail，afford，ask，agree，aim，beg，decide，demand，happen，long，offer，pretend，prepare，plan 等。

【例】 My father agreed to take me there. 我爸爸同意带我去那。

They decided to move to another city. 他们决定搬到另外的城市。

【例】 I couldn't understand why he pretended ________ in the garden.（2006）

A. not to see me　　B. not see me　　C. to see me not　　D. to see not me

【解析】A. pretend to do sth“假装做某事”否定是 pretend not to do sth“假装没做某事”故选A。

【翻译】我不能够理解他为什么在花园里假装没看到我。

3. 一些词的后面既可跟 doing 也可跟 to do，但含义不同

（1）stop doing /to do

stop to do 表示停止、中断做某事去做另外一件事；stop doing 表示停止做正在做的事。

【例】They stop to smoke a cigarette. 他们停下来抽了根烟。

I must stop smoking. 我必须戒烟。

【例】Your children must stop ________ me by asking for candy all day long. I am ________ every day by the slow bus service in this town. （2012）

A. annoyed；annoying　　B. to annoy；annoying

C. annoying；annoying　　D. annoying；annoyed

【解析】D. 第一个空考查 stop 后面接不定式与动名词的区别：stop to do sth 意为“停下来手中的事去做其他的事”；stop doing sth 意为“停下正在做的事”。根据句意，说话者是要孩子们停止烦他，而不是去烦他，故第一个空要用动名词 annoying。第二个空句意是“我被惹恼”故用 annoyed。

【翻译】你的孩子们必须停止整天向我要糖吃。我被这个小镇的缓慢的公交车服务给惹恼了。

（2）forget doing/to do

forget to do 表示“忘记要去做某事”；forget doing 表示“忘记做过某事”。

【例】The light in the office is still on. He forgot to turn it off.

办公室的灯还在亮着，他忘记关啦。（没有做关灯的动作）.

He forgot turning the light off. 他忘记他已经关了灯了。（已做过关灯的动作）

（3）remember doing/to do

remember to do 表示“记得去做某事”；remember doing 表示“记得做过某事”。

【例】Remember to go to the post office after school. 记得放学后去趟邮局。

Don't you remember seeing the man before? 你不记得以前见过那个人吗？

（4）regret doing /to do

regret to do 表示“对将要做的事遗憾”；regret doing 表示“对做过的事感到遗憾、后悔”。

【例】I regret to have to do this，but I have no choice. 我很遗憾必须这样去做，我实在没有办法。

I don't regret telling her what I thought. 我不为告诉她我的想法而后悔。

（5）

can't help to do sth 无能为力做某事	can't help doing sth 情不自禁做某事
go on to do sth 继续去做另外一件事	go on doing sth 继续做同一件事
stop to do sth 停下来去做另外一件事	stop doing sth 停下正在做的事
try to do sth 努力去做某事	try doing sth 尝试做某事
mean to do sth 打算做某事	mean doing sth 意味着做某事
would like to do sth 想要做某事	feel like doing sth 想要做某事

考点3 非谓语做后置定语

形式：doing（主动进行）to do（主动将来）being done（被动进行）to be done（将来被动）done（完成被动）

【例】The Olympics Games played in 776 B. C. did not include women players till 1912.

在公元前776举办的奥运会直到1912年才有了女选手。（played做后置定语修饰The Olympics Games，因后面有时间状语776 B. C.，而The Olympics Games与play是被动关系，此空用完成的被动played）

My Love from the Star being played now is popular among the youth. 正在被播放的来自星星的你在年轻人当中很受欢迎。（being played做后置定语修饰My Love from the Star，后有时间状语now，二者构成进行被动关系，用being played）

The Big Bang Theory to be played next month is our favourite movie.

下个月即将被播出的生活大爆炸是我们最喜欢看的。

解析：to be played做后置定语修饰The Big Bang Theory，后有时间状语next month，二者构成 将来被动 关系，用to be done。

The last student to leave the room remembers to turn off all the lights. 最后一个离开房间的学生记得把灯关掉。（to leave做后置定语修饰student，而student与leave是主动关系，由后面的remembers可看出此动作还未发生，故二者构成将来主动关系用to do）

【例】The first textbook ________ for teaching English as a foreign language came out in the 16th century.（2013）

A. having written　　B. to be written　　C. being written　　D. written

【解析】D. 此空考非谓语做后置定语修饰textbook，而textbook与write应该是被动关系，所以排除选项A，后有时间状语in the 16th century，故此空属于非谓语做后置定语表完成被动关系，选D。

【翻译】第一本把英语当作外语来教学的教科书出版于16世纪。

考点4

1. 非谓语做宾补

（1）补语。常见的接带to的不定式做宾补的动词有：tell，ask，want，teach，allow，expect，get，demand，request，invite，love，hate，like，would like等。

【例】My mother often tells me to study hard at school. 我妈妈经常告诉我在学校里好好学习。

Mr. Lee asked us not to play too many computer games at home. 李老师告诉我们不要在家里玩太多的电脑游戏。

【例】The teacher doesn't allow his students ________ on the exam.（2016）

A. cheated　　B. cheating　　C. cheat　　D. to cheat

【解析】D. 该题考查非谓语动词相关搭配，allow sb. to do sth.

【翻译】老师不允许他的学生考试作弊。

（2）而下面的表示感觉的动词

一感觉：feel 一发现：find 二听：hear，listen to 五看：look at，see，watch，observe，notice

以上动词的宾补有三种形式：do（主动，表短动作）；doing（主动，表长动作）；done（被动）。

【例】Did you hear the poor girl crying for the whole night?（hear 是谓语动词，the poor girl 是宾语，crying 是宾补。你听到那个那个可怜的女孩哭了一整夜吗?）

We found MH370 disappear on the morning of March 8th. 3 月 8 日早晨我们发现 MH370 消失了。(found 是谓语动词，MH370 是宾语，disappear 是宾补，MH370 与 disappear 是主动关系，且 disappear 是短动作）

下列使役动词的用法比较特殊：

let/make/have“使……，让……”后跟宾语后，宾补可以是：do（表示主动）；done（表示被动）

【例】Please don't make the baby cry again. 请别让那孩子再哭了。

I have my money stolen. 我的钱被偷了。

【例】His English was so poor that he found it difficult to make himself ________.（2006）

A. understood B. understand C. be understood D. to understand

【解析】A. 此空考非谓语做补语。himself 与 understand 是被动关系。

【翻译】他的英语是如此差劲以至于他发现自己的英语很难被人理解。

2. 非谓语做主补

be said/reported/believed/thought {to do 表“主动未发生”; to be done 表“被动未发生”}

be said/reported/believed/thought {to have done 表“主动已发生”; to have been done 表“被动已发生”}

【例】The visitors are said to leave tomorrow. 那些游客据说明天离开。(未发生)

His works are reported to have been translated into several languages last year.

据报道去年他的作品被翻译成几种外语。(已经发生)

【例】He is said ________ an excellent opera singer in his youth.

A. to be B. being C. to have been D. to having been

【解析】C. be said to have done 的用法，因后面有 in his youth（在他年轻的时候）可知是表过去的时间。

【翻译】据说他年轻时是个杰出的歌手。

考点5 非谓语做状语

非谓语做状语时，having done 和 having been done 强调非谓语先于主句谓语发生，而 doing 和 having done 表示主动，done 和 having been done 表示被动，to do 表示目的，翻译成“为了”。

【例】Having devoted himself to teaching for more than 20 years, he planned to go back to his hometown.

奉献在教育事业上 20 多年后，他决定回到家乡。

Having been buried under the ground millions of years, the forest turned to be coal.

森林在被深埋地下数百万年后变成了煤。

To finish so much work in such a short time, he had to stay up all the night.

为了在短时间内完成这么多工作，他不得不熬一整夜。

【例】 ________ of his name, we had a lot of trouble in finding the patient.（2011）

A. Not informed　　B. Not having informed

C. Not having been informed　　D. Having not informed

【解析】C. 根据题意该题考查非谓语动词，句子主语 we 和选项非谓语之间是被动关系，故先排除 B、D，又因为非谓语动词发生在谓语之前，要用非谓语的完成式，故答案选 C。

【翻译】没有告知他的名字，我们很难找到病人。

【例】The new invention is to make our daily life easier, ________ it more difficult.（2006）

A. not to make　　B. not make　　C. not making　　D. do not make

【解析】A. 前有谓语动词 is，这个空只能填非谓语。to do 表示目的，翻译成“为了”否定是 not to do，故选 A。新的发明是为了让我们的生活更简单，而不是更复杂。

【翻译】新发明是为了让我们的日常生活更加简单，而不是更加困难。

考点6 非谓语中的特殊情况

1. 省去 to 的不定式

（1）would rather do sth 宁愿做某事 had better do sth 最好做某事

（2）Why（not）do sth? 为什么（不）做某事?

【例】 ________ him do this job by himself?（2007）

A. Why don't let　　B. Why not letting　　C. Why not let　　D. Why you not to let

【解析】C. 固定句式：why not do sth? 故选 C。为什么不让他单独做这份工作呢?

（3）help 后可带 to，也可不带 to。如；help sb.（to）do sth. 帮助某人做某事

（4）but（除了）和 except（除了）后。but 和 except 前出现实义动词 do 时，后面出现的不定式不带 to，即“有 do 无 to，无 do 有 to”。

比较：He wants to do nothing but go out. 他只想出去玩。

He wants to believe anything but to take the medicine. 除了吃这药，他什么都信。

【例】Missing the last bus, I could do nothing but ________ in the village for the night.

A. staying　　B. stay　　C. to stay　　D. stayed

【解析】B. but 原则“有 do 无 to，无 do 有 to”，故选 B。

【翻译】错过了最后一班公交车，我别无选择只能在那个小镇里待上一晚。

2. 带 to 的不定式

不定式的特殊句型 too…to do sth……太……而不能……

…enough to do sth……足够……而能够……

例如：He is too excited to speak. 他太激动了，说不出话来。

I work hard enough to get a promotion. 我工作足够努力而能够得到提拔。

3. 主动表被动的情况

sth need/want/require doing＝sth need/want/require to be done 某事需要被……

sth be worth doing 某事是值得被做的

【例】The room is quite neat；it ________.（2011）

A. doesn't need to cleaning　　B. needn't to cleaning

C. doesn't need cleaning　　D. needn't cleaning

【解析】C. 在这里，need 做实意动词，否定需要借助助动词，排除 B、D，又因为 need 后接 doing 或者 to be done 表被动，故可选出正确答案。

【翻译】房间很整洁，不需要打扫。

4. 分词做插入语，其结构是固定搭配

【例】Generally speaking（一般说来）　　Talking of/Speaking of（说道）

Strictly speaking（严格地说）　　Judging from（从……判断）

All things considered（从整体看来）　　Taking all things considered（全面看来）

第二节　真题演练

1. The departure time of the plane has been postponed，so we have nothing to do now but ________.（2006）

A. wait　　B. to be waiting　　C. to wait　　D. waiting

2. ________ more time，the scientists will be able to work out a good solution to the problem.（2006）

A. Given　　B. Giving　　C. To give　　D. Be given

3. ________ in Beijing for more than twenty years，he knows the city very well.（2006）

A. Living　　B. Lived　　C. Having lived　　D. To live

4. I don't mind ________ out for a walk in such bad weather.（2006）

A. go　　B. to go　　C. going　　D. gone

5. As a lawyer he spent a lot of time ________ investigations.（2006）

A. conducted　　B. to conduct　　C. conduct　　D. conducting

6. When you are free this afternoon，please help me to have these letters ________ .（2006）

A. to mail　　B. mail　　C. mailed　　D. mailing

7. Many of his novels are reported ________ into several foreign languages last year.（2006）

A. to be translated　　B. to translate

C. being translated　　D. to have been translated

8. I've never seen the young man ________ next to the director.（2006）

A. sits　　B. sat　　C. sitting　　D. to sit

9. ________ out of the taxi，he was seized by the police.（2005）

A. To step　　B. When stepped　　C. In his stepping　　D. On his stepping

10. The Great Pyramid ________ nearly five thousand years ago is located on the bank of the Nile River. (2005)

A. built B. was built C. being built D. to be built

11. When ________ the education systems of China and Britain, the professor gave no comment. (2008)

A. being asked to compare B. asked him to compare

C. asking him to compare D. asked to compare

12. No one can avoid ________ by advertisements. (2008)

A. influenced B. influencing

C. to influence D. being influenced

13. Henry's remarks left me ________ about his real purpose. (2008)

A. wonder B. wondered C. to wonder D. wondering

14. Julie spent one month ________ her term paper on Chinese poems. (2009)

A. to write B. and wrote C. written D. writing

15. They found the lecture hard ________ . (2009)

A. to understand B. to be understand C. being understood D. understood

16. It is no use ________ me not to worry about his injury. (2009)

A. for you to tell B. your telling C. you tell D. having told

17. ________ finished his work, he had to stay at home at the weekend. (2009)

A. Having not been B. Being not C. Not having D. Having not

18. Are you going downtown this afternoon? I am going to have these letters ________. (2009)

A. mailed B. mail C. to mail D. mailing

19. ________ from space, our earth, with water covering 70% of its surface, appears as a "blue planet" . (2009)

A. Seen B. Seeing C. To be seen D. Having seen

20. He is ________ join the army. (2010)

A. too young to B. enough young to

C. very young to D. young enough to

21. He enjoys ________ pop music while I prefer classical music. (2010)

A. to listen to B. to listen C. listening D. listening to

22. It's no use ________ with him since he has made up his mind. (2010)

A. to argue B. arguing C. to be argued D. argued

23. My mobile phone isn't working. It ________. (2010)

A. needs being repaired B. needs repairing

C. needs to repair D. needs repaired

24. I like English and I spent every minute I can ________ English. (2011)

A. to study B. studying C. studied D. study

25. Rather than ________ the bus，he ran all the way home.（2011）

A. take　　B. to take　　C. taken　　D. took

26. ________ with the book I bought yesterday，the one ________ from the library doesn't seem interesting.（2011）

A. When compared…borrowed　　B. While comparing…borrowed

C. Compared…borrowing　　D. Comparing…borrowing

27. She must be looking forward as much to ________ from him as he himself is to ________ from her.（2011）

A. hear…hearing　　B. hearing…hear

C. have heard…hearing　　D. hearing…hearing

28. ________at in this way，the situation doesn't seem so desperate.（2018. 2）

A. Looking　　B. Looked　　C. Being looked　　D. To look

29. ________a driver's license，my father could drive to anywhere he wanted to.（2020）

A. Having been go　　B. Getting　　C. Having to get　　D. Having got

30. The workers are practicing ________for the coming party of the New Year's Eve.（2020）

A. to sing　　B. to be singing　　C. singing　　D. being sung

31. I apologize for ________my promise that I would take you to the seaside.（2020）

A. not keep　　B. not having kept　　C. not have kept　　D. having not kept

32. I woke up in the night and found we ________through the ceiling.（2020）

A. had water dripping　　B. had water drip

C. had water dripped　　D. had water to drip

第三节　能力拓展

1. A new technique ________，the production increased by 20%.

A. having worked out　　B. having been worked out

C. to work out　　D. working out

2. ________ English well，we should find opportunities to hear English ________ as much as we can.

A. Learning，speak　　B. Learned，spoken　　C. To learn，spoken　　D. To learn，speaking

3. The proposal ________ at the meeting now is of great importance to our company.

A. discussed　　B. being discussed　　C. to be discussed　　D. is discussed

4. ________，we went swimming in the river.

A. It being very hot　　B. It was a very hot day

C. It was very hot　　D. Being a very hot day

5. The football players ________ from the whole country are expected to bring us honor in the 2014 FIFA Brazil World Cup.

A. selecting　　B. to select　　C. selected　　D. having selected

6. The shop owner will get all the ordered goods ________ to the customers today.

A. be delivered　　B. delivered　　C. delivering　　D. to deliver

7. The flu is believed ________ by viruses that like to reproduce in the cells inside the human nose and throat.

A. cause　　B. caused　　C. to be caused　　D. to have caused

8. The young man hurried to the restaurant，only ________ the pork had been sold out.

A. telling　　B. to tell　　C. being told　　D. to be told

9. ________ by the beauty of nature，the old man from Taiwan decided to stay here for another two days.

A. Attracting　　B. To attract

C. Attracted　　D. Having been attracted

10. On seeing the young child ________ into the river，the passer-by sprang to his feet and went to rescue.

A. fell　　B. fall　　C. falling　　D. to fall

11. It continuously rained for a week，completely ________ my travel plans.

A. ruined　　B. to ruin　　C. ruining　　D. it ruins

12. You will find the word “physics” ________ under “P” in your dictionary.

A. listed　　B. listing　　C. to list　　D. list

13. ________ more attention，the trees could have grown better.

A. Giving　　B. To give　　C. Given　　D. Having given

14. The old man，________ in the city for 40 years，is on the way back to his hometown.

A. working　　B. to work

C. having been worked　　D. having worked

15. He sent me an email，________ to get further information.

A. hoping　　B. to hope　　C. hoped　　D. he hoped

16. Don’t leave the water ________ all the time.

A. run　　B. to run　　C. ran　　D. running

17. The train we will take has been broken，so we had nothing to say but ________ .

A. wait　　B. to be waiting　　C. to wait　　D. waited

18. All flights ________ because of the heavy fog，we decided to visit the city.

A. were canceled　　B. had been canceled

C. having canceled　　D. having been canceled

19. According to a recent survey，Chinese children spend more than 5 hours per day ________ TV.

A. to watch　　B. watching　　C. to watching　　D. watch

20. ________ by enemies，the hero had no choice but to die.

A. Surrounded　　B. Surrounding

C. Having surrounded　　D. To be surrounded

21. Don’t forget ________ your hands before having meals.

A. to have washed　B. to wash　C. having washed　D. washing

22. ________ the gold, he had to find a place to hide it.

A. Stealing　B. Having stolen　C. To steal　D. Stolen

23. ________ two years to teaching, he really needed a rest.

A. Devoted　B. Devoting　C. To devote　D. Having devoted

24. Though ________ to see us, he gave us a warm welcome.

A. surprising　B. surprised　C. surprise　D. to surprise

25. Jack suggested ________ anything about it until he found out more facts.

A. not to say　B. not saying　C. to not say　D. saying not

26. The students were busy ________ for the coming exam.

A. to prepare　B. prepared　C. preparing　D. to preparing

27. Everything ________ into consideration, they would succeed.

A. taking　B. taken　C. to take　D. having taken

28. Have you ever ________ meat by yourself?

A. tried cooking　B. try cooking　C. try to cook　D. tried to cook

29. What a lovely party! It’s worth ________ all my life. (2018. 12)

A. remembering　B. to remember

C. to be remembered　D. being remembered

30. She ran back to the kitchen, eggs ________ carefully in his hands.

A. to be held　B. held　C. was held　D. holding

第十章　独立主格结构

第一节　考点分析

独立主格结构由名词或代词加上其他成分（分词、不定式、名词、代词、形容词、副词或介词短语）构成。在语法上是一个独立的短语，不是句子，在意思上依附于整个句子，具有以下特征：

1. 独立主格结构的作用相当于状语从句。可表示时间、原因、条件、行为或者伴随情况。

2. 独立主格结构可置于句首，也可以放在句尾。

3. 独立主格结构主要用于书面语。

4. 独立主格结构的逻辑主语与句中语法主语不同，指代不同的人或事物。

独立主格做题要点：若名词/代词与非谓语构成主动关系，用 doing 或 having done；若名词/代词与非谓语构成被动关系，用 done 或 having been done. 而 having done 与 having been done 强调非谓语发生在主句谓语之前。

考点1

with/without＋名词/代词（宾格）＋分词，句子。

【例】Without any money left，he had no choice but to borrow from his friend.

由于手头拮据，他只得向他的朋友借了一些钱。

With him sitting next to her，she felt safe.

有他坐在旁边，她感到很安全。

【例】The murderer was brought in，with his hands ________ behind his back.（2012）

A. being tied　　B. having tied　　C. to be tied　　D. tied

【解析】D. “with/without＋名词/代词（宾格）＋分词，句子”结构，属于独立主格结构，选项要用分词形式。hands 与 tie 应该是被动关系，首先排除 B。A、C、D 虽都表“被动”，但内涵不一样，A 表进行，C 表将来，D 表过去，故选 D。

【翻译】那个杀人犯被带了进来，他的手被绑在身后。

考点2

名词或代词（主格）＋分词，句子。

【例】Meeting finished，they went to the news reference. 会议结束后，他们去了新闻发布会。

The sun having risen，the fog soon disappeared. 太阳升起来了，雾很快就消散了。

【例】She heard a continual strange noise coming from the next room，her heart ________ fast.（2012）

A. beat　　B. beats　　C. beating　　D. beaten

【解析】C. 考独立主格结构，故排除 B。因空前有名词 heart，而 heart 与 beat 是主动关系，用 beating。

【翻译】她听到来自隔壁房间的连续不断的古怪的声音，心跳得好快。

【例】A new technique ________，the output as a whole increased by 20 percent.（2012）

A. working out　　B. having worked out

C. to have been worked out　　D. having been worked out

【解析】D. 考我们独立主格结构，空前有名词 technique，而 technique 与 work out 是被动关系，故只能选择 D。

【翻译】一项新的技术被应用后，总体产量上升了 20%。

考点3

名词/代词（主格）＋介词短语/形容词/副词，句子。

【例】Book in hand，the teacher entered the classroom. 老师手里拿着一本书走进了教室。

He walked out of the room，face red with anger. 他走出房间，气得脸通红。

附注：独立主格结构的句法功能

1. 做时间状语

【例】My work having been finished，I went home. 我干完工作后就回家了。

The meeting over，they left the hall. 会议结束后，他们离开了大厅。

2. 做原因状语

【例】My watch having been lost，I didn't know what time it was.

我的表丢了，我不知道现在是几点。

There being no bus，we had to walk home.

没有公共汽车，我们只好走路回家。

3. 做条件状语

【例】Time permitting，I shall go to the cinema with you.

如果时间允许，我就和你去看电影。

Weather permitting，we shall go outing.

如果天气许可，我们就去郊游。

4. 做伴随状语

【例】Mary entered the room，with a big apple in her hand.

玛丽手里拿着一个大苹果走进了房间。

He was doing his homework，his father sitting aside.

他正在做家庭作业，父亲坐在身边（陪着）。

第二节　真题演练

1. I think there's no comparison between the two cars, one ________ clearly far better than the other. (2006)

A. being　B. was　C. having been　D. be

2. So many directors ________, the board meeting had to be put off. (2004)

A. were absent　B. been absent　C. had been absent　D. being absent

3. ________ nothing to talk about, he said good-bye and went out of the room. (2005)

A. There was　B. There being　C. Being　D. There been

4. Silver is the best conductor of electricity, copper ________ it closely. (2009)

A. followed　B. to follow　C. following　D. being followed

5. The article opens and closes with descriptions of two news reports, each ________ one major point in contrast with the other. (2003)

A. makes　B. made　C. is to make　D. making

6. ________, her suggestion is of greater value than yours. (2020)

A. All things considering　B. All things considered

C. All things were considered　D. With all things were considered

第三节　能力拓展

1. ________, we went swimming in the river.

A. It being very hot　B. It was a very hot day

C. It was very hot　D. Being a very hot day

2. Why are they taking all the equipment away? The job ________, they are packing up to leave.

A. to do　B. did　C. done　D. has been done

3. ________, I had to stay in the home and looked after him.

A. Being ill　B. Tom being ill　C. Tom was ill　D. To be ill

4. ________ for many years, no one could recognize him.

A. The man being put into prison　B. The man having been in prison

C. The man putting into prison　D. Put into prison

5. Everyone ________ their seats, the meeting began.

A. taking　B. taken　C. having taken　D. to take

6. ________, everything has changed.

A. Time goes on　B. Time going on

C. As time going on　D. With time went on

7. The students ________ all the exercises, the teacher went on to explain the text.

A. having done B. had done C. doing D. done

8. With a lot of work ________, he had no time to talk with us.

A. done B. to do C. doing D. to be doing

9. ________, there is no school.

A. It is Sunday B. It was Sunday C. It will be Sunday D. It being Sunday

10. ________, all the students ran out of the classroom.

A. Class is over B. Class was over C. Class over D. Class been over

11. He was lying on the grass, his hands ________ under his head.

A. cross B. crossed C. crossing D. were crossed

12. The storm ________ their house, they had to live in a cave.

A. destroyed B. destroying

C. having destroyed D. having been destroyed

13. With ________ she needed ________, she left the store.

A. something; to buy B. anything; having bought

C. everything; to buy D. everything; bought

14. ________ left before the deadline, it doesn't seem likely that John will finish the job.

A. Though such a short time B. Because such a short time

C. With such a short time D. As such a short time

15. With a lot of difficult problems ________, the manager felt worried all the time.

A. settled B. to be settling C. settling D. to settle

16. There ________ nothing to do, we went to the cinema and saw a adventurous film.

A. was B. being C. had D. had been

17. He entered the room, ________ .

A. his nose was red with cold B. with his nose was red with cold

C. his nose red with cold D. his nose been red with cold

18. All things ________, I think we ought to give the job to Mike.

A. considering B. considered C. having considered D. to consider

19. The weather ________ fine, they decided to go out for a walk.

A. is B. was C. being D. having been

20. The group improved its discussion they all took part in, each member ________ the duty of talking about the matter.

A. has B. having C. has had D. to have

第十一章　情态动词

第一节　考点分析

情态动词是一种本身有一定的词义，表示说话人的情绪、态度或语气的动词，但它不能单独做谓语，只能和其他动词一起构成谓语。在学习中除了情态动词的常见用法外，我们还需重视情态动词表推测以及情态动词＋have done 的用法。

考点1　情态动词表推测

情态动词可以表示说话人对事情发生的可能性的推测，当情态动词表推测时在肯定句一般使用 must，may / might，will，would，should，ought to；否定句用 can't / couldn't，may not / might not；疑问句用 can / could。

项目	形式	用法
1	情态动词＋be＋*adj.* /*n.*	对现在的情况或状态的推测
2	情态动词＋be＋doing	对正在进行的动作进行推测
3	情态动词＋have done	对过去发生的事实或状态的推测
4	情态动词＋*v.*	对将来发生的事实或状态的推测

【例】He must be very angry with you. 他一定很生你的气。

He may / must be waiting for you. 他或许 / 一定是在等你。

He must have finished his homework，because he always puts study first.

他肯定完成作业了，因为他总是把学习放在第一位。

—When will they arrive? 他们何时到达。

—They must arrive before three o'clock. 3 点之前肯定能到。

【例】Some of the apples were rotten before reaching the market and ________ away.（2006）

A. could be thrown　　B. had to be thrown　　C. could throw　　D. had to throw

【解析】B. 考查的是情态动词和被动语态，苹果和 throw away（扔掉）之间是被动的关系，由题意知此处的情态动词应该用 have to（不得不）。

【翻译】一些苹果在运到市场之前就已经烂掉了，不得不扔掉。

考点2　情态动词＋have done

【例】It can't have rained yesterday，for the ground is dry.

昨天不可能下雨了，因为地面是干的。

He asked for a leave to go home an hour ago, so he should have arrived home.

他一小时前请假回家了，所以应该已经到家了。

The boy would have been absent from school to surf the Internet at the Bar last night.

那男孩昨天晚上很可能逃学去网吧上网了。

He must have lied, because he was quite nervous when he was talking with the police.

他一定撒谎了因为他和警察说话时很紧张。

You needn't have watered the flowers, for it is going to rain. 你不必浇花的，因为要下雨了。

【例】 I didn't see him at the meeting yesterday afternoon. He ________ it. (2006)

A. mustn't attend　　B. can't have attended

C. wouldn't have attended　　D. needn't have attended

【解析】 B. 考查情态动词对过去的推测。由题意可知是对过去的否定推测，所以答案选 B。

【翻译】 我在昨天下午的会上没看到他，他一定没有来。

【例】 I'm not surprised you failed the exam. You ________ have worked harder. (2008)

A. should　　B. must　　C. would　　D. ought

【解析】 A. 考查情态动词对过去的推测。由题意知是过去本该做却没有做的意思，所以答案选 A。

【翻译】 我对你考试不及格并不感到惊讶，你本应该更努力学习。

【例】 You ________ not have seen her yesterday, for she was abroad. (2009)

A. must　　B. should　　C. could　　D. would

【解析】 C. 考查情态动词对过去的推测，由题意知是对过去的否定推测，所以答案选 C。

【翻译】 你昨天不可能会见到她，因为她出国了。

考点3　need 的用法

既可以做实义动词用，也可以做情态动词用。作为情态动词常用于疑问句，否定句。做实义动词时，参考下面的 1、3 考点。

1. 实义动词：need（需要，需求）

可构成 need+n. / to do sth

2. 情态动词：need 后直接加 do，否定形式为 need not（needn't）。

【例】 Need you go yet？ Yes, I must. /No, I needn't.

3. 被动含义：need 后接 doing 可表被动

【例】 need doing= need to be done

第二节　能力拓展

1. Jean ________ have kept his promise. I wonder why he changed his idea.

A. must　　B. should　　C. need　　D. would

2. —Could I use your bike?

—Yes, surely you ________.

A. might　B. will　C. can　D. should

3. It's nearly eight o'clock. Bruce ________ be here at any moment.

A. must　B. need　C. should　D. can

4. Tommy, you ________ play with the knife; you ________ get hurt.

A. won't; can't　B. mustn't; may　C. shouldn't; must　D. can't; shouldn't

5. When he was there, he ________ go to that coffee shop at the corner after work every day.

A. would　B. should　C. had better　D. might

6. —When can you get the film developed? I need it tomorrow morning.

—It ________ be ready by 8:00.

A. can　B. should　C. might　D. need

7. —Will you stay for another hour?

—Sorry, ________ . One of my best friends is coming to see me.

A. I mustn't　B. I can't　C. I needn't　D. I won't

8. Jason shouldn't ________ me your secret, but he meant no harm.

A. have told　B. tell　C. be telling　D. having told

9. —Are you coming for dinner?

—I'm not quite sure. I ________ go to my uncle's instead.

A. must　B. would　C. should　D. might

10. —Don't forget to visit me when you come to Beijing.

—________.

A. I don't　B. I won't　C. I can't　D. I haven't

11. He ought ________ have done so even though possible.

A. not to　B. to not　C. not　D. never

12. Jane ________ have come to the party, but she ________ not find the exact time.

A. could; could　B. might; could　C. ought; could　D. should; would

13. So many mistakes in your homework! You ________ more careful.

A. may be　B. had to　C. would be　D. should have been

14. Her brother ________ be at home now, because he was seen playing basketball in the stadium just now.

A. mustn't　B. needn't　C. can't　D. shouldn't

15. There was plenty of time. We ________.

A. mustn't have hurried　B. couldn't have hurried

C. mustn't hurry　D. needn't have hurried

16. You ________ go there if you don't want to.

A. can't　B. needn't　C. haven't　D. mustn't

17. I have been writing the report for 3 hours. I ________ it half an hour ago.
A. ought finish　B. ought to finish
C. ought have finished　D. ought to have finished

18. I have lost one of my gloves. I ________ it somewhere.
A. must drop　B. must have dropped
C. must be dropping　D. must have been dropped

19. Don't believe him. What he said ________ be true.
A. mustn't　B. needn't　C. shouldn't　D. may not

20. —________ Jack be here now?
—He ________ be here, but I'm not too sure.
A. Can; may　B. Must; needn't　C. May; mustn't　D. Can; can't

21. One ought ________ for what one hasn't done.
A. not be punished　B. not to be punished　C. to not punished　D. to not be punished

22. I didn't hear the bell ring. I ________ asleep.
A. must be　B. must have been　C. should be　D. should have been

23. Powell ________ yet, otherwise he would have telephoned me.
A. mustn't have arrived　B. shouldn't have arrived
C. can't have arrived　D. need not have arrived

24. —There were already five people in the car, but they still managed to give me a lift.
—It ________ a comfortable trip.
A. can't be　B. shouldn't be　C. mustn't have been　D. couldn't have been

25. We needn't ________ preparations for the meeting. Mr. Zhang called it off.
A. have made　B. make　C. to make　D. making

26. I didn't see her in the meeting-room this morning. She ________ at the meeting.
A. mustn't have spoken　B. shouldn't have spoken
C. needn't have spoken　D. couldn't have spoken

27. You ________ a letter to James. However, you didn't. (2020)
A. ought to write　B. ought to have written
C. should write　D. should be writing

第十二章　虚拟语气

虚拟语气是说话人表达的一种主观愿望，假设或建议等。

第一节　考点分析

考点1　if 引导的虚拟语气

时间	从句谓语形式	主句谓语形式
过去	had＋动词过去分词	would / should / might / could have＋动词过去分词
现在	动词过去式（be 用 were）	would / should / might / could＋动词原形
将来	动词过去式（be 用 were）	would / should / might / could＋动词原形
	should＋动词原形	
	were to＋动词原形	

【例】与将来事实相反的假设：

If he should go to Tsinghua University, he would make full use of his time.

如果他要上清华大学的话，他就会充分利用他的时间了。

与现在事实相反的假设：

If he were free, he would help us. 要是他有空的话，它会帮助我们的。

与过去事实相反的假设：

If I had seen the film, I would have told you about it.

我如果看过这场电影，我会把电影内容告诉你了。

【例】You ________ if you had had higher score in the examination. (2016)

A. must have got scholarship　　B. would have got scholarship

C. should get scholarship　　D. had got scholarship

【解析】B. 此题考查 If 引导的虚拟语气，从 If 从句上可以看出是对过去的虚拟。主句的谓语动词用情态动词（would/could/might/should）＋have done，故答案选 B。

【翻译】如果你考试分数更高的话，你就能拿到奖学金了。

考点2　虚拟语气的省略

当虚拟条件句的谓语动词含有 were，should，had 时，if 可省略，而将 were，should，had 等词置于句首。

【例】Should he agree to go there，we would send him there.

要是他答应去的话，我们就派他去。

Were she here，she would agree with us.

如果她在这儿的话，她会同意我们的。

Had he learnt about computers，we would have hired him to work here.

如果他懂一些电脑知识的话，我们会已经聘用他来这里工作了。

【例】You didn’t take his advice. ________ his advice，you ________ such a mistake.（2013）

A. Had you taken；wouldn’t have made　　B. If you had taken；would make

C. Were you to take；shouldn’t have made　　D. Have you taken；won’t have made

【解析】A. 此题考查 If 引导的虚拟语气，从 didn’t 判断时间为过去。对过去的虚拟主句用 would/could/should/might have done 形式，从句用 had done 形式。If 从句中含有 had，省略 if，had 提到主语的前面。

【翻译】你没有听他的建议，如果你采纳的话，就不会犯这样的错误了。

考点3　混合虚拟语气

有时，虚拟条件句中，主、从句的动作若不是同时发生时，须区别对待。

1. 从句的动作与过去事实相反，而主句的动作与现在事实不符

【例】If I had worked hard at school，I would be an engineer now，too.

如果我在学校学习刻苦的话，我现在也会是工程师了。

2. 从句的动作与现在事实相反，而主句的动作与过去事实不符

【例】If he were free today，we would have sent him to Beijing.

如果他今天有空的话，我们会已经派他去北京了。

3. 从句的动作与过去发生的情况相反，而主句的动作与现在事实不符

【例】If it had not been raining too much，the crops would be growing much better.

如果天不下太多的雨的话，庄稼会长得更好。

考点4　含蓄虚拟语气

常用来表示虚拟条件的介词有 but for，without；连词有 but that，or，otherwise 等等，它们表示的虚拟条件都可以替换 if 从句。

对现在/将来的虚拟：would/could/might/should＋do

对过去的虚拟：would/could/might/should＋have done

But that I saw it（＝If I had not seen it），I could not have believed it.

要不是亲眼看见的话，我是不会相信的。

【例】I passed the test. I ________ it without your help.（2010）

A. would not pass　　B. wouldn’t have passed

C. didn’t pass　　D. had not passed

【解析】B. 此题考查的是 without 引导的含蓄的虚拟语气。由题意知，本题是对过去的虚拟。

【翻译】我通过了这次考试，没有你们帮助的话我就不会通过了。

考点5 （should）＋do 引导的虚拟语气

1. 动词后的宾语从句

表示主观判断，推测，建议，命令和要求的动词通常引起虚拟的宾语从句，此类动词后的宾语从句中采用：“（should）＋do”虚拟语气的形式。该类词有：advise、ask、demand、insist（坚决要求），order、propose、request、suggest（建议）、require、urge、desire、command、recommend 等。

【例】The teacher advised that we should make good use of every minute here.

老师劝我们要好好地利用在这儿的每一分钟。

The Party asked that we should serve the people heart and soul.

党要求我们要全心全意地为人民服务。

注：该类动词的名词、形容词形式，及过去分词形式引导的同位语从句和表语从句也要虚拟，采用：“（should）＋do”虚拟语气的形式。这类词包括：advice（忠告）、decision（决定）、demand（要求）、desire（渴望）、order（命令）、proposal（建议）、recommendation（推荐）、requirement（要求）、suggestion（建议）、advisable（明智的、可取得）、urgent（紧急的）、asked、required 等。

【例】I'm for the suggestion that a special board ________ to examine the problem. （2016）

A. be set up B. will set up C. must be set up D. has to be set up

【解析】A. 此题考查 suggestion 引导的从句；从句谓语动词用（should）do。

【翻译】我同意这个建议——建立特别委员会来调查这个问题。

2. 在 it is/was＋形容词＋从句的结构中，从句的谓语动词用（should）＋do 表虚拟

这些词包括：important、vital、necessary、crucial、key 、strange、essential、natural、imperative（迫切的）、possible、probable

【例】It is necessary that effective messures（should）be taken to protect the environment.

采取有效措施保护环境是非常必要的

3. 由 lest（以防、以免）、in case（以防）、for fear that（恐怕、以免）引导的目的状语从句，从句的谓语动词用（should）＋do 表虚拟

【例】She examined the door again for fear that a thief should come in.

她又把门检查了一遍，以防盗贼的进入。

He started out earlier lest he should be late.

他很早就出发了以防迟到。

【例】It is necessary that he ________ the task by the end of next week. （2010）

A. fulfill B. will fulfill C. will have fulfilled D. fulfills

【解析】A. 此题考查的是 necessary 引导的虚拟语气，从句的谓语动词用（should）＋do。

【翻译】他截止到下周末把工作完成是非常必要的。

考点6 wish 引导的虚拟语气

对现在的虚拟：动词过去式（be 用 were）

对过去的虚拟：过去完成时（had done ）或 情态动词（would/could）＋have done

对将来的虚拟：情态动词（would/could）＋do

【例】I wish I learnt English well.（对现在）

我但愿我已学好了英语。

I wish I had been there with them last week.（对过去）

我但愿上周跟他们一起在那儿。

He wishes we could go and play games with him.（对将来）

他但愿我们能去跟他做游戏。

【例】I wish you ________ here last night. All of us were waiting for your arrival.（2006）

A. came　　B. had come　　C. come　　D. will come

【解析】B. 此题考查的是 wish 引导的虚拟语气，由 last night 知本题是对过去的虚拟，故从句的谓语动词用过去完成时的形式。

【翻译】我但愿你昨天晚上就来了，所有的人都在等待你的到来。

考点7　would rather（sooner/as soon）引导的虚拟语气

对现在和将来的虚拟：did/were

对过去的虚拟：had done

【例】I'd rather you had seen the film yesterday.（对过去）

我宁愿你昨天看过了这场电影。

I'd rather you were here now.（对现在）

我宁愿你现在在这儿。

We'd rather you went here tomorrow.（对将来）

我宁愿你明天去那儿。

【例】Mr. Smith would rather we ________ now，but we must go to work.（2005）

A. not leave　　B. didn't leave　　C. are not to leave　　D. won't leave

【解析】B. 此题考查的是 would rather 引导的虚拟语气，由 now 知本题是对现在的虚拟，故从句的谓语动词用一般过去时的形式。

【翻译】史密斯先生宁愿我们现在不要离开，但是我们必须要去工作。

考点8　It is＋（high/about）time＋（that）引导的虚拟语气为过去式/should（不可省）＋do 两种形式

【例】It is time that I went to pick up my daughter at school.

我该去学校接我的女儿了。

It is high time you went to work. 你早该上班了。

【例】It's high time we ________ something to stop road accidents.（2006）

A. are doing　　B. did　　C. will do　　D. do

【解析】B. 此题考查的是 It is（high/about）time（that）＋从句结构的虚拟，该构中从句的谓

语动词应该用一般过去时的形式。

【翻译】该是我们做些事来阻止道路事故的时候了。

考点9 as if/as though 和 if only 引导的虚拟语气

对现在的虚拟：动词过去式（be 用 were）

对过去的虚拟：过去完成时（had done ）

对将来的虚拟：情态动词（would/could）＋do

【例】They began to talk warmly as if they had known each other for long.（对过去）

他们开始热烈的谈论起来就好像他们已相互认识很久了。

He coughed（咳嗽）twice as if someone would come.（对将来）

他咳嗽两声就好像有人要来了。

【例】Look at the terrible situation I am in! If only I ________ your advice.

A. follow　B. would follow　C. had followed　D. have followed

【解析】C. 本题考查的是 if only 引导的虚拟语气，从题干中可以看出是对过去的虚拟，从句的谓语动词用过去完成时的形式。

【翻译】看我现在的糟糕状况，当时我要是听你的建议就好了。

第二节　真题演练

1. ________your advice yesterday，I would have missed the train.（2004）

A. Had I not taken　B. If I didn't take

C. If I haven't taken　D. Provided I didn't take

2. It is high time you ________ the problem carefully about what you will do in the future.（2004）

A. are studied　B. must study　C. studied　D. study

3. He ________ killed last night if he had taken part in the surprise attack on the night.（2005）

A. might be　B. would be

C. might have been　D. should have been

4. I ________ a little earlier，but I met a friend of mine on the way.（2006）

A. should arrive　B. would be arriving

C. could have arrived　D. arrived

5. I would rather you ________ to the party with her.（2006）

A. go　B. went　C. will go　D. has gone

6. It's necessary that the problem ________ in some way or other.（2006）

A. is settled　B. has been settled　C. be settled　D. was settled

7. One of the requirements for a fire is that the material ________ to its burning temperature.（2007）

A. is heated　B. will be heated　C. be heated　D. would be heated

8. It's high time ________ about the traffic problem. (2008)

A. something was done　B. something is done

C. anything will be done　D. nothing to be done

9. The teacher insisted that we ________ our homework before 9:00 o'clock. (2009)

A. finished　B. had finished　C. finish　D. was finishing

10. ________, everything would have been all right. (2009)

A. He had been here　B. Been here he had

C. Here he had been　D. Had he been here

11. ________ tomorrow, he would be able to see the opening ceremony. (2010)

A. Would he come　B. If he comes　C. Was he coming　D. Were he to come

12. ________ right now, she would get there on Sunday. (2011)

A. Would she leave　B. If she leave　C. Were she to leave　D. If she had left

13. I don't think it advisable that Tom ________ to the job since he has no experience. (2011)

A. is assigned　B. will be assigned

C. be assigned　D. has been assigned

14. ________ for your help, we wouldn't have succeeded. (2011)

A. Hadn't it been　B. Had it not been　C. If it had been　D. If it were

15. My advice is that she ________ to apologize to him. (2013)

A. go　B. went　C. goes　D. has gone

16. He asks that he ________ an opportunity to explain why he's refused to go there. (2013)

A. is given　B. must give　C. should give　D. be given

17. I am sorry that he ________ in such poor health. (2013)

A. are　B. shall be　C. were　D. should be

18. His mother often says to him, "It's high time that you ________." (2020)

A. got married and settle down　B. getting married and settle down

C. would get married and settle down　D. got married and settled down

第三节　能力拓展

1. If only he ________ quietly as the doctor instructed, he would not suffer so much now.

A. lies　B. lay　C. had lain　D. should lie

2. How I wish every family ________ a large house with a beautiful garden!

A. has　B. had　C. will have　D. had had

3. You did not let me drive. If we ________ in turn, you ________ so tired.

A. drove; didn't get　B. drove; wouldn't get

C. were driving; wouldn't get　D. had driven; wouldn't have got

4. ________ it rain tomorrow, we would have to put off the visit to the Yangpu Bridge.

A. Were B. Should C. Would D. Will

5. When a pencil is partly in a glass of water, it looks as if it ________ .

A. breaks B. has broken C. were broken D. had been broken

6. She wishes she ________to the theater last night.

A. went B. would go C. had gone D. were going

7. —Would you have called her up ?

—Yes, but I ________ busy doing my homework.

A. was B. were C. had been D. would be

8. I was ill that day, otherwise I ________ the sports meet.

A. would have taken part in B. took part in

C. had taken part in D. would take part in

9. ________ the clouds, you would find the airplane in the sky easily.

A. Had it not been for B. If it were not

C. If it had not been for D. Were it not for

10. If my lawyer ________ here last Sunday, he ________ me from going.

A. had been; would have prevented B. had been; would prevent

C. were; prevent D. were; would have prevented

11. ________ hard, he would have passed the exam.

A. If he were to work B. Had he worked C. Should he work D. Were he to work

12. ________ today, he would get there by Friday.

A. Were he to leave B. If he had left C. Did he to leave D. Had he left

13. Had you listened to the doctor, you ________ all right now.

A. are B. were C. would be D. would have been

14. I did not see your sister at the meeting. If she ________, she would have met my brother.

A. has come B. did come C. come D. had come

15. If it ________ for the snow, we ________ the mountain yesterday.

A. were not; could have climb B. were not; could climb

C. had not been; could have climbed D. hadn't been; could climb

16. Without electricity, human life ________ quite difficult today.

A. is B. will be C. would have been D. would be

17. —I am going to tell her the news.

—I would as soon you ________ her about it.

A. didn't tell B. don't tell C. hadn't tell D. won't tell

18. It was requested that the play ________ again.

A. should put on B. would put on C. be put on D. put on

19. She insisted that a doctor ________ immediately.

A. had sent for　　B. send　　C. be sent for　　D. was sent

20. If only I ________ my watch!

A. hadn't lost　　B. haven't lost　　C. didn't lost　　D. don't lose

21. But for water, it ________ impossible to live on the earth.

A. is　　B. would be　　C. were　　D. wouldn't be

22. I would rather you ________ anything about it for the time being.

A. do　　B. didn't do　　C. don't　　D. didn't

23. The kind-hearted couple treat the orphan very well as though he ________ their own son.

A. is　　B. were　　C. had been　　D. should be

24. It is high time that we ________ a meeting to discuss this problem.

A. hold　　B. held　　C. have held　　D. had held

25. We ________ last night, but we went to the cinema instead.

A. must have studied　　B. might study

C. would study　　D. should have studied

26. ________the whole situation, I wouldn't have said it. (2018. 6)

A. If I should know　　B. If I knew

C. If I had known　　D. If I were to know

27. It's necessary ________ the dictionary immediately. (2018. 14)

A. that he will return　　B. that he returned

C. that he return　　D. that he has returned

第十三章　主谓一致

第一节　考点分析

考点1　语法上的一致

即主语为单数，谓语用单数，主语为复数，谓语也用复数。

1. 当主语是 and，both…and 连接的并列结构

如果主语指的是两个或两个以上的人或物，则谓语动词用复数。

【例】My mother and I have seen the film.

我妈妈和我已看过这部电影。

Both rice and wheat are grown in this part of China.

在中国的这个地方既种稻子又种小麦。

注意：由 and 连接的并列主语前面分别有 each，every，no 修饰时，其谓语动词用单数形式。

【例】Every boy and every girl has to receive education in our country.

在我国每一个男女孩子都得受教育。

No student and no teacher was invited to the party.

师生没有被邀请参加晚会。

2. 就前原则　谓语动词同前面主语保持一致的关系

如 with，along with，together with，as well as，like，rather than，but，except，besides，including，in addition to，谓语动词同前面主语一致的关系。

【例】The teacher with two students was at the meeting.

那位老师和两个学生参加了会议。

The girl as well as the boys has learned to drive a car.

这个姑娘和男孩子一道，也学会了开汽车。

Nobody but Jane knows the secret.

只有简知道这个秘密。

All but one were here just now.

刚才除了一个人外都来了。

3. “many a＋单数名词”做主语

“many a（很多）/more than one（不只一个）＋单数名词”做主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

【例】Many a student has been to Beijing.

很多学生去过北京。

There is more than one answer to your question.

你的问题不只有一个答案。

4. “one of＋复数名词＋定语从句”的用法

“one of＋复数名词＋定语从句”之前有 the only，the very，the 等限定词和修饰语时，定语从句的谓语动词用单数形式。

【例】Tom is the only one of those boys who is willing to help the old man.

汤姆是唯一的一个愿意帮助那个老人的男孩。

He is the only one of the students who has been a winner of scholarship for three years.

他是这三年来唯一的一个获得奖学金的学生。

注意：如没有这些限定词和修饰语，定语从句的谓语动词采用复数形式。

【例】Tom is one of the boys who are always ready to help others.

汤姆是个随时愿意帮助别人的男孩。

5. 成双成对的名词做主语

如 glasses（眼镜），scissors（剪刀），shorts（短裤），shoes（鞋子），trousers（裤子）等做主语，其后的谓语动词用复数形式。

【例】His glasses were broken，so he can’t see well.

他的眼镜碎了，因而看不清楚。

His trousers are made of cotton.

他的裤子是棉布的。

注意：若这类名词前带有 pair 等表示单位的名词时，则以这些单位名词的单、复数形式决定动词的形式。

【例】Two pairs of trousers are missing. 两条裤子不见了。

This pair of shoes is not on sale. 这双鞋不出售。

【例】The father writes in his will that every son and daughter ________ a share of his property.（2010）

A. has　　B. to have　　C. having　　D. have

【解析】A. 考查主谓一致，由 every 修饰的名词，由 and 连接，谓语动词用单数，所以答案选 A。

【翻译】他的父亲在遗书里写道，每一个儿子和女儿都能继承他的一部分财产。

考点2　意义上的一致

意义上的一致是指谓语动词与主语的一致取决于主语所表达的意义。若主语形式上为复数，而意义上是单数，动词要用单数；若主语形式上为单数，而意义上为复数，则动词用复数。

1. 由 and 连接两个并列主语

其后的谓语动词一般用复数形式。但如果两个单数名词共用一个冠词指同一个人、同一事物、单一概念时，谓语动词要用单数。

【例】The worker and writer has written a new novel.

这位工人兼作家写了一部新小说。(两个名词共用一个冠词)

There is a journalist and writer living in America whose name is Alex Haley.

在美国有一个名叫亚利克斯·哈利的记者兼作家。

2. 形复实单的名词做主语

①以-ics结尾表示学科的名词做主语，通常表示单数意义，谓语动词用单数形式。这类名词有：physics，politics，mathematics，economics，athletics，electronics等。

【例】Physics ________ my favorite subject when I studied in the university.

A. were　　B. was　　C. is　　D. are

【解析】B. 考查主谓一致。表示学科名词形复实单，谓语动词用单数，故选B。

【翻译】当我上大学时，物理是我最喜欢的学科。

Economics is a science of the way in which industry and trade produce and use wealth.

经济学是研究工业、贸易生财和用财之道。

②news，maths，plastics，the United States等虽然以-s结尾，但意义上作为单数看待。

【例】Mathematics/Physics is a required subject for us.

数学/物理是我们必修的科目。

Every possible means has been used to prevent the air pollution，but the sky is still not clear.

所有可能的制止空气污染的方法都用了，但天空还是不晴朗的。

3. family，team，class，government，audience，crew，committee等集体名词，如果作整体看待，谓语动词用单数形式；如果作个别成员看待，谓语动词用复数形式。

【例】The family are sitting at the breakfast table.

这家人正坐在早餐桌旁。

My family is a large one.

我家是个大家庭。

The class are doing experiment in the lab.

全班同学正在实验室里做实验。

4. 表示时间、距离、金钱、重量等的复数名词做主语，通常看作一个整体，谓语动词用单数形式。

Twenty years has passed since we left school. 我们离开学校已经20年了。

Ten thousand dollars is a lot of money. 一万美元是一大笔钱。

5. “a number of＋复数可数名词”与“the number of＋复数可数名词”做主语

“a number of＋复数可数名词”表示“一些、许多”的意思，谓语动词用复数；“the number of＋复数可数名词”表示“……的数目、数量”，谓语动词用单数。

【例】A number of books are missing from the library.

图书馆丢了许多书。

The number of workers in this factory is increasing.

这家工厂的工人数目正在增加。

6. “分数/百分数＋of短语”做主语

“分数/百分数＋of 短语”做主语，这时要以 of 短语中的名词是否为复数而定。

【例】Two fifths of the land in that district is covered with trees and grass.

该地区⅖的土地为树木和草所覆盖。

Two-thirds of the earth’s surface is sea.

地球表面的⅔是海洋。

Two-thirds of the people were against the nuclear program.

⅔的人都反对核计划。

【例】Every means ________ but without much result.（2007）

A. have been tried　　B. has been tried　　C. have tried　　D. has tried

【解析】B. 考查主谓一致 主语 means 此处是单数含义（方式的意思），由 every 修饰，谓语动词用单数 has，means 与 try 之间是被动的关系，所以答案选 B。

【翻译】各种方法都尝试了，但都没有什么结果。

考点3 就近原则

就近原则是指谓语动词要与它最邻近的名词或代词保持人称与数的一致。

【例】or，either…or，nor，neither…nor，not only…but also，not…but，there be 句型连接的并列主语，通常按照就近一致原则，谓语动词的单、复数形式依照靠近它的主语而定。

【例】Neither he nor I am a student.

他和我都不是学生。

There is a pen，two chairs and a desk.

有一支钢笔，两把椅子和一张桌子。

Either his friends or his brother is wrong.

不是他的朋友们错了，就是他哥哥错了。

Not only I but also Jane and Mary are tired of having one examination after another. 不仅我而且简和玛丽都讨厌一个接一个的考试。

【例】Neither Mary nor her sister ________ to the party.（2007）

A. go　　B. are going　　C. have gone　　D. is going

【解析】D. 考查主谓一致，neither…nor 是就近原则，谓语动词与 her sister 保持一致，所以答案选 D。

【翻译】玛丽和他的姐姐都没去这次聚会。

【例】There ________ some mistakes in your composition.（2008）

A. have　　B. has　　C. seems to be　　D. seem to be

【解析】D. 考查主谓一致，there be（有……）/there seem to be（好像有……）结构是就近原则，这里的谓语 seem，与 mistakes 保持一致，所以答案选 D。

【翻译】你的作文好像有一些错误。

第二节　能力拓展

1. About 60 percent of the students ________ from the south, and the rest of them ________ from the north and foreign countries.

A. are; is　　B. are; are　　C. is; are　　D. are; am

2. Half of the workers here ________ under 30 ________ .

A. is; years　　B. are; year old　　C. is; years old　　D. are; years of age

3. Now Tom with his classmates ________ football on the playground.

A. play　　B. are playing　　C. plays　　D. is playing

4. The number of pages in this dictionary ________ about two thousand.

A. are　　B. has　　C. have　　D. is

5. Thirty dollars ________ too expensive.

A. are　　B. is　　C. were　　D. be

6. The secretary and principal ________ at the meeting now.

A. are speaking　　B. is speaking

C. were making a speech　　D. have a speech

7. Nothing but one desk and six chairs ________ in the room.

A. are　　B. is stayed　　C. is　　D. are left

8. Between the two roads ________ a TV tower called "Skyscraper Tower".

A. stands　　B. standing　　C. which stands　　D. stand

9. Either of you ________ going there tonight.

A. will　　B. was　　C. is　　D. are

10. You as well ________ right.

A. I are　　B. I am　　C. as I am　　D. as I are

11. All but Dick ________ in Class Three this term.

A. are　　B. is　　C. were　　D. was

12. I took mathematics and physics because I think that ________ very important for me to make further research in this field.

A. what is　　B. they are　　C. this　　D. which are

13. Every student and every teacher ________ .

A. are going to attend the meeting　　B. have attended the meeting

C. has attended the meeting　　D. is attended the meeting

14. Three fourths of the bread ________ by Bob, and the rest of the bread ________ left on the table.

A. was eaten; were　　B. were eaten; was

C. were eaten; were　　D. was eaten; was

15. This pair of shoes ________ .

A. is her　　B. is hers　　C. are hers　　D. are her

16. There ________ no life on the moon.

A. is said to have　　B. are said to have　　C. is said to be　　D. are said to be

17. She is the only one among the ________ writers who ________ stories for children.

A. woman；writes　　B. women；write　　C. women；writes　　D. woman；write

18. Mike and John's ________.

A. father is a teacher　　B. fathers are teachers　　C. father are teachers　　D. fathers are teacher

19. Three-fourths of the homework ________ today.

A. has finished　　B. has been finished　　C. have finished　　D. have been finished

20. More than 60 percent of the world's radio programmes ________ in England.

A. is　　B. was　　C. are　　D. be

21. ________ work has been done to improve the people's living standard.

A. A great deal of　　B. A great many　　C. A large number of　　D. Many

22. The rest of the magazines ________ within half an hour.

A. is sold out　　B. are sold out　　C. was sold out　　D. were sold out

23. There ________ a lot of sugar in the jar.

A. has　　B. have　　C. is　　D. are

24. Yesterday the League secretary and monitor ________ asked to make a speech at the meeting.

A. is　　B. was　　C. are　　D. were.

25. Mary as well as her sisters ________ Chinese in China.

A. are studying　　B. have studied　　C. studies　　D. study

26. Neither my friends nor I ________able to persuade him to change his mind. （2020）

A. is　　B. are　　C. am　　D. were

第十四章　反义疑问句

反义疑问句是附加在陈述句之后，对陈述句所表示的事实或观点提出疑问的句子；附加疑问实际上是一种简略的一般疑问句。

反义疑问句的结构：陈述句（主语＋谓语……），陈述部分（主语＋谓语＋……），反问部分？

说明：如果陈述部分为肯定句，则反问部分结构为：“情态动词/助动词/be 动词＋not＋主语（人称代词主格）？”如果陈述部分为否定句，则反问部分结构为：“情态动词/助动词/be 动词＋主语（人称代词主格）？”。

第一节　考点分析

考点1　祈使句的反义疑问

1. 一般的祈使句

（1）表示肯定意义

用 will you/won’t you 进行反义疑问。

Go with me，will you / won’t you ？跟我走吧，好吗/不好吗？

（2）表示否定意义

用 will you 进行反义疑问。

Don’t do that again，will you ？别再这样做，好吗？

【例】Go and get some water，________ ？（2003）

A. don’t you　　B. shall you　　C. can’t you　　D. won’t you

【解析】D. 肯定意义的祈使句，反义疑问用 will you 或 won’t you 。只有 D 项符合。

2. 特殊的祈使句

（1）Let’s 引导的祈使句

用 shall we 进行反义疑问。

Let’s go for a walk，shall we？一起去散步，好吗？

（2）Let us 引导的祈使句

用 will you 进行反义疑问。

Let us have a try，will you？让我们试一试，好吗？

考点2　must 表推测时的反义疑问

must 表示“必须”或“有必要”时，肯定意义时，反意疑问部分用 can’t。

We must stay here after school，needn’ t we? 放学后我们必须留在这里，不是吗?

must be 表示“猜测”，一定（事实不是这样的吗?），表示反意疑问时用 be 动词＋人称代词主格，其中人称代词与句子主语保持一致。

The man must be Jim’ s father，isn’ t he? 那人一定是吉姆的父亲吧?

当 must 用来表示对过去的情况进行“推测”（must＋have done）时，如强调对过去情况的推测（一般句中有过去的时间状语），反意疑问句部分要用“didn’ t＋主语”。

She must have read the novel last week，didn’ t she? 她上星期一定读了这本小说了，是吗?

如果强调动作的完成（一般没有过去时间状语），反意疑问句部分要用“haven’ t/hasn’ t＋主语”

You must have told her about it，haven’ t you? 你一定把这事告诉她了，是吗?

【例】He must have stayed up late last night，________ he?（2011）

A. mustn’t　　B. needn’t　　C. had you　　D. didn’t

【解析】D. 根据句意：“他昨天晚上一定熬夜到很晚，不是吗?”由 last night 可知时态是过去式，前半句是对过去事实的肯定推测，后面的反义问句要用 didn’t。

【翻译】他昨天晚上一定熬夜到很晚，对吗?

考点3　否定句的反义疑问

当陈述句中有否定词：hardly，never，seldom，little，few，nowhere，nothing 等时，反义疑问用肯定。

Some plants never blossom（开花），do they? 有些植物从不开花，对吗?

【例】You never told us his phone number，________?（2008）

A. hadn’t you　　B. didn’t you　　C. had you　　D. did you

【解析】D. 句中有否定词 never 可以排除 A、B 两项；句子时态为一般过去式故借用助动词 did 来反义疑问。

【翻译】你从来没告诉过我们他的电话号码，对吗?

考点4　复合句的反义疑问

大多数复合句的反义疑问句都对主句进行反义疑问。

He said he wanted to visit Japan，didn’ t he? 他说他想去日本看看，他不是那样说的吗?

注意：陈述部分主语是第一人称 I 或 we ；谓语是（don’t ）think/suppose/believe/imagine 等引导的宾语从句，这种宾语从句的反义疑问句应与从句的主语，谓语部分一致。

I don’t believe she has done it，has she ? 我认为她没有做，对吗?

考点5

当陈述部分的主语是 everybody，everyone，someone，nobody，no one，somebody 等复合不定代词时，附加疑问句中的主语通常用 they。但亦可用 he，尤其是 nobody，no one 等做主语，具有否定概念时。

【例】Somebody phoned while I was out，didn’t they /didn’t he ？我出去时有人给我打电话了，不是这样吗？

考点6

当陈述部分的主语是不定代词 everything，nothing，anything，something 或指示代词 this，that，these，those 时，反义疑问句中的主语一般用 it。

【例】Everything is ready，isn’t it？一切就绪了，不是吗？

考点7

当陈述部分出现 I’m…时，反义疑问用 aren’t I。

【例】I am as tall as your sister，aren’t I ？我跟你姐一样高，不是吗？

考点8

当陈述句为 there be 结构时，反义疑问用 be＋there …

【例】There’s something wrong with your watch，isn’t there？你的表有问题，不是吗？

考点9

当陈述部分为 You’d like to＋v. 时，反义疑问用 wouldn’t＋主语。

【例】You’d like to go with me，wouldn’t you？你想和我们一起去，不是吗？

考点10

当陈述部分出现否定前缀时，反义疑问仍用否定。

【例】He was unsuccessful，wasn’t he？他是不成功的，不是吗？

Tom dislikes the book，doesn’t he？汤姆不喜欢这本书，不是吗？

考点11

当陈述部分出现 used to 时，反义疑问用 usedn’t 或 didn’t。

【例】The old man used to smoke，didn’t he？或 usedn’t he？这位老人过去常常吸烟，不是吗？

Tom used to live here，usedn’t he？或 didn’t he？汤姆以前住在这儿，不是吗？

【例】He used to get up at six in the morning，________ ？（2004）

A. used he　　B. did he　　C. didn’t he　　D. should he

【解析】C. 当陈述部分含有情态动词 used to 时，疑问部分可用 usedn’t 或 didn’t。

【翻译】他过去常常早上六点起床，不是吗？

考点12

当陈述部分出现 ought to 时，反义疑问用 oughtn’t 或 shouldn’t。

【例】He ought to know the answer，oughtn’t he？他应该知道答案，不是吗？

We ought to read this book，oughtn’t we? 或 shouldn’t we? 我们应该读这本书，不是吗?

考点13

当陈述部分有 had better＋v. 时，反义疑问用 hadn’t you?

【例】You’d better read it by yourself，hadn’t you? 你最好自己去读，不好吗?

考点14

当陈述部分有 would rather＋v. 时，反义疑问用 wouldn’t＋主语。

【例】He would rather read it ten times than recite it，wouldn’t he?

他宁可读 10 遍也不愿意背诵，是吗?

第二节　能力拓展

1. Don’t forget to give Polly some food and change her water，________ ?

A. shall we　B. will you　C. won’t you　D. do you

2. There is little juice in the glass，________ ?

A. is there　B. isn’t there　C. is it　D. isn’t it

3. —He’s seldom late for school，________ ?

—No. He is used to going to school early.

A. isn’t he　B. has he　C. hasn’t he　D. is he

4. —This bus is always late，________ ?

—Sure，it is.

A. is not it　B. isn’t it　C. isn’t the bus　D. doesn’t it

5. —You’re new here，________ ?

—Yes，I’m from Dujiangyan. I came here last week.

A. do you　B. don’t you　C. are you　D. aren’t you

6. You used to be outgoing，________ ?

A. do you　B. don’t you　C. didn’t you　D. did you

7. He has never watched such an important match，________ he?

A. hasn’t　B. has　C. is　D. isn’t

8. They have to work at once，________ they?

A. have　B. haven’t　C. do　D. don’t

9. She often feels tired，________ she?

A. doesn’t　B. does　C. is　D. isn’t

10. Let’s take a short rest，________ ?

A. do we　B. aren’t we　C. will you　D. shall we

11. Hundreds of people lost their lives in the accident，________ they?

A. don't　　B. didn't　　C. do　　D. did

12. Lily looks like Lucy, ________ ?

A. is Lily　　B. isn't she　　C. does Lilly　　D. doesn't she

13. Tom often has lunch at school, ________ ?

A. doesn't Tom　　B. doesn't he　　C. does Tom　　D. does he

14. He hardly hurt himself in the accident, ________ ?

A. doesn't he　　B. didn't he　　C. did he　　D. does he

15. Let's search the Internet for some information about famous people, ________ ?

A. will you　　B. won't you　　C. shall we　　D. shall you

16. Eric's never seen a three-D movie at the cinema, ________ ?

A. hasn't he　　B. has he　　C. isn't he　　D. is he

17. He's flown to Hainan for a holiday, ________ he?

A. isn't　　B. hasn't　　C. wasn't　　D. has

18. —Let's go skating, ________ ?

—OK. Let's go.

A. do you　　B. don't you　　C. will you　　D. shall we

19. Bob, you watched the fashion show last night, ________ ?

A. weren't you　　B. didn't you　　C. haven't you　　D. won't you

20. I don't think she has gone to Beijing, ________ ?

A. has she　　B. hasn't she　　C. do I　　D. don't I

21. Lovely weather, ________?

A. is it　　B. isn' t it　　C. right　　D. OK

第十五章　倒装结构

第一节　考点分析

英语的基本句型是主语＋谓语。如果将主语与谓语调换，称倒装句。

倒装句分全倒装句和半倒装句。

考点1

全倒装：主语与谓语交换位置不需任何助动词，叫全倒装。

1. 当 here，there，out，in，up，down 等副词放在句首时，句子需全倒装。

There goes the bell！铃响了！

There lived an old man. 那儿住着一个老人

Here comes the bus. 公交车来了。

注意：主语必须为名词。如果是代词时不需倒装。

如：Away he went. 他走远了。

2. 方位状语在句首

如：In front of the house stopped a police car. 房子前面停了一辆警车。

Under the tree sat a boy. 树下坐着一个男孩。

【例】 Hearing the dog barking fiercely，away ________.

A. fleeing the thief　　　　B. was fleeing the thief

C. the thief was fleeing　　　　D. fled the thief

【解析】 D. 考查了全部倒装句。表地点方位的副词 away 放句首时，句子要全部倒装。正常的语序是：The thief fled away.

【翻译】 听到狗的狂叫声，小偷逃掉了。

考点2

半倒装：即只把谓语的一部分（如助动词、情态动词等）放到主语前。有以下数种情况：

1. 否定词引导半倒装

如：little，never，not，no，hardly，rarely，seldom，few，nowhere，by no means（决不），at no time（决不），in no case（决不），under no circumstances（决不）

如：Never shall I forget you. 我永远不会忘记你。

Little did I understand what he said to me at that time.

我几乎不理解那个时候他对我说的话。

【例】Little ________ that the police are about to arrest him.（2006）

A. does he know　B. he knows　C. he doesn't know　D. he didn't know

【解析】A. 考查否定意义副词位于句首。否定词 little 位于句首要半倒装，助动词位于主语的前面只能选 A。

【翻译】他不知道警察要逮捕他。

2. 特殊否定短语引导半倒装

如：not only…but also（不仅……而且），hardly/scarcely…when（刚……就），no sooner…than（刚……就）等连接两个并列句，连词在句首，前句半倒装，后句不倒装。

如：Not only is he a teacher，but he is also a poet.

他不仅是一位教师，而且是一位诗人。

No sooner had I got to the bus stop than the bus started.

我刚到车站，车就开了。

注意：not only…but also 连接两个并列主语时不需倒装。

如：Not only you but also I like playing chess.

不仅是你，而且我也喜欢下棋。

【例】________ sat down ________ the phone rang.（2010）

A. No sooner had he；than　B. No sooner he had；than

C. No sooner had he；when　D. No sooner he had；when

【解析】A. 考查 no sooner…than。首先 No sooner 要与 than 搭配，排除 C、D。否定词 No sooner 位于句首主句要半倒装，只能选择 A。

【翻译】他一坐下电话就响了。

3. only＋状语引导半倒装

如：Only then did I realize that I was wrong.

直到那个时候我才认识到我错了。

Only in this way can I learn from my fault.

只有通过这种方式，我才能从我的错误中学习。

Only when the war was over in 1918，was he able to get back to work.

直到 1918 年战争结束，他才重返工作。

注意：only 强调主语不倒装：

Only the teachers can use the room.

只有老师才能使用房间。

【例】Only when we came back home ________ that my watch was missing.（2006）

A. did I find　B. I found　C. I had found　D. had I found

【解析】A. 考查 only＋状语从句位于句首时，主句构成半倒装，助动词位于主语的前面，排除 B、C。又因为动作发生在过去所以选 A。

【翻译】只有在我们回到家，我才发现自己的手表不见了。

4. so/such 结构引导半导装

在 so/such… that 句型中，当 so/such 在句首时，主句半倒装，that 从句不倒。

如：So easy is it that a clild can learn it.

这是如此的简单以至于小孩子都会。

So hard did he work that he finally won the fame.

他工作如此努力以至于最终赢得了荣誉。

【例】So loudly ________ that all the people in the room got a fright.（2012）

A. he shouted　　B. shout he　　C. did he shout　　D. he did shout

【解析】C. 考查 So＋副词……位于句首，主句构成半倒装，助动词位于主语的前面。只能选择 C。

【翻译】他如此大声地吼叫，让房间里的所有人都吓一跳。

5. so… 和 neither/nor… 的用法

（1）so＋be 动词/助动词/情态动词＋主语——此句型只限于肯定句中，表示“某人或某物情况也是如此”。

如：He has lost the address. So have I.

他丢了地址，我也是。（＝I have lost the address，too.）

Mary likes playing the piano. So does Jane.

玛丽喜欢弹钢琴，简也是。（＝Jane likes playing the piano，too.）

If he goes there，so will I.

如果他要去哪儿，我也去。（＝I will go there，too.）

（2）否定句要用 Neither/ Nor ＋ be 动词/助动词/情态动词＋主语，表示“某人或物情况也不这样”。

I have never been to Beijing. Neither/Nor has my brother.

我绝没有去过北京，我弟弟也没去过。

I have no excuse for being late，nor does he.

我没有迟到的理由，他也没有。

【例】—“I don’t drink coffee at all.”（2012）

—“________.”

A. So don’t I　　B. I do either　　C. Nor I do　　D. Neither do I

【解析】D. 考查半倒装，题干为否定句。表示“某人也不这样时”要用 Neither/ Nor ＋ be 动词/助动词/情态动词＋主语，故只能选 D。

【翻译】——我一点也不喝咖啡。

——我也一样。

（3）若前面句子结构中既出现了 be 动词又出现了实义动词或者其它不同的形式通常用 so it is with… 或 It’s the same with…

— Mary likes playing the piano，but she can’t play it well.

玛丽喜欢弹钢琴，但是弹得不怎么样。

— So it is with her brother. / It’s the same with her brother.

他的弟弟也是。

注意：So ＋主语＋be 动词/助动词/情态动词此句型表示赞同，“某人或某物确实如此”。

—You seem to like tea.

你好像喜欢茶。

—So I do.

是的，我确实喜欢

—Mary went to the park yesterday.

玛丽昨天去公园。

—So she did，and so did I.

她确实去了，我也去了。

6. 省略了 if 的虚拟条件句

在 if 引导的虚拟条件句中，省略 if，把 had、were、should 提到主语的前面，构成半倒装。

Had I been informed earlier，I could have done something.

如果我早点知道的话，我就会做点啥。

Were she here，she would support the notion.

如果她在这，她就会支持这个想法。

【例】________ tomorrow，he would be able to see the opening ceremony.（2010）

A. Would he come　　B. If he comes　　C. Was he coming　　D. Were he to come

【解析】D. 考查虚拟语气，从 tomorrow 可以看出，从句是对将来的虚拟，if 省略 were 提前，答案只能选 D。

【翻译】如果他明天来的话，他就能够看到开幕式了。

考点3 as 引导的形式倒装

在 as 引导的让步状语从句中，位于句首的可以是形容词、名词、副词，还可以是动词原形，从而形成从句的部分倒装。此处的 as 译为“虽然，即使”

【例】Tired as he was，he continued the work（形容词提前）.

虽然他累了，但是仍然继续工作。

Hard as he studied，he didn’t pass the exam.（副词提前）

虽然他学习很努力，他也没有通过考试。

Child as he is，he knows a lot.（名词提前）

即使他是一个小孩子，他知道的很多。

Try as he might，he failed again.（动词原形提前）

虽然他尝试了，还是失败了。

注：可数名词的单数放在句首时省略冠词。

【例】________，he couldn’t earn enough to support the family.（2010）

A. Hard as he worked　　B. As he worked hard

C. As hard he worked　　D. Hard as did he work

【解析】A. 考查 as 引导的形式倒装，形容词/副词/名词＋as＋主语＋谓语，答案选 A，副词提前，as 引导形式倒装。

【翻译】虽然他工作努力，但也没挣到足够钱来养家糊口。

第二节　真题演练

1. Smart ________ he is，he can't find the answer to this question.（2004）

A. like　　B. as　　C. that　　D. how

2. No sooner had I ________ than the play began.（2005）

A. been sat　　B. seated　　C. sat　　D. been seated

3. We don't need heating system，________.（2005）

A. and nor we can afford it　　B. we don't afford it

C. nor can we afford it　　D. nor can it afford

4. ________，the old man had a sharp ear for even the slightest sound.（2006）

A. As he was blind　　B. As blind as he was

C. Blind as he was　　D. As he was just blind

5. Hardly had he entered the classroom ________ the bell rang.（2006）

A. than　　B. then　　C. when　　D. so

6. Seldom ________ in such a rude way.（2007）

A. we have been treated　　B. have we been treated

C. we have treated　　D. have we treated

7. Great ________ the difficulties are，we must do our best to succeed.（2008）

A. while　　B. as　　C. although　　D. however

8. ________，water resources have been severely wasted or polluted.（2009）

A. They are scarce　　B. Scarce they are

C. Scarce as they are　　D. As scarce they are

第三节　能力拓展

1. ________ can you expect to get a pay rise.

A. With hard work　　B. Although work hard

C. Only with hard work　　D. Now that he works hard

2. Not until all the fish died in the river ________ how serious the pollution was.

A. did the villagers realize　　B. the villagers realized

C. the villagers did realize D. didn't the villagers realize

3. Not until I began to work ________ how much time I had wasted.

A. didn't realize B. did I realize

C. I didn't realize D. I realized

4. —Do you know Jim quarrel with his brother?

—I don't know, ________.

A. nor don't I care B. nor do I care C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also

5. Only by practicing a few hours every day ________ be able to master the language.

A. you can B. can you C. you will D. will you

6. Not until the early years of the 19th century ________ what heat is.

A. man did know B. man knew C. didn't man know D. did man know

7. ________ got into the room ________ the telephone rang.

A. He hardly; then B. Hardly had he; when

C. He had not; than D. Not had he; when

8. ________ snacks and drinks, but they also brought cards for entertainment when they had a picnic in the forest.

A. Not only they brought B. Not only did they bring

C. Not only brought they D. Not only they did bring

9. Only in this way ________ do it well.

A. must we B. we could C. can we D. we can

10. Hardly ________ when it began to rain.

A. had he arrived B. arrived he C. he had arrived D. did he arrive

11. ________, I would have given you his address.

A. If you asked me B. You had asked me

C. Should you have asked me D. Had you asked me

12. ________ that they had made an important discovery in science.

A. Little they realized B. They had realized little

C. Little did they realize D. Little had they realized

13. ________ that I couldn't be absorbed in the work.

A. They made such talked B. So loudly they talked

C. It was noise outside D. Such a loud noise did they make

14. Only an hour ago ________ out why he was absent.

A. did the teacher found B. the teacher found

C. did the teacher find D. had the teacher found

15. Hardly ________ when the bus suddenly pulled away.

A. they had got to the bus stop B. they got to the bus stop

C. did they get to the bus stop D. had they got to the bus stop

16. ________ I had time，I would have run round that lake again.

A. If B. Unless C. Had D. When

17. Not only ________ a promise，but he also kept it.

A. had he made B. he had made C. did he make D. he makes

18. ________ that he could not speak for a long time.

A. So frightened was he B. So frightened he was

C. Was he so frightened D. Frightened was he

19. Only when class began ________ that he had left his book at home.

A. will he realize B. he did realize C. did he realize D. should he realize

20. Only when you have finished your homework ________ go home.

A. can you B. had you C. you will D. you can

21. If you don’t go，neither ________ .

A. shall I B. do I C. I do D. I shall

22. No sooner ________ to the station ________ the train left.

A. had I got；when B. I had got；than C. had I got；than D. did I get；when

23. — Your father is very strict with you.

—________ . He never lets off a single mistake of ours.

A. So he is B. So is he C. He is so D. So does he

24. Never in my life ________ such a thing.

A. I have heard or have seen B. have I heard or seen

C. I have heard or seen D. did I hear or see

25. Never before that night ________the extent of my own power.

A. had I felt B. I felt C. did I felt D. I had felt

26. Only under pecial circumstances ________to take make-up tests.

A. are freshmen permitted B. freshmen are permitted

C. permitted are freshmen D. are permitted freshmen

第十六章　名词性从句

第一节　考点分析

名词性从句是指在完整的句子中充当名词的从句，包括主语从句，宾语从句，表语从句和同位语从句。

考点1

用来引导名词性从句的词叫引导词。分为三类：

连接代词：who，whom，which，what，whose

连接副词：when，where，how，why，whether，if

连接词：that

注：名词性从句中 that 无词性，无词意，在从句中不做成分，仅起连接作用。

考点2

1. 主语从句：从句放在主语的位置上谓语动词用单数。

2. 同位语从句：在复合句中充当同位语的名词性从句称为同位语从句，它的作用相当于名词，对前面的抽象名词（短语）加以补充说明或者进一步解释。可以跟同位语从句的抽象名词通常有：news，idea，fact，promise，advice，information，message，suggestion 等。

【例】The news ________ our football team had won the match excited all of us.（2006）

A. what　　B. which　　C. that　　D. as

【解析】C. 空前名词为抽象名词，从句成分完整，为同位语从句，故选 C。

【翻译】我们足球队赢得了比赛的消息让所有人都很激动。

考点3

所有从句均用陈述语序。

【例】“What did the teacher say to you just now?”“She asked me ________.”（2008）

A. whether I had finished my work or not　　B. whether or not had I finished my work

C. if my work had finished or not　　D. if or not I have finished my work

【解析】A. whether 与 or not 是固定搭配，意为“是否”词句为宾语从句，从句要用陈述语序，故选 A。

【翻译】刚刚老师跟你说了什么，她问我是否完成了作业。

考点4

疑问词（who，whom，which，what…）＋ever 表示强调。

【例】________ leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights. （2008）

A. Anyone　　B. The person　　C. Whoever　　D. Who

【解析】C. 此处引导主语从句，表强调，故选 C。

【翻译】无论谁最后一个离开房间都应该关上灯。

第二节　真题演练

1. The fact is ________ exists no life on the moon. （2004）

A. that　　B. where　　C. there　　D. that there

2. The scientists have come to the conclusion，based on the signals and photographs sent back by the satellite，________ there's no life on Venus. （2005）

A. that　　B. which　　C. what　　D. where

3. Shanghai has experienced such great changes that everyone can recognize that it is no longer ________. （2006）

A. what it used to　　B. that it used to like

C. the same it used to be　　D. what it used to be

4. There can be no doubt ________ someone had visited the house before they arrived. （2007）

A. why　　B. whether　　C. how　　D. that

5. ________ his dream of going to college will come true is uncertain. （2008）

A. That　　B. Whether　　C. If　　D. Even if

6. Free tickets will be given to ________ phones us first. （2011）

A. that　　B. whoever　　C. whomever　　D. who

7. He kept silent，so I couldn't know ________ he agreed ________ not. （2012）

A. if；or　　B. whether；or　　C. either；or　　D. neither；nor

8. I didn't hear ________ because there was too much noise where I was sitting. （2012）

A. what did he say　　B. what he said

C. what was he saying　　D. what for him to say

9. We must get there before 7 o'clock. That's ________ we have to start so early. （2012）

A. the reason that　　B. the reason for why

C. why that　　D. why

10. The reason is ________ he is unable to operate the machine. （2013）

A. because　　B. why　　C. that　　D. whether

11. They always give the available seats to ________comes first.

A. whoever　　B. whomever　　C. who　　D. whom

第三节　能力拓展

1. We haven't settled the question of ________ it is necessary for him to study abroad.

A. if　　B. where　　C. whether　　D. that

2. A warm thought suddenly came to me ________ I might use the pocket money to buy some flowers for my mother's birthday.

A. if　　B. when　　C. that　　D. which

3. Do you have any idea ________?

A. when Miss Smith will arrive　　B. when will Miss Smith arrive

C. how will Miss Smith arrive　　D. why hasn't Miss Smith arrived

4. We think it possible ________ the local government will be able to solve the housing problem.

A. for　　B. that　　C. when　　D. how

5. ________ team wins on Saturday will go through to the national championships.

A. No matter what　　B. No matter which　　C. Whatever　　D. Whichever

6. That is ________ Lu Xun once lived.

A. what　　B. where　　C. that　　D. why

7. It is our belief ________ improvements in health care will lead to a stronger, more prosperous economy.

A. as　　B. that　　C. this　　D. what

8. The shopkeeper did not want to sell for ________ he thought was not enough.

A. where　　B. how　　C. what　　D. which

9. He noticed that the straight part of the dance was different in the afternoon from ________ it had been in the morning.

A. that　　B. where　　C. what　　D. which

10. I'd like to work with ________ is honest and easy to get on with.

A. who　　B. whoever　　C. whomever　　D. no matter who

11. When you are reading, make a note of ________ you think is of great importance.

A. which　　B. that　　C. what　　D. when

12. —Can we get everything ready by the weekend?

—It all depends on ________ we can get Mr. Green's cooperation.

A. that　　B. what　　C. whether　　D. if

13. The problem is ________ will go to the meeting.

A. why　　B. when　　C. what　　D. who

14. They always give the vacant seats to ________ comes first.

A. whoever　　B. whomever　　C. who　　D. whom

15. ________ is going to do the job will be decided by the Party committee.
A. That B. Why C. How D. Who

16. ________ we'll finish translating the book depends on the time.
A. When B. Why C. What D. That

17. ________ the house will be built will be discussed at tomorrow's meeting.
A. If B. Whether C. That D. What

18. ________ he won't go there is clear to all of us.
A. How B. What C. Why D. This

19. ________ you come or not is up to you.
A. What B. If C. Why D. Whether

20. That is ________ he likes the place so much.
A. that B. what C. why D. how

第十七章　定语从句

第一节　考点分析

1. 功能　相当于形容词，修饰名词或代词，在从句中做定语

2. 先行词　被定语从句修饰的词为先行词

（1）先行词一般是名词和不定代词，如：some-，any-，every-和 no 与-body，-thing 的合成词；或 all，none，any，some，that，those 等代词。数词可做先行词。

（2）先行词在从句中做主语时，从句谓语动词的数由先行词而定。

3. 关系词　引导定语从句的词都叫关系词

关系代词：who，whom，which，that，whose，as.

关系副词：when，where，why.

考点1

从句缺成分时只用 that 不用 which 的情况：

1. 先行词被形容词最高级等修饰时

【例】This is the best novel ________ I have ever read.（2006）

A. which　B. where　C. that　D. what

【解析】C. 先行词 novel 前被形容词最高级 best 修饰，从句缺少宾语，关系代词只能用 that。

【翻译】这是我曾经读过的最好的一本小说。

2. 先行词为 all、much、little、none、few、one、something、anything 等不定代词或者被不定代词修饰时

【例】The final examination will cover all ________ taught this term.（2002）

A. what has been　B. that has been　C. that was　D. which has been

【解析】B. 先行词为不定代词 all，关系词只能用 that. 根据题意 this term 可判断时态为现在完成。

【翻译】期末考试将会涵盖这学期被教的所有内容。

3. 先行词既有人又有物时关系词只能用 that

【例】We're talking about the piano and the pianist ________ were in the concert we attended last night.（2013）

A. which　B. whom　C. who　D. that

【解析】D. 先行词是钢琴和钢琴家，即有人又有物，只能用 that。

【翻译】我们正在谈论昨天晚上我们参加的那个音乐会上的钢琴和钢琴家。

考点2

在定语从句中，不用 that 的情况：

1. 在非限制性定语从句中只能用 which

【例】She has fallen in love with Jack，________ I find hard to imagine.（2009）

A. who　　B. that　　C. whom　　D. which

【解析】D. 非限制性定语从句，从句缺宾语，指代整个主句只能用 which. 题意为她爱上了 Jack，我发现这件事难以想象。

2. 关系词前有介词

【例】Don't talk about such things of ________ you are not sure.（2013）

A. which　　B. what　　C. as　　D. those

【解析】A. 从句不缺成分，空前有介词，只能用 which。

【翻译】不要讨论你不确定的事情。

考点3

whose 做关系词既指人又指物在从句中做定语。

考点4

只能用 as 不能用 which 的情况：

1. 当先行词被 the same，such，so 等词修饰时只能用 as 不能用 which

【例】Can machines perform the same tasks ________ ?（2010）

A. that man does　　B. what man does　　C. how man does　　D. as man does

【解析】D. 先行词被 the same 修饰，从句中 does 后缺少宾语，只能用 as。

【翻译】机器可以做人类做的事情么？

2. As 的固定搭配：As is known/believed（…）to everybody；As we all know/believe（…）

3. As 引导的从句可放句首，句中，句尾。which 引导的从句只能放句尾。

考点5

当先行词是 the way，且定从不缺成分时，关系词可用 in which，that 或省略。

【例】I don't like ________ you speak to her.（2012）

A. the way　　B. the way in that　　C. the way which　　D. the way of which

【解析】A. 先行词是 the way，而且定从不缺成分，故关系词可省略。

【翻译】我不喜欢你和她说话的方式。

考点6

关系词 when，where，why 的用法。

when 指时间＝in/at/on/during which

where 指地点＝in/at/from which

why 指原因＝for which

【例】Is this the house ________ Shakespeare was born?（2007）

A. which　　B. in that　　C. in which　　D. at which

【解析】C. 从句不缺成分要用关系副词，in that 意为因为不合题意，关系副词相当于介词加关系代词，介词与先行词或从句的谓语动词构成固定搭配 in the house。

【翻译】这是莎士比亚出生的房子吗？

考点7

代词/数词＋of which/whom 表示先行词的数与量

【例】I sent invitations to 20 people，________ came.（2011）

A. of whom only 10 of these　　B. only 10 of these who

C. of whom only 10　　D. only 10 who

【解析】C. 两个代词不能同时做定从的主语，排除 A 和 B，D 选项中没有表示所属关系的词，故排除。

【翻译】我给 20 个人送了邀请函，他们中只有 10 个人来了。

考点8

在限制性定语从句中关系代词做从句的宾语时可省略。

【例】I love the gift（that/which）she gave me.

第二节　真题演练

1. She studied hard at school when she was young，________ contributed to success in later life.（2004）

A. so that　　B. therefore　　C. that　　D. which

2. I've never been to Africa，but it is the place ________.（2005）

A. where I most want to visit　　B. in which I most want to visit

C. I most want to visit　　D. that I want to visit it most

3. Mr. Zhang，________ came to see me yesterday，is an old friend of my father's.（2006）

A. which　　B. that　　C. who　　D. whom

4. The sun heats the earth，________ makes it possible for plants to grow.（2006）

A. that　　B. where　　C. which　　D. what

5. I'm going to spend the winter vacation in Shanghai，________ I have relatives.（2007）

A. which　　B. nevertheless　　C. where　　D. when

6. He has made another wonderful discovery，________ of great importance to science and man.（2009，2012）

A. which I think is　　B. which I think it is

C. of which I think it is D. I think which is

7. It was in the factory ________ you worked five years ago ________ you learned the technique.（2012）

A. that；where B. where；when C. where；where D. where；that

8. The girl ________ an English song in the next room is Tom's sister. （2013）

A. who is singing B. is singing C. being sung D. was singing

9. The house that ________in the floods must be rebuilt before winter comes.

A. has been washed away B. has to be washed away

C. has them washed away D. has washed them away

10. The young man ________we thought should have won the game failed in the end.

A. who B. whom C. as D. which

第三节 能力拓展

1. It was in the small house ________ was built with stones by his father ________ he spent his childhood.

A. which ；that B. that ；where C. which ；which D. that ；which

2. American Thanksgiving Day，________ falls on Nov. 24 this year，takes on an entirely different look in China.

A. that B. when C. which D. what

3. She brought with her three friends，none of ________ I had ever met before.

A. which B. whom C. who D. that

4. They've won their last three matches，________ I find a bit surprising.

A. that B. when C. what D. which

5. It's helpful to put children in a situation ________ they can see themselves differently.

A. that B. when C. which D. where

6. The growing speed of a plant is influenced by a number of factors，________ are beyond our control.

A. most of them B. most of which C. most of what D. most of that

7. I have reached a point in my life ________ I am supposed to make decisions of my own.

A. which B. where C. how D. why

8. ________ might be expected，the response to the question was very mixed.

A. As B. That C. It D. what

9. Look out! Don't get too close to the house ________ roof is under repair.

A. whose B. which C. of which D. what

10. The factory produces half a million pairs of shoes every year，80% ________ are sold abroad.

A. of which B. which of C. of them D. of that

11. More and more young people like playing football，________ is an exciting game.

A. what　B. which　C. that　D. because

12. The little girl showed the policeman the corner ________ she was knocked off her bike.

A. and　B. which　C. that　D. where

13. Anne was the first girl ________ when you got there.

A. to whom talked by you　B. you talked to

C. whom you talked　D. who you talked

14. ________ is known to the world，Bruce Lee is a very famous Kungfu star.

A. That　B. Which　C. As　D. It

15. He's got himself into a dangerous situation ________ he is likely to lose control over the plane.

A. where　B. which　C. while　D. why

16. No one here believes the reason ________ he gave for his lateness.

A. that　B. why　C. for which　D. what

17. The place ________ interested me most was the Children's Palace.

A. which　B. where　C. what　D. in which

18. That is the day ________ I'll never forget.

A. which　B. on which　C. in which　D. when

19. He talked a lot about things and persons ________ he remembered in the school.

A. which　B. that　C. whom　D. what

20. His parents wouldn't let him marry anyone ________ family was poor.

A. of whom　B. whom　C. of whose　D. whose

21. In fact the man did not understand the three questions ________ were asked in French.

A. where　B. who　C. in which　D. which

22. The famous basketball star，________ tried to make a comeback，attracted a lot of attention.

A. where　B. when　C. which　D. who

23. I have many friends，some ________ are businessmen.

A. of them　B. from which　C. of who　D. of whom

24. Some pre-school children go to a day care center，________ they learn games.

A. while　B. there　C. then　D. where

25. I didn't like the way ________ she eyed me.

A. by which　B. in that　C. in what　D. in which

26. He is not such a man ________ would leave his work half done.

A. that　B. which　C. who　D. as

27. I was very interested in ________she told me. （2018. 10）

A. all that　B. all which　C. all whatp　D. that

第十八章　状语从句

第一节　考点分析

考点1　状语从句分类及常用连词

类别	连词
时间状语从句	when，whenever，while，as，before，after，since，till，once，as soon as，etc.
地点状语从句	where，wherever
原因状语从句	because，since，as，for，now that，etc.
目的状语从句	in order that，so that，etc.
结果状语从句	so…that…，such…that…，etc.
条件状语从句	if，unless，as（so）long as，etc.
让步状语从句	though，although，even if，even though，however，whatever，as，etc.

考点2　相似连词的用法区别

1. 时间状语从句　when，while，as

while 表时间，从句需用延续动词，切不可用瞬间动词。

when 表时间，从句既可以用延续性动词又可以用瞬间动词。

as 表时间，与 while 相似，但侧重强调主从句动作同点或同段进行。

when，while 后可以接分词短语。

【例】Tom was walking ________ Mike fell into the lake.

A. when　　B. while　　C. as　　D. what

【解析】汤姆正在走路，就在这时突然迈克掉进了湖里。A. 题中 fell 是瞬间动词，故选 A。

2. 原因状语从句　because，as，since，for

语气	位置	意义
because 最强	前或后“原因”	表客观因果关系
as 较强	前“由于”	把众人所知的事实当作理由
since 较弱	前“既然”	把对方陈述的事实作为理由
for 最弱	后“理由”	对某一事实进行推断的理由

注：上述所说的“前”，指从句在主句之前；“后”指从句在主句之后。

【例】He came earlier ________ he wanted to hold up the seat.

A. as　　B. since　　C. because　　D. for

【解析】C. 他来的都很早因为他想要占位。是直接原因，故选 C。

3. 结果状语从句 & 目的状语从句

（2）so…that /such…that 意为“如此……，以至于……”表结果，用于结果状语从句。该结构常见于：

① so ＋形/副＋that

② so ＋形＋a（n）＋单数名词＋that

③ so ＋ many/much ＋复数名词/不可数名词＋ that

④ such ＋ a（n）＋形容词＋名词单数＋that

⑤ such＋形容词＋复数名词/不可数名词＋that

【例】He is such a lovely boy that everybody loves him.

她是如此可爱的一个男孩以至于每个人都喜欢他。

（2）so that 意为“以便”，“为了”表目的，相当于 in order that，用于目的状语从句中。

【例】I study hard so that I can pass the exam.

我努力学习以至于我能通过这个考试。

4. 让步状语从句

though，although，as

①though，although 在句首表“尽管”时，两者都可用，但不与 but 连用。

②as 表示“尽管”用于下列结构：形容词/副词/动词/名词＋as＋主语＋其他。

③no matter＋疑问词＝疑问词＋ever。no matter＋疑问词只用于状语从句中，但疑问词＋ever 既可用于名词性从句，又可用于状语从句中。

【例】We must begin testing this instrument，no matter ________ difficult it is.（2007）

A. however　　B. how　　C. whatever　　D. what

【解析】我们必须开始测试这个仪器，无论它有多么困难。B. no matter＋疑问词，而 difficult 是形容词，故选 B。

【例】Great ________ the difficulties are，we must do our best to succeed.（2008）

A. while　　B. as　　C. although　　D. however

【解析】尽管困难很大，但是我们必须尽我们最大努力去获得成功。B. 引导让步状语从句，只有 as 可放句子中，即形容词/副词/动词/名词＋as＋主语＋其他。

考点3

条件状语从句和时间状语从句，可用于主将从现。

【例】I don’t think it will rain，but I’ll take an umbrella ________ it does.（2011）

A. as if　　B. in case　　C. as though　　D. even if

【解析】我认为天气不会下雨，但是我会带一把伞以防天气下雨。B. 本题为主将从现，四个选项中只有 B 可引导主将从现。

第二节　真题演练

1. ________ you will never convince him. (2003)

A. However long you argue　　B. However you argue long

C. How you argue long　　D. How long you argue

2. You can't see the president ________ you've made an appointment with him. (2004)

A. when　　B. if　　C. unless　　D. except

3. He had no sooner finished his speech ________ he withdrew. (2004)

A. than　　B. that　　C. when　　D. as

4. ________ you say, I am sure that young man is innocent. (2006)

A. Whatever　　B. Whoever　　C. However　　D. Wherever

5. He'll never succeed in passing the CET-6, ________hard he tries. (2009)

A. however　　B. whatever　　C. despite　　D. though

6. ________ sat down ________ the phone rang. (2010)

A. No sooner had he…than　　B. No sooner he had…than

C. No sooner had he…when　　D. No sooner he had…when

7. ________ difficulties we may come across, we will help one another to get them over. (2011)

A. Whatever　　B. Whichever　　C. However　　D. What

8. —Our holiday cost a lot of money.

—Did it? Well, that doesn't matter ________ you enjoyed yourselves. (2012)

A. unless　　B. as far as　　C. as long as　　D. until

9. ________ you decide to do, you should try to make it a success. (2012)

A. If only　　B. Unless　　C. Wherever　　D. Whatever

10. The cost of living in Glasgow is among the lowest in Britain, ________ the quality of life is probably one of the highest. (2012)

A. since　　B. when　　C. as　　D. while

11. Some companies might not let you rent a car ________ you have a credit card. (2013)

A. where　　B. since　　C. because　　D. unless

12. After the earthquake, a new school building was put up ________ there had once been a theatre. (2013)

A. that　　B. where　　C. which　　D. when

13. Wounded ________he was, he refused to come back from the front.

A. since　　B. for　　C. as　　D. although

14. ________he looks in his teens, he is in fact a nine—year—old boy.

A. Since　　B. For　　C. Although　　D. Owing to

15. The team leader promised to attend the meeting ________he arrived at the office.

A. for the time being　B. the moment　C. in order that　D. the day

16. ________Charles starts a job, he will do it ________it is finished.

A. Since; where　B. Each time; once　C. Once; till　D. The moment; as

17. Criticism and self—criticism is necessary ________it helps us to correct our mistakes.

A. in that　B. such that　C. so that　D. to that

18. They climbed to the top of the hill ________they could get a bird's eye of the city.

A. in case　B. for fear that　C. in order that　D. as a result

第三节　能力拓展

1. Many patients insist on having watches with them in hospital, ________ they have no schedules to keep.

A. even though　B. for　C. as if　D. since

2. Don't let the child play with scissors ________ he cut himself.

A. in case　B. so that　C. now that　D. only if

3. There was such a long line at the exhibition ________ we had to wait for about half an hour.

A. as　B. that　C. so　D. hence

4. I have already told you that I'm going to buy it, ________ .

A. however much it costs　B. however does it costs much

C. how much does it cost　D. no matter how it costs

5. Some of stars are ________ far away ________ it is impossible for us to measure them.

A. such; that　B. so; that　C. too; that　D. too; enough

6. You will be welcomed no matter ________ you come.

A. how　B. what　C. when　D. who

7. I was about to leave my house ________ the phone rang.

A. while　B. when　C. as　D. after

8. It is five days ________ we came here.

A. when　B. before　C. as　D. since

9. He didn't go home ________ he finished his work.

A. until　B. after　C. when　D. since

10. No sooner had we reached the top of the hill ________ we all sat down to rest.

A. when　B. then　C. than　D. until

11. He is determined to get a seat for the concert ________it means standing in a quelle all night. (2018. 9)

A. as if　B. even if　C. prorided　D. whatever

12. We have to take a taxi ________we can arrive at the airport earlier. (2018. 20)

A. as soon as　B. in order to　C. so as to　D. so that

第十九章　强调句和 it 用法

第一节　考点分析

一、强调句

强调句的基本构成是 It is/was＋被强调的内容＋that/who 从句。

【例】It was Jane that/who called this morning. 是珍妮今天上午打来电话。

强调句是由普通陈述句转化而来的。通过这种结构可以强调除谓语外的大多数句子成分。

【例】John gave Mary a handbag at Christmas.

根据上下文和语境，说话人可以通过强调句分别强调主语，宾语，状语，使之成为信息中心。如上句可以转化为：

A. It was John that/who gave Mary a handbag at Christmas.（强调主语 John）

B. It was Mary that John gave a handbag（to）at Christmas.（强调间接宾语 Mary）

C. It was a handbag that John gave Mary at Christmas.（强调直接宾语 a handbag）

D. It was at Christmas that John gave Mary a handbag.（强调状语 at Christmas）

考点1

被强调的是状语或状语从句时，只能用 that 引导句子，而且通常不能省略。

【例】It is on the satellites of the Mars that scientists have found water.

科学家是在火星的卫星上发现了水。

【例】It was in Johnson's hotel ________ the business meeting was held last year.（2013）

A. this　　B. that　　C. what　　D. which

【解析】B. 此题考查 It 引导的强调句型，强调地点状语。

【翻译】去年是在 Johnson 的旅馆召开的商业会议。

考点2

被强调的是人时，引导词可以用 who，也可以用 that。

【例】It was you that/who let out the secret to her. 是你把这个秘密泄露给她的。

注意：当被强调的是主语时，代词要用主格形式。

【例】It was I who put forward the theory first. 是我最先提出这个理论的。

【例】I made this myself but it was ________ who taught me. （2012）

A. he　　B. him　　C. himself　　D. by him

【解析】A. 强调句型强调主语时，主语应该用主格。

【翻译】我自己做的这个东西，但是，是他教会我的。

考点3

被强调的不管是单数还是复数名词，强调句型中的 be 动词都用单数 is 或 was。

【例】It was Madame Curie and her husband who discovered radium.

【解析】该句中虽然 Curie and her husband 貌似复数，但因为是强调结构，故只用 was。

【翻译】正是居里夫人和她的丈夫发现了镭。

考点4

对 not…until 时间状语从句进行强调时，其句型是：“It is/was not until…that 从句”，即 not 和 until 在强调句型中不能分开。

【例】It was not until she had arrived home ________ she remembered her appointment with the doctor. （2008）

A. when　　B. that　　C. and　　D. where

【解析】B. 考查强调句型。

【翻译】直到回到家，她才想起与医生的预约。

二、it 用法

考点1

it 做指示代词，代指无生命的东西，动物，婴儿，未确定身份的人，模糊概念，天气，时间，距离，上下文提到的内容等。

【例】Jim is ill. Have you heard of it? Jim 生病了，你知道这件事吗？

—What time is it now? —It is nine. ——现在几点了？——现在九点。

—What is this? —It is a book. ——这是什么？——是一本书。

考点2

it 做形式主语，所指代的不定式，doing 或从句作真正的主语。

基本句型：It＋be 动词＋adj. /n＋（for sb/of sb）＋to do sth 或 It＋be 动词＋adj. /n＋that 从句。

【例】It is easy for him to speak English.

【例】It is no use ________ me not to worry about his injury. （2009）

A. for you to tell　　B. your telling　　C. you tell　　D. having told

【解析】B. 此题考查 it 做为形式主语，指代 doing。常用搭配为 it is no use/no good doing sth. 排除 A，C 选项，D 选项为现在完成时，题中没有体现，所以答案为 B 选项。

【翻译】告诉我不要担心他的伤是没用的。

考点3

it 做形式宾语，指代不定式，doing 或从句。

基本句型：主语＋谓语＋it＋adj. /n＋to do sth 或主语＋谓语＋it＋adj. /n＋that 从句。常用于这一句型的谓语动词有：find，consider，feel，make，think 等。

【例】He found it important to adapt to the new environment.

I feel it our duty to protect environment.

【例】We consider ________ the machine should be adjusted each time it is used（2012）

A. that it necessary　B. necessary it that　C. it that necessary　D. it necessary that

【解析】D. 考查 it 做为形式宾语的用法，真正的宾语是 that 从句。

【翻译】我们认为每次用机器的时候都把它调整一下是必须的。

考点4

it 表示时间的常用句型。

It is/has been＋一段时间＋since… “自从……已有多久”。since 后的从句用一般过去时。

【例】It has been two weeks since he left. 他已经离开两星期了。

It was＋一段时间＋before… “过了多久才……”。before 后的从句用一般过去时。

【例】It was three years before he finished his research.

在他完成他的研究之前已经过去了 3 年。

It will be＋一段时间＋before… “再过多久才……”。before 后的从句用一般现在时。

【例】It will be two days before she arrives at Britain. 2 天后她才会到达英国。

第二节　真题演练

1. It was at the music hall ________ we met each other for the first time.（2009）

A. when　B. where　C. which　D. that

2. It was in the factory ________ you worked five years ago ________ you learned the technique.（2012）

A. that；where　B. where；when　C. where；where　D. where；that

3. ________my brother got married ________he could afford to buy his own house.

A. It was not until；then　B. It is not until；when

C. It is until；that　D. It was not until；that

第三节　能力拓展

1. It was not until 1920 ________ American women had the chance to vote in national elections.

A. when B. that C. where D. which

2. We all regard ________ our duty to help those who are too poor to go to school.

A. this B. it C. that D. us

3. I would appreciate ________ if you could teach me how to use the computer.

A. that B. this C. it D. you

4. It was ________ who wrote those words on the blackboard.

A. he B. him C. himself D. his

5. —Do you still believe in love?

—Absolutely. It is not time，money，power or whatever but love ________ cures our pain.

A. who B. which C. that D. what

6. It was the training ________ he had at school ________ made him a good jumper.

A. what；what B. that；that C. what；that D. that；had

7. —Hello. Can I speak to Mr. Brown?

—I'm sorry，but it is 3 weeks ________ he did not work here.

A. before B. since C. after D. while

8. ________ that caused him to serve dinner an hour later than usual.

A. It was us being late B. It was our being late

C. It was we were too late D. It was because we were late

9. What is it ________ his daughter needs most?

A. what B. which C. that D. if

10. It was what he meant rather than what he said ________ annoyed me.

A. which B. as C. what D. that

11. It was his nervousness in the interview ________ probably made him lose the job.

A. which B. since C. that D. what

12. It is the ability to do the job ________ matters not where you come from or what you are.

A. one B. that C. what D. it

13. It was the boy ________ had been in prison ________ stole the money.

A. who；where B. that；how C. who；that D. that；which

14. It was just in the room ________ he was born ________ he died.

A. where；which B. that；that C. where；that D. which；that

Part Three

Reference

参考答案

格言

We must accept finite disappointment, but we must never lose infinite hope.

我们必须接受有限的失望，但我们决不能失去无限的希望。

词 汇 部 分

2001 年

1. **【译文】**他一闭上眼睛，门铃就响了。

【解析】C. “no sooner… than…”是固定结构，意思是“一……就……”，类似的用法还有“hardly… when…”。

2. **【译文】**既然我们已经结束了课程，我们将开始做一些修订工作。

【解析】A. now that 既然，由于。此意最符合逻辑。since then 从那时以来。for now 目前，暂时。by now 到目前为止。

3. **【译文】**他被要求说得更大声点，以便教室里的所有学生都能够听见。

【解析】C. so that 以便，为了，后面跟完整的句子。as 因为，当……的时候。so as to 以便，为了，后面跟动词原形。than 是比的意思。

4. **【译文】**汤姆成功从银行获得了 3 000 美金的贷款用来买新房。

【解析】C. loan 贷款。debt 债务。fund 基金，资金。payment 支付，付款。

5. **【译文】**针对火灾的调查由两名警察负责。

【解析】C. investigation 调查。question 问题。doubt 怀疑。information 信息。

6. **【译文】**我们建议他们休息一下，但是他们坚持要完成工作。

【解析】A. 固定搭配 insist on 的用法考查，意思是“坚持”，后面跟名词或者动名词的结构。B 选项 persist in，意思也是“坚持”。exist 存在，生存。resize 调整大小。

7. **【译文】**不会说英语，他们感到在美国相当的寂寞。

【解析】D. lonely 形容词，孤独的，寂寞的，既可放在名词前面，又可以做表语。strange 奇怪的。puzzled 困惑的，糊涂的。alone 单独的，独自的。

8. **【译文】**我们公司的经理问我，对我来说一周之内制定出市场计划是否可能。

【解析】B. work out 解决，算出，制定出。set out 出发，开始。make out 理解，辨认出。put out 熄灭，出版。

9. **【译文】**很好地掌握英语绝非易事。

【解析】D. 固定搭配的考查。by no means 绝不。by all means 一定，务必。by any means 无论如何。by every means 想方设法。

10. **【译文】**问题可能出现。

【解析】C. arise 不及物动词，出现。rise 不及物动词，上升。jump 跳跃。lift 举起，提升。

11. **【译文】**他说他充分意识到做一个父亲的艰难。

【解析】B. fully 充分地，完全地，彻底地。highly 高度地，非常。soundly 稳健地，健全地，牢固地。firmly 坚定地，坚决地。

12. **【译文】**我真心希望你享受去加拿大的旅行，但当人们必须要咨询你法律上的信息的时候请

尽快回来。

【解析】C. enjoy 喜欢，欣赏，享受；refer 提到，参考，涉及，一般与 to 连用；prefer 更喜欢，偏好；infer 推断。

13. **【译文】**像空气、水和噪音污染那样的问题，在一些大城市正在变得越来越严重。

【解析】B. 固定搭配“such…as…”的考查，意为“像……那样的……”。

14. **【译文】**电视能够告诉我们有关科学与政治的时事和最新发展。

【解析】A. current 当前的，现在的。past 过去的。fashionable 流行的，时髦的。new 新的。

15. **【译文】**因为医院出现电力故障，医生不得不取消手术。

【解析】B. call off 取消。call for 要求，需要。call on 拜访。call out 唤起，大声叫唤。

2002 年

1. **【译文】**他所说的话很值得关注。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是固定搭配 be worthy of，意思是“值得……的”。如果表示被动，可以用固定搭配“be worthy to be done”或者“be worthy of being done”。

2. **【译文】**天气非常炎热，每个人都想去河里游泳。

【解析】A. feel like sth. /doing 意思是“想要……”。tend to do sth. 倾向于做某事。make for 朝…走去。turn out 结果是，证明是。

3. **【译文】**我不知道该做些什么，但是当时一个主意突然出现在我脑海里。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是固定搭配“（an idea）occurs/occurred to sb”，意思是“（主意）浮现在某人脑海里，某事被想起”。注意：本短语中的主语一般是“主意，观点”或 it 作形式主语。例如：It suddenly occurred to me that we could hire a man to do the job.

4. **【译文】**尽管他很爱说话，但他却不愿意告诉我们关于他家庭的任何情况。

【解析】B. reluctant 不情愿的，勉强的。willing 乐意的，心甘情愿的。be alert of sth. 对……警觉。complacent 自满的，得意扬扬的。此句后半段表达一个转折的含义，所以 B 最合适。

5. **【译文】**我不知道他打算做些什么。

【解析】C. 本题考查固定搭配的意思与用法。be ignorant of 不知道，不了解。be void of 缺乏……。be composed of 由……组成，构成。be cautious of/about 对……非常慎重，谨慎。

6. **【译文】**在昏暗的灯光下，她只能模糊地看到房间号码。

【解析】D. 题干中“dim”意思是昏暗的。vaguely 模糊地。instinctively 本能地，天生地。slightly 轻微地，略微地。uneasily 令人不安地，担心地。

7. **【译文】**尽管事实是我不喜欢我的工作，但是我必须非常努力去做。

【解析】A. in spite of 尽管。instead of 代替。as to 至于，关于，就……而论。in case of 万一，如果发生，假设。

8. **【译文】**他每天上午都睡到 11 点钟。

【解析】A. bed 前不加冠词表示抽象概念。stay in bed 固定搭配，应理解为“睡觉。”。

9. **【译文】**我昨晚没有去他的聚会，因为经过重新考虑，我改变了我的想法。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是固定搭配 on second thoughts“经重新考虑。”。

10.【译文】迈克尔在德国居住一年后又回到国内，但看起来和以前一样。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是固定搭配 the same as，意思是“与……一样”。

2003 年

1.【译文】玛丽说海明威是她最喜爱的作家，她几乎读过他所有的作品。

【解析】D. favorite 最喜爱的。famous 著名的，极好的。popular 流行的，受欢迎的。common 共同的，普遍的。

2.【译文】一旦做了决定，就必须坚定地执行。

【解析】B. carry out 执行。carry on 继续，从事。carry away 运走；使失去自制力。carry off 夺去；获得。

3.【译文】颜色由黄变绿，又由绿变黑。

【解析】A. range 在……范围内变化，常用结构是 range from…to…正符合题意。constitute 是及物动词，组成，构成的意思。compose 由……组成，由……构成，常用结构 be composed of。consist 由……组成，由……构成，常用结构 consist of。

4.【译文】实验要求我们做出精确的测量。

【解析】C. 在表示“要求，建议或命令”的动词的宾语从句中，用虚拟语气（should）＋动词原形的形式。四个选项中，只有 demand（要求）符合题意。

5.【译文】我努力去接球，但没接到。

【解析】A. beyond 超过，越过。besides 除了……之外，还有。in addition to 除了……还。as well as 也。

6.【译文】科学家正在做一个实验，期望有一个好的结果。

【解析】B. 本题需要一个名词做 expected 的宾语，可首先排除选项 D。选项 A、B、C 虽都有“结果”的意思，但 effect 一般指“由某种步骤或行为直接产生的结果、影响”。result 则指按常规去做，自然而然出现的结果，可指好的或坏的结果。consequence 则指因某些特殊事件或原因所导致的结果、后果，并且暗指坏的结果。

7.【译文】在激烈的炮火之下，那些记者冒着生命危险给出现场的战地报道。

【解析】D. on-the-spot 现场的。word-for-word 逐字的。face-to-face 面对面的。down-to-earth 实际的，现实的。

8.【译文】雨很大，所以房子被破坏了。

【解析】A. consequently 因此，所以。constantly 不断地，时常地。consistently 一贯地，一致地。continuously 连续不断地。

9.【译文】当谈到评估学校作业的时候，教授将平等对待他的学生们。

【解析】B. 本题首先考查一个固定搭配，when it comes to 意思是谈到，针对，这里的 to 是介词，所以后面跟动词的时候要以 v-ing 形式出现。

10.【译文】大量的新产品已经成功的试产了。

【解析】D. a large number of 大量的，后跟可数名词的复数形式。A 选项，a great deal of 大量的，后跟不可数名词。B 选项 a large amount of 大量的，后跟不可数名词。C 选项如果形式变成

plenty of 意思也是大量的，后既可跟可数名词的复数形式，也可以跟不可数名词。

11.【译文】他们为我们所做的不能以金钱来衡量。

【解析】C. in terms of 从……角度，以……的形式。in place of 代替。A 与 B 的常用结构“by way of”和“by means of”意思是“通过……的方式，途径”。

12.【译文】你必须为旅行打包很多食物，你也需要保暖的衣服，所以也打包一些。

【解析】D. likewis 同样的。on the whole 基本上，大体上。otherwise 否则。however 然而。

13.【译文】肉在天热的时候容易变质。

【解析】C. 此题考查固定搭配用法。go bad 变坏，变质。前三个选项中的 turn，become，go 均可做变化系动词，后面应该是形容词做表语成分，由于 A 和 B 后面都是副词，所以不正确。而 D 为比较级不符合题意。

14.【译文】在这座城市找到一个好的用于教育的计算机课程几乎是不可能的。

【解析】D. nearly 几乎。barely 仅仅，几乎不。merely 仅仅，只是。hardly 几乎不。

2004 年

1.【译文】除了一个年轻女士，办公室是空的。

【解析】B. 此题主要考查 except for 和 except 的区分，二者都可翻译为“除了”，但是 except 后面跟的对象和主语之间有同类事物关系，而 except for 没有这种用法。很明显年轻女人和办公室之间不存在同类事物关系，所以选 B 合适。but for 要不是，如果没有。besides 除了……还……

2.【译文】他们喜欢这个地方，但是不能忍受交通噪音。

【解析】B. 此题主要考查固定搭配的意思。put up with 容忍，忍受。get on with 和……相处。put on 穿上，后面没有 with。get up with 追上，赶上。

3.【译文】你可以在乔治面前畅所欲言，但是你不能在他的餐馆里白吃白喝。

【解析】A. 第一个空 freely 是修饰动词 speak 的副词，freely 自由地，第二个空 free 是修饰动词 eat 的副词。free 既可做形容词，也可做副词。这里做副词，取“免费地”这层含义。

4.【译文】他的演讲如此有趣，以至于不断被喝彩打断。

【解析】B. interrupt 打断（某人的）讲话，中断（某人的）行动。interfere 干涉，干预，含有贬义色彩。trouble 给某人添麻烦。disturb 打扰别人（工作、睡觉）等。

5.【译文】他计划每个月省出一些钱，以便将来能买一套房子。

【解析】A. set aside（为某种目的）留出，节省出。set up 建立。set in（坏天气，疾病等）开始来临。set along 把……沿着……排列，放置。

6.【译文】他通过晚上熬夜努力弥补失去的时间。

【解析】B. 此题主要考查固定搭配 make up for 的用法，意为“弥补，补偿”。by 是介词，可译为“通过”，在这里介词短语做方式状语。

7.【译文】针对艾滋病还没有有效的药物。

【解析】B. effective 形容词，有效的。effect 名词词性，影响，效果。efficient 形容词，高效率的。efficacy 名词词性，功效，效力。这里要找一个形容词修饰名词药物 B 比 C 更合适。

8.【译文】他一做完演讲就离开了。

【解析】A. 此题主要考查固定搭配的用法。no sooner…than…译为“一……就……”。同样意思的还有“hardly…when…”。

9.【译文】他昨天淋了雨，结果今早就生病了。

【解析】D. as a result 结果。A 和 B 选项意思均为“相反”。in other words 意为“换句话说”。从句子逻辑来说选 D 最合适。

2005 年

1.【译文】他想成为一个清洁工，但他的父亲认为这不是一个体面的职业。

【解析】D. respectable 值得尊敬的，体面的。respectful 恭敬的，有礼貌的。respective 分别的，各自的。respecting 关于，就……而言。

2.【译文】由于强烈的暴风雪他们不可能及时抵达。

【解析】B. 此题考查固定搭配 be unlikely to do sth. 的用法，意思是“不可能做某事”。impossible 通常以物做主语，如果题干改成“It is impossible for them to arrive in time owing to the heavy snowstorm.”就可以。unseemly 不合适的，不得体的。probably 大概，或许。

3.【译文】他们尽全力降低建筑工程的成本。

【解析】B. 此题考查固定搭配的用法。bring down 降低。bring off 完成，救出，成功。bring back 拿回来，使……恢复。bring up 提出，养育。

4.【译文】除了有一点发烧，他的儿子现在情况相当好。

【解析】D. except for 与 except 意思都是“除了”，用法的区分是高频考点。区分时注意 except 后面的对象跟主语之间应该是“同类事物关系”，而 except for 没有这样的用法。besides 和 in addtion to 意思均为“除了……还……”。

5.【译文】曾经被高度赞誉的那个小提琴家，结果却让人非常失望。

【解析】B. 此题考查固定搭配的用法。turn out 结果是，最后是。turn up 出现。turn in 交上，归还。turn over 移交，反复考虑。

6.【译文】当税收制度出现的时候，很多新的困难出现了。

【解析】C. arise 出现。raise 提高；养育；筹集。arouse 唤醒，引起。rise 上升。

7.【译文】你现在说的跟正在讨论的问题没有关系。

【解析】D. 此题考查固定搭配 under discussion 的用法，意思是“正在讨论中”。

8.【译文】海明威高度赞扬了像忠诚、勇气、决心那样的美德，这些美德在他的作品中被人们所熟知。

【解析】C. 结合上下文，选 virtue 最合适，意思是“美德，优点。”feature 特色，特征。appearance 外貌，外观。characteristic 特征，特色。

9.【译文】当面试者不能回答面试官问题的时候，他感到尴尬和不安。

【解析】C. 结合题干的语境，可知选 C。awkward 形容词，尴尬的。amused 形容词，愉快的。ease 名词，轻松，舒适。alone 形容词，独自的。

10.【译文】我们应该重视老一代传给我们的丰富的文学遗产。

【解析】D. 此题考查固定搭配的用法。hand down 传递下来。hand out 分发。hand over 交

出，移交。hand in 上交。

11. **【译文】**年轻人自杀的消息作为令人震惊的打击不期而至。

【解析】B. 此题考查固定搭配的用法。commit suicide 固定搭配，“自杀”的意思。act 行动，表现。perform 执行，完成。三个选项中只有 B 选项可以与 suicide 连用。

12. **【译文】**她如此深陷于电脑游戏中，以至于忘了上课。

【解析】C. 此题考查固定搭配的用法。be involved in 陷入。attract 动词，意思是“吸引”。concentrate on 固定搭配，集中（精力）于……，draw 动词，意思“拔出，拖拉”。

13. **【译文】**争论这个毫无意义，就照着你被要求的那样做就行了。

【解析】C. 此题主要考查固定搭配 there is no point（in）doing sth. 的用法，意思是“做某事毫无意义”。

2006 年

1. **【译文】**今年我们计划增加 7.4％的机器产量。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是固定用法。increase“增加”与 decrease“减少”，后面通常跟两个介词搭配，如果跟 by 搭配，翻译成“增加了”或者“减少了”，如果跟 to 搭配，翻译成“增加到”或者“减少到”。

2. **【译文】**当亨利在考试中作弊被抓到的时候，他看起来非常尴尬。

【解析】B. 根据上下文，选 embarrassed 最合适，意为“尴尬的，窘迫的”。discouraged 气馁的。disappointed 失望的，沮丧的。pleased 高兴的，喜欢的。

3. **【译文】**我们对天气感兴趣，因为它如此直接地影响我们。

【解析】B. affect 及物动词，“影响”，后面可以直接跟宾语。benefit 及物动词，“有益于”。guide 及物动词，“引导，带领，操纵”。effect 名词，“影响，效果，作用”。

4. **【译文】**他一进教室，铃就响了。

【解析】C. 考查固定搭配 hardly…when…的用法，翻译成“一……就……”。同样意思的固定搭配还有 no sooner…than…。

5. **【译文】**每次老师提问一个问题，约翰都会举起手来。

【解析】A. every time 可以做连词，引导时间状语从句，意为“每一次”。in time 及时。some time 一段时间。at times 有时，偶尔。

6. **【译文】**我们反对执行这个计划。

【解析】D. 此题考查固定搭配 object to 的用法，意思是“对……反对”。to 是介词，后面跟名词或者 v-ing。

2007 年

1. **【译文】**我不得不根据我的收入调整我的支出。

【解析】B. 根据上下文，选 adjust 最合适，adjust…to…意思是“调整”。transfer 转移。direct 管理，指挥，导演。add 增加。

2. **【译文】**随着工业的发展，这个地区无疑将繁荣起来。

【解析】D. 根据上下文，选 thrive 最合适，意思是“繁荣，兴旺”。develop 生长，进化，发育。profit 获利，有益。succeed 成功。

3. **【译文】**母亲正在变老，所以这些日子她的记忆力不是非常的可靠。

【解析】C. 根据上下文，选 reliable 最合适，意思是“可靠的，可信赖的”。true 真实的，正确的。forgettable 可以忘记的，容易被忘记的。credit 名词，“信用，信誉，声望”。

4. **【译文】**这把钥匙属于哪一扇门？

【解析】D. 此题考查的是固定搭配 belong to 的用法，意为“属于”。只有 D 选项可以跟介词 to 来连用。

5. **【译文】**不能接受你好心的邀请，我深感遗憾。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是固定搭配 to one’s regret 的用法，意思是“令某人遗憾的是”。

6. **【译文】**应该是你而不是我给这封信署名。

【解析】D. rather than 而不是。but 但是。in spite of 尽管。rather 相当。

7. **【译文】**文学作品必须包含文字，正如音乐必须包含声音。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是固定搭配的用法。just as 正像，正如。even though 即使。so that 以便，为了。ever since 自从。

8. **【译文】**比起开车，我更喜欢走路。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是固定搭配 prefer…to…的用法，意为“比起……更喜欢……”并且 to 是介词，后跟动词 ing 形式。

9. **【译文】**仅仅经过几天的讨论之后，委员会就得出了结论。

【解析】B. reach 达到，达成。此题考查固定搭配 reach the condusion 的用法。achieve 实现，获得，取得，一般指个人经过努力获得的成果。arrive 达成，是不及物动词，不能直接跟宾语，想接宾语后需用介词 at。complete 完成，意思不恰当。

10. **【译文】**一般来说，点头等同于赞同。

【解析】B. equivalent 相等的，同意义的。contrary 相反的。secondary 中等的，次要的。relevant 相关的。根据上下文 B 选项最合适。

11. **【译文】**小心，那个台阶不安全。

【解析】C. 此题考查固定搭配的用法。look out 小心，注意。look around 到处查看，游览。look up 查阅。look down 俯视。

12. **【译文】**今天早上我看见一起交通事故。

【解析】D. accident 事故，意外。event 大活动，大事件。conflict 冲突，矛盾，斗争。damage 损害，破坏。

13. **【译文】**他发现适应这个城市的气候很困难，于是决定搬到北方。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是固定搭配 adapt to 的用法，意为“适应……”。adopt 收养，采纳。fit 和 suit 都是“适合”的意思，都不与 to 连用。故 D 选项最合适。

14. **【译文】**他爬上树，摘掉了所有可摘到的果实。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是固定搭配 within reach 的用法，意为“伸手可及的，在附近”。beyond reach“够不着”。

15. **【译文】**那些观点现在已经过时了。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是固定搭配 out of fashion 的用法，意为“过时的，不流行的”。out of order“发生故障，次序颠倒”。out of form“身体不适，不在状态”。mood“心情，情绪”，be in the mood for sth“有心情做某事”。

16. **【译文】**仅仅因为失败一次，并不能说明他将会再次失败。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是固定搭配 it does not follow that…，意为“这并不意味着……”。

17. **【译文】**他不仅会弹钢琴还会拉小提琴。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是固定搭配 not only…but also…的用法，意为“不仅……而且……”

18. **【译文】**世界人口正在以危险的速度上升。

【解析】C. rate 速度，速率。step 步子。measure 措施。progress 进步，前进。

2008 年

1. **【译文】**尽管困难很大，但是我们必须努力成功。

【解析】B. as 尽管，用于倒装结构。while 然而。although 尽管。however 然而，表转折。此题考倒装，所以选 B。

2. **【译文】**一个人想要开始创业，必须要有一定的资本。

【解析】D. capital 资本，资金。currency 货币。income 收入。wealth 财富。

3. **【译文】**他有一个怪癖，当他茫然的时候会咬嘴唇。

【解析】C. peculiar 奇怪的，独特的。particular 特别的，详细的。specific 特殊的，特定的，详细的。general 一般的，普通的。根据上下文，题干中强调他的习惯比较“古怪”，故 C 选项最合适。

4. **【译文】**经理声称他的公司有独家出版权。

【解析】D. sole 单独的，独有的。single 单一的，单身的。unique 唯一的，独一无二的。lonely 孤独的，寂寞的。根据上下文，应选择强调“独有”，D 选项最合适。

5. **【译文】**在会议上他表达了一些个人观点，这些观点给他与党派领导阶层之间带来了矛盾。

【解析】C. conflict 矛盾，冲突。action 行动，活动。crisis 危机。power 力量，政权。根据上下文，C 选项最合适。

6. **【译文】**建筑的实际成本比我们原本的估算要高很多。

【解析】C. estimate 估计，估算。consideration 考虑，关心。judgement 判断。plan 计划。根据上下文，C 选项最合适。

7. **【译文】**去年雨雪过多，所以今年春天，这个国家的很多地方已经被淹没了。

【解析】D. adequate 充足的。extra 额外的。efficient 高效率的。effective 有效的，起作用的。根据上下文，题干中有个 more than 是“超过”的意思，超过充足的雨雪量，即是过多了。所以 D 选项是最合适。

8. **【译文】**病魔一直纠缠着他直到他死去，但是他从未放弃过他生命中的崇高理想。

【解析】B. pursue 追赶，纠缠。persist 坚持。track 追踪，跟踪。tolerate 忍受，容忍。根据上下文，B 选项最合适。

9. **【译文】**学生被鼓励为贫困的学生提供志愿服务。

【解析】C. voluntary 自愿的，志愿的。valuable 贵重的，值钱的。volcano 名词，“火山”。voyage 名词，“航行，航程”。根据上下文，C 选项最合适。

10.**【译文】**除了一些非常耀眼的聚光灯，街道几乎是漆黑一片。

【解析】B. 此题重点考查 except for 与 except 的不同之处，二者字面意思都是“除了”，但是 except 后跟的内容应该与主语是同类事物，而 except for 没有这种用法。excluding 将……排除在外，不包括……。but for 要不是，如果没有。

11.**【译文】**尽管美国很长时间以来都作为一个移民国家被人所熟知，但是种族歧视仍然存在。

【解析】B. racial 种族的，人种的。radical 激进的，彻底的，根本的。crucial 重要的，决定性的。diplomatic 外交的。根据上下文，B 选项最合适。

12.**【译文】**当孩子们结束游戏，他们被要求把拿出来的所有玩具都收起来。

【解析】D. 此题主要考查固定搭配的用法。put away 放好。put off 推迟。put up 建造，举起，提供住宿。put out 熄灭。根据上下文，D 选项最合适。

13.**【译文】**我希望我的老师在评判我的考试时，把我最近生病的情况考虑在内。

【解析】C. 此题主要考查固定搭配 take sth. into account 的用法，意思是“把某事考虑在内”。regard 注重，考虑。counting 计算，计数。observation 观察，监视。除了 C 选项之外，其余三个选项均没有这种固定搭配，故 C 选项最合适。

14.**【译文】**如果你感觉不舒服，请咨询医生。

【解析】D. consult 咨询，向……请教。answer 回答。promise 承诺，许诺。teach 教导。根据上下文，选 D 最合适。

15.**【译文】**玛丽和珍妮是双胞胎姐妹，她们看起来一模一样。

【解析】C. 题干中的 look 是系动词，后面需要跟形容词，共同构成系表结构。alike 是形容词，“相似的”意思。like 虽然有“相似的”意思，但它做介词，跟 look 搭配之后后面必须接宾语。举个例子，同样一句话如果用 like，需要这样表达：Mary looks exactly like Jane. same 是“相同的”，必须与 the 连用，所以 B 和 D 排除。

16.**【译文】**只要你保持安静，你就可以待在这里。

【解析】A. as long as 只要。unless 除非，如果这句话改成 You can not stay here unless you keep quiet 也是正确的。in case 万一，假使。in order that 以便于。根据上下文，A 选项最合适。

17.**【译文】**换句话说，所有的哺乳动物，不管他们大小如何，都是心脏每跳动四下呼吸一次。

【解析】C. whatever 无论什么。however 然而。regardless of 不管，不顾，介词 of 通常不能省略，所以 B 选项不能选。according to 根据，介词 to 通常不能省略。由此 C 选项最合适。

18.**【译文】**在我们完成目标之前，仍然有巨大的障碍要克服。

【解析】C. obstacle 障碍，干扰。obligation 责任，义务。objection 反对，异议，缺点。object 名词，“目标、物体”。动词，“反对”。根据上下文，C 选项最合适。

19.**【译文】**加油站严禁抽烟。

【解析】B. forbid 及物动词，禁止，语气比较严厉的命令。prevent 及物动词，阻止，防止。stop 及物动词，停止，堵塞，断绝。object 不及物动词，反对，通常跟介词 to 连用，to 后面跟名词或者 v-ing。B 选项最合适。

20.【译文】我希望明年的某一天还能再和你相见。

【解析】C. sometime 有朝一日，在某一时候。sometimes 有时。some times 几次。some time 一段时间。根据上下文，C 选项最合适。

21.【译文】那不是一个事故。他故意那么做的。

【解析】C. 此题考查固定搭配 do sth. on purpose 的用法，意为“故意做某事”。reason 原因。intention 意图。determination 决心。都不与 on 连用。故 C 选项最合适。

22.【译文】当他申请当地一家报纸的一个办公室岗位时，被告知去见经理。

【解析】A. position 岗位，工作。career 终身从事的职业。profession 专业性强的职业，需要一定的培训后担任。location 位置，地点。根据题干，他只是申请了一个工作岗位，故 A 选项最合适。

23.【译文】住在城市里的人往往比住在乡村的人承担更多的压力。

【解析】C. tend to do sth. 倾向于，易于做某事，是客观事实的倾向。lean to（介词）主观意志、态度、观点倾向于。be inclined to 倾向于……，向……倾斜。但是选项 D 结构不对。A 选项 intend 打算，想要，intend to do 打算做……，故 C 选项最合适。

24.【译文】驯服那匹野马花了他几个月时间。

【解析】D. tame 驯养，制服。cultivate 培养，陶冶。breed 繁殖。tend 倾向于。题干中“wild horse”是野马，用“驯服”比较合理，所以 D 选项最合适。

2009 年

1.【译文】考试前一天晚上我太紧张了以至于睡不着觉。

【解析】D. worrying 令人担忧的；tired 疲惫的，困倦的；happy 高兴的；nervous 紧张的。

2.【译文】学还是不学完全取决于你自己。

【解析】A. be up to 取决于，由……决定；as to 至于，关于，就……而论；be about to 即将；be due to 由于，因为。

3.【译文】我终于下定决心在将来更加努力学习。

【解析】B. prepare 准备；make up one’s mind 下定决心；work out 计算出，制定出，解决；make out 理解，辨认出。

4.【译文】尽管那对老夫妇自己有三个孩子，他们还决定收养一个男孩。

【解析】D. adapt（to）适应；bring 带来；receive 收到；adopt 收养，采纳。

5.【译文】世界人口正在以危险的速度上升。

【解析】D. pace 步子；measure 措施；progress 进步，前进；rate 速度，速率。

6.【译文】Alice 信任你，只有你能说服她放弃那个愚蠢的念头。

【解析】D. suggest 建议，暗示；attract 吸引；tempt 诱惑，引起；persuade 说服，劝说。

7.【译文】Mary 付账的时候拿到了一个收据。

【解析】B. cheque 支票；receipt 收据，收条；ticket 票；label 标签，商标。

8.【译文】如果你想让孩子跟上你，你最好走慢点。

【解析】C. put up with 容忍，忍受；come up with 提出，想出；keep up with 赶得上；go on with 继续。

9.【译文】小约翰今天早上捉了一条活鱼。

【解析】D. alive 和 living 都可以表示“活着的”，但 alive 可做表语或后置定语；alone 独自的，单独的；lonely 寂寞的；而 living 只做前置定语，故选 D。

10.【译文】我吃了药，但是对我没效果。

【解析】A. effect 是名词，“影响，作用，效果”，have an effect on 对……有效果、影响、作用；affect 是动词，“影响”；relation 关系；touch 接触，触觉。

11.【译文】这个班里学生的年龄范围是从 18 到 20 岁。

【解析】B. change（发生）变化；range（在一定范围内）变化，变动，常用 range from…to…；alter 更改，变动；limit 限制，限定。

12.【译文】让小孩子自己去上学是冒险做法。

【解析】C. run a risk 冒险（固定搭配）。

13.【译文】他通过认真学习学会了这门语言。

【解析】A. acquire 获得，习得；require 需要，要求；inquire 询问；request 请求，要求。

14.【译文】我们为了共同的利益和那个公司发展贸易关系。

【解析】C. honour 荣誉；reward 报酬，回报；benefit 利益，好处；prize 奖品，奖赏。

15.【译文】如果你一天吃两次这个药，它就会治好你的感冒。

【解析】B. heal 治愈（伤口、伤痛）；cure 治愈（疾病）；treat 治疗，诊治；recover 恢复，复原。

16.【译文】我们反对因为一个人的错误而惩罚整个团队。

【解析】C. 考查介词搭配。object to 反对（固定搭配）。

17.【译文】她的面孔对我来讲非常熟悉，但是我想不起来在哪儿见过她。

【解析】D. be similar to 与……相似；be friendly to 对……友好，友善；alike 相似的，相同的；be familiar to 被……所熟悉。

18.【译文】你将不得不提前预订假期的票。

【解析】B. in front 在前面，在前方；in advance 提前，预先；ahead 不与 in 连用，固定搭配为 ahead of time，也表示提前；forward 向前，往前。

19.【译文】被父母过度保护的孩子可能被宠坏。

【解析】B. hurt 伤害，使痛苦（侧重于感情上的伤害）；spoil 宠坏，溺爱；damage 损害，破坏（通常用于无生命物体）；harm 伤害，危害（常用于有生命物体）。

20.【译文】孩子天性好奇。

【解析】C. at heart 本质上，内心里；in person 亲自，本人，当面；by nature 本性上，天生地；on purpose 故意地。

21.【译文】你哥哥真高。他的确切身高是多少？

【解析】C. size 大小，尺寸；length 长度；height 高度，身高；breadth 宽度。

2010 年

1.【译文】那场火肯定是在关店之后爆发的。

【解析】A. break out 爆发，突发；break down 发生故障，分解；break in 打断（说话），闯

进；break through 突破，冲破（障碍）。

2.【译文】最后他抽空浏览了一下这份报告。

【解析】D. glance at 扫视，浏览，匆匆一瞥（属于固定搭配）。

3.【译文】你的主意似乎挺好但是不实用。

【解析】A. practical 实际的，实用的；possible 可能的；plentiful 丰富的，大量的；precious 宝贵的，珍贵的。

4.【译文】仅仅因为秘书迟到了 10 分钟，经理就发脾气了。

【解析】B. mood 心情，情绪；temper 脾气，lose one's temper 发脾气；mind 理智，精神，智力，lose one's mind 失去理智；passion 激情，热情。

5.【译文】这本教材有几个特点值得注意。

【解析】D. worthwhile 值得做的，值得花时间的（一般用做表语或定语）；worth 值得的，有价值的（后接名词或者动名词，不与 of 连用）；worthy 值得的，有价值的（与 worth 同义，但常与 of 连用，属于固定搭配）。

6.【译文】这座新的大楼使镇上其他的建筑物都显得矮小了。

【解析】A. dwarf 使矮小；distort 扭曲，曲解，使失真；desert 遗弃，放弃；depress 使沮丧，使萧条。

7.【译文】互联网给我们的工作方式带来了很大变化。

【解析】A. bring about 带来，引起；bring out 出产，出版；bring back 带回，使恢复，使回忆起；bring up 提出，抚养。

8.【译文】他是那种总爱挑别人毛病的人。

【解析】C. find fault with... 找茬，挑剔，挑毛病，吹毛求疵（固定搭配）。

9.【译文】那家工厂由于经济危机不得不解雇很多员工。

【解析】B. lay out 展示，安排，列出；lay off 解雇，停止；lay aside 搁置，储存；lay down 放下，铺设。

10.【译文】你能不能抽出一些时间咱们边喝咖啡边聊天。

【解析】D. 此题考查介词搭配。chat over a cup of coffee 意思是边喝咖啡边聊天。for 和 during 都有“在……期间”之意，但后边通常加时间；with“随着，用”；over“在（做）……期间，边……边……”。

11.【译文】10 天前，那个年轻人就告知了老板他要辞职的打算。

【解析】A. 考查介词搭配。inform sb of sth 通知/告知某人某事（固定搭配）。

12.【译文】在去机场的路上，他突然想起来忘带护照了。

【解析】B. happen，occur，take place 这些词都可表示“发生”之意，但是 occur 还有（想法或主意）被想起，被想到；reflect 反射，反映，考虑。

13.【译文】信息技术大大地影响了人们的生活 。

【解析】A. affect 是动词，影响；effect 是名词，影响，作用，效果；impact 既为动词又是名词影响，但题中用的是现在完成时应为 impacted；infect 是动词，感染，传染。由句意可知此处缺少谓语动词。

14.**【译文】**很好地掌握英语绝非易事。

【解析】D. 固定搭配的考查。by no means 绝不。by all means 一定，务必。by any means 无论如何。by every means 想方设法。

15.**【译文】**除了偶尔的特殊原因，他从不向顾客妥协让步。这一次他竟然把价格降低了一半，这让我很震惊。

【解析】D. leak 泄露，渗漏；draw 拖，拉；quote 引述，引用；yield to 对……屈服，让步。

16.**【译文】**能够预测价格变化对供需的影响程度是非常有用的。

【解析】C. 考查介词搭配。to the extent 在……程度，到……地步。

17.**【译文】**在校大学生有权使用学校图书馆的稀有书籍。

【解析】D. 考查固定搭配。have access to 有……的使用权。

2011 年

1.**【译文】**那个店员被解雇了，因为她被指控欺骗顾客。

【解析】A. accuse sb of sth/doing 指控、指责某人做了某事；charge sb with sth/doing 指控某人做某事；scold 责骂；curse 诅咒。

2.**【译文】**不用说，他继承了母亲的漂亮和幽默感。

【解析】A. inherit 继承，遗传；carry 携带，搬运；inhabit 栖息，居住于；resemble 类似，像。

3.**【译文】**他们仔细地算出完成这项工程所需要的材料和时间。

【解析】D. pick up 拾起，接载，学会；leave out 不包括，遗漏；take out 取出，扣除，邀请某人外出；figure out 与 work out 是近义词组，意思是计算出，制定出，解决。

4.**【译文】**不久后，他将要通过两个里程碑，也就是他将要拿到硕士学位并找到一份挑战性的工作。

【解析】C. long ago 很久以前；not long ago 不久前；before long 不久以后；long before 很早以前，很久之前。

5.**【译文】**有些疾病是通过水生动物传播的。

【解析】B. transport 交通，运输；transmit 传播，传输，发射；transform 改变，变形，转换；transplant 移植，迁移。

6.**【译文】**当看到医生第一眼时，我们的希望就出现了。

【解析】A. arise *vi.* 出现；raise *vt.* 提高；举起；养育；筹备；rise *vi.* 上升，升起；arouse *vt.* 激起，引起，唤起。

7.**【译文】**摄入太多脂肪会导致心脏病和高血压。

【解析】B. attribute to 把……归因于；contribute to 导致，有助于；attend to 照顾，照料；devote to 致力于，投身于，奉献于。

8.**【译文】**我觉得不会下雨，但以防万一，我会带把伞。

【解析】B. as if＝as though，好像，似乎；in case 万一，假使；even if 虽然，即使。

9.**【译文】**这个大厅可以容纳 1000 人，你可以坐在你想坐的地方。

【解析】C. seat 可容纳，使坐下。seat 表示“坐下”时有固定搭配 be seated，故选 C。

10.**【译文】**在所有的公众场合，像剧院、电影院和餐馆等，抽烟都应该被禁止。

【解析】A. ban 禁止，取缔。specify 指定，详细说明。pass 经过，通过。preserve 保存，保护，维持。

2012 年

1.**【译文】**警察现在正在这个地区搜寻小偷。

【解析】C. run for 竞选。reach for 伸手去拿。search for 搜索，搜寻。charge for 索价，要价，收费。

2.**【译文】**那所大学为了满足英语初学者的需求，正计划提供更多的英语课程。

【解析】B. meet the need 满足需求（固定搭配）。supply 提供，供给。satisfy 使满意。

3.**【译文】**他从来没有在那么多人面前演讲过，所以感觉非常紧张。

【解析】D. exciting 令人兴奋的，令人激动的。stupid 愚蠢的。disappointed 失望的，沮丧的。nervous 紧张不安的。

4.**【译文】**一旦到达一个新地方，你最好入乡随俗。

【解析】C. follow the local custom 属于固定搭配，其它选项意思均不符合。

5.**【译文】**他说话的方式让我想起了他的祖父。

【解析】D. in the manner 属于固定搭配，remind sb of... 提醒某人……，让某人想起……。也属于固定搭配。

6.**【译文】**我们所有人仍然记得四年前发生在汶川的那场可怕的地震。

【解析】B. interrupt 打断（别人的话），打扰，妨碍。strike 袭击，撞击，罢工、罢课。knock 敲击，与某物相撞。explode 爆炸，爆发。

7.**【译文】**工友们看到他跌落下来，鲜血从伤口里流出来。

【解析】A. 这是一组近义词，作为名词，它们的区别是：wound 特指伤口，创伤。injure 泛指身体在意外事故中受伤（对象一般是人，不是物体）；伤害，损害。hurt 指疼痛，痛苦。damage 损害，破坏（对象一般是物，不用于人）。

8.**【译文】**他就是那种为了追逐利润而不择手段的商人。

【解析】A. in pursuit of 追求。catch 抓住，赶上。grasp 抓住，把握。master 掌握，控制。

9.**【译文】**Tom 的卧室乱七八糟，凌乱不堪，因为到处都是书和卷子。

【解析】D. mess 混乱，in a mess 乱七八糟（固定短语）；litter 垃圾；disorder 混乱（指的是没有秩序）；rubbish 垃圾，废物。

10.**【译文】**一辆汽车碾过了珍妮的猫并疾驰而去。

【解析】A. run over 碾过，轧过；run into 撞上，偶遇，遭遇；run through 穿过，贯穿；run down 撞倒，停止。

2013 年

1.**【译文】**在他看来，人生的成功主要取决于我们如何与别人相处。

【解析】B. keep on 继续；depend on 依赖，依靠，取决于；insist on 坚持，坚决要求；spend on 在……方面花费。

2. **【译文】**我们公司的服务范围遍布全世界将近 80 个国家。

【解析】A. available 可得到的，可利用的，有效的，能见得到的；relative adj. 相关的，相对的，n. 亲戚，亲属；natural 自然的，天性的；careful 仔细的，小心的。

3. **【译文】**过度饮酒有害健康是真的。

【解析】D. sufficient 足够的，充分的；little 小的，很少的；enough 足够的；excessive 过多的，极度的。

4. **【译文】**价格上升可能反映了对这些商品的需求在上升。

【解析】A. reflect 反映，反射；remind 提醒，使想起；convey 传达，运输；explain 解释，说明。

5. **【译文】**飞机晚到了一个小时。

【解析】D. plan 飞机；date 日期，约会，年代；time 时间，时代，次数；schedule 计划时间，时间表，日程表。

6. **【译文】**新鲜的空气，足够的锻炼，营养的食物有助于良好的健康。

【解析】A. contribute to 有助于，导致，造就；add to 加入，增加到；attribute to 把……归因于；distribute to 分配给，分发给。

7. **【译文】**我们的英语教授是一个法国人。

【解析】B. birth 出生；origin 起源，出身；source 资源，来源；breed 品种，种类。

8. **【译文】**任何想要创业的人必须有一些资金。

【解析】D. currency 货币，通币；income 收入；wealth 财富；capital 资金，资本。

9. **【译文】**Jim 往这个国家走私药品被抓住了。

【解析】B. steal 偷窃；smuggle 走私，偷渡；smug adj. 自命不凡的；giggle 咯咯笑。

10. **【译文】**电脑防御系统计算出摧毁敌人导弹的方法。

【解析】C. spoil 溺爱，宠爱；harm 伤害，危害，损害；destroy 摧毁；damage 损坏，破坏。

11. **【译文】**如今，通过家用电器的应用家务变得容易多了。

【解析】C. facility 设备，设施；equipment 装备，设备，器材；appliance 电器，装置；utility 公共设施。

2014 年

1. **【译文】**教育在任何国家都不能被忽略。

【解析】C. reject 拒绝。delete 删除。neglect 忽略。refuse 拒绝。根据意思故选 C。

2. **【译文】**虽然当前找工作很困难，亨利还是在一家知名公司得到了一个职位。

【解析】B. place 地点。position 职位（正式）。post 岗位（非正式）。patch 补丁，故选 B。

3. **【译文】**医生说心理紧张是导致他睡眠不好的主要原因。

【解析】A. tension 紧张。sadness 悲哀。anger 生气。relaxation 放松。根据意思故选 A。

4. **【译文】**最后一次见到她是三年前在我哥哥的婚礼上。

【解析】B. to 到……。at 在……，in 在……里面。during 在……期间，根据意思选 B。

5.**【译文】**要不是警察赶到，他可能已经被杀了。

【解析】D. 根据选项只有 but for “要不是……” 用于虚拟语气，故选 D。

6.**【译文】**由于恶劣的天气状况，一些地区人口稀少。

【解析】A. due to 由于，but for 要不是，in spite of 尽管，with regard to 关于，根据题意故选 A。

7.**【译文】**讨论没有达成协议，因为双方都不愿意让步。

【解析】C. reach/arrive at an agreement “达成协议”是固定搭配，故选 C。

8.**【译文】**我正在做饭时，一声巨响转移了我的注意力，结果饭菜都烧糊了。

【解析】B. divide 划分，divert 转移注意力，focus 集中，separate 分开，根据题意故选 B。

9.**【译文】**在使用新的高压锅之前，要仔细地阅读说明书。

【解析】D. notice 通知，order 命令，advertisement 广告，instructions 说明书，根据意思选 D。

10.**【译文】**要跟上潮流是要花钱的。

【解析】C. go along with 一起去，get on with 相处，keep up with 跟上，carry on with 继续，故选 C。

11.**【译文】**如果我睡眠好的话，我就能解决这个问题。

【解析】B. be able to do sth = be capable of doing sth 能够做某事，是固定搭配，故选 B。

12.**【译文】**如果遇到困难，要毫不犹豫地请求帮助。

【解析】C. ask about 询问，ask after 问候，ask for 请求，ask in 请（人）进来，根据题意选 C。

13.**【译文】**他们所有人对 Lana 所取得的成就感到震惊。

【解析】A. be amazed at… “对……感到震惊”，是固定搭配，故选 A。

14.**【译文】**由于下雨，足球比赛取消了。

【解析】C. call up 打电话，call on 拜访，call off 取消，call for 需要，根据题意选 C。

15.**【译文】**学生应该培养良好的考试态度。

【解析】D. attitude towards… “对……的态度”是固定搭配，故选 D。

16.**【译文】**对于这一争论，我保持中立——我不关心到底谁赢。

【解析】C. natural 自然的，central 中心的，neutral 中立的，middle 中间的，故选 C。

17.**【译文】**在大街上，她从我身边经过，但没注意到我。

【解析】D. take notice of “注意到……”是固定搭配，故选 D。

18.**【译文】**宽容在于尊重别人的观点。

【解析】A. consist in 在于，consist of 由……组成，insist on 坚持，depend on 依赖，故选 A。

19.**【译文】**除了偶尔下点小雨，天气还是不错的。

【解析】D. optional 可选择的，intentional 有意的，additional 另外的，occasional 偶尔的，故选 D。

20.【译文】每个人都不能忽视众所周知的事实。

【解析】B. blind sb to sth 使某人看不到某事，故选 B。

21.【译文】这件衬衣的颜色与那件外套不搭配。

【解析】B. balance“使……保持平衡”；match“与……搭配”；corresponding 对应的；accord 符合，故选 B。

22.【译文】这个男孩渴望吸收各个领域的知识。

【解析】B. accomplish 完成；absorb 吸收；arrange 安排；approach 接近，故选 B。

23.【译文】在我卧室的书桌上，有一把剪刀，一堆书和一束花 。

【解析】D. a piece of 一块；a pocket of 一袋；a slice of 一片；a bunch of 一束，故选 D。

24.【译文】在教授看来，大学生应该养成自主学习的习惯。

【解析】D. “as far as … be concerned”是固定搭配，意思是“在……看来”。

25.【译文】没有人能够对事故给出满意的解释。

【解析】A. come up with 想出……，提出……；come through 穿过；come upon 偶遇；come into 进入，故选 A。

26.【译文】令我高兴的是，我校的足球队轻松地赢得了比赛。

【解析】C. to one’s ＋ n 是固定结构，意思是“令某人……的是”。

27.【译文】通常，利德先生乘火车而不是开车去市中心的办公室。

【解析】B. without 没有；instead of 代替，而不是；in case of 以防……；in spite of 虽然，故选 B。

2015 年

1.【译文】粉色和蓝色的裙子都很好看，但是我喜欢前者。

【解析】C. earlier 较早，beginner 初学者，新手，former 前者，first 最初，故选 C。

2.【译文】他做出承诺要让所有的孩子学英语，但是很快他发现没有网络课程这是不可能的。

【解析】B. confinement 监禁，commitment 承诺，conception 概念，commission 委员会，故选 B。

3.【译文】住在这座公寓里的人能够免费使用游泳池。

【解析】A. have free access to“可免费使用…… ”是固定搭配，故选 A。

4.【译文】他用 10 英镑回报那位把他的狗带回来的老人。

【解析】A. reward sb with sth 用某物回报某人，prize n. 奖品，v. 珍视；give sb sth 给某人某物，pay for 支付，故选 A。

5.【译文】他说他从来没有被大人物所恐吓去做他不喜欢的事。

【解析】D. intimidate sb into doing sth 恐吓某人做某事，是固定搭配。

6.【译文】我很抱歉在这种场合用这么多问题打扰你。

【解析】D. interfere 干涉，offend 冒犯，impress 留下印象，disturb 打扰，故选 D。

7.【译文】我只在工作日工作，周末不工作。

【解析】C. on weekdays 在工作日，at weekends 在周末。

8.**【译文】**她抓住肥皂，彻底洗手。

【解析】A. thoroughly 彻底地，thorough 彻底的，although 尽管，though 尽管，副词修饰动词，故选 A。

9.**【译文】**钢琴是一种流行的乐器。

【解析】B. machine 机器，instrument 乐器，equipment 设备、装备，tool 工具，故选 B。

10.**【译文】**汉语中有很多谚语，同样的，英语中也有很多谚语。

【解析】B. meanwhile 与此同时，similarly 同样地，usually 通常地，typically 典型地，故选 B。

11.**【译文】**相比于老歌，很多年轻人更喜欢流行歌曲，他们认为流行歌手非常酷。

【解析】B. prefer A to B“相比于 B 更喜欢 A”，是固定搭配。

12.**【译文】**工程师试图用几幅图来解释问题。

【解析】C. recognize 承认，impress 留下印象，illustrate 解释、说明，identify 识别，故选 C。

13.**【译文】**她冲过去预定了下趟航班的座位。

【解析】C. push 推，draw 画，rush 冲刺，stroke 轻抚、敲击，故选 C。

14.**【译文】**他最喜欢的消遣方式就是敲鼓。

【解析】A. pastime 消遣，action 活动，habit 习惯，moment 时刻，故选 A。

15.**【译文】**这样的天气对于游客来说太热了。

【解析】B. so 后跟形容词，such 后加名词，what 什么，which 哪一个，故选 B。

16.**【译文】**昨天早上他登记入住，将会待三天。

【解析】D. check up 清理、调查，check on 核查，check out 结账离开，check in 登记入住，故选 D。

17.**【译文】**完全没必要慌张，我们很快会回到机场。

【解析】A. panic 慌张，terror 恐怖，fright 害怕，rage 生气、发怒，故选 A。

18.**【译文】**我想转达我父母对你和你的家人的问候。

【解析】D. confront 遇到，面对，display 陈列，consult 咨询，convey 传达、转达，故选 D。

19.**【译文】**城市的新面貌给外国游客留下了深刻的印象。

【解析】A. leave a deep impression on sb“给某人留下深刻的印象”是固定搭配。

20.**【译文】**在这样噪音里工作是是完全不可能的。

【解析】B. especially 尤其、特别，absolutely 绝对、完全，unreasonably 不合理地，unusually 不寻常地，故选 B。

21.**【译文】**一个皮包骨的人是极其瘦的，在某种程度上你发现并不吸引人。

【解析】D. lonely 孤独的，mean 吝啬的，brave 勇敢的，skinny 消瘦的，故选 D。

22.**【译文】**加班对身体和精神都是一种负担。

【解析】B. task 任务，burden 负担，bother 烦扰，weight 重量，故选 B。

23.**【译文】**火一会儿就蔓延了整个城镇。

【解析】A. spread through 蔓延，spread down 流传，spread over 覆盖，spread out 延伸，故选 A。

24.【译文】导致两人严重受伤的这场事故是由于粗心驾驶引起的。

【解析】B. result in 导致，result from 由……引起，C 和 D 不与 result 连用，故选 B。

25.【译文】法学院不像医学院花费好多年的时间。

【解析】A. take 花时间，主语是物；cost 花金钱，主语是物；spend 花时间，金钱，主语为人；pay 花钱，主语为人；故选 A。

26.【译文】当我看到他脸上的表情时，我意识到他是和我的意见是一致的。

【解析】A. in agreement with sb“与……意见一致”，是固定搭配。

27.【译文】她对她丑陋的外表很敏感。

【解析】B. sensible 明智的，sensitive 敏感的，sense 感觉，sentimental 多愁善感的，故选 B。

28.【译文】他只是受了轻伤，并不严重。

【解析】A. slight 轻微的，special 特别的，similar 相似的，substantial 实质的，故选 A。

29.【译文】他们穿白颜色的衣服。

【解析】D. be dressed in＋颜色，put on ＋衣服，dress up 打扮某人，故选 D。

30.【译文】因为他们正在约会，所以我们都相信他们在恋爱。

【解析】B. on a date“约会”，是固定搭配。

2016 年

1.【译文】残疾孩子需要很多东西。首先，他们需要的是爱。

【解析】A. first of all 首先，not at all 一点也不，after all 毕竟，all in all 总之，故选 A。

2.【译文】中国北方的煤炭工业现在几乎是原来规模的一半。

【解析】B. formal 正式的，former 前者的、以前的，latter 后者的，later 后来的，故选 B。

3.【译文】这个足球运动员希望能很快转移到另一个队。

【解析】A. transfer 转移，transport 交通运输，transplant 移植，transact 谈判，交易，故选 A。

4.【译文】她对工作的投入让她没有空闲时间。

【解析】A. devotion 奉献，faith 信念，trust 信任，interest 兴趣，故选 A。

5.【译文】自从父亲离开后，孩子们已经失控了。

【解析】C. out of style 过时，under control 在控制之下，out of control 失控，in style 时髦的，故选 C。

6.【译文】当人们看见这个英雄的时候，人群中爆发出很大的欢呼声。

【解析】C. catch sight of“看见……”，是固定搭配。

7.【译文】——你喜欢昨天晚上的那个电视节目吗?

——不，特别不喜欢。

【解析】A. particularly 特别地，obviously 明显地，surprisingly 吃惊地，normally 正常地，故选 A。

8.【译文】在生活中，我们有时候为自己的自私而觉得内疚。尽管在人性上我们大部分都是慷

慨的。

【解析】C. be guilty of… “对……感到内疚”，是固定搭配。

9.**【译文】**老师不允许他的学生在考试中作弊。

【解析】D. allow sb to do sth“允许某人干某事”，是固定搭配。

10.**【译文】**许多电脑使用者正面临电脑病毒的威胁。

【解析】D. under threat“面临威胁”，是固定搭配。

11.**【译文】**大卫故意说出这个事实去惹恼她，她因为被好朋友出卖而生气。

【解析】A. on purpose 故意地，in need 急需，in detail 详细地，not at all 一点也不，故选 A。

12.**【译文】**除了地板上有些废纸以外，这个教室是很整洁的。

【解析】A. except for 前后名词不同类，besides 前后名词同类，意为“除了……之外还有……”，except 前后名词同类，意为“除了……”，without 没有，故选 A。

13.**【译文】**天气恶劣，建筑计划延误了几个星期。

【解析】C. go on 继续，put on 穿上，set back 推迟，build up 建立，故选 C。

14.**【译文】**他们当然希望他们选择的这个剧将会受到学校和父母们的欢迎。

【解析】D. be popular with“受……的欢迎”，是固定搭配。

15.**【译文】**这两幅画如此的相似以至于很难把它们区分开。

【解析】D. exact 确切的，familiar 熟悉的，likely 可能的，similar 相似的，故选 D。

16.**【译文】**这场演唱会的票到下个月末才可以买到。

【解析】B. acceptable 可以接受的，available 可以得到的，advisable 明智的，applicable 可应用的，故选 B。

17.**【译文】**当你洗完脸的时候请关掉水龙头。

【解析】B. turn on 打开，turn off 关掉，turn out 证明是、结果是，turn over 移交，故选 B。

18.**【译文】**不要和坏孩子来往，否则的话，你的整个人生将要被毁掉。

【解析】A. or 否则，but 但是，and 和，so that 为了，故选 A。

19.**【译文】**孤独了那么多年，我也应该有一个伴侣陪我住在这个房子里。

【解析】B. alone 孤单的（身体上），lonely 寂寞的（精神上），single 单一的，simple 简单的，故选 B。

20.**【译文】**这个银行在世界许多大城市建立了分公司。

【解析】D. parts 部分，twigs 嫩枝，benches 长凳，branches 分支、树枝，故选 D。

21.**【译文】**当他求学的时候，他经济上依赖他的妻子。

【解析】A. depend on“依赖……”，是固定搭配。

2017 年

1.**【答案】**A

【翻译】只有一个小男孩儿在事故中幸存下来，其他的人都遇难了。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. survive 幸存于；B. submit 提交，服从；C. suffer 遭受；D. succeed 成功。根据句

意，A 选项最符合，故选 A.

2. **【答案】**D

【翻译】我不知道他说的是否是真的，但是我会尽力去证实。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. confine 限制；B. confess 坦白；C. conform 符合，遵照；D. confirm 证实，确认。根据句意，D 选项最符合，故选 D.

3. **【答案】**B

【翻译】我的相机调节后可以在阴天或者晴天的条件下拍照。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. treat 对待，治疗；B. adjust 调节，校正；C. adopt 收养，采纳；D. remedy 改正，纠正。根据句意，B 选项最符合，故选 B.

4. **【答案】**C

【翻译】那些被父母过度保护的孩子们可能会被宠坏。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】C. spoil 指的是宠坏，溺爱，符合句意，故选 C. A. hurt 伤害（多指心灵上的伤害）；B. damage 损坏（多指局部的，可以修复的一种破坏）；D. harm 伤害（多指对身体健康的伤害）。

5. **【答案】**C

【翻译】我觉得整篇论文都得重写，只有前面几部分可以保留。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. sustain 维持，支撑；B. contain 包含；C. retain 保留；D. maintain 保持。根据句意，C 选项最符合，故选 C.

6. **【答案】**D

【翻译】船翻了，男孩儿们都掉进了水里。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】A. turn on 打开；B. turn down 调小；C. turn off 关闭；D. turn over 翻转。根据句意，D 选项最符合，故选 D.

7. **【答案】**C

【翻译】老师问了一个难题，但是最终 Peter 提出了一个好答案。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】come up with 为固定搭配，译为提出，想出，其他选项不存在，故选 C.

8. **【答案】**B

【翻译】王先生年纪太大不能踢足球了，他决定从事网球。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】A. take in 吸收，领会；B. take up 从事，学习；C. take for 误认为；D. take over 接管。根据句意，B 选项最符合，故选 B.

9. **【答案】**C

【翻译】不久前，我很了解的一个人卷入了一场事故当中。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】A. be related to 与……相关；B. be included in 包含于……中；C. be involved in 卷入……中；D. be subjected to 经受……。根据句意，C 选项最符合，故选 C.

10.【答案】A

【翻译】通过和平方式实现统一是我们一贯的政策。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. consistent 一贯的，始终的；B. considerate 考虑周全的；C. continual 连续的（中间有间断）；D. continuous 连续不断的（中间无间断）。根据句意，A 选项最符合，故选 A.

11.【答案】B

【翻译】许多人抱怨现代生活节奏太快。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. rate（变化）速率，速度；B. pace 节奏，步调；C. speed（汽车）速度；D. growth 生长，增长。根据句意，B 选项最符合，故选 B.

12.【答案】C

【翻译】这个问题我们已经好几天了但是我们还没有得出结论。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】come to a conclusion 为固定搭配，译为：得出结论，故选 C。A. result 结果；B. end 结束；D. judgement 判断。

13.【答案】A

【翻译】这个城市缓慢的交通服务每天都让我很气恼。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. annoyed 气恼的；B. confused 困惑的；C. horrified 恐怖的；D. irritated 激怒的。根据句意，A 选项最符合，故选 A。

14.【答案】A

【翻译】因为他言行不一，没有人喜欢他。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】A. correspond with 与……相符；B. agree on 对某事有同样看法；C. communicate with 与……沟通交流；D. consist of 由……组成。根据句意，A 选项最符合，故选 A。

15.【答案】B

【翻译】他的英语文学知识要比我的好。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】be superior to 为固定搭配，译为：比……好，比……优，故选 B。

16.【答案】C

【翻译】他几乎没有去过电影院，因为他的工作几乎占据了他所有的时间。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】A. take away 拿走；B. take over 接管；C. take up 从事，占用；D. take in 吸收，领会。根据句意，C 选项最符合，故选 C。

17. **【答案】**C

【翻译】世界杯足球赛将会对全世界现场直播。

【考点】形近词辨析

【解析】A. alive adj. 活着的，做后置定语；B. living adj. 活的；C. live v. 居住，生活，还可做副词在现场，实况地 ；D. lively adj. 活泼的，可爱的。根据句意，C 选项最符合，故选 C。

18. **【答案】**B

【翻译】这个饭店一到周日就很忙，所以我今天会打电话预留一个位置。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】A. preserve 保存；B. reserve 预留，预订；C. observe 观察；D. deserve 值得，应得。根据句意，B 选项最符合，故选 B.

19. **【答案】**C

【翻译】绝不要浪费任何东西，最重要的是不要浪费时间。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】A. after all 毕竟；B. all in all 总之；C. above all 首先，最重要的是；D. all over 到处。根据句意，C 选项最符合，故选 C.

20. **【答案】**A

【翻译】一般来说，商务信函应该用正式的样式而不是个人的。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】A. rather than 而不是；B. other than 除了；C. less than 少于；D. more than 多于。根据句意，A 选项最符合，故选 A.

2018 年

1. **【答案】**C

【翻译】澳大利亚酒在消费者的受欢迎程度正在增高。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】relativity 相关性，相对性；regularity 规律性，经常性；popularity 流行，普及；population 人口

2. **【答案】**A

【翻译】因为缺少时间，昨天我没有和我妹妹一起去购物。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】lack 缺少；shortage 不足，短缺；zero 零；poverty 贫穷

3. **【答案】**B

【翻译】简是我最好的朋友，她经常和我分享她的秘密。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】speak 说，讲；share 分享，share sth with sb 和……分享……；report 报道；find 发现

4. **【答案】**A

【翻译】山姆来参加面试的时候，刚开始他感到紧张，很快他就平静下来了。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】nervous 紧张的；exciting 兴奋的；curious 好奇的；anxiously 焦虑地

5. **【答案】**A

【翻译】我们想要你知道我们很感谢你的及时援助。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】appreciate 感谢，欣赏；thank 感谢，thank sb for sth 因某事感谢某人；accept 接受；admire 称赞

6. **【答案】**D

【翻译】经理告诉他的秘书起草一份合同。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】draw in（天黑）渐早，吸引；draw on（时光）渐渐过去，利用；draw out 拉长；draw up 草拟，起草

7. **【答案】**A

【翻译】粗心驾驶会使你丧命。

【考点】词义解析

【解析】cost 花费，使丧失，主语为物；spend 花费，主语为人，spend some time/some money on sth；pay for 支付，主语为人；buy 买，主语为人

8. **【答案】**A

【翻译】当前，我们公司有30个全职职员和15个兼职职员。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】currently 当前；mostly 大部分；likely 可能的；internationally 国际性地

9. **【答案】**A

【翻译】我新工作的条件比旧工作的好很多。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】condition 条件，状态；position 职位；boss 老板；pay 支付

10. **【答案】**B

【翻译】那个富人看不起他的穷邻居。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】look down upon 看不起，蔑视

11. **【答案】**B

【翻译】努力工作能够弥补智商的不足。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】make up for 弥补

12. **【答案】**D

【翻译】车被撞的粉碎，但是，司机没有受到一点儿伤出来了。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】damage 对物体的损害；wound 伤口；pain 痛苦；injury（对身体的）伤害

13.【答案】A

【翻译】你必须给我们更多地时间。否则，我们不能做好工作。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】otherwise 否则；whether 是否；therefore 因此；consequently 所以，因此

14.【答案】C

【翻译】你可以自由地讨论你喜欢的。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】readily 乐意地；willingly 乐意地；freely 自由地；independently 独立地

15.【答案】A

【考点】词义辨析

【翻译】秋天的空气很寒冷，所以，她给她儿子拿了一个外套。

【解析】chilly 寒冷的；shivery 颤抖的，战栗的；chill 寒冷；cool 凉爽的

16.【答案】B

【翻译】他对他丑陋的面孔很敏感。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】sensible 明智的；sensitive 敏感的；senseless 无感的；sentimental 多愁善感的

17.【答案】D

【翻译】既然她生气了，不妨留她自己一个人。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】might as well 不妨

18.【答案】A

【翻译】因为公司这种做更多的商务，扩大工厂是有必要的。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】extend 延伸，扩大；increase 增加；rise 上升；grow 生长

19.【答案】A

【翻译】早饭从早上 8 点到 9 点半在餐厅供应。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】serve 服务，提供；make 制作；cook v. 烹饪，n. 厨师；eat 吃

20.【答案】A

【翻译】会议的日期从 6 月 5 号推迟到了 8 号。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】postpone 延迟，推迟；advance 提前；put forward 提前

2019 年

1.【答案】A

【翻译】调查者们已经得出结论你的个性受你的基因影响。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】come to the conclusion 得出结论，故选 A. get/reach the conclusion 排除 BC. arrive at the conclusion，排除 D。

2.【答案】C

【翻译】她一直在练习为了她能够赢得国际演讲比赛。

【考点】状语从句

【解析】空后为句子，排除 ABD，故选 so that 为了、以便于。

3.【答案】B

【翻译】卡罗不擅长爬山因为他恐高。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】介词后为名词做宾语，高度 height 故选 B。

4.【答案】D

【翻译】哈利和萨姆都否认打架是他们的错。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】blame 责备、责任，criticism 批评，cause 原因，fault 错误，故选 D。

5.【答案】C

【翻译】政府应该为普通人做更多。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】usual 通常的、惯例的，everyday 每天的，ordinary 普通的，typical 典型的。

6.【答案】D

【翻译】一些药物会产生不良的影响。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】consequences 结果，results 结果，products 产品，effects 作用、影响。

7.【答案】A

【翻译】确保你的财产不受风暴损害是明智的。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】insure 确保、保证，assure 担保、使确信，reassure 使安心，使放心，ensure 保证，确保 AD 都有确保的意思，但常用 insure。

8.【答案】A

【翻译】Joe 今天给我讲了一个笑话，但是我根本没有明白。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】get 得到、理解、明白，bring 拿来，collect 收集，fetch 取回。

9.【答案】C

【翻译】我认为她在造船业中发财了。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】took 拿走，won 赢得，made 使，制造，saved 节约，拯救。make one’s fortune 发财，挣钱。

10.【答案】B

【翻译】当你没为它准备好的时候，我真的不明白考试的意义。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】look 看到，see 看到、理解、明白，have 有，mind 介意。

11.【答案】B

【翻译】这个辩论会今晚会举行。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】take place 为固定搭配，意为：发生、举行、举办，故选 B。

12.【答案】B

【翻译】Ivan 告诉我他在你上周的烤肉野餐上真的玩的很开心。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】enjoy oneself 为固定搭配，意为：某人玩的开心，故选 B。

13.【答案】C

【翻译】纽约和芝加哥的距离是多少？

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】length 长度，space 空间，distance 距离，gap 间隙、缺口、差距，根据句意可知，问的是纽约和芝加哥两个城市之间的距离，故选 C。

14.【答案】B

【翻译】他们被控告干涉中国的内政。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】matter 事情、麻烦，affairs 事务、事宜、政事，thing 事情、东西，concern 关心，根据句意，是说中国的内部事务，故选 B。

15.【答案】B

【翻译】不要忘记上交你的作文在周五的课上。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】B. hand in 上交，C. hand 手，D. handle 处理，解决。根据句意，是说上交你的作文，故选 B。

16.【答案】C

【翻译】老师问了一些问题来确信学生理解了这篇课文。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】make sure 为固定搭配，意为：确信、确定，根据句意故选 C。

17.【答案】C

【翻译】她正在挑剔我做头发的方式。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】find fault with 为固定搭配，意为：挑剔、找某人的茬，根据句意故选 C。

18.【答案】C

【翻译】Joe 盯了我一会儿，然后不情愿地举起手。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】extend 延伸、扩充，increase 增长、增强，raise 举起，put 放、移动、安置。

19.【答案】B

【翻译】地球从太阳上接收必要的光和热。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】supply 提供、供给，receive 接收，provide 提供，require 要求，根据句意可知，地球接收太阳的光和热，故选 B。

20.【答案】D

【翻译】慢点！我跟不上你了。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】get on with 与某人相处，put down 放下，drop out 退出、退学，keep up with 追上、赶上，根据句意前面说慢一点可知，后面是赶不上，故选 D。

2020 年

1.【答案】A

【翻译】我们的总理正尽力推行新的经济政策。

【考点】近义词辨析

【解析】economic *adj.* 经济的、经济学的，economical *adj.* 经济的、节约的（强调节约的），economy *n.* 经济，economics *n.* 经济学。

2.【答案】B

【翻译】罢工者受到威胁，如果他们不复工，就会被解雇。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】treat 对待、治疗，threaten 威胁，warn 警告（warn sb. to do sth. 警告某人做某事），tell 告诉。

3.【答案】B

【翻译】如果你真的想在那家公司工作，没有人会妨碍你的。

【考点】词组辨析

【解析】on one’s way（to）…在去……的路上，in one’s way 妨碍、阻碍，by the way 顺便，out of the way 不挡道、让路、偏僻。

4.【答案】C

【翻译】区分开这对双胞胎是困难的，因为他们长得很像。

【考点】近义词辨析

【解析】look like 看起来像……（后面要跟一个宾语），likely 可能的，look alike 看起来相似（后面不需要跟宾语），same 相同的（前面要加 the）。

5.【答案】B

【翻译】他们最小的孩子被宠坏了，因为他总是得到他想要的任何东西。

【考点】近义词辨析

【解析】waste 浪费，spoil 溺爱、宠坏，destroy 毁灭，uneducated 未受教育的、缺乏教养的。

6.【答案】D

【翻译】他的答案如此令人迷惑以至于我几乎一点都不理解。

【解析】explanation *n.* 解释，meaning *n.* 意义，interpretation *n.* 解释、说明。make sense 理解，弄清。

7.【答案】C

【翻译】他们爬到山顶以便能鸟瞰这个城市。

【考点】状语从句

【解析】in case＝for fear that 以防、万一，in order that 为了、以便于，as a result 结果。

8.【答案】D

【翻译】一旦养成一个习惯，就很难摆脱它。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】usage *n.* 使用，custom 习俗，practice 练习，habit 习惯。

9.【答案】C

【翻译】由于天气炎热，目前蔬菜短缺。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】need 需要，want 想要，shortage 短缺，desire 愿望、欲望。

10.【答案】D

【翻译】吃完饭后，吉米让服务员把帐单拿来。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】count 计数、数数，account 账户，tip 小费，bill 账单。

11.【答案】A

【翻译】有时广告能说服我们买一些不必要的东西。

【考点】词汇辨析

【解析】persuade 说服、劝说（persuade sb. to do sth. 劝说/说服某人做某事）；improve 提高、改善，announce 宣布，make 使、让、制作。

12.【答案】B

【翻译】由于新冠肺炎的爆发，去西欧的旅行被取消了。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】insist 坚持，cancel 取消，reduce 减少，infer 推断，推理。

13.【答案】C

【翻译】他的生日在一家餐馆庆祝，大约有 20 人参加。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】inspect 检查，install 安装，celebrate 庆祝，interfere 干涉。

14.【答案】D

【翻译】总的来说，那个城市比省内其他城市人口较少。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】generally speaking 一般来说，总的来说。

15.【答案】B

【翻译】文学和艺术对人们的思维方式有很大的影响。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】have an influence on…对……有影响。

16.【答案】C

【翻译】我们花了几分钟才明白他对这条建议的反应。

【考点】固定搭配

【解析】insight 洞察力，opinion 看法、观点（与 on/of 搭配），reaction 反应（与 to 搭配），comment 评论。

17.【答案】B

【翻译】他两年内根本没有买新房的打算。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】attitude 态度，intention 意图、目的、打算，statement 陈述，temptation 引诱、诱惑。

18.【答案】D

【翻译】在那场大洪水中，那个村子里只有百分之二十的人幸存下来。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】remain 仍然是、留下，stay 保持、待，live 居住、生活，survived 幸存、活下来。

19.【答案】C

【翻译】昨天她被一辆汽车撞倒，躺在路边不省人事。

【考点】词义辨析

【解析】asleep 睡着的，thoughtless 粗心大意的、欠考虑的，unconscious 无知觉的、昏迷的，unaware 未察觉的。

语法部分

第一章　名词

第二节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**所有的英雄都各有 3 张照片。

【解析】D. hero 变复数是加 es，photo 变复数加 s，这是考查以 o 结尾的名词变复数的情况。

2.**【译文】**一群羊在山脚下吃草和树叶。

【解析】A. sheep 是单复同形，不能加 s，排除 B、D 选项，grass 是不可数名词。所以答案选 A。

3.**【译文】**所有的玻璃杯是用玻璃做的，而不是塑料。

【解析】B. glass 当“玻璃杯”讲是可数名词，当材料“玻璃”时是不可数名词，故答案选 B。

4.**【译文】**那个碗里有多少条鱼?

【解析】B. fish 作鱼的数量为单复同形，作鱼的种类时复数为 fishes，作鱼肉时为不可数名词。how much 用来提问不可数名词的数量，排除 A、C 两项。the number of 修饰可数名词表示“……的数量”谓语动词用单数，how many 用来提问可数名词复数的数量，所以答案选 B。

5.**【译文】**在寒冷的国家，人们需要更多的衣物。

【解析】B. clothing 是衣物的统称，不可数名词。故选 B。

6.**【译文】**我尝试每一种方法让他戒烟，但都失败了。

【解析】D. means，单复同形的名词，意思是：方式、方法。根据句意答案选 D。

7.**【译文】**这个商店卖男式鞋和童鞋。

【解析】B. 表示分别所有两个名词都要加’s，故答案选 B。

8.**【译文】**她们名义上是女医生，但实际上并不是。

【解析】B. 女医生 woman doctor 变复数二者同时变复数。故答案选 B。

9.**【译文】**朱丽叶去鞋店买了双鞋。

【解析】B. 名词做定语要用单数。故答案选 B。

10.**【译文】**——想要喝点什么吗?

——请来点咖啡。

【解析】C. a little 修饰不可数名词，而 coffee 不可数，根据句意答案选 C。

11.**【译文】**在英国，信箱都被涂成红色。

【解析】A. 名词做定语用单数，排除 B、D，而谓语动词是复数 are，故选 A。

12.**【译文】**生物学是生命的科学。

【解析】D. of 所有格，表示所属关系，生命泛指不加 the，故答案选 D。

13.**【译文】**我将给你两周时间去完成这件事。

【解析】C. 表示时间、距离、重量等无生命的东西的名词，用’s 或’构成所属关系，以 s 结尾的所有格加’即可。故答案选 C。

14.**【译文】**铁比金更有用。

【解析】B. iron 不可数，不加 s，不用冠词修饰。

15.【译文】德国是一个努力工作的的民族。

【解析】C. German 德国人，变复数后加 s，故选项 C 符合。

16.**【译文】**迈克和约翰的父亲是一名老师。

【解析】A. 题中 Mike and John’s 表示两人共有的父亲，是一个人。故选 A。

17.**【译文】**你想要多少片面包?

【解析】D. bread 为不可数名词，用 piece 修饰，具体几片面包要用 pieces of bread。故答案选 D。

18.**【译文】**史密斯小姐是玛丽妈妈的一个朋友。

【解析】A. 考查双重所有格，Mary 加’s 表示是玛丽的妈妈，而 mother’s 表示是妈妈的朋

友。句意是玛丽妈妈的朋友。故答案选 A。

19.**【译文】**如果这裤子太大了，那就买一条小点的。

【解析】D. a pair of trousers 表示一条裤子。故答案选 D。

20.**【译文】**邀请的人数是 50，但许多人因各种不同的原因而缺席。

【解析】C. the number of……的数量，谓语动词用单数；a number of 大量的，许多的，谓语动词用复数。故答案选 C。

21.**【译文】**数学是科学的语言。

【解析】A. Mathematics“数学”，学科作主语，谓语 v 用单数，且是一般现在的事实。故答案是 A。

第二章　冠词

第二节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**如果我们期望一个更干净的世界，我们应该吸引世界的注意力去保护这个世界。

【解析】C. “一个……的世界”，加冠词 a，而吸引这个世界的注意力要加冠词 the 。

2.**【译文】**第一印象是最持久的。毕竟，你永远不会再次有机会去留下第一印象。

【解析】A. 序数词前加 a，表示再一次，又一次；而第一印象为 the first impression，故选 A。

3.**【译文】**在太空有超过 58 000 种的岩石物体，其中大约 900 种会降落到地球。

【解析】B. in space 在太空中表示一般概念，不加冠词；表示世界上独一无二的事物前要加定冠词 the，如 the sun/ moon/ earth 。

4.**【译文】**在宿营旅行期间，孩子们被大自然的奇观深深地吸引了。

【解析】C. 物质名词表一般概念时不加冠词，nature 前不加冠词，wonder“奇观”前加冠词表示特指。故选 C。

5.**【译文】**用这个发明带给他的一小笔钱几乎很难去支撑如此庞大的一个公司，这一点是很清楚的。

【解析】D. the little money 表示特指发明带给他的那一笔钱。a company 泛指公司。故答案选 D。

6.**【译文】**中国制造的洗衣机已经赢得世界广泛的关注，海尔也已经成为一个很受欢迎的品牌。

【解析】B. attention“关注，注意力”，抽象名词表一般概念不加冠词。a popular name 泛指，说明海尔只是很受欢迎的一个品牌之一。故答案选 B。

7.**【译文】**主席看到每样东西都井然有序这样的场景很高兴。

【解析】C. in place 固定搭配“在适当的位置，准备就绪，恰当的”，用排除法，故答案选 C。

8.**【译文】**——在商店橱窗的裙子你感觉如何？
——很漂亮。你可以把它当做一个生日礼物给琳达。

【解析】B. 第一空加 the 表示特指展窗里的那条裙子。第二空 a 泛指一个生日礼物。故答案选 B。

9.**【译文】**在大多数国家，一个大学文凭可以给你一个新的人生起点。

【解析】D. 国名前不加冠词，排除 A、B 两项；第二空用 a 表示泛指。故答案选 D。

10.**【译文】**多么遗憾你不能到那儿接受奖品。

【解析】C. what a pity 是习惯用法。the prize 特指那个奖品。故答案选 C。

第三章　数词

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**对我来说每天去上班很方便，因为每十分钟一班公交。

【解析】B. 表示“每……”时，用 every＋基数词＋名词的复数或 every＋序数词＋名词的单数，故答案选 B。

2.**【译文】**有 55 个学生申请这个职位，其中$\frac{2}{3}$是女生。

【解析】D. 分数表达法，基数词代表分子，可排除 B、C 两项；序数词代表分母，分子大于 1 时，分母序数词用复数。故答案选 D。

3.**【译文】**这个新校园是老校园的两倍大。

【解析】A. 倍数表达法，倍数是要放在最前面的，可排除 B、D 两项；倍数＋as＋adj /adv 原级＋as 是固定用法，故答案选 A。

4.**【译文】**这个新模型的花费是去年的两倍。

【解析】B. as many as 修饰可数名词，根据句意可排除；A、D 不符合题意；故答案选 B。

5.**【译文】**我和女儿在纽约游玩了两天。

【解析】D. a two-day tour 或者 a two days’tour 表示“两天的旅行”。故答案选 D。

6.**【译文】**约翰的年纪是玛丽的两倍大。

【解析】B. 倍数＋the size /age /length…of 是固定用法，两倍要用 twice。故答案选 B。

第三节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**他曾经失败过，然后，他再一次尝试了。

【解析】C. a＋序数词表示“又一次，再一次”是固定用法。故答案选 C。

2.**【译文】**在那个钢铁厂，大约$\frac{3}{5}$的工人是年轻人。

【解析】C. 分数表达法，基数词代表分子，可排除 A 项；序数词代表分母，排除 B；分子大于 1 时，分母序数词用复数，排除 D。故答案选 C。

3.**【译文】**一年有 365 天。

【解析】C. hundred，thousand 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。百位和十位要加 and，十位和个位有连字符。故答案选 C。

4.**【译文】**这个学校有 846 个学生。

【解析】C. hundred，thousand 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。百位和十位要加 and，十位和个位有连字符。故答案选 C。

5.**【译文】**每天有成百上千的人参观这个博物馆。

【解析】D. 在表示不确定数时，如“成百上千，成千上万”等，数词要加“s”，且与 of 连

用。故答案选 D。

6. **【译文】**会议室里有 200 人。

【解析】A. hundred，thousand 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。故答案选 A。

7. **【译文】**一年有 12 个月，12 月是一年的第 12 个月。

【解析】B. 根据句意第二空是表示第 12 个月，故要用序数词，可排除 A、C 两项；第 12 是“twelfth”而不是“twelveth”。故答案选 B。

8. **【译文】**现在让我再一次尝试。

【解析】B. a+序数词表示“又一次，再一次”是固定用法。故答案选 B。

9. **【译文】**去年冬天有两百个老人死于寒冷。

【解析】B. hundred，thousand 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。people 不加 s。故答案选 B。

10. **【译文】**这个故事的英雄是一个 30 多岁的艺术家。

【解析】D. 表示几十多岁，用“in one’s+数词复数”。故答案选 D。

11. **【译文】**19 世纪 70 年代，马克思开始学习俄语。

【解析】A. in the 1870s，固定搭配。

12. **【译文】**事故后不久，几十个警察被派到事故现场维持秩序。

【解析】A. 在表示不确定数时，如“成百上千，成千上万”等，数词要加“s”，且与 of 连用。故答案选 A。

13. **【译文】**在我们班，$\frac{2}{9}$的学生来自北方。

【解析】C. 分数表达法，基数词代表分子，序数词代表分母，分子大于 1 时，分母序数词用复数，排除 A，B。故答案选 C。

14. **【.** 译文**】**在比萨，有 180 英尺高的斜塔。

【解析】C. a 180-foot-high 表示“180 英尺高”，具有形容词性质。故答案选 C。

15. **【译文】**那时他仅仅才 20 多岁。

【解析】C. 表示几十多岁，用“in one’s+数词复数”。故答案选 C。

16. **【译文】**在 19 世纪 70 年代，这两个伟大的人写了那些信。

【解析】D. 表示“年代”，用“in the+年份复数”，故答案选 D。

17. **【译文】**我想知道是否可以再次问他。

【解析】D. a+序数词表示“又一次，再一次”是固定用法，the first 为形容词词性，修饰名词。故答案选 D。

18. **【译文】**在径赛项目中他获得了第一名。

【解析】A. 四个词只有 first 可以当副词来修饰动词。故答案选 A。

19. **【译文】**你将不得不花一两天的时间在这儿写你的报告。

【解析】C. a day or two 表示“一两天”是惯用法，相当于 one or two days。故答案选 C。

20. **【译文】**每年上千本书被捐给农村的贫困孩子们。

【解析】B. thousand 表确数时用原形，表约数时加 s，of. thousands of，成千上万的，固

定短语，故选 B。

21.【译文】地球几乎是月球的 50 倍大。

【解析】B. 倍数表达法。倍数＋the size /age /length（…）of…是固定用法。故答案选 B。

22.【译文】这儿 20%的人口是农民。

【解析】B. 百分数表达法。“数词（10，20，50…）＋percent”表示“百分之……”故答案选 B。

23.【译文】上周他们买了 48 盒这样的糖果。

【解析】A. dozen，hundred，thousand 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。故答案选 A。

24.【译文】画这个漂亮的马花了我 6 天的时间。

【解析】B. half a dozen“半打，六个”固定用法，故答案选 B。

25.【译文】60 个人被派往那里去帮助抗洪。

【解析】C. dozen，hundred，thousand，score 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。故答案选 C。

26.【译文】在他的书房有上千种书。

【解析】B. 在表示概数时，如“成百上千，成千上万”等，数词要加“s”，且与 of 连用。故答案选 B。

27.【译文】在国庆节，上亿人参加各种庆祝活动。

【解析】A. 在表示概数时，如“成百上千，成千上万，上亿”等，数词要加“s”，且与 of 连用。故答案选 A。

28.【译文】从这儿到学校要走两小时的路程。

【解析】D. two-hour walk 表示“两小时的路程”。而 walk 作名词时为可数，表示一段路程要加 a，故答案选 D。

29.【译文】他去超市买了 36 个鸡蛋和一些肉。

【解析】B. dozen，hundred，thousand 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。故答案选 B。

30.【译文】事故后不久，24 个警察被派到事故现场维持秩序。

【解析】C. dozen，hundred，thousand 等与确切的数字连用时，只能用单数形式，不加“s”。故答案选 C。

31.【译文】我们已经来过这里许多次了。

【解析】C. hundred 的用法：①基数词＋hundred，表具体数目；②hundreds of ＋n 表示大概数目。hundreds of times 几百次，许许多多次。故答案选 C。

第四章　形容词副词

第二节　真题演练

1.【译文】玛丽说这个盒子对于我来说太重了，以至于搬不动。

【解析】C. too…to…太……而不能……。并且副词 too 修饰形容词 heavy。故选 C。

2.【译文】大型客运飞机使得机场的交通问题变得更加严重。

【解析】B. 比较级+than，bad 的比较级是 worse。

3.【译文】他越是讨好她，她就越反感。

【解析】C. the 比较级…the 比较级… “越……就越……”；而 little 的比较级为 less 而不是 lesser。

4.【译文】苏珊足够有力可以搬动那个重箱子。

【解析】C. enough 用在形容词、副词后，名词前。

5.【译文】他对数学知之甚少，更不用说化学了。

【解析】A. much less 更不用说，故排除 B，C，D。

6.【译文】这个女演员不如当地报纸描述的那样漂亮。

【解析】C. 固定搭配：not so…as 和……不一样，不如……。

第三节　能力拓展

1.【译文】我连话都不跟他说，更不用说跟他一起讨论你的问题了。

【解析】D. “much less”——“更不用说”。

2.【译文】——你们的城市有多大？

——是你们的三倍。

【解析】D. 主语+谓语+倍数+as+形容词或副词原级+as…。

3.【译文】——怀特脱离危险了吗？

——没有，情况恐怕和以前一样差。

【解析】A. no better than before。和以前情况一样差。

4.【译文】玛丽的生物比班上任何人的都好很多。

【解析】D. 比较级前可用 much，a lot，far 等修饰故排除 A. anyone else 的所有格形式为 anyone else’s。

5.【译文】——他患的病不容易治疗。

——我知道，但是他好些了吗？

【解析】C. any 副词修饰形容词比较级，并且用在疑问句中或否定句。

6.【译文】他比班上的任何一位同学都勤奋。

【解析】C. 任何一个应用 any other+可数名词单数。

7.【译文】天气突然变化了，下起了倾盆大雨。

【解析】D. sudden 表突然的，意外的。

8.【译文】令他的家人非常失望的是，汤姆将不去野餐。

【解析】A. much 可用于 to one’s disappointment/surprise/joy…结构前，以加强语气。

9.【译文】——近来我几乎没见过迈克，他出差了吗？

——没有，他很早去办公室，并且回去地很晚。

【解析】C. lately 近来；late 迟，晚。

10.【译文】从电话里他满意的声音，我知道一切进展顺利。

【解析】C. 修饰人的嗓音、眼神、眼泪、叫声和表情等，常用过去分词，表示人自己的感情。under way 已经开始并进行着。

11.**【译文】**——他真的是个勇敢的人。

——我们非常钦佩他的勇气。

【解析】C. cannot…too…无论……都不过分。题意为“我们非常钦佩他的勇敢”。

12.**【译文】**教育部部长建议老师接受进一步的学习，能够跟得上最新发展。

【解析】D. further 表示进一步的，latest 表示最新的，最近的。

13.**【译文】**——为什么他花费那么长的时间一个商店接着一个搜寻，仅仅为一件上衣?

——噢，她对衣服是非常挑剔的。

【解析】B. be particular about 对……挑剔的、讲究的。

14.**【译文】**他的声音如此平常，并且一点也不生气。

【解析】C. not a bit 一点也不；not a little 非常；plenty of 充足的，大量的，用于修饰名词。

15.**【译文】**哦，孩子，为什么这样浪费你的时间?难道你一点也没找到值得做的事吗?

【解析】C. something worth doing 相当于 something that is worth doing。

16.**【译文】**——嗨，我听说你这周末要去世界公园。

——事实上，我打算去，但是我已经改变我的计划了。

【解析】C. actually 相当于 in fact。

17.**【译文】**——妈妈，我们已经变得实际了并且只买了我们需要的。

——噢，很高兴听你这样说。

【解析】A. practical 实际的，符合情况的；actual 真实的，实际的；content 满足的，满意的；familiar 熟悉的。

18.**【译文】**孩子们未经允许就在花园里摘花，史密斯先生很生气。

【解析】D. 句中 cross 相当于 angry。

19.**【译文】**——如果今晚你有空，我想邀请你去看足球比赛。

——你真好，但是你是认真的吗?

【解析】C. serious 认真的，严肃的。注意：true 侧重指事情的真实。

20.**【译文】**大家伙请注意！别动。让我照张相。

【解析】B. keep still 保持一动不动。calm 强调心情的平静；silent 沉默，不讲话；quiet 表示安静。

21.**【译文】**好的做事方法意味着节约时间，因此找到这些方法对我们来说是很重要的。

【解析】D. therefore 因此，otherwise 否则，however 然而，besides 此外、而且。

22.**【译文】**Fred 的数学在我们班级里是无人能匹敌的，但信不信由你，期末考试他通常是不及格的。

【解析】B. 句中 second to none 意为“第一的，无人能比的”，然后，根据转折连词 but 可知应填 hardly。

23.**【译文】**那晚我感觉特累，比平常睡的都早。

【解析】B. very，too，quite，fairly 和 so 一般不用来修饰比较级。

24.**【译文】**——她看起来是个讨人喜欢的服务员。

——是的，我们每个人对她的优质服务感到满意。

【解析】D. pleasant 意为“令人愉快的，讨人喜欢的”；pleased 指（人）满意的，高兴的。

25.**【译文】**近来，在中国，用手机发短信已经成为一种流行的方法来进行春节的问候。

【解析】B. a popular way 一种流行的、受欢迎的方式。

26.**【译文】**我认为无论是谁比别人对公司做的贡献大，都应该得到更高的薪金。

【解析】C. great 的比较级为 greater，the 表特指，a 表泛指。

27.**【译文】**在整理房间的时候，吉姆发现买给他的那个既漂亮又小巧的塑料玩具生日礼物。

【解析】D. 多个形容词修饰同一名词时，其排列顺序为：限定词（如 a，the，my，all 等），描绘性形容词及观点性形容词（如 strong，beautiful，fine 等），表示大小、长短、高低的形容词，表示年龄、新旧、颜色的形容词，表示国家、地区、出处的形容词，表示构成事物材料的形容词（如 wooden，glass 等）＋名词。

28.**【译文】**音乐会上的人数比预期的少很多，剩下许多票。

【解析】A. 数目（the number of…）应用大小来衡量（如：big，small 和 large）。

29.**【译文】**在中国传统的文化中，孩子的婚姻通常由父母决定。

【解析】A. traditional 为传统的，historic 有历史意义的，peaceful 和平的，civil 公民的。

30.**【译文】**今天城市交通不拥挤，因此我比平常早到家。

【解析】D. 交通拥挤用 heavy，交通通畅用 light。

第五章　代词

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**他宣布公司已经搬到了另一座城市。

【解析】A. another 泛指不定数中的另一个。

2.**【译文】**我写信正用的笔是不同于那个笔的。

【解析】A. that 指示代词，表“那个”，one 表示上文提到过的可数名词，下文为了避免重复可用 one。

第三节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**你能告诉我你在哪买的这么漂亮的手提包吗？我也想买一个。

【解析】A. it 指代前面所说的那件东西，而不是同类的其他东西，是特指，当指代一个有不定冠词的名词或带有形容词做定语的可数单数名词（不管有定冠词还是不定冠词），用 one；当指代一个带有定冠词的名词或不可数名词时，用 that。

2.**【译文】**在北京租房子比中国其他任何城市的租金都贵。

【解析】C. that 可指代上文提过的不可数名词 cost。

3.**【译文】**我朋友的办公室离车站比我的近。

【解析】C. mine 名词性物主代词，my 为形容词性物主代词。此处需填名词性物主代词。

4. **【译文】**因为太晚了街道上几乎没有人。

【解析】B. people“人们”为复数，所以排除 C、D，由句意因为晚所以选 B。

5. **【译文】**他的理论很难，但是有些人能理解。

【解析】A. people“人们”为复数，所以排除 C、D，由句意所以选 A。

6. **【译文】**让这么少的人在一天内做这么多的工作是不可能的。

【解析】A. worker“工人”为可数名词，work“工作”为不可数名词。

第六章　连词

第二节　能力拓展

1. **【译文】**虽然他年纪很大，但是他仍然工作很努力。

【解析】A. 前面说年纪大，后面说工作很努力，是转折关系，所以答案 A。

2. **【译文】**要么你去，要么你被解雇。

【解析】B. 把选项都带入，只有 B 选项符合题意，A 项 neither… nor 既不……也不……，whehter…or 是否，both…and 两者都……，答案 B。

3. **【译文】**之前他们露过营，所以他们知道要带什么。

【解析】C. 由题意知，他们露营过，所以知道带什么，是因果关系。

4. **【译文】**这些事情发生的原因是司机粗心。

【解析】D. A、B、C 选项后不能跟句子，其次，表从不缺成分，需选一个连接词，所以答案 D。

5. **【译文】**虽然正在下雨，但是他们依然在田里工作。

【解析】A. although 和 but 不能同时用，排除 B、C、D 选项句意不符。所以答案 A。

6. **【译文】**既然我们已经满足了你的要求，你就没有理由抱怨。

【解析】C. since that 这种形式不存在，只有 since 单独用，now that 既然，by now 截止到目前，根据题意，只有 C 选项符合题意。

7. **【译文】**写清楚以便你的老师能正确理解你。

【解析】D. 空后为句子所以排除 B，so that 连接目的状语。

8. **【译文】**如果你不快点，你就会错过火车。

【解析】A. unless ＝if…not…除非，如果不。

9. **【译文】**Francis 做的工作和他的哥哥一样好。

【解析】C. as…as 意为“和……一样”，其基本结构为：as＋adj. / adv. 原级＋as。“做”应该用 well 修饰，而不应该用 good。

10. **【译文】**正如我们期望的那样，观众的数量超过两万。

【解析】A. as 表正如……。

11. **【译文】**我认为他讨厌电视。你是对的，但是他仍然看节目。

【解析】A. yet“然而”，表转折。

12.【译文】我想知道她正在寻找谁。

【解析】D。know 后面的从句为宾语从句，从句需要用陈述语序，故排除 A。C. 题干译为“我想知道她正在寻找谁”look for 为寻找的意思。故正确答案为 D。

13.【译文】自从她去了纽约，她的父亲从来没收到她的来信。

【解析】D. since“自从……以来”和句中现在完成时 has not heard 连用。

14.【译文】由于做白日梦，彼得在天空中看到了幻影。

【解析】B. since 连词因为，“由于”表原因．。

15.【译文】火车离开后我们到达了车站。

【解析】A. 由前后时态及句意可知选 A，after 为“在……之后”。

16.【译文】尽管他身体不好，但是他和别人一样尽力工作。

【解析】B. although 表“尽管”。引导让步状语从句。

17.【译文】再给我一点时间我就会完成它。

【解析】C. 由句意可知前后表并列。and 表并列，故选 C。

18.【译文】那个工人在纽约找了几个月的工作，但是他任何工作都没找到。

【解析】B. 此句前后为转折关系，故选择 B，yet 表转折。

19.【译文】快点，否则你就会迟到。

【解析】A. or“否则”，yet 表转折。

20.【译文】不要和我犯相同的错误。

【解析】B. 考查固定搭配，the same…as 和……一样。

21.【译文】不要谈论你不确定的事情。

【解析】A. 从句从 of 划到句尾，为定语从句且不缺成分。可用关系副词或介词＋which/whom，因先行词 things 为物，故用 which。

22.【译文】我们既要关注工业也要关注农业。

【解析】D. either…or“要不”，二者选一，neither…nor“两者都不”，not…but“不是，而是”，both…and“两者都”，根据题意，答案为 D。

23.【译文】我还没来得及阻止他，他就跑开了。

【解析】A. before 在……之前，after 在……之后，since 自从，when 当……时候，由题意知，选 A。

24.【译文】我们以为大厅里有 35 个学生，然而事实上，有 40 个学生。

【解析】A. 前面数字为 35，后面为 40，前后不一样，表转折，选 A，while 在这里表“然而”的意思。

25.【译文】他发现阅读越来越困难，因为他的视力开始下降。

【解析】B. 根据题意知，前后关系为因果关系，所以答案 B，for 引导原因状从。

26.【译文】他在吃饭，这时一个熟悉的声音传到他耳朵。

【解析】C. when 表示这时。

27.【译文】我在非洲长大，或者应该说，我在那里度过了生命中第一个十年的大部分时间。

【解析】B. 根据题意，前后表达的是一个意思，只是说法不一样，所以答案 B，or 或者。

28.**【译文】**现在立刻出发，要不然，你将会错过第一班火车。

【解析】C. 由题意知，答案为 C，or 要不然，其他选项不合题意。

29.**【译文】**这本书不容易，相反，它很难。

【解析】B. A 选项一方面，B 选项相反地，C 选项另一方面，D 选项不存在。由题意知，这本书不容易，反过来说，就是很难，答案 B。

30.**【译文】**大人是不能像孩子那样微笑的，因为孩子是用眼睛微笑，而大人只是用嘴唇微笑。

【解析】D. 由题意得，前半句说大人不能和小孩的微笑一样，后面进行解释，所以答案 D，for 因为。

第七章　动词的时态

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**等你到达伦敦，我们在欧洲就待两周了。

【解析】B. 此题考查将来完成时，“by the time”＋一般现在时，是将来完成时的标志。所以答案为 B。

2.**【译文】**John 和我做了八年的朋友，我们第一次认识对方是在圣诞晚会上，但在那之前我们就见过对方几次。

【解析】D. 第一个空考现在完成时，“for＋时间段”是现在完成时的标志，第二个空考过去完成时，在我们知道对方之前就见过几次，过去的过去，所以答案为 D。

3.**【译文】**等到这学期期末，我们就会学完这本教科书。

【解析】D. by the end of＋将来时间，是将来完成时的标志，故选 D。

第三节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**等到下个月，他就完成了学校里所有的事情。

【解析】D. by the end of＋将来的某个时间，是将来完成时的标志，答案为 D。

2.**【译文】**我们省发生了很多改变，很多高楼已经建起来了。

【解析】B. take place 没有被动，排除 A、C、D；第二个空，高楼被已经被建起，用现在完成时的被动，答案为 B。

3.**【译文】**对于意大利我了解一点，因为我和妻子几年前去过那里。

【解析】A. 后面的 several years ago 表明是一般过去时，答案 A。

4.**【译文】**到目前为止，他的家人已经六个月没有收到他的来信了。

【解析】C. until＋现在时间，是现在完成时的标志，答案 C。

5.**【译文】**这是长江上有史以来建立的最长的桥。

【解析】C. 当先行词被序数词或最高级修饰时，从句用现在完成时，排除 A、B，桥是被建立的，所以答案为 C。

6.【译文】等到明年，他在纽约就待五年了。

【解析】D. by+将来时间，是将来完成时标志。答案 D。

7.【译文】我在大学的时候能说三种外语，但是除了记着一些单词其他快忘完了。

【解析】C. 第一个空考一般过去时，指在上大学那个时候，是过去的时间，第二个空，现在已经快忘完了，指过去的情况对现在的影响，用现在完成时。

8.【译文】——你认为这部电影怎么样?

——很精彩，唯一的遗憾是我错过了开头。

【解析】A. 错过了，是过去的一个动作，所以选一般过去时。

9.【译文】——我妈妈现在不在北京，她已经去了巴黎。

——哦，你能告诉我她什么时候走的吗?

【解析】D. 问什么时候走的，动作已经发生，是过去的动作，所以选 D，一般过去时。

10.【译文】下个星期六会有音乐会吗?

【解析】B. 一般疑问句，排除 A、C、D 并且是将来的事情，答案 B。

11.【译文】他们来了，我们就开会。

【解析】B. 考查 if 引导的主将从现。答案 B。

12.【译文】如果明天不下雨，我们就去溜冰。

【解析】C. 考查 if 引导的条件句，坚持主将从现原则。选 C。

13.【译文】下个星期天，他们将会举行一个英语会议。

【解析】B. 考查一般将来时，排除 A、C 主语是 they，谓语动词用复数，所以答案 B。

14.【译文】——你和他关于那个问题讨论过了吗?

——没有。当我看见他时，他正在忙碌地准备历史项目。

【解析】When 引导的发生在过去的时间状语从句，短动作用一般过去时，长动作用过去进行时，故选 C。

15.【译文】我第一次遇见 Lisa 是三年前。那个时候他正在一家收音机商店工作。

【解析】B. 前句 three years ago 说明是过去的时间；at that time 在那个时候，表示的是三年前的那个时间正在发生的事情，即本题考察的是过去进行时。

16.【译文】她把钥匙落在办公室了，所以她必须等到她丈夫回来。

【解析】C. had to 是一般过去时，在这之前她把钥匙落在办公室，过去的过去，选过去完成时，答案 C。

17.【译文】赵兰已经在这所学校待了两年

【解析】C. for+时间段，是现在完成时标志。

18.【译文】小丽很小的时候，我们就知道她了。

【解析】C. 考查现在完成时，从过去开始就知道，持续到现在，选 C。

19.【译文】哈利波特是个不错的电影，我已经看过两次了。

【解析】B. 已经看过两次，考查现在完成时，答案 B。

20.【译文】如果明天下雪，我们就去玩雪。

【解析】B. 考查 if 引导的条件句，坚持主将从现原则。答案 B。

21.**【译文】**当我打开他的门时，那个男孩正在用收音机学习英语。

【解析】B. 表示过去正在做什么，用过去进行时，答案 B。

22.**【译文】**那时他正在做饭，所以没有听到我说话。

【解析】D. at that time 在那时，是过去的时间点，过去正在做什么，用过去进行时，答案 D。

23.**【译文】**——我还没有吃完晚餐。
——但是朋友们现在正等着呢。

【解析】D. for the time being＝now，目前，现在，表示正在进行，选 D。

24.**【译文】**Judy 将要嫁给一个水手，是她去年在罗马遇见的。

【解析】B. last year 去年，一般过去时标志。

25.**【译文】**只要他完成工作，他就会来看你。

【解析】B. 考查 as soon as 引导条件句，坚持主将从现原则，答案 B。

26.**【译文】**——冬天你比较喜欢哪种运动?
——过去在密歇根我每年冬天都去滑冰，但是我现在习惯游泳。

【解析】B. 考查固搭，used to do 过去常常做什么，be used to doing 习惯于做什么。

27.**【译文】**我十岁的时候，奶奶说油是不会沉在水里的。

【解析】B. 考查一般现在时，表示客观真理时，用一般现在时。oil 是不可数名词，答案 B。

28.**【译文】**听！那个女孩正在房间里唱歌。

【解析】C. 女孩正在唱歌，所以用现在进行时。

29.**【译文】**两年前我搬到了这里。

【解析】D. ago 用于一般过去时，答案 D。

30.**【译文】**这是我读过的最有趣的书。

【解析】B. 考查固定句型 It/This is the＋形容词最高级 that＋句子（现完）。答案 B。

31.**【译文】**当你到达纽约的时候，我已经离开去伦敦了。

【解析】D. by the time＋一般现在时的句子，主句用将来完成时（will/shall have done）又因为，主语为第一人称，用 shall。

第八章　被动语态

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**他上个星期天买了个新手机，因为旧的那个被偷了。

【解析】B. 手机是被偷的，要用被动，排除 A、D，其次，bought 是过去的动作，而在这个动作之前手机就已经被偷了，过去的过去，用过去完成时，所以答案为 B。

2.**【译文】**每种方式都被尝试过了，但是收获不大。

【解析】B. means 与 try 之间是被动关系，方法被尝试，排除 C、D，其次 means 前有 every 修饰，谓语动词用单数，答案 B。

第三节　能力拓展

1.【译文】——你从事这个工作多久了？
——自从 1990 年开始。

【解析】B. 由答语 since 1990 或 How long 对时间段的提问可知，用现在完成时。

2.【译文】到去年年底时，另一个新的体育馆在北京已经建成。

【解析】D. by the end of＋过去时间，是过去完成时标志，所以答案 D。

3.【译文】如果城市噪音的增加不被阻止的话，那么从现在开始 20 年后，人们将必须大声吼才会被听到，即使是在餐桌上。

【解析】A. 噪音应该是被阻止增加，第一空选被动，排除 C、D，其次，本题也考查 if 引导的条件句，坚持主将从现原则，第二个空选将来时，答案 A。

4.【译文】价格已经下降，但是我怀疑它是否会一直如此。

【解析】C. 由题意可知，价格是已经下降，过去发生的持续到现在，选现在完成时。

5.【译文】你现在不能搬进来，这个房子正在粉刷。

【解析】C. 考查现在进行时的被动，house 与 paint 之间是被动关系，由题意知是正在被粉刷，答案 C。

6.【译文】——你拿到你的测试结果了吗？
——还没有，试卷还在批改。

【解析】C. 由答语，还没有拿到，可知试卷还在改，排除 B、D，又因为 paper 与 correct 之间是被动关系，答案 C。

7.【译文】我必须吃这个药吗？它尝起来很苦。

【解析】A. 考查感官系动词的用法，感官系动词无被动，无进行时，排除 BCD。答案选 A。

8.【译文】不要把这本杂志拿走，它是我的。

【解析】B. 考查 belong to 的用法，它无被动和进行式，答案 B。

9.【译文】这是你第三次迟到吗？

【解析】A. 固定句型 it is 序数词 time that 从句，从句用现在完成时。答案 A。

10.【译文】暴风雨过后往往是风平浪静。

【解析】C. 由 by 可知为被动，又因为说的是客观情况，所以用一般现在时。答案 C。

11.【译文】——你喜欢这个新钢笔吗？
——是的，它写起来很好。

【解析】C. write 表示事物的本质，无被动，故答案为 C。

12.【译文】当她正在读报纸时，奶奶睡着了。

【解析】B. 发生在过去同一时段内的两个动作，长动作用过去进行时，短动作用一般过去式，所以答案为 B。

13.【译文】等到明天这个时间，机器就会修好了。

【解析】B. by＋将来时间，用将来完成时，答案 B。

14.【译文】我认为 Jim 没有看见我；他那时正盯着天空。

【解析】B. 考查过去进行时，在那时他正盯着天空。所以答案 B。

15. **【译文】**在回来的路上，他们被困在暴雪中。

【解析】D。they 是被困在暴雪中，选被动，排除 A、B，又因为 caught 需与 in 连用，所以答案 D。

第九章　非谓语动词

第二节　真题演练

1. **【译文】**飞机起飞的时间被推迟了，因此我们现在除了等待别无选择。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是 but 原则。but 作“除了”讲，连接两个动词，but 前有 do 后无 to，前无 do 后有 to。故答案选 A。

2. **【译文】**给予更多时间的话，这些科学家们将能找到解决这个问题的好办法。

【解析】A. 此题考查非谓语做状语。题中非谓语动词 give（给予）和主句的主语 the scientists 之间是被动的关系。故答案选 A。

3. **【译文】**已经在北京居住了二十多年了，他对这个城市非常了解。

【解析】C. 此题考查非谓语做状语。题中的主句的主语 he 和非谓语动词 live 之间是主动的关系，而且“居住”在“了解”之前发生，要用 having done 形式。故答案选 C。

4. **【译文】**我不介意在这样糟糕的天气里外出散步。

【解析】C. 此题考查非谓语做宾语。mind 做动词“介意”讲时，接 doing 的形式。故答案选 C。

5. **【译文】**作为一个律师，他花很多时间做调查。

【解析】D. 此题考查非谓语做宾补。spend（花费）＋时间＋（in）doing 是固定句型“花费时间做某事”。故答案选 D。

6. **【译文】**你今天下午有空的时候，请帮我把这些信寄了。

【解析】C. 此题考查非谓语做宾补。have（作使、让用法的时候）＋名词/代词＋非谓语结构中，当名词、代词和非谓语动词之间是被动的时候，非谓语动词用 done 的形式，题中 these letters 和 mail（邮寄）之间是被动的关系。故答案选 C。

7. **【译文】**据报道，他的许多小说在去年翻译成了几种外语。

【解析】D. 此题考察非谓语作主补，be reported to，当 to 后的谓语动词已经发生过的时候，用 have done/have been done 的形式，因为 his novels 和 translate 是被动的关系。故答案选 D。

8. **【译文】**我从来没见过坐在导演旁边的那个男孩。

【解析】C. 此题考查非谓语做后置定语。the young man 和非谓语 sit 之间是主动的关系，故答案选 C。

9. **【译文】**他刚从出租车上下来，就被警察抓到了。

【解析】D. 此题考查 on 的用法。on 可以做介词“一……就……”讲，这个时候后面的非谓语动词用 doing（或 one’s doing）的形式。故答案选 D。

10.**【译文】**这座建于5 000年以前的金字塔坐落在尼罗河畔。

【解析】A. 此题考查非谓语做后置定语。the great pyramid（金字塔）和build（建造）之间是被动的关系，而且发生在过去从five thousand years ago（5 000年以前）可以看出，故选built，表示被动完成。答案选A。

11.**【译文】**被要求对中国和英国的教育体制作比较时，这个教授没有给出任何评论。

【解析】D. 此题考查非谓语做状语。主句的主语the professor和非谓语动词ask（要求）之间是被动的关系，答案B中ask后有宾语him可判定主句的主语和非谓语动词ask之间是主动关系，故B不对。故答案选D。

12.**【译文】**没有人可以避免被广告影响。

【解析】D. 此题考查非谓语做宾语。avoid（避免）后接doing的形式，主句的主语no one（没有人）和影响之间是被动的关系。故答案选D。

13.**【译文】**亨利的一番评论使我想知道他真实的目的。

【解析】D. 此题考查非谓语做宾补。leave（作“使、让，留下”意思的时候）＋名词/代词＋非谓语是固定结构。（left是leave的过去时）当名词/代词和非谓语之间的关系时主动的时候，非谓语用doing的形式，此处的非谓语动词me和wonder（想知道）之间是主动的关系。故答案选D。

14.**【译文】**朱丽叶花了一个月的时间来写她关于中国诗歌的论文。

【解析】D. 此题考查非谓语做宾补。spend（花费）＋时间＋（in）doing是固定结构，故答案选D。

15.**【译文】**他们发现这个演讲理解起来很难。

【解析】A. 此题考查非谓语做宾补。find（作“发现”讲时）＋名词/代词＋形容词＋to do（发现……做起来……）是固定结构，此处的to do是主动表被动。故答案选A。

16.**【译文】**你告诉我不用担心他的伤是没用的。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是非谓语做主语。it is no use＋doing（或one’s doing）是固定结构，“（某人）做……是没有用的”。故答案选B。

17.**【译文】**没有完成工作，他不得不周末呆在家里。

【解析】C. 此题考查非谓语做状语。题中主句的主语he和非谓语动词finish（完成）是主动的关系，而且非谓语动词的动作先于主句的谓语动词发生。故答案选C。

18.**【译文】**你今天下午去市区吗？我想把这些信寄了。

【解析】A. 此题考查非谓语做宾补。have（作使、让用法的时候）＋名词/代词＋非谓语结构中，当名词、代词和非谓语动词之间是被动的时候，非谓语动词用done的形式，题中these letters和mail（邮寄）之间是被动的关系。故答案选A。

19.**【译文】**由于表面的70％被水覆盖，我们的地球从太空来看像是一个“蓝色星球”。

【解析】A. 此题考查非谓语做状语。主句的主语our earth（我们的地球）和非谓语see（看）之间是被动的关系。故答案选A。

20.**【译文】**他年龄太小了不能参军。

【解析】A. 此题考查too…to…结构。too＋形容词/副词＋to＋do意思是“太……而不能……”故答案选A。

21.**【译文】**他喜欢听流行音乐，而我更喜欢古典音乐。

【解析】D. 此题考查非谓语做宾语。enjoy 是及物动词，后直接加 doing，意思为“喜欢……”。listen 是不及物动词，加宾语的时候后跟介词 to。故答案选 D。

22.**【译文】**和他争论是没有用的，因为他已经下定决心了。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是 it is no use+doing（或 one's doing）的固定结构，意思是“（某人）做……是没有用的”。故答案选 B。

23.**【译文】**我的手机出故障了，需要修理。

【解析】B. 此题考查 need 的用法。need doing 主动表被动等于 need to be done，题中的 it（指手机）和 repair（修理）之间是被动的关系。故答案选 B。

24.**【译文】**我喜欢英语，我用我有的每一分钟来学习英语。

【解析】B. 此题考查非谓语做宾补。every minute 后面为定语从句，（that）I can（spend）。spend（花费）+时间+（in）doing 是固定结构，“花费时间做某事”。故答案选 B。

25.**【译文】**他没有坐公交车，而是一路跑回家的。

【解析】A. 此题考查 rather than 的用法固定搭配，其后直接加动词原形 do。故答案选 A。

26.**【译文】**和我昨天买的那本书相比，从图书馆借的这本书好像不怎么有趣。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语和非谓语做定语的用法。主句的主语 the one 即 the book 和非谓语动词 compare（比较）之间是被动的关系，the one（指的是这本书）和 borrow（借）之间也是被动的关系。故答案选 A。

27.**【译文】**她一定正期盼收到他的来信，就像是他自己正期盼收到她的来信一样。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是非谓语做宾语。look forward to doing 是固定结构，“期盼……”的意思，此处 as（就像）引导的前后两句话是并列的成分，as he himself is（looking forward）to，即第二个 to 也满足 look forward to doing 结构。故答案选 D。

28.**【译文】**以这种方式来看的话，这个处境看起来并不是那么绝望。

【解析】B. 本题考查非谓语作状语，有逗号无连词，非谓语做状语，只需判断主句主语与谓语之间的主被动关系，主句是这个处境，它与看是被动关系，被看起来，用 done 的形式。

29.**【译文】**得到了驾照，我父亲可以开车去任何他想去的地方。

【解析】D. 有逗号无连词，可判断出非谓语做状语。非谓语做状语有 5 种形式：doing，to do，done，having done，having been done. 根据形式可排除 A 和 C。先得到驾照，才能开车去想要去的地方，所以 get 和 drive 有明显的先后顺序，用 having done.

30.**【译文】**工人们正在为即将到来的除夕晚会练习唱歌。

【解析】C. 非谓语做宾语，固定搭配：practice doing sth. 练习做某事。排除 A 和 B；D 选项 being done 表被动，这里 worker 工人和 sing 唱歌之间是主动关系，所以排除 D。

31.**【译文】**我为未能遵守带你去海边的承诺而道歉。

【解析】B. 首先，空前是介词 for，介词后跟 doing，排除 AC；其次，非谓语的否定形式是 not+非谓语，选项中非谓语形式是 having done，故选 B。

32.**【译文】**夜晚我醒来的时候发现我们的天花板上有水滴落下来 .”

【解析】A. 从选项可判断出考察非谓语做宾补，have+宾+do（主动）/doing（主动+进

行）/done（被动），排除 D；drip“滴落”，ceiling“天花板”，根据句意“夜晚我醒来的时候发现我们的天花板上有水滴落下来.”水是自己滴落下来的，是动作的发出者，所以是主动，排除 C，而且这个动作正在进行，故选 A。

第三节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**一项新技术解决了，产量增加了 20％。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。题中的逻辑主语 a new technique（一项新技术）和非谓语动词 work out（解决）之间是被动的关系，而且动作发生在主句的谓语动词动作之前。故答案选 B。

2.**【译文】**为了学好英语，我们应该尽量多的找听英语的机会。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语和非谓语做宾补。第一个非谓语指的是“为了学好英语”，表示目的用 to do。第二个非谓语 speak（说、讲）和名词 English（英语）之间是被动的关系。故答案选 C。

3.**【译文】**正在会上讨论的提议对我们的公司来说非常重要。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是非谓语做后置定语。the proposal（这项提议）和非谓语 discuss（讨论）之间是被动的关系，由 now 可知是正在进行的被动。故答案选 B。

4.**【译文】**天气很热，我们去河里游泳了。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。逻辑主语是非谓语前的 it（这里指的是天气），和非谓语动词 be 是主动的关系。故答案选 A。

5.**【译文】**从全国挑选出来的足球运动员被期望能在 2014 年的足球世界杯中给我们带来荣誉。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是非谓语做后置定语。名词 the football players（足球运动员）和 select（选拨）之间是被动的关系，应该用 done 来表示。故答案选 C。

6.**【译文】**商店老板今天将会把所有的订货都发给顾客。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是非谓语做宾补。get＋名词/代词＋非谓语是固定结构，当名词/代词和非谓语之间是被动关系时，非谓语用 done 的形式，当名词/代词和非谓语之间是主动关系的时候，非谓语用 to do 的形式，题中的名词 goods（商品）和非谓语 deliver（发货）之间是被动的关系。故答案选 B。

7.**【译文】**据证实，流感是由寄生于鼻喉处细胞里的病毒所引起的。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是 sth/sb be believed to ……的固定结构（某物/某人被相信……）。当 to 后的谓语动词已经发生了的时候用 have done 的形式，当主语和 to 后的动词是被动关系的时候用 be done 或 have been done 的形式。题中的主语 flu（感冒）和 cause（引起）之间是被动的关系。故答案选 C。

8.**【译文】**这个年轻人匆忙赶到饭店，却被告知猪肉已经卖完了。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。only to do 在非谓语做状语中表示一种出乎意料的结果，当主语和非谓语动词的关系是被动的时候，非谓语用 to be done 的形式。题中主句的主语 the young man 和非谓语动词 tell（告诉）之间是被动的关系。故答案选 D。

9.**【译文】**被大自然的美景所吸引，这个来自台湾的老人决定在这儿多呆两天。

【解析】 D. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。题中主句的主语 the old man 和非谓语动词 attract（吸引）之间是被动的关系，且非谓语的动作发生在主句的谓语动词的动作之前，非谓语动词应该用 having been done 的形式。故答案选 D。

10. **【译文】** 看到小孩子掉进河里，这个路人立刻就跳下去救援了。

【解析】 B. 此题考查的是非谓语做宾补。see＋sb/sth＋do/doing/done 是固定用法，意思是“看见某人/某物……”。当 sth/sb 与后面的非谓语动词的关系时被动的时候，非谓语的形式用 done，当其关系为主动的时候，如果 see（看）的是动作的全过程，非谓语动词用 do 的形式，如果看的是部分过程，非谓语用 doing 的形式。题中的 the young children（这个年轻人）和非谓语动词 fall（跳）之间是主动的关系，且看的是“跳”的全过程。故答案选 B。

11. **【译文】** 雨连续下了一周，完全毁了我的旅游计划。

【解析】 C. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。题中主句的逻辑主语 it（这里指天气）和非谓语动词 ruin（毁坏，摧毁）之间是主动的关系，非谓语应该用 doing 的形式。故答案选 C。

12. **【译文】** 你会发现单词“physics”在你的字典里列在字母“P”的下边。

【解析】 A. 此题考查的是非谓语做后置定语。题中名词“the word ‘physics’”和非谓语动词 list（列举）之间是被动的关系，非谓语应该用 done 的形式。故答案选 A。

13. **【译文】** 给予更多关注的话，这些树可以长得很好。

【解析】 C. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。题中主句的主语 the trees 和非谓语动词 give（给予）之间是被动的关系，非谓语应该用 done 的形式。故答案选 C。

14. **【译文】** 这个老人在这个城市工作 40 年后踏上了回乡的路。

【解析】 D. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。主句的主语 the old man 和非谓语动词 work（工作）之间是主动的关系，且非谓语的动作发生在主句谓语动词的动作之前，非谓语应该用 having done 的形式。故答案选 D。

15. **【译文】** 他发给我一份邮件，希望得到进一步的信息。

【解析】 A. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。题中主句的主语 he 和非谓语动词 hope（希望）之间是主动的关系，非谓语应该用 doing 的形式。故答案选 A。

16. **【译文】** 不要让水一直流。

【解析】 D. 此题考查的是非谓语做宾补。leave＋名词/代词＋doing/done 是固定结构，名词/代词和非谓语动词之间的关系是主动的时候非谓语用 doing 的形式，被动的时候非谓语用 done 的形式。题中的名词 water（水）和非谓语动词 run（流）之间是主动的关系，应该用 running。故答案选 D。

17. **【译文】** 我们要乘坐的火车坏了，故我们除了等没有什么可做的。

【解析】 C. 此题考查 but 原则。当 but 前有 do 的时候 but 后的谓语动词前不加 to，当 but 前没有 do 的时候 but 后的谓语动词要加 to。题中 but 前没有 do，故 but 后的谓语动词要加 to。故答案选 C。

18. **【译文】** 所有的航班因为大雾都取消了，我们决定参观这个城市。

【解析】 D. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。题中句子的逻辑主语 all flights（所有的航班）和非谓语动词 cancel（取消）之间是被动的关系，且非谓语的动作发生在主句的谓语动词动作之前，

非谓语要用 having been done 的形式。故答案选 D。

19.**【译文】**根据最近的一个调查，中国学生每天会花 5 个多小时看电视。

【解析】B. 此题考查 spend（花费）＋时间＋（in）doing 的固定结构，意思是“花时间做……”。故答案选 B。

20.**【译文】**被敌人包围着，这个英雄除了牺牲别无选择。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。主句的主语 the hero 和非谓语动词 surround（包围）之间是被动的关系，非谓语要用 done 的形式。故答案选 A。

21.**【译文】**在吃饭之前不要忘记洗手。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是非谓语做宾语。forget to do 意思是“忘记去做某事”，forget doing 意思是“忘记做过某事”，题中的意思是“不要忘记去洗手”而不是“忘记洗过手”。故答案选 B。

22.**【译文】**偷走了这些金子，他不得不找个地方把它们藏起来。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。题中主句的主语 he 和非谓语动词 steal（偷）之间是主动的关系，且非谓语的动作发生在主句的谓语动词动作之前，非谓语要用 having done 的形式。故答案选 B。

23.**【译文】**致力于教育事业 2 年了，他真的需要休息一下。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。主句的主语 he 和非谓语动词 devote（把……专用于……）是主动的关系，故用 doing。且非谓语的动作发生在主句谓语动词的动作之前，非谓语要用 having done 的形式。故答案选 D。

24.**【译文】**虽然看到我们时感到很惊讶，他还是给了我们一个很热烈的欢迎。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是非谓语做状语。主句的主语 he 和非谓语动词 surprise（使…惊讶）之间是被动的关系，非谓语的形式应该用 done。故答案选 B。

25.**【译文】**杰克建议在他找到更多事实之后，才会谈论此事。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是非谓语做宾语。suggest 后直接跟动词的话，非谓语要用 doing 的形式，意思是“建议做……”，否定的时候 not 要加在非谓语的前面。故答案选 B。

26.**【译文】**这些学生正在准备即将要到来的考试。

【解析】C. 此题考查 be busy（in）doing 的固定结构，意思是“忙于做……”。故答案选 C。

27.**【译文】**经过全面考虑，他们会成功的。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。逻辑主语 everything 和非谓语动词 take into consideration（把……考虑进去），是被动的关系，非谓语应该用 done 的形式。故答案选 B。

28.**【译文】**你自己尝试过炒肉吗？

【解析】A. 此题考查的是现在完成时和非谓语做宾语的用法。现在完成时中谓语动词应该用过去分词 done 的形式，故题中 try 的形式因该用 tried。try to do 意思是“努力做……”，try doing 的意思是“尝试做……”，cook 应该用 cooking 的形式。故答案选 A。

29.**【译文】**多么棒的派对啊！它值得我铭记一生。

【解析】A. be worth doing 值得做某事。

30.**【译文】**她跑回厨房，手中小心翼翼地拿着鸡蛋。

【解析】B. 空前为 egg，鸡蛋是被拿，done 表被动。

第十章　独立主格结构

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**我认为这两种车没有可比性，一个很明显的比另一个好得多。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，前半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，后半句再用动词只能用非谓语形式，排除 B、D；在此题中 be 动词的非谓语形式只有一种，那就是 being，排除 C；故选 A。

2.**【译文】**如此多的领导都缺席了，董事会议不得不推迟。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，排除 A、B、C；be 动词的非谓语形式只有一种，那就是 being；故选 D。

3.**【译文】**没有什么要说的了，他说了声再见就走出了房间。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是 there be 的独立主格结构。there be 的非谓语形式只有一种，那就是 there being。故选 B。

4.**【译文】**银是最好的导电体，铜次之。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，前半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，后半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，根据主被动关系用主动，只能选 C doing，故选 C。

5.**【译文】**这篇文章的开头和结尾部分是对两篇新闻报道的叙述，两者的主要观点是相反的。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，前半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，后半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，故排除 A，C；文章叙述观点是主动的，所以用表示主动关系的 ing 形式，不用表示被动、完成的 B；故选 D。

6.**【译文】**句意：把所有的事情考虑在内，她的建议比你的更有价值。

【解析】B. 有逗号无连词，可判断出非谓语做状语。C 和 D 都是谓语动词的形式，可排除。又因 things 事情和 consider 考虑之间是被动关系，用 done. 故选 B。

第三节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**天非常热，我们去河里游泳了。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，排除 B、C；be 动词的非谓语形式只有一种，那就是 being，it 在这里代指天气，做主语，不能省略，排除 D；故选 A。

2.**【译文】**为什么他们把所有的装备都收起来了呢？工作结束了，他们正在打包准备离开。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，排除 B、D；to do 表示将要发生，由题意可知工作已经结束了，所以排除 A；故选 C。

3.【译文】Tom 生病了，我不得不留在家里照顾他。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，排除 C；to do 表示将要发生，由题意可知 Tom 已经生病了，所以排除 D；前句话 Tom 做主语，不能省略，排除 A；故选 B。

4.【译文】这个人在监狱里待了很多年，没有人能认出他了。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，排除 D；Put into“放进，投入”为短暂性动作，不能与 for many years 连用，故选 B。

5.【译文】每个人都坐在座位上了，会议开始。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。to do 表示将要发生，由题意可知会议已经开始，排除 D；done 表被动，但人是主动坐座位，排除 B；A、C 中 A 只表主动，C 表主动、且先发生的动作；故选 C。

6.【译文】随着时间的推移，一切都变了。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。排除 A、D；As 做连词“因为，由于”，独立主格结构不会出现连词，排除 C；故选 B。

7.【译文】由于学生们已经做完了练习题，老师继续讲解文章。

【解析】A. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式，排除 B。学生是主动完成的，排除 D；A、C 中 C 只表主动，A 表主动、且先发生的动作；故选 A。

8.【译文】因为有很多工作要做，他没有时间跟我们说话。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。很显然工作还没做，选 to do 结构且主动表被动，排除 A、C；D 没有此形式，排除；故选 B。

9.【译文】今天是周日，没有课。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。排除 A、B、C；故选 D。

10.【译文】下课了，所有的学生都跑出了教室。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是独立主格结构（名词/代词+形容词/副词/分词/不定式/介词短语等），class over 不是一个句子，在句中做状语。故选 C。

11.【译文】他躺在草地上，手交叉放在脑后。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，前半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，后半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。手是被交叉的，因此动词要用分词形式，排除 A、C、D；故选 B。

12.【译文】由于暴风雨摧毁了他们的房子，他们不得不住在山洞里。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。storm 与 house 之间的推毁是主动关系，因此排除 A、D；B 只表主动，C 表主动、且先发生的动作；故选 C。

13.【译文】所有需要的东西都买完了，她离开了商店。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。首先，根据逻辑，只有买完才离开，故先排除 A、C。因 to buy 表将来，又因为东西和“买”是被动关系，故选 D。

14.【译文】离截止日期剩下的时间不多了，看起来 John 完不成这个工作了。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。根据句意，time 与题干的 left 为被留下的被动系，而句中又不能采用被动语态，说明考查非谓语，排除 A、B、D 的连词选项，选 C。

15.【译文】有太多的难题要解决，经理一直都很焦虑。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。因为一个英文句子中如果没有连词，就只能有一个谓语，后半句是一个完整句子已经有谓语动词了，前半句再用动词要用非谓语形式。很显然难题还没解决，选 to do 结构且主动表被动，排除 A、B、C。故选 D。

16.【译文】没有什么事可做了，我们去电影院看了个探险电影。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是 there be 的独立主格结构。there be 的非谓语形式只有一种，那就是 there being。故选 B。

17.【译文】他走进房间，鼻子冻得通红。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是独立主格结构（名词/代词＋形容词/副词/分词/不定式/介词短语等），his ears red with cold 不是一个句子，在句中做状语。故选 C。

18.【译文】所有的情况都考虑进来，我觉得我们应该把这个工作交给 Mike。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。事情是被考虑的，故选 B。

19.【译文】天气不错，他们决定出去走走。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是 be 动词的独立主格结构。be 的非谓语形式只有一种，那就是 being。故选 C。

20.【译文】组织改善了他们所有人都参加的讨论，每个成员都有义务讨论这个问题。

【解析】B. 此题考查的是独立主格结构。成员和义务之间是主动关系，故选 B。

第十一章　情态动词

第二节　能力拓展

1.【译文】Jean 本应该履行诺言的，我不明白他为什么改变主意。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，should have done 表本应该做某事却没做。故选 B。

2.【译文】——我可以用你的自行车吗？

——当然可以。

【解析】C. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，回答 could 提问的肯定答复是 can，故选 C。

3.【译文】已经快 8 点钟了，Bruce 任何时候都应该在这里。

【解析】C. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，A“必须”；B“需要”；C“应该”；D“能够”；根据句意 C 最符合题意。

4.【译文】Tommy，你不能玩刀子，会受伤的。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，won't 是不会，表主观意愿；mustn't 是禁止，语气最强烈；can't 是不能，表能力不足；shouldn't 是不应该；must 是必须，表肯定推测，语气最强烈；may 是也许、可能，表肯定推测，语气最弱，较委婉；B 最符合题意。

5.【译文】当他在那儿的时候，他每天下班后都会去街角的咖啡店。

【解析】A. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，A“会”；B“应该”；C“最好”；D“也许”；A 最符合题意。

6.【译文】——你什么时候可以把胶卷冲洗出来？我明天早上需要用。

——8 点左右应该就好了。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，A“能够”；B“应该”；C“也许、可能”；D“需要”；B 最符合题意。

7.【译文】——你会再待一个小时吗？

——不好意思，不行，一个我最好的朋友要来看我。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，won't 是不会，表主观意愿；mustn't 是禁止，语气最强烈；can't 是不能；needn't 是不需要；B 最符合题意。

8.【译文】Jason 不应该告诉我你的秘密，但是他绝无恶意。

【解析】A. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，shouldn't have done 表本不应该做某事却做了。故选 A。

9.【译文】——你会来吃晚餐吗？

——我不确定。我可能要去我叔叔家。

【解析】D. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，A“必须”；B“会”；C“应该”；D“也许、可能”；D 最符合题意。

10.【译文】——来北京了不要忘了来看我。

——我不会忘的。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，因为是说“你以后来北京的时候别忘了来看我”……说的是以后的事情，答案 I won't 是说“我不会忘的”，要用将来时，为了表达以后来北京的时候不会忘记。B 最符合题意。

11.【译文】即使有可能，他也不应该这么做。

【解析】A. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，ought not to have done 表本不应该做某事却做了。故选 A。

12.【译文】Jane 本来可以参加晚会的，但她没有找到精确的时间。

【解析】A. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，could have done 表本能够做某事却没做。故选 A。

13.**【译文】**你的作业中有这么多错误！你本应该再仔细些。

【解析】D. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，should have done 表本应该做某事却没做。故选 D。

14.**【译文】**她弟弟现在不可能在家，刚刚有人看到他在体育场打篮球。

【解析】C. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，can't 表不可能，对肯定猜测的否定，故选 C。

15.**【译文】**还有很多时间，我们不必太着急。

【解析】D. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，need not have done 表本不需要或没必要做某事。故选 D。

16.**【译文】**如果你不想去就不必去了。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，can't 表不可能，对肯定猜测的否定；mustn't 是禁止，语气最强烈；needn't 表不需要/没必要；B 最符合题意。

17.**【译文】**我写这个报道已经写了 3 小时了，我本应该在半小时前完成的。

【解析】D. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，ought to＋have done 表本应该做某事却没做。故选 D。

18.**【译文】**我丢了一只手套，我肯定把它掉在哪里了。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，must＋have done 表对过去事实的肯定推测。故选 B。

19.**【译文】**不要相信他，他说的话不一定是真的。

【解析】D. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，mustn't 是禁止，语气最强烈；needn't 是不需要/没必要；shouldn't 是不应该；may not 是可能不是；D 最符合题意。

20.**【译文】**——Jack 现在在这儿吗?
——可能吧，我不确定。

【解析】A. 本题考查的情态动词的用法，can 可以引导疑问句，may 表也许，是对现实的肯定猜测；A 最符合题意。

21.**【译文】**一个人不应该为他没有做的事情受罚。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，ought not to have done 表本不应该做某事却做了。故选 B。

22.**【译文】**我没听见门铃响，我那时肯定睡着了。

【解析】B. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，must have done 表对过去事实的肯定推测。故选 B。

23.**【译文】**Powell 不可能到了，不然他会给我打电话的。

【解析】C. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，can't have done 表对过去事实的否定推测，意为不可能。故选 C。

24.**【译文】**——车里已经有 5 个人了，但他们还是尽力捎了我一程。
——那不可能是一次舒服的旅行。

【解析】D. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，couldn’t have done 表对过去事实的否定推测，意为不可能。故选 D。

25.【译文】我们本不必为会议做准备，张先生已经把它取消了。

【解析】A. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，need not＋have done 表本不需要或本没必要做某事。故选 A。

26.【译文】我今天早上在会议室就没见到她，她不可能在会议上发言的。

【解析】D. 本题考查的情态动词＋have done 的用法，couldn’t have done 表对过去事实的否定推测，意为不可能。故选 D。

27.【译文】你本应该写一封信给 James. 然而你没有。

【解析】B. 根据题干中 didn’t 可判断出事情发生在过去，表示过去事情，用情态动词＋have done，B 选项符合，ought to have done“本应该……而实际上未……”。ought to/should＋V. 原，表示对现在或将来的动作应该……，故排除 ACD。

注：本教材中情态动词＋have done 和虚拟语气为两章节，情态动词那一章没有真题只有能力拓展，所以这一题可以直接加到 85 页能力拓展里面，也可以不用这题。

第十二章　虚拟语气

第二节　真题演练

1.【译文】如果昨天我没有采纳你的建议，我就错过了这趟火车。

【解析】A. 从后半句 would have missed 可以看出是对过去的虚拟。Had I not taken 是省略 if，had 提到主语 I 的前面构成半倒装。

2.【译文】该是你认真考虑将来要干什么的时候了。

【解析】C. It is high time/about time that sb did sth. “该是时候做……”虚拟语气的用法。that 从句的谓语动词用过去式表虚拟。

3.【译文】昨晚如果他参加了突袭，他可能被杀死了。

【解析】C. might have done 表示对过去的可能性较小的推测，根据句意是被动（被杀死），且要用被动。

4.【译文】我本可以早点到达，但是在路上遇到了一个朋友。

【解析】C. C 选项的 could have done 表示“本能够做而未做”。

5.【译文】我宁愿你和她一起参加聚会。

【解析】B. would rather 表“宁愿”后面的从句要用虚拟语气从句的谓语动词用 did 或 had done，从选项只能是 B。

6.【译文】这个问题必须用某种方式解决。

【解析】C. It’s important/necessary/proper/vital…that sb（should）do sth. 的虚拟用法。其中 should 可以省略。

7.【译文】燃烧发生的一个条件就是所燃物要达到着火点。

【解析】C. require 后的 that 从句的谓语动词用（should）＋do 表虚拟，根据题意为被动形式，形式为（should）＋be done。所以选择 C。

8.**【译文】**是时候对交通问题采取一些措施了。

【解析】A. It’s（high/about）time that… 句型中 that 从句中用虚拟语气形式，that 从句的谓语形式用过去式，且事情被处理所以用被动形式。

9.**【译文】**老师要求我们九点之前完成家庭作业。

【解析】C. insist 后面的从句要用虚拟语气，形式为（should）＋动词原形。

10.**【译文】**如果他要在，一切都会很顺利。

【解析】D. 从后半句 would have done 可以看出对过去的虚拟，if 从句的谓语动词用 had done。陈述语序应该是 If he had been here，everything would have been all right。题中 If 省略 had 提到主语的前面变成 Had he been here …

11.**【译文】**明天如果他去，他将能够看到开幕式。

【解析】D. if 引导的虚拟语气。从 tomorrow 可以看出是对将来的虚拟，从句的谓语动词用 did/should do/were to do，题干中用 If he were to do… 这里省略了 if，将 were 提到主语之前。

12.**【译文】**如果她立即出发，她将周日到达。

【解析】C. 从 right now 可以看出由 if 引导的对将来的虚拟，if 从句的谓语动词用 were to do sth。题干中将 if 省略之后将 were 提到主语之前。

13.**【译文】**我认为 Tom 不应该被安排做这项工作，因为他没有经验。

【解析】C. advisable 后面 that 从句的谓语动词要用（should）＋动词原形且 should 可以省略。题目的意思是被分到，所以要用被动形式。

14.**【译文】**没有你的帮助，我们就失败了。

【解析】B. 从后半句 wouldn’t have done 可以看出对过去的虚拟，if 从句的谓语动词要用 had done。题干中将 if 省略 had 提到主语之前。

15.**【译文】**我建议她向他道歉。

【解析】A. advice 表示建议时其后的 that 从句的谓语动词用（should）＋动词原形且 should 可以省略。

16.**【译文】**他要求给个机会来解释为什么他拒绝到达那里。

【解析】D. 虚拟语气的用法。ask 表示“要求”时用（should）＋动词原形且 should 可以省略。因为他被给予机会，所以用被动形式。

17.**【译文】**我很遗憾，他的健康状况竟然这么糟糕。

【解析】D. should 在这里应该是情态动词在这里的意思是“竟然”，表示惊讶的语气。should 不能省略。

18.**【译文】**他的妈妈经常跟他说：“是你该结婚安顿下来的时候了。”

【解析】D. It’s high time＋ that 从句，“是做……的时候了”。从句要用虚拟语气，虚拟形式：动词过去式或 should＋V. 原。get 的过去是 got，settle 的过去式是 settled。

第三节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**如果他能按照医生的叮嘱安静的躺着，他现在就不会那么痛苦。

【解析】C. 此题考查由 if only 引导的对过去的虚拟，从句的谓语动词用 had done。

2.**【译文】**我多么希望每个家庭都能有一幢附带美丽花园的大房子啊！

【解析】B. wish 引导的对现在的虚拟。其后的从句的谓语动词用 did/were。

3.**【译文】**你不让我驾驶，如果我们轮流驾驶，你就不会那么累了。

【解析】D. 考查虚拟语气。第一句 didn't 我们知道是对过去情况的虚拟，所以 if 从句谓语动词用 had done，主句谓语动词用 would have done。

4.**【译文】**如果明天下雨，我们就取消参观杨浦桥。

【解析】B. 本题考查的是由 if 引导的虚拟语气，从 tomorrow 可以看出对将来的虚拟。从句的谓语动词用 should＋do 表示虚拟。题干中 if 省略 should 提到主语的前面。

5.**【译文】**当铅笔在一杯水中时，貌似折断了。

【解析】C. 铅笔被折断，选用被动表达，且与现在事实相反，故选 C。

6.**【译文】**她希望她昨晚去剧院了。

【解析】C。考察 wish 对过去（last night）的虚拟，用 had done 或情态动词（would/could）＋have done。

7.**【译文】**你原本会给她打电话吗？是的，但当时我正在忙着做家庭作业。

【解析】A. 对过去状态的描述，所以用一般过去式。

8.**【译文】**我那天生病了，要不然就会参加运动会了。

【解析】A. 考查 otherwise 引导的虚拟语气，从 that day/was 可以看出是对过去的虚拟，所以要用 would＋have done 表虚拟。

9.**【译文】**如果不是云朵，你会更容易在天空看到飞机。

【解析】D. 对现在的虚拟。原句是 if it were not for the clouds….省掉 if 就将 were 提到主语之前。

10.**【译文】**如果我的律师上星期天在这里，他就会阻止我去了。

【解析】A. if 引导的对过去的虚拟，所以从句要用 had been，主句要用情态动词＋have done。

11.**【译文】**如果他能努力工作，他就已经通过考试了。

【解析】B. 考查 if 引导的对过去的虚拟，if 从句的谓语动词用 had done，主句情态动词＋have done。省略 if，had 提前。

12.**【译文】**如果他今天离开，他将周五到达那里。

【解析】A. if 引导的对将来的虚拟。if 从句的谓语动词用 were，题干中省掉 if 之后将 were 提到主语之前。

13.**【译文】**如果你听了医生的话，你现在就已经康复了。

【解析】C. if 引导的混合虚拟语气。主句对现在情况的虚拟，与现在事实相反主句用 would＋do。

14.**【译文】**我在会议上没有看到你的妹妹，如果她来了，他就会遇到我的弟弟。

【解析】D. if 引导的对过去的虚拟。从 if 从句的谓语动词用 had done，主句情态动词＋have done。

15.**【译文】**如果不是雪，我们昨天就爬到了山顶。

【解析】C. if 引导的对过去的虚拟。从 if 从句的谓语动词用 had done，主句情态动词＋have done。

16.**【译文】**如果没有电，人类的生活今天就会很困难。

【解析】D. without 引导的对现在的虚拟，主句的谓语动词用 would＋do。

17.**【译文】**——我打算把那个消息告诉她。

——我宁愿你不要告诉她。

【解析】A. would as soon 引导的对将来的虚拟。从句中的谓语动词用 did。

18.**【译文】**这个剧目被要求再放映一次。

【解析】C. request 表示“建议”其后从句的谓语动词用（should）＋do 表示虚拟，题干中省略了 should，又是被动，所以是 be put on。

19.**【译文】**她坚持马上请个医生来。

【解析】C. insist 表示“坚持”其后从句的谓语动词用（should）＋do，题干中省略了 should，在这个题中医生被邀请，所以用被动形式。

20.**【译文】**要是我没有丢失我的表该多好啊！

【解析】A. if only（要是……就好了）引导的对过去的虚拟。从句的谓语动词用 had done。

21.**【译文】**如果没有水，地球不会有生命。

【解析】B. but for 引导的对现在的虚拟。主句谓语用“would/could/might＋动词原形”。

22.**【译文】**我宁愿你现在先不管这件事。

【解析】B. would rather 引导的对现在的虚拟。宾语从句的谓语动词要用 did。（for the time being 意为“现在”）。

23.**【译文】**这对善良的夫妇对孤儿非常好，就像他是他们的亲生儿子。

【解析】B. as though 引导的对现在的虚拟。事实上这个孤儿不是这对夫妇亲生的，与现在事实相悖。

24.**【译文】**该是我们开会讨论这个问题的时候了。

【解析】B. it’s high（about）time that sb did sth. 表示“该是时候做……”。

25.**【译文】**昨晚本应该学习的，可是我们去了电影院。

【解析】D. should have done 表示“本应该做而没做”。

26.**【译文】**如果我知道整个事情的情况的话，我就不会说这些了。

【解析】C. 根据题中主句是 would have done 的形式，可知为对过去的虚拟，if 引导的从句对过去的虚拟为 had done 的形式。

27.**【译文】**他立马还回字典是非常有必要的。

【解析】C. it is＋adj＋that＋句子（should do）should 可以省略。

第十三章　主谓一致

第二节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**大约 60％的学生来自于南方，其他学生来自于北方和外国。

【解析】B. 考查主谓一致，第一个空考查“分数＋of 短语”做主语，谓语要以 of 短语中的名词是否复数而定，这里是 students，故用 are，第二个空考查“the rest of＋名词/代词”主语，谓语要跟名词、代词保持一致，them 是指前面的 students 为复数，故用 are。

2.**【译文】**这里的一半工人都是 30 岁以下。

【解析】D. 第一个空考查“half of＋名词”做主语，谓语动词要跟名词保持一致，故用 are，第二空，30 岁可以表达为 30 years old 或 30 years of age 。

3.**【译文】**现在 Tom 和他的同学正在操场上踢足球。

【解析】D. 由时间副词“now”可以看出要用进行时，故排除 A 和 C，再由 with 谓语动词要与前面主语保持一致，故主语为 Tom，谓语动词用单数 is。

4.**【译文】**这个词典大约有 2000 页。

【解析】D. 主语为“the number of＋名词”，谓语动词要用单数，故排除 A 和 C，又由主语为物，故答案为 is。

5.**【译文】**30 美元太贵啦!

【解析】B. 30 美元整体做主语谓语动词用单数，这里在陈述事实用一般现在时，故答案为 is。

6.**【译文】**这位校长兼秘书正在会议室讲话。

【解析】B. 这里考查 and 连接两个名词的用法，题中两个名词共用一个冠词指同一个人，谓语动词用单数，now 表示现在进行时，故答案选 B。

7.**【译文】**房间里只有一张桌子和六把椅子。

【解析】C. 考查 nothing but 做主语时，谓语动词用单数，故排除 A 和 D，而 B 表示被动。

8.**【译文】**叫做“摩天塔”的电视塔坐落于两路中间。

【解析】A. 这个句子为全倒装，倒过来的语序为 A TV tower called“Skyscraper Tower”________ between the two roads. 这样可知主语为 a TV tower 为单数，故谓语动词用单数，故选 A。

9.**【译文】**今天晚上你们两个要有一个去那儿。

【解析】C. 考查“either of＋名词”表示“……其中之一”谓语动词要用单数。由 tonight 可排除 B，由 be＋doing 表示将来时，故答案为 is。

10.**【译文】**你和我都是对的。

【解析】D. 主语中有 as well as，谓语动词要于前面的主语保持一致，就前原则，故答案选 D。

11.**【译文】**这个学期除了 Dick 外所有人都在三班。

【解析】A. 考查 but，谓语动词要与前面的保持一致，前面是 all，肯定为 all students，故谓语动词用复数，又因为 this term 可知不是过去时，故排除 C，故选 A。

12.**【译文】**我学习数学和物理，因为我认为这些对于我在这个领域做进一步的研究很重要。

【解析】B. 数学和物理为复数故排除 A 和 C，又因为宾语从句缺主语故用代词 they。

13.**【译文】**每一个老师和学生都已参加这个会议。

【解析】C. 由 and 连接的并列主语前面分别有 each，every，no 修饰时，其谓语动词用单数。而 D 为被动形式，人参加会议肯定是主动的。故答案为 C。

14.**【译文】**3/4 的面包被 Bob 吃了，剩余的留在桌子上。

【解析】D. 此题考查分数＋名词和 the rest of＋名词做主语，谓语动词要与名词保持一致，这里是不可数名词 bread，故两个空的谓语动词都用单数，故选 D。

15. **【译文】**这双鞋子是她的。

【解析】B. 如果名词前带有 pair 等表示单位的名词时，则以这些单位名词的单复数形式决定动词的形式，这里为单数，故谓语动词用单数，her 是形容词性物主代词后加名词，而 hers 是名词性物主代词本身充当名词做表语。

16. **【译文】**据说月球上没有生命。

【解析】C. 考查 there be said to do，be 动词要与 no life 保持一致，故用 is。

17. **【译文】**她是这些女作家中唯一一个写童话故事的作家。

【解析】C. 所有的女作家用复数，women writers，the only one 做先行词，定语从句中谓语动词用单数。

18. **【译文】**Mike 和 John 的父亲是个老师。

【解析】A. 这里是这两人共有的人或事物，所以全部用单数。

19. **【译文】**四分之三的家庭作业已经写完了。

【解析】B. homework 为不可数名词谓语动词用单数，故排除 C，D，这里作业是被完成的用被动。故排除 A。

20. **【译文】**世界上超过 60％的广播节目都在英国。

【解析】C. 分数＋名词做主语，谓语动词要与名词保持一致，这里名词为复数，故谓语动词用复数。

21. **【译文】**已经做了很多努力来改善人们的生活水平。

【解析】A. work 为不可数名词，这里只有 a great of 修饰不可数名词，而 B，C，D 修饰的是可数名词。

22. **【译文】**其他的杂志在半小时内卖完了。

【解析】D. 考查“the rest of＋名词”主语，谓语要跟名词保持一致，magazines 为复数，故谓语动词用复数。而卖完为过去时，用 were。

23. **【译文】**罐子里有很多糖。

【解析】C. sugar 为不可数名词，故谓语动词用单数。there be 表示存在“有”，而 have 表示主观“有”，主语往往是人，故答案 C。

24. **【译文】**昨天社长兼秘书被要求在会议上做演讲。

【解析】B. 这里考查 and 连接两个名词的用法，题中两个名词共用一个介词指同一个人谓语动词用单数，yesterday 表示过去时，故答案选 B。

25. **【译文】**Mary 和她的姐妹们在中国学汉语。

【解析】C. 主语中有 as well as，谓语动词要于前面的主语保持一致，就前原则，故答案选 C。

26. **【译文】**我的朋友们和我都不能说服他改变主意。

【解析】C. neither…nor…“既不……也不……”，就近原则，谓语动词离谁近，就跟谁保持一致。根据题干，离 I 近就跟 I 保持一致，I 后用 am。

第十四章　反义疑问句

第二节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**不要忘记给 Polly 一些吃的并给它换水，好吗？

【解析】B. 否定祈使句的反义疑问部分，要用 will you。

2.**【译文】**杯子里几乎没有果汁，是吗？

【解析】A. little，为否定词，所以反义疑问部分要用肯定，there is 反义疑问部分要用 is there。

3.**【译文】**——他很少上学迟到，是吗？

——是的，他习惯于早点去学校。

【解析】D. seldom 为否定词，反义疑问部分要用肯定，主语为他，谓语动词为 be 动词 is，所以用 is he。

4.**【译文】**——这辆车总是迟到，不是吗？

——确实，经常来晚。

【解析】B. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为车，谓语动词为 be 动词 is，所以反意疑问部分要用 isn't it。

5.**【译文】**——你是新来的，不是吗？

——是的，我来自于都江堰，我上一星期来的这里。

【解析】D. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为你，谓语动词为 be 动词 are，所以反义疑问部分要用 aren't you。

6.**【译文】**你过去很开朗，不是吗？

【解析】C. used to do 的反义疑问部分要用 usedn't＋主语或 didn't＋主语。

7.**【译文】**他从来没有看过如此重要的比赛，不是吗？

【解析】B. never 为为否定词，反义疑问部分要用肯定，主语为他，谓语动词为 has watched 故反义疑问部分要用 has。

8.**【译文】**他们不得不马上工作，不是吗？

【解析】D. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为他们，谓语动词为实意动词 have，所以反义疑问部分要用 don't。

9.**【译文】**她经常感觉很累，不是吗？

【解析】A. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为她，谓语动词为实意动词 feel，所以反义疑问部分要用 doesn't。

10.**【译文】**让我们稍微休息一下，好吗？

【解析】D. 祈使句 let's 的反义疑问部分要用 shall we 。

11.**【译文】**成百上千的人在这次事故中丧失生命，不是吗？

【解析】B. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，谓语动词为实意动词 lost，过去时，

所以反义疑问部分要用 didn't。

12.**【译文】**Lily 看起来跟 Lucy 很像，不是吗?

【解析】D. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为 Lily，谓语动词为实意动词 looks，所以反义疑问部分要用 doesn't she。

13.**【译文】**Tom 经常在学校吃饭，不是吗?

【解析】B. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为 Tom，谓语动词为实意动词 has，所以反义疑问部分要用 doesn't he。

14.**【译文】**他差点在这次事故中受伤，不是吗?

【解析】C. hardly 为否定词，反义疑问部分要用肯定，主语为 he，谓语动词为过去式，故用 did he?

15.**【译文】**让我们在网上搜集名人的一些信息吧，好吗?

【解析】C. 祈使句 let's 的反义疑问部分要用 shall we?

16.**【译文】**Eric 从来没在电影院看过 3D 电影，不是吗?

【解析】B. 前面句子为否定，反义疑问部分要用肯定，主语为 Eric，谓语动词为 has seen，故为 has he?

17.**【译文】**他已经飞到海南去度假了，不是吗?

【解析】B. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为 he，谓语动词为 has flown，所以反义疑问部分要用 hasn't he。

18.**【译文】**——让我们去滑冰吧，好吗?
——好的，去吧!

【解析】D. 祈使句 let's 的反义疑问部分要用 shall we?

19.**【译文】**Bob，你昨天晚上看了时尚秀，不是吗?

【解析】B. 前面句子为肯定，反义疑问部分要用否定，主语为 you，谓语动词为 watched，过去式，所以反义疑问部分要用 didn't you。

20.**【译文】**我认为她没去北京，不是吗?

【解析】A. 当陈述部分为主从复合句时，主句主语为第一人称，反义疑问部分要与从句主谓保持一致，从句主语为 she，谓语动词为 has gone，整个句子为否定，那么反义疑问部分要用肯定，故答案 A。

21.**【译文】**天气真好，不是吗?

【解析】B. 本题考反意疑问句，it 指代天气，前肯定后否定，故选 B。

第十五章　倒装结构

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**虽然他聪明，但他找不到这个问题的答案。

【解析】B. 此题考查 as 引导的形式倒装，形容词/副词/名词＋as＋主语＋谓语，答案选 B，

形容词提前，as 引导形式倒装。故选 B。

2. **【译文】**我刚坐下，话剧就开始了。

【解析】D. 此题考查固定结构 no sooner…than（刚……就）连接两个并列成分，连词放在句首，前句半倒装，后句不倒装。又因为 be seated 为固定结构，故选 D。

3. **【译文】**我们不需要保暖系统，我们也负担不起。

【解析】C. 此题考查 neither/nor…的用法。否定句用 neither/nor＋be 动词/助动词/情态动词＋主语，表示“某人或某物也不……”。故选 C。

4. **【译文】**虽然老人双目失明，但他对非常轻的声音有敏锐的听觉。

【解析】C. 此题考查 as 引导的形式倒装，形容词/副词/名词＋as＋主语＋谓语，答案选 C，形容词提前，as 引导形式倒装。故选 C。

5. **【译文】**他刚进入教室，上课铃就响了。

【解析】C. 此题考查并列连词 hardly…when（刚……就）。故选 C。

6. **【译文】**我们很少被如此粗鲁地对待。

【解析】B. 否定意义的词放在句首，句子半倒装。seldom（很少，几乎没有）是否定意义的词，且句意为被动，故选 B。

7. **【译文】**即使困难重重，我们也必须尽力成功。

【解析】B. 此题考查 as 引导的形式倒装，形容词/副词/名词＋as＋主语＋谓语，答案选 B，形容词提前，as 引导形式倒装。故选 B。

8. **【译文】**尽管水资源匮乏，他们却已经遭到了严重的浪费或污染。

【解析】C. 此题考查 as 引导的形式倒装，形容词/副词/名词＋as＋主语＋谓语，答案选 C，形容词提前，as 引导形式倒装。故选 C。

第三节　能力拓展

1. **【译文】**只有努力工作，你才能期望涨工资。

【解析】C. 此题考查 only 放在句首强调状语，主句半倒装。故选 C。

2. **【译文】**直到河里的鱼全都死了，村民们才能意识到污染多么严重。

【解析】A. 此题考查 not until（直到……才），放到句首，主句半倒。故选 A。

3. **【译文】**直到我开始工作，我才意识到浪费了多少时间。

【解析】B. 此题考查 not until（直到……才），放到句首，主句半倒。故选 B。

4. **【译文】**——你知道吉姆和他弟弟吵了吗？
——我不知道，我也不在乎。

【解析】B. 此题考查 neither/nor…的用法。否定句用 neither/nor＋be 动词/助动词/情态动词＋主语，表示“某人或某物也不……”。故选 B。

5. **【译文】**只有每天练习几个小时，你才能掌握这门语言。

【解析】D. 此题考查 only 放在句首强调状语，主句半倒装，can 不与 be able to 连用。故选 D。

6. **【译文】**直到 19 世纪初期，人类才意识到什么是热量。

【解析】D. 此题考查 not until（直到……才），放到句首，主句半倒。故选 D。

7.**【译文】**他刚走进屋子，电话就响了。

【解析】B. 此题考查 hardly…when（刚……就）连接两个并列成分，连词放在句首，前句半倒装，后句不倒装。故选 B。

8.**【译文】**当他们在树林中举行野营时，他们不仅带来了小吃和饮料，而且还带来了扑克牌。

【解析】B. 此题考查 not only…but also（不仅……而且），连接两个并列成分，连词放在句首，前句半倒装，后句不倒装。故选 B。

9.**【译文】**只有这样，我们才能做好。

【解析】C. 此题考查 only 放在句首强调状语，主句半倒装。故选 C。

10.**【译文】**他刚到就下雨了。

【解析】A. 此题考查 hardly…when（刚……就）连接两个并列成分，连词放在句首，前句半倒装且用过去完成时，后句不倒装用一般过去时。故选 A。

11.**【译文】**如果你问我，我会告诉你他的地址。

【解析】D. 此题考查在 if 引导的虚拟语气中，省略 if，把 had，were，should 提到主语的前面，构成半倒装。故选 D。

12.**【译文】**他们几乎没意识到他们在科学上已经有了一个重要的发现。

【解析】C. 此题考查 否定意义的词 little 放到句首，要半倒装，助动词位于主语的前面，只能选 C。

13.**【译文】**他制造了如此大的噪音以至于我不能集中注意力到工作上。

【解析】D. 此题考查 such…that 句型，such 在句首时，主句倒装，that 从句不倒装。

14.**【译文】**直到一个小时以前，老师才了解到他为什么没来。

【解析】C. 此题考查 only 放在句首强调状语，主句半倒，只能选 C。Only 后句子常用过去时。

15.**【译文】**他刚到公交车站点，公交车就突然地开走了。

【解析】D. 此题考查 hardly…when…（刚……就……）连接两个并列成分，连词放在句首，前句半倒装，后句不倒装。只能选 D。hardly 后的句子常用过去完成时。

16.**【译文】**如果有时间，我能绕着那个湖再跑一圈。

【解析】C. 此题考查 在 if 引导的虚拟语气中，省略 if，把 had，were，should 提到主语的前面，构成半倒装。只能选 C。

17.**【译文】**他不仅做出了承诺而且遵守了承诺。

【解析】C. 此题考查 not only…but also…（不仅……而且……），连接两个并列成分，连词放在句首，前句半倒装，后句不倒装。只能选 C。

18.**【译文】**他如此恐惧以至于很长时间不能说话。

【解析】A. 此题考查 so…that 句型，so 在句首时，主句倒装，that 从句不倒装。只能选 A。

19.**【译文】**直到上课了他才意识到把书落在家里了。

【解析】C. 此题考查 only 放在句首强调状语，主句半倒事情发生在过去。只能选 C。

20.**【译文】**只有你完成作业，你才能回家。

【解析】A. 此题考查 only 放在句首强调状语，主句半倒。只能选 A。

21.【译文】如果你不走，我也不走。

【解析】A. 此题考查 neither/nor…的用法。否定句用 neither＋be 动词/助动词/情态动词＋主语，表示“某人或某物情况也不这样”。此句前面是条件句，后面用一般将来时，主语是第一人称，即可用 will 也可用 shall。故选 A。

22.【译文】我刚到火车站，火车就离开了。

【解析】C. 此题考查 no sooner…than…（刚……就……）连接两个并列成分，no sooner 放在句首时，前句半倒装且用过去完成时，后句不倒装用一般过去时。只能选 C。

23.【译文】——你父亲对你很严格。

——他确实是这样的，他从不允许我们犯错。

【解析】A. 此题考查 so＋主语＋谓语，表示“某人某物确实如此”。只能选 A。

24.【译文】在我生命中，我从没听过也没见过这样的事情。

【解析】B. 此题考查否定意义的词 never 放到句首，要半倒装，助动词位于主语的前面，只能选 B。never，seldom，revely 这些词经常出现在现在完成时和过去完成时中。

25.【译文】那晚之前，我从未意识到自己的力量有多大。

【解析】A. 否定词置于句首，半倒装，且事情发生在过去的过去，为过去完成时。

26.【译文】只有在特殊情况下，新生才被允许参加补考考试。

【解析】A. only 引导的从句位于句首，主句半倒装。

第十六章　名词性从句

第二节　真题演练

1.【译文】事实是月球上没有生命。

【解析】D. is 后面为表语从句，连接词用 that，而且不能省略，表语从句中为倒装，副词 there 放句首要全倒装。

2.【译文】科学家根据卫星传回的信号和照片已经得出结论：金星上没有生命。

【解析】A. 根据句法结构，（that）there is no life…是同位语从句，和主语中的 the conclusion 是同义。引导同位语从句的词应该为 that 而且不能省。

3.【译文】上海的变化如此之大，让每个人意识到它今非昔比了。

【解析】D. 考查名词性从句，一看是从句，排除 C，A 缺 be，B 应改为 what it used to be like。

4.【译文】毫无疑问的是，在他们到达这所房子之前已经有人来过了。

【解析】D. that 引导名词性从句修饰 doubt，它在从句中没有词义，而其他三项的都是引导状语从句，和题目不同。

5.【译文】他上大学的梦想能否得以实现还是未知数。

【解析】B. 本句需要一个连接词引导一个名词性从句做整个句子的主语从句不缺成分，A、 B和C符合要求；但A只起引导从句的作用，没有具体意义，在此句中，如果用A含义矛盾，因此只能是B。主语从句中只用whether不用if。

6.**【译文】**无论谁先打电话给我们，都会得到免费票。

【解析】B. whoever任何人，不论什么人，不管是谁，to为介词，后为宾语从句，宾语从句缺少主语且译为“无论谁”，只有whoever。

7.**【译文】**他一直沉默不语，所以我也不知道他是否同意。

【解析】B. 本句缺少引导宾语从句的连接词，选项中只有if/whether可以引导。但搭配or not只能是whether。故答案选B。

8.**【译文】**我没听见他说什么，因为我坐的地方有太多噪音。

【解析】B. 本句考查what引导的宾语从句的用法，应注意此时的从句应用陈述句语序，故选B。

9.**【译文】**我们必须得在7点以前到达那里。这就是我们不得不出发这么早的原因。

【解析】D. 选项之后从句完整，若有the reason，是定语从句则用the reason why，若无the reason，则是表语从句，直接用why。故选D。

10.**【译文】**原因是他不会操作这台机器。

【解析】C. 本句考查表语从句，从句不缺成分，无疑问含义，故选that，表示肯定的陈述。

11.**【译文】**他们总是把空位给先到的人。

【解析】A. 考点：名词性从句

空前是介词to，可判断出考察名词性从句。从句缺主语，排除B和D，表强调时用“连接词＋ever”。

第三节　能力拓展

1.**【译文】**我们还没有解决他是否有必要去出国留学的问题。

【解析】C. 这里考查的是介宾中的宾语从句，根据题意，排除B，A和C中，只有whether前加介词，句意为是否的意思，that在宾语从句中没具体词义。

2.**【译文】**我突然有个很好的想法：我可以用零花钱给妈妈买束花作为生日礼物。

【解析】C. 根据句法结构，（that）I might use…是同位语从句，对抽象名词thought进行解释说明。引导同位语从句的词应该为that而且不能省。

3.**【译文】**你知道Miss Smith什么时候到吗?

【解析】A. 考查宾语从句，用陈述句语序，只有A符合。

4.**【译文】**我们认为当地政府能够解决房子问题。

【解析】B. 根据句意，it形式宾语，that引导真宾语。

5.**【译文】**不管哪队在星期六赢了比赛，都将去参加国家级比赛。

【解析】D. 这里考查名词性从句，故排除A和B，根据句意排除C，whichever“无论哪一个”，故选D。

6.**【译文】**那就是鲁迅曾经住的地方。

【解析】B. 考查表语从句，根据意思选where。

7.**【译文】**我们相信改善健康保健可以促进经济强壮繁荣。

【解析】B. 考查 belief 后的同位语从句，多由 that 引导且不可省略。

8.**【译文】**店主不想卖他认为物无所值的商品。

【解析】C. 考查介词宾语从句，he thought 为插入语，可去掉，从句缺少成分，故选 what，而 which 在名从中翻译为“哪一个”，不合语境，故选 C。

9.**【译文】**他注意到下午舞蹈整齐那一部分跟早上的不同。

【解析】C. 考查宾语从句，what 引导宾语从句，又在宾语从句中作 had been 的表语，故选 what。

10.**【译文】**我喜欢和诚实而且容易相处的人合作。

【解析】B. 考查介宾从句，从句中缺主语，排除 C、D。而 A 和 B 中 B 表示无论是谁，不管是谁，表示强调。

11.**【译文】**当你阅读的时候，把你认为重要的东西做一下标记。

【解析】C. 考查宾语从句，what 引导的句子做 of 的宾语，而宾语从句语缺主语，故选 what，而 you think 为插入语。

12.**【译文】**——到周末，你能把所有事情办妥吗?
——那完全取决于我们是否得到格林先生的合作。

【解析】C. 这里考查宾语从句，根据句意，选 C，而 if 前不加介词，故排除 D。

13.**【译文】**问题是谁去参加会议。

【解析】D. 此题为表语从句，从句缺主语，而参加会议只能是人，故选 D。

14.**【译文】**他们总是把空座给谁首先来这的人。

【解析】A. 考查宾语从句，宾语从句中缺主语排除 B、D，而 whoever 任何人，不论什么人，不管是谁，有强调作用。

15.**【译文】**谁将做这个工作取决于委员会。

【解析】D. 这里是主语从句，主语从句中缺主语，根据句意选 who。

16.**【译文】**我们什么时间翻译完这本书取决于时间。

【解析】A 。此题 When we’ll finish translating the book 做主语，跟后面的时间对应。A 更符合题意。

17.**【译文】**明天的会议将讨论房子是否建造的问题。

【解析】B. 主语从句在这里 whether/if 意为是否。但 if 不可位于句首，位于句首时译为“如果”。选 B。

18.**【译文】**我们很清楚他为什么不去那儿。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是名词性从句引导词的选择。根据句意译为“为什么”。why 是为什么；C 更符合题意。

19.**【译文】**来不来你自己决定。

【解析】D. 此题考查的是 whether…or not 的固定用法，其他三个选项均不能与 or not 连用；只能选 D。

20.**【译文】**这就是他为什么那么喜欢这个地方的原因。

【解析】C. 此题考查的是名词性从句引导词的选择。根据句意译为“为什么”。why 是为什么；C 更符合题意。

第十七章　定语从句

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**她年轻的时候在学校学习很努力，这造就了她后来的成功。

【解析】D. 本题考查的是非限制性定语从句，指代前面完整的一句话，只能选 which。

2.**【译文】**我从来没去过非洲，但那是我最想去的地方。

【解析】C. 本题考查的是定语从句的用法，从句中缺宾语，用关系代词，且做宾语时可省略，故选 C。

3.**【译文】**昨天来看望我的那位张先生，是我父亲的一位老朋友。

【解析】C. 本题考查非限制性定语从句，其先行词是人且在句中做主语，所以选 C。

4.**【译文】**太阳可以温暖地球，这使得植物能够生长。

【解析】C. 本题考查非限制性定语从句，指代前面完整的一句话且关系词在句子中做主语。

5.**【译文】**我打算在上海度过寒假。我在那里有亲戚。

【解析】C. 考查的是非限制性定语从句的用法，先行词为 Shanghai 且从句不缺成分。

6.**【译文】**他取得了又一项重大发现；我认为，它对科学和人类很重要。

【解析】A. 本题考查的非限制性定语从句。先行词为 discovery 指物，从句中缺主语，所以用 which。I think 为插入语位于关系代词和谓语动词之间。

7.**【译文】**正是在 5 年前你工作的那个工厂你学会了这项技术。

【解析】D. 第一个空考查的定语从句，先行词是地点名词且句子中不缺少成分，故选 where，第二个空是强调句型。

8.**【解析】**在隔壁房间唱英文歌的女孩是 Tom 的妹妹。

【解析】A. 考查限制性定语从句，其先行词是人且从句中缺主语故用 who，B、C、D 无关系句，排除，选 A。

9.**【译文】**这个在洪水中冲走的房子必须在冬天来临之前被重建。

【解析】A　考点：定语从句和被动语态

观察题干，“that ________ in the floods”是定语从句，用来修饰 the house，译为“这个在洪水中……的房子”。House 房子和 wash away 冲走是被动关系，D 选项 has done 是主动，B 选项 has to 不得不，“不得不被冲走的房子”，句意不合适；C 选项 has＋宾＋done 是非谓语做宾补的形式，这里的 them 指代 house“把房子冲走的房子”句意不合适。

10.**【译文】**我们原以为本应该赢得比赛的那个年轻人最后失败了。

【解析】A　考点：定语从句

空前是名词，可判断出考察定语从句，空后有两个谓语动词，从“________”到“game”是从句，we thought 是插入语，做题时可忽略掉，从而判断出从句缺主语，先行词 man 指人，故选 A。

第三节　能力拓展

1. **【译文】**正是在他父亲用石头建造的小房子里面，他度过了自己的童年。

【解析】A. 第一个空考查的是定语从句且关系词在句中做主语，第二个空考查的是强调句型的用法。

2. **【译文】**今年11月24号来临的美国感恩节，在中国呈现出一种完全不同的面貌。

【解析】C. 本题考查的非限制性定语从句，且关系词在句子中做主语，所以只能选C。

3. **【译文】**她带来了三个朋友，我之前没有见过其中任何一个。

【解析】B。本题考查非限制性定语从句，指代人，关系代词在句中又做介词的宾语，所以选B。

4. **【译文】**他们已经赢得了他们的最后三场比赛，我认为那真是一件令人吃惊的事。

【解析】D. 考查非限制性定语从句，且关系代词在句中做宾语，指代一件事，用which。

5. **【译文】**把孩子放在一个他们能够不同地看待他们自己的处境中是非常有用的。

【解析】D. 当先行词是situation时，且从句不缺成分其定语从句的引导词只能用where.。

6. **【译文】**植物生长的速度受许多因素的影响，大多数因素是我们无法控制的。

【解析】B. 本题考查的是非限制性定语从句，介词of后不可能出现that/them，更不能出现what（存在于名词性从句）。只有B项符合题意。

7. **【译文】**我已经到达了我人生的一个转折点：我应该自己决定自己的事情了。

【解析】B. 本题考查定语从句，又因其先行词是point，指的是一个点，定语从句中又不缺少句子成分，故选B。

8. **【译文】**正如预料的那样，大家对于这个问题的回应很不一致。

【解析】A. 考查As引导的非限制性定语从句位于句首。

9. **【译文】**当心，不要离那所房子太近，房顶正在维修中。

【解析】A. 考查whose引导的定语从句，其后必须跟一个名词，表示所属关系。

10. **【译文】**这个工厂每年将近生产50万双鞋，其中的80％被出口到国外。

【解析】A. 考查的非限制性定语从句，原题应该是80％ of shoes，这里which代替shoes.。

11. **【译文】**越来越多的年轻人喜欢踢足球，那确实是一项令人兴奋的活动。

【解析】B. 考查which引导的非限制性定语从句。

12. **【译文】**这个小女孩指给警察她自己被撞倒的那个拐角。

【解析】D. corner是一个表地点的名词，所以其定语从句的先行词要用where。

13. **【译文】**Ann是你到那之后第一个说话的女生。

【解析】B. talk to sb是“和某人说话”固定表达，在该定语从句的引导词在句中做宾语且是指人，所以只能用whom或who，且做宾语可以省略，所以只能选B。

14. **【译文】**全世界都知道李小龙是一个著名的功夫巨星。

【解析】C. 考查的是as引导的非限制性定语从句位于句首。指代后面完整的一句话。

15. **【译文】**他使自己陷入了一种危险的处境：他可能对飞机失控。

【解析】A. 当situation做先行词时，且从句不缺成分关系副词只能用where。

16. **【译文】**没有人相信他给出的有关迟到的原因。

【解析】A. 定语从句中缺少宾语，只能选 that 来引导定语从句并且做宾语。

17.**【译文】**这个地方最吸引我的地方是儿童乐园。

【解析】A. 本题考查的也是定语从句。先行词是 place，但是定语从句中缺少的是主语，所以只能选 which。

18.**【译文】**我永远不会忘记那一天。

【解析】A. 本题考查的也是定语从句。先行词是 the day 从句中的谓语动词 forget 是个及物动词，所以在这个定语从句中缺少一个宾语的成分，只能选 which。

19.**【译文】**他谈论了很多他所记得的学校里的人和事。

【解析】B. 在定语从句中若先行词既有人又有物时，只能用关系代词 that。

20.**【译文】**他的父母不会允许他同那些家庭很贫困的女孩结婚。

【解析】D. 在定语从句中表示所属关系只能用关系词 whose，表示“谁的……”，其后面必须跟一个名词。

21.**【译文】**事实上这个人并不理解他被用法语问到的三个问题。

【解析】D. 该题考查的是定语从句，且在定语从句中缺主语，其先行词又是指物，所以只能选 which。

22.**【译文】**这位试图东山再起的篮球明星引起了很大的关注。

【解析】D. 本题考查的是非限制性定语从句，先行词 star 指代人，关系词在句中做主语，所以只能选 who。

23.**【译文】**我有一些朋友，他们中有一些是商人。

【解析】D. 其真正的表达应为 some of friends，但名词不能引导从句，故在本句中用 whom 代替 friends 引导非限制性定语从句，所以只能选 D。

24.**【译文】**一些学龄前儿童会去日托中心，他们在那里学会玩游戏。

【解析】D. 考查非限制性定语从句，其先行词是表示地点的名词，且定语从句中又不缺少句子成分，所以用 where。

25.**【译文】**我不喜欢她看我的方式。

【解析】D. 当 the way 做先行词时从句不缺成分，其后的定语从句的引导词有三种表达方式，that/in which 或者省略。

26.**【译文】**他不是一个半途而废的人。

【解析】D. 考察 as 引导的限制性定语从句。若先行词前有 such 修饰，定语从句的引导词只能用 as。

27.**【译文】**我对她告诉的所有事都很感兴趣。

【解析】A. all 为先行词，其后仅可跟 that 引导的定语从句。

第十八章　状语从句

第二节　真题演练

1.**【译文】**无论你和他争论多久，你仍然不会使他信服。

【解析】A. 本题考查的是 however 引导的让步状语从句，其结构为 however＋形容词或副词＋主语＋谓语，译为“无论多么……”。

2.**【译文】**除非你先预约，否则你不能会见总统。

【解析】C. 本题主要是根据句意可知选项 C 符合题意。

3.**【译文】**他一演讲结束就离开了。

【解析】A. 本题考查固定搭配 no sooner…than 的用法，翻译为“一……就”。

4.**【译文】**无论你说什么，我都相信那个年轻人是无辜的。

【解析】A. 根据句意可知，选 A。

5.**【译文】**无论他多么努力地尝试，他仍将不会顺利通过大学六级考试。

【解析】A. 本题考查的事 however 引导的让步状语从句，其结构为 however＋形容词或副词＋主语＋谓语，译为“无论多么”。

6.**【译文】**他一坐下来，电话就响了。

【解析】A. 考查 no sooner…than 的用法，它是一个固定搭配。意思为“一……就”，如果提前，句子要用半倒装。

7.**【译文】**无论我们遇到什么困难，我们彼此都会相互帮助，共度难关。

【解析】A. 本题考查 whatever 引导的让步状语从句，其构成为 whatever＋名词＋主语＋谓语，意思为“无论什么”。

8.**【译文】**——我们的假期花费了很多钱。

——是吗？只要你玩的愉快，那些都不重要。

【解析】C. 考查状从，依据题意可知 C 项符合题意。

9.**【译文】**无论你决定做什么，你都应该努力使之成功。

【解析】D. 考查状从，根据句意译为“无论什么”，选 D。

10.**【译文】**居住在格拉斯哥的花费是全英国消费中最低的，但是其生活质量却是最高的。

【解析】D. 根据句意知，前后两句之间有对比关系，而该题的选项中只有 D 项有对比的意思，故选 D 项。

11.**【译文】**除非你有信用卡，一些公司才会让你租借汽车。

【解析】D. 考查的状从连词，依据题意可知，D 项最符合题意。

12.**【译文】**地震之后，一所新的学校被建在一个曾经是剧院的地方。

【解析】B. 本题主要考查 where 引导的地点状语从句。

13.**【译文】**虽然他受了伤，但他拒绝从前线回来。

【解析】C　考点：状语从句

as 引导的让步状语从句，形式上需要倒装。*adj*. /*adv*. /*v*. /*n*. ＋as ＋主＋谓“尽管……”其它选项都没有倒装的用法。since 既然，自从；for 因为；although 虽然，尽管。

14.**【译文】**虽然他看起来十几岁，但实际上他是个九岁的男孩。

【解析】C　考点：状语从句

since 既然，for 因为，although 虽然，owing to 因为，由于。

根据题干“________他看起来十几岁，实际上他是个九岁的男孩。”，前后表转折，故选 C。

15. **【译文】**

【解析】 B　考点：状语从句

“队长承诺参加这场会议，________他到办公室”。空后是句子，for the time being“现在”，不能引导从句，排除 A；the moment“一……就”，引导时间状语从句；in order that“为了”，引导目的状语从句；根据句意“队长承诺他一到办公室就参加这场会议。”选 B。

16. **【译文】** 一旦查理开始一项工作，他就会做到（直到）结束。”

【解析】 C　考点：状语从句

since“既然”，once“一旦”，till“直到”，the moment“一……就”。

17. **【译文】**

【解析】 A　考点：状语从句

A. in that 在于；B. so that 为了，以便于，C. such that 一般要分开写，such…that 如此……以至于

“批评和自我批评是有必要的________它帮助我们纠正错误。”根据句意，选 A。

18. **【译文】** 他们爬到山顶以便能鸟瞰这个城市。

【解析】 C　考点：状语从句

in case，for fear that 以防，万一；in order that 为了，以便于；as a result 结果。

第三节　能力拓展

1. **【译文】** 尽管他们没有什么日程安排，一些病人也坚持在医院里带手表。

【解析】 A. 根据句意可知该题考查的是让步状语从句。

2. **【译文】** 不要让小孩玩剪刀，万一伤到自己。

【解析】 A. 考查状语从句，根据题意可知 A 项符合题意。

3. **【译文】** 展览会上排队的队伍如此之长，以至于我们不得不等半个小时。

【解析】 B. 本题考查的是固定结构 such…that 的用法，“如此……以至于”。

4. **【译文】** 我已经告诉过你，无论它花费多少钱，我都会买下它。

【解析】 A. 本题考查的事 however 引导的让步状语从句，其结构为 however＋形容词或副词＋主语＋谓语，译为“无论多么”。

5. **【译文】** 一些星星距离我们如此遥远，我们不可能测量出距离。

【解析】 B. 本题考查 so…that 的用法，意思为“如此……以至于”。

6. **【译文】** 无论你什么时候来，我们都欢迎。

【解析】 C. no matter＋疑问词引导的让步状语从句，根据句意可知，译为“无论什么时候”，C 项最符合题意。

7. **【译文】** 我正要离开家时，电话突然响了。

【解析】 B. 本题考查的事固定结构 be about to do sth when…的用法，意思为“正当要干某事时，突然……”。

8. **【译文】** 我们来这儿已经 5 天了。

【解析】 D. 本题考查 since 的用法，“It is＋一段时间＋since＋句子”表示“自从……以来多

久了”。

9.【译文】他直到完成工作才回家。

【解析】A. not…until…是固定搭配，“直到什么时候才……”。

10.【译文】我们一到达山顶就坐下来休息了。

【解析】C. no sooner…than…，是固定搭配，翻译为“一……就”。

11.【译文】他下定决定要得到一个演唱会的票，即使那意味着他需要排一整晚的队。

【解析】B. as if 好像；even if 虽然，即使；provided 如果；whatever 无论什么。

12.【译文】为了我们能够早点到达机场，我们必须坐出租。

【解析】D. as soon as 一……就。in order to＝so as to“为了”，后跟词组；so that“为了”后跟句子。

第十九章　强调句和 it 用法

第二节　真题演练

1.【译文】这就是我们第一次遇见时的音乐大厅。

【解析】D. 这个句子是很典型的强调句型。强调句型的特色就是去掉 It is / was…that，还原回去，句子成分依旧完整。你可以还原成：We met each other for the first time at the music hall。

2.【译文】就是在你五年前工作过的工厂里你学到的技术。

【解析】D. 第一个空是 where 引导定语从句，并且 where 在定语从句中做地点状语；第二个空是 It is/was…that…强调句。

3.【译文】正是直到我哥哥结婚，他才买得起自己的房子。

【解析】D　考点：强调句

根据每个选项的形式可判断出考察 not until 的强调句型。It is/was not until…that…“就是直到……，正是直到……”。

第三节　能力拓展

1.【译文】直到 1920 年美国的妇女才有国家选举权。

【解析】B. 考查 not until 的强调句，所以选 that，强调的是 not until 引导的时间状语 1920。

2.【译文】我们认为帮助那些因为贫困而失学的人是我们的责任。

【解析】B. 考查 it 做形式宾语的用法。主语为 we，谓语为 regard，it 为形式宾语，真正宾语为 to help those …… 所以应选 B。

3.【译文】如果你能教我怎么使用电脑，我将不胜感激。

【解析】C. 考查 it 的用法，指代 if 从句。

4.【译文】正是他在黑板上写的这些字。

【解析】A. 强调句型中强调主语的，这个句子可以简化成 he wrote those words on the blackboard，所以要用主格 he。

5.**【译文】**——你依旧相信爱吗？

——当然，不是时间，不是金钱，也不是权力或者其他东西，而正是爱，能治愈我们内心的伤痛。

【解析】C. 这是典型的强调句型：It is/was＋强调部分＋that/who…

6.**【译文】**正是在学校的训练才使他成为一个优秀的跳高运动员。

【解析】B. that he had at school 是定语从句，修饰 trainning，that made him 中的 that 是用来构成强调句的 that。

7.**【译文】**——你好，可以找一下布朗先生吗？

——不好意思，他已经3周不在这里工作了。

【解析】B. since 有“自从”的意思，其他三项不符合题意。

8.**【译文】**是我们的迟到导致晚饭晚了一小时。

【解析】B. 这是一个强调句的特殊疑问句，强调是我们的迟到。

9.**【译文】**他女儿最想要的东西是什么？

【解析】C. 这是一个强调句，强调想要的东西。

10.**【译文】**是他的意图而不是他的话语让我生气。

【解析】D. 这是一个强调句，强调他的意图，故选 that。

11.**【译文】**正是他在面试中的紧张让他失去这份工作。

【解析】C. 强调他的紧张，强调句型用 that。

12.**【译文】**做这项工作重要的是能力，而不是你是谁，从哪里来。

【解析】B. 强调能力，这是强调句的用法。

13.**【译文】**正是在监狱的那个男孩偷了钱。

【解析】C. 第一个是定语从句的表达，第二个是强调句的用法用 that。

14.**【译文】**在他出生的房间，他死去了。

【解析】C. 前面的一个是定语从句，因为是从句不缺成分地点所以要用 where，后面考的是强调句型 It is…that，去掉这个句型后，句子变成 just in the room where he was born he died 仍然成立。

Part Four

Cloze Test
完形填空

格言

Reading makes a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man.

阅读使人充实；讨论使人机智；写作使人精确。

第一章　完形填空分析与技巧

完形填空是专升本考试试题的一个重要组成部分。《大学英语教学大纲（修订本）》指出：“完形填空部分的目的是测试学生综合运用语言的能力”，即理解篇章和使用词汇和语法的能力。专升本考试采用的完形填空题是“在一篇题材熟悉、难度适中的短文（约200词）内留有20个空白，每个空白为一题，每题有四个选择项，要求考生在全面理解内容的基础上选择一个最佳答案，使短文的意思和结构恢复完整”。2003和2004年的专升本考试中完形填空都是20道题目，占20分。2005年为10道题目，占10分。从2006年开始调整为20道题，占20分。虽然题目数量上稍有变化，但是每年考试的难度和考点并没有太大变化。

一、考试要求

这项考试首先是测试考生对篇章的理解能力。虽然所给出的文章被抽出了20个词，但是整篇文章的内容仍是可以理解的。如果考生不能理解文章内容，就难以将正确的词填入文中，这也是完形填空题与以单句形式考核词汇和语法的试题的根本区别。由此可见，考生在做题时必须时刻从上下文考虑，不应该只看到所填的词在短语或句子内是否可行。因此，考生在做题时最好将全文通读一下，了解了全文的意思以后再做题。

这项考试还测试了考生使用词汇和语法结构的能力。文章中留出的每一个空格要求填入一个词。考试大纲规定：“填空的词项包括结构词和实意词”。结构词（也称虚词，有代词、冠词、介词、连词、关系词等）主要是表示语法结构关系的，在选用结构词时需要考虑在语法上是否恰当，也要看它与其他词的搭配关系是否恰当。对实意词（名词、形容词、数词、动词和副词）的选择既要看其意思在句中是否得当，也要看它与其他词的搭配关系是否合适。

一般来讲，完型填空主要考查三个要点：词汇、语法、综合分析能力。专升本考试更侧重考查学生对通篇文章整体理解程度，所有考点都不是孤立出现的，所以选择时不能就一句话做出决定，而要结合上下文及文章主题进行判断。

词汇考点

以实词考查为主，即名词、动词、形容词、副词及其同义词、近义词、词语搭配、习惯用法等；虚词（代词、冠词、介词、连词、关系词）考查为辅。

语法考点

语法项目考查题量不固定，主要是引导学生多注意对文章篇章的理解，语法常考查非谓语动词、虚拟语气、并列结构、倒装、从句等几个要点。

综合考点

1. 逻辑关系。掌握各种关系的信号词（signal words）是分析逻辑关系的捷径。

关系信号词：

（1）转折、让步

but，still，yet，however，though，no matter，nevertheless，nonetheless，in spite of，in any case…

（2）因果关系

because，due to，owing to，thanks to，since，for，as，so，therefore，as a result，accordingly，thus…

（3）递进

moreover，besides，in addition，also，too，not only…but also…，furthermore…

（4）对比

in contrast，on the contrary，just as…

2. 句子结构。并列句（parallelism）在英文写作中占很大比重，在解题时，要善于加以利用。较复杂的复合句要从语法角度结合篇章来分析，句子的语法结构使用是否正确。

3. 利用线索词。在一个段落中出现频率较高的词，要善于把握。完形填空中大多数的题目均有或明或暗的提示。所以要选出符合上下文的答案，只能结合上下文选择，切忌单纯从语法角度、词汇角度盲目解题。

二、解题步骤

1. 通读全文，掌握大意

答题前，跳过空格，通读一遍全文，力求对文章的整体内容有个基本了解。也就是说在阅读时要把握整体，注意语境和局部流畅。要做到这一点首先要克服心理障碍，不要因为一两个单词记不住或认不出来就着急起来，思想要放松，很多单词从上下文的推理中即可知道其词意。其次，要善于抓住最能表现文章中心内容的关键句子、词语（如人物、时间、地点、原因、经过、结果），理解文章作者要表达的观点、态度。一般情况下，本类试题的首句是完整的，是交待背景的，突破首句有助于把握大意，理顺思路，而结尾几句，则是对文章的总结或作者观点的表明。

2. 分析结构，推断选项

在通读了全文，了解大意的基础上，按前后顺序对试题的测试部分（即文中空格）进行语法分析，所缺的是什么词，起什么作用，同时观察对应备选答案；从句子的意思上去验证该用什么词类、什么形式填空才正确，若选项是动词，要首先搞清楚是谓语动词还是非谓语动词，如果是谓语动词应先根据上下文或句子本身确定它的时态、语态、语气形式以及它应与主语在人称和数方面的一致；如果是分词、动名词、不定式则要从它在句子中的功能以及与它的逻辑主语的关系（是执行者还是承受者）去考虑它的时态与语态；若选的是介词或副词则先确定它是否属于固定搭配或习惯用法，否则就应根据上下文的意思去选择。这时既要掌握全文的核心内容，又要了解本句在全文的位置，捕捉与小题有关的信息点，分析备选答案的词意，挑选出本句意思所需要的，又能表现文章核心意思的词语，遇到一时难确定答案的小题可暂时不填，先做后面的，用其他已选出的答案信息去促成这个难题的解决。

3. 复读全文，全面验证

各题填好后，再将全文复读一遍是答好本题的重要一步。要着眼于全篇，仔细推敲，全面验证，看是不是有相互矛盾的地方。这一遍是对全篇文章的逻辑推理，所以视野较之前更开阔，思路较之前更清晰，也就更容易发现错误而有所突破，从而加以肯定或否定。

下面我们以专升本2011年的考题为例，体会一下上面我们讲的方法和注意事项：

Paris is the capital of the European nation of France. It is one of the most beautiful and ____41____ cities in the world.

Paris is called the City of Light. It is ____42____ an international fashion center. What stylish women are ____43____ in Paris will be worn by women ____44____ the world. Paris is also a famous world center of education. For instance，it is the headquarters of UNESCO（联合国教科文组织），the United Nations ____45____，Scientific，and Cultural Organization.

The Seine River（塞纳河）____46____ the city into two parts. Thirty-two bridges ____47____ this scenic river. The oldest and ____48____ most well known is the Pont Neuf，____49____ was built in the sixteenth century. The Sorbonne（索邦大学），a famous university，____50____ on the Left Bank（south side）____51____ the river. The beautiful white church Sacre Coeur lies ____52____ the hill called Montmartre on the Right Bank（north side）of the Seine.

There are many other famous places in Paris，____53____ the famous museum the Louver（卢浮宫）____54____ the cathedral of Notre Dame（巴黎圣母院）. However，the most famous landmark in this city ____55____ the Eiffel Tower（埃菲尔铁塔）. Paris is named ____56____ a group of people ____57____ the Parisii. They ____58____ a small village on an island ____59____ the Seine River about two thousand years ago. This island，called the lle de la Cite，is ____60____ Notre Dame is Located. Today around eight million people live in the Paris area.

41. A. famousest　B. most famous　C. famouser　D. more famous
42. A. as well　B. too　C. also　D. as well as
43. A. clothing　B. dressing　C. putting on　D. wearing
44. A. all over　B. over all　C. whole over　D. over whole
45. A. Educating　B. Education　C. Educationally　D. Educational
46. A. divides　B. breaks　C. arranges　D. classifies
47. A. pass　B. cover　C. cross　D. lie
48. A. perhaps　B. possibly　C. likely　D. similarly
49. A. it　B. that　C. where　D. which
50. A. is locating　B. locates　C. is located　D. located
51. A. on　B. of　C. over　D. above
52. A. on top of　B. on top　C. at top of　D. top of
53. A. as such　B. such as　C. such like　D. like such
54. A. and as well　B. well as　C. as well　D. as well as
55. A. must be　B. has to be　C. can be　D. need be

56. A. behind B. about C. after D. concerning
57. A. called B. calling C. to be called D. being called
58. A. have built B. built C. had built D. build
59. A. among B. between C. in the middle of D. over
60. A. in which B. which C. where D. that

【答案与解析】

41.【答案】B

【解析】考查形容词、副词的比较级和最高级用法。famous 最高级为 the most famous。

42.【答案】C

【解析】考查词义辨析。as well 表示也、还，多用于句末，一般用于固定搭配 as well as；too 表示也，一般用于句末；as well as 多用于连接两个名词，用于句中。

43.【答案】D

【解析】考查词义辨析。clothing 为名词，意为衣服、服装；dress 穿衣服，表动作；put on 穿上，表动作；wear 穿衣服，表状态，由文中可知，此题表示巴黎人时尚穿着的状态，故选 D。

44.【答案】A

【解析】考查固定搭配。all over 表示遍及，all over the world 表示遍及世界。

45.【答案】D

【解析】考查常识及逻辑关系判断。UNESCO 是联合国教育、科学与文化组织的英文名称缩写，其中的 E 表示教育，由上下文可知，此处应填形容词形式 Educational。

46.【答案】A

【解析】考查词义辨析。divide 意为分割，break 意为打破、弄坏，arrange 意为安排，classify 意为分类。

47.【答案】C

【解析】考查词义辨析。pass 表示经过，cover 表示覆盖，cross 表示横跨，lie 表示躺，此题表示桥梁横跨河流，故选 C。

48.【答案】A

【解析】考查词义辨析。perhaps，possibly，likely 三个词都有可能的意思，但是有语气上的强弱。可能性最大的是 possibly，然后是 likely，最弱的是 perhaps，而这边没有线索可以说明作者的语气是很强的，所以用最弱的，语气较委婉。

49.【答案】D

【解析】考查非限制性定语从句关系代词的选择。which 引导非限制性定语从句。

50.【答案】C

【解析】考查动词的固定搭配。be located＋介词＋地点名词表示位于……

51.【答案】B

【解析】考查介词的用法。of 表示所属关系。

52.【答案】A

【解析】考查固定搭配。at the top of 表示在……顶端，on top of 在……上面，C 选项形式不对。

53.【答案】B

【解析】考查固定搭配。such as 表示例如后面加所列举事物。

54.【答案】D

【解析】考查固定搭配。as well as 表示也、还，多用于连接两个名词，用于句中。

55.【答案】A

【解析】考查情态动词用法。must be 表示肯定猜测；can't be 表示否定推测。

56.【答案】C

【解析】考查固定搭配。name after 表示以……命名。

57.【答案】A

【解析】考查非谓语做定语；被称作“Parisii”的人。

58.【答案】B

【解析】考查动词的时态问题。从文中可知，动作发生在过去，所以用一般过去式。

59.【答案】C

【解析】考查词义辨析。among 在……之间，通常指三者或三者以上，between 表示在两者之间，in the middle of 在……中间（位置）。

60.【答案】C

【解析】考查名词从句中的表语从句，表地点用“where”。

由上述分析可知，专升本的完形填空在通读全文，了解短文大意的基础上，我们就可以联系上下文，运用逻辑思维进行比较、判断，选出既符合词义、句意，又上下文连贯、合乎情理的准确答案。在一篇完形填空短文中，往往有这种情况，有一些空白处，从单句本身来说，很难从四个答案中找到准确答案，或者说四个选项符合该句的句型结构或语法要求，这就要求考生联系上下文，按照文章线索，找出与选项有关的信息词，把握符合上下文语境需要的最佳用词。注意上下文的内容联系和逻辑联系是做好完形填空题的关键。总之，答题时应从上下文的角度，从词汇意义及用法的角度，综合全文的角度三个方面去考虑如何选择答案。

第二章 完形填空习题精解

Passage 1

In a land far away，once upon a time there was great poverty（贫困），and only the rich could manage without great ____1____. Three of those rich men and their servants were ____2____ together on a road when they came to a very ____3____ village.

The first could not stand seeing the poverty，____4____ he took all the gold and jewels from his wagons（四轮载重马车）and shared ____5____ out among the villagers. He wished them all the best of luck，and he left.

The second rich man，seeing the ____6____ situation，stopped for a short time and gave ____7____ all his food and drink，since he ____8____ see that money would be of little ____9____ to them. He made sure that they each ____10____ their fair share and would have enough food to ____11____ for some time. Then，he left.

The third rich man，on seeing such poverty，____12____ and went straight through the ____13____ without stopping. The two other rich men saw this from a distance and commented with each other ____14____ the third rich man lacked sympathy. It was ____15____ that they themselves had been there to offer help.

However，three days later，they ____16____ the third rich man，who was coming in the opposite direction. He was ____17____ traveling quickly，but his wagons，____18____ the gold and valuables they had been ____19____，were now full of farming tools and bags of ____20____. He was rushing back to help them out of poverty.

1. A. loss B. expectations C. success D. problems
2. A. standing B. traveling C. gathering D. running
3. A. faraway B. poor C. different D. ancient
4. A. unless B. because C. so D. if
5. A. them B. anything C. nothing D. those
6. A. curious B. worrying C. dangerous D. puzzling
7. A. the villagers B. his servants C. the others D. the rest
8. A. could B. might C. should D. must
9. A. interest B. concern C. use D. attraction
10. A. returned B. gained C. offered D. received

11. A. remain B. last C. supply D. share
12. A. turned back B. set out C. showed off D. speeded up
13. A. village B. land C. field D. road
14. A. whether B. how C. where D. when
15. A. good B. certain C. true D. strange
16. A. welcomed B. met C. accepted D. persuaded
17. A. still B. already C. always D. indeed
18. A. except B. instead of C. apart from D. along with
19. A. loading B. treasuring C. carrying D. earning
20. A. food B. jewels C. money D. seeds

Passage 2

There are times when people are so tired that they fall asleep almost anywhere. We can see there is a lot of sleeping on the bus or train on the ___1___ home from work in the evenings. A man will be ___2___ the newspaper, and seconds later it ___3___ as if he is trying to ___4___ it. Or he will fall asleep on the shoulder of the stranger ___5___ next to him. ___6___ place where unplanned short sleep ___7___ is in the lecture hall where a student will start snoring（打鼾）so ___8___ that the professor has to ask another student to ___9___ the sleeper awake. A more embarrassing（尴尬）situation occurs when a student starts falling into sleep and the ___10___ of the head pushes the arm off the ___11___, and the movement carries the ___12___ of the body along. The student wakes up on the floor with no ___13___ of getting there. The worst time to fall asleep is when ___14___. Police reports are full of ___15___ that occur when people fall into sleep and go ___16___ the road. If the drivers are ___17___, they are not seriously hurt. One woman's car, ___18___, went into the river. She woke up in four feet of ___19___ and thought it was raining. When people are really ___20___, nothing will stop them from falling asleep—no matter where they are.

1. A. way B. track C. path D. road
2. A. buying B. folding C. delivering D. reading
3. A. acts B. shows C. appears D. sounds
4. A. open B. eat C. find D. finish
5. A. lying B. waiting C. talking D. sitting
6. A. Next B. Every C. Another D. One
7. A. goes on B. ends up C. lasts D. returns
8. A. bravely B. happily C. loudly D. carelessly
9. A. leave B. shake C. keep D. watch
10. A. size B. shape C. weight D. strength
11. A. cushion B. desk C. shoulder D. book

12. A. action B. position C. rest D. side
13. A. memory B. reason C. question D. purpose
14. A. thinking B. working C. walking D. driving
15. A. changes B. events C. ideas D. accidents
16. A. up B. off C. along D. down
17. A. lucky B. awake C. calm D. strong
18. A. in time B. at first C. as usual D. for example
19. A. dust B. water C. grass D. bush
20. A. tired B. drunk C. lonely D. lazy

Passage 3

If you were to begin a new job tomorrow, you would bring with you some basic strengths and weaknesses. Success or ___1___ in your work would depend, to ___2___ great extent, ___3___ your ability to use your strengths and weaknesses to the best advantage. ___4___ the utmost importance is your attitude. A person ___5___ begins a job convinced that he isn't going to like it or is ___6___ that he is going to ail is exhibiting a weakness which can only hinder his success. On the other hand, a person who is secure ___7___ his belief that he is probably as capable ___8___ doing the work as anyone else and who is willing to make a cheerful attempt ___9___ it possesses a certain strength of purpose. The chances are that he will do well.

___10___ the prerequisite skills for a particular job is strength. Lacking those skills is obviously a weakness. A bookkeeper who can't add or a carpenter who can't cut a straight line with a saw ___11___ hopeless cases.

This book has been designed to help you capitalize ___12___ the strength and overcome the ___13___ that you bring to the job of learning. But in groups to measure your development, you must first ___14___ stock of somewhere you stand now. ___15___ we get further along in the book, we'll be ___16___ in some detail with specific processes for developing and strengthening ___17___ skills. However, ___18___ begin with, you should pause ___19___ examine your present strengths and weaknesses in three areas that are critical to your success or failure in school: your ___20___, your reading and communication skills, and your study habits.

1. A. improvement B. victory C. failure D. achievement
2. A. a B. the C. some D. certain
3. A. in B. on C. of D. to
4. A. Out of B. Of C. To D. Into
5. A. who B. what C. that D. which
6. A. ensure B. certain C. sure D. surely
7. A. onto B. on C. off D. in

8. A. to B. at C. of D. for
9. A. near B. on C. by D. at
10. A. Have B. Had C. Having D. Had been
11. A. being B. been C. are D. is
12. A. except B. but C. for D. on
13. A. idea B. weakness C. strength D. advantage
14. A. make B. take C. do D. give
15. A. as B. till C. over D. out
16. A. deal B. dealt C. be dealt D. dealing
17. A. learnt B. learned C. learning D. learn
18. A. around B. to C. from D. beside
19. A. to B. onto C. into D. with
20. A. intelligence B. work C. attitude D. weakness

Passage 4

From childhood to old age we all use language as a means of broadening our knowledge of ourselves and the world about us. When humans first __1__， they were like newborn children， unable to use this __2__ tool. Yet once language developed， the possibilities for human kind's future __3__ and cultural growth increased.

Many linguists believe that evolution is __4__ for our ability to produce and use language. They __5__ that our highly evolved brain provides us __6__ an innate language ability not found in lower __7__. Proponents of this innateness theory say that our __8__ for language is inborn， but that language itself develops gradually， __9__ a function of the growth of the brain during childhood. Therefore there are critical __10__ times for language development.

Current __11__ of innateness theory are mixed， however， evidence supporting the existence of some innate abilities is undeniable. __12__， more and more schools are discovering that foreign languages are best taught in __13__ grades. Young children often can learn several languages by being __14__ to them， while adults have a much harder time learning another language once the __15__ of their first language have become firmly fixed.

__16__ some aspects of language are undeniably innate， language does not develop automatically in a vacuum. Children who have been __17__ from other human beings do not possess language. This demonstrates that __18__ with other human beings is necessary for proper language development. Some linguists believe that this is even more basic to human language __19__ than any innate capacities. These theorists view language as imitative， learned behavior. __20__， children learn language from their parents by imitating them. Parents gradually shape their child's language skills by positively reinforcing precise imitations and negatively reinforcing imprecise ones.

1. A. generated B. evolved C. born D. originated
2. A. valuable B. appropriate C. convenient D. favorite
3. A. attainments B. feasibility C. entertainments D. evolution
4. A. essential B. available C. reliable D. responsible
5. A. confirm B. inform C. claim D. convince
6. A. for B. from C. of D. with
7. A. organizations B. organisms C. humans D. children
8. A. potential B. performance C. preference D. passion
9. A. as B. just as C. like D. unlike
10. A. ideological B. biological C. social D. psychological
11. A. reviews B. reference C. reaction D. recommendation
12. A. In a word B. In a sense C. Indeed D. In other words
13. A. various B. different C. the higher D. the lower
14. A. revealed B. exposed C. engaged D. involved
15. A. regulations B. formations C. rules D. constitutions
16. A. Although B. Whether C. Since D. When
17. A. distinguished B. different C. protected D. isolated
18. A. exposition B. comparison C. contrast D. interaction
19. A. acquisition B. appreciation C. requirement D. alternative
20. A. As a result B. After all C. In other words D. Above all

Passage 5

I truly feel that my mother led me here，to Morzaine，and to my future as a happy wife and businesswoman. When Mum __1__ in October 2007，I was a cook. In December that year，while I was working for a wedding，a pearl necklace Mum had left me __2__. I was distraught（忧心如焚的）. Some days later，I was __3__ that a guy who was working with us that day could probably have made a fortune __4__ the necklace he found. __5__，he returned it. Hearing how I’d __6__ Mum for six months before her death，he said，“Christmas is going to be __7__ —why not go out to the Alps for a couple of weeks?”

I came to Morzaine，a small，friendly village in the Alps and __8__ fell in love with it. What was __9__ to be a stopgap（权宜之计）trip turned into a new life. I kept traveling between London and here and felt __10__ than I had in months. In December 2008，I was __11__ as a hotel manager and moved here full time.

A month later，I met Paul，who was traveling here. We fell in love. In the beginning，I didn’t want to discuss __12__ ，because the sadness of losing Mum __13__ felt great. Paul understood that and never __14__ me. But，by summer，we got married. A year later，we used his saving，and the money from the sale of Mom’s house，to build our own __15__.

We want to give our guests a __16__ feel，so each room is themed（以……为题）around memories from our lives. There are also style to remind me of Mum—a tiny chair which __17__ be in her bedroom is set in one room.

We are having a wonderful life and Mum __18__ naturally part of it，__19__ there’s no way we would be here，if it wasn’t for the __20__ she gave me. I know she’s here in spirit，keeping an eye on us.

1. A. died B. came C. returned D. visited
2. A. burned B. disappeared C. broke D. dropped
3. A. shown B. comforted C. persuaded D. told
4. A. hiding B. stealing C. selling D. wearing
5. A. Luckily B. Naturally C. Surely D. Hopefully
6. A. nursed B. cured C. missed D. guarded
7. A. long B. hard C. merry D. free
8. A. suddenly B. finally C. nearly D. immediately
9. A. said B. proved C. supposed D. judged
10. A. smarter B. higher C. firmer D. lighter
11. A. honoured B. hired C. regarded D. trained
12. A. travel B. business C. children D. marriage
13. A. recently B. once C. still D. first
14. A. left B. pushed C. surprised D. interrupted
15. A. hotel B. restaurant C. home D. shop
16. A. homely B. lively C. motherly D. friendly
17. A. ought to B. used to C. might D. could
18. A. takes B. keeps C. looks D. feels
19. A. unless B. while C. because D. though
20. A. money B. chair C. house D. necklace

Passage 6

“Have you eaten your meal?” It is traditionally the first sentence coming out of our __1__ when we Chinese __2__ each other. This __3__ greeting can best show that food culture is very important in our everyday life. Whether the __4__ ，whether it be for business negotiation or for family gathering，people like to __5__ together to make business negotiation successful or to __6__ family ties.

Without dining together，all gathering might be regarded __7__ not satisfying and not complete. Eating does not just mean __8__ the stomach；being able to enjoy a good __9__ of food，and knowing what and how to eat are all viewed as a good “fortune”，There’ s probably __10__ place in this world that has as great a ____11____ of delicious food as China and has as long and rich a food culture as China.

On the one hand，many famous people，known as epicures，____12____ a lot to developing Chinese food culture，Su Dongpo，a great poet of the Song Dynasty，was famous not only for being outstanding ____13____ writing，but also for being talented ____14____ an epicure. His creation Dongpo Pork is a popular and ____15____ praised dish.

Another person is Yuan Mei，who also plays a very important role ____16____ developing Chinese food culture. In his book Sui Shi Dan Yuan Mei talked about cooking ____17____ and northern and southern dishes systematically. This book ____18____ over 300 dishes popular in 18th century China，ranging ____19____ exotic meat dishes ____20____ superb seafood.

1. A. mind B. brain C. heart D. memory
2. A. meet B. see C. greet D. cheat
3. A. daily B. monthly C. weekly D. yearly
4. A. situation B. occasion C. condition D. circumstance
5. A. diner B. dinner C. dinning D. dine
6. A. lengthen B. heighten C. strengthen D. broaden
7. A. as B. at C. with D. to
8. A. to be filled B. to fill C. filling D. being filled
9. A. number B. amount C. lot D. taste
10. A. no B. no other C. no others D. not
11. A. variety B. various C. kind D. species
12. A. distribute B. contribute C. attribute D. tribute
13. A. on B. out C. of D. in
14. A. for B. as C. of D. to
15. A. high B. highly C. much D. more
16. A. in B. at C. as D. of
17. A. devices B. technology C. instruments D. techniques
18. A. conceals B. reveals C. covers D. discovers
19. A. from B. in C. on D. at
20. A. at B. to C. and D. with

【答案与解析】

Passage 1

1.【答案】D

【解析】loss 损失；expectations 预测，料想；success 成功；problems 问题。本句意思是，只有富人们才能毫无疑问地解决生活问题。

2.【答案】B

【解析】根据本句中的 on a road 可以推断出此处选 B。

3.【答案】B

【解析】faraway 遥远的；poor 贫穷的；different 不同的；ancient 古代的，古老的。根据前后文中的 poverty 可以推断出此处选 B。

4.【答案】C

【解析】此处所填的词用作并列连词，表结果，根据句意可知其意思是：因此，所以，选 C。

5.【答案】A

【解析】此处所填代词指代前文中的 jewels，是用复数，故用 them。

6.【答案】B

【解析】curious 好奇的；worrying 令人担忧的；dangerous 危险的；puzzling 令人迷惑的。所填的词修饰 situation，根据句意可知在此处意思是：令人担忧的，选 B。

7.【答案】A

【解析】所填部分做 give 的间接宾语，指人，由上下文意思可知此处表“村民”之意，选 A。

8.【答案】A

【解析】此处所填情态动词表示能力，意思是：能，会，选 A。

9.【答案】C

【解析】interest 兴趣，利润，使对……感兴趣；concern 关心，在乎；use 使用，利用；attraction 吸引力。所填词构成 of，选 C。

10.【答案】D

【解析】此处所填词表动作，意思是：收到，接到，选 D。

11.【答案】B

【解析】remain 剩下；last 仍旧是，持续；supply 供给，供应；share 分享。由 some time 可知选 B。

12.【答案】D

【解析】turned back 转回，返回；set out 着手，开始；showed off 炫耀；speeded 加速。根据 went straight 可知选 D。

13.【答案】A

【解析】由前文可知此处所填词的意思是：村庄，选 A。

14.【答案】B

【解析】所填词引导宾语从句，且表示感叹，感叹的中心词是动词 lack，故用 how。

15.【答案】A

【解析】本句表达的是前两个富人的思想，即他们自己对自己的行为感到自豪，故选 A。

16.【答案】B

【解析】本句意思是：他们遇见了第三位富人。故选 B。

17.【答案】A

【解析】still 仍然，还；already 已经；always 经常；indeed 的确。根据本句的时态可以推断出所填词意思是：仍然，选 A。

18.【答案】B

【解析】except 除……之外；instead of 代替，而不是；apart from 除了，除过；along with 和。由句意可知选 B。

19.【答案】C

【解析】loading 装载；treasuring 珍惜；carrying 运，搬运；earning 挣，赚。根据后面的 full of 可以推断出选 C。

20.【答案】D

【解析】food 食物；jewels 珠宝；money 金钱；seeds 种子。此处所填词与 farming tools 并列，且与 bags of 修饰，故选 D。

Passage 2

1.【答案】A

【解析】on one'（the）way to…B 足迹；小道。根据句中的 from work 可知在下班回家的路上睡着了，故选 A。

2.【答案】D

【解析】B 折叠 ；C 快递。一个男人刚才还在读报纸，几秒钟以后他似乎在吃报纸。宾语是 newspaper，所以选择 reading。

3.【答案】C

【解析】见 2 题，appear 表示似乎。

4.【答案】B

【解析】见 2 题，这里表示吃报纸。

5.【答案】D

【解析】因为是在下班回家的公交车上或火车上，所以是靠着旁边的陌生人就睡着了，故选 sitting。

6.【答案】C

【解析】上一个例子列举了在回家的路上睡着了，下面又列举了在演讲厅睡觉，因此选 another 表示“再一、又一”。

7.【答案】A

【解析】又有一个在没有打算睡觉的地方睡着了。go on 表示“发生”，指没有想睡便也睡

着了。

8.【答案】C

【解析】本句中 a student will start snoring 和 awake 说明这个学生睡觉发出很大的声音。

9.【答案】B

【解析】因为这个学生的打鼾声影响了教授讲课，所以让他人叫醒他，故选 shake。

10.【答案】C

【解析】句中的 pushes the arm off 暗示着脑袋的重量把胳膊推离了桌子。

11.【答案】B

【解析】A 坐垫。学生趴在桌子上睡觉，头的重量使得胳膊离开了桌子，后面提到的倒在地上给出了暗示。

12.【答案】C

【解析】头是身体的一部分，因此身体的另外部分则应 the rest。

13.【答案】A

【解析】句中的 getting there 暗示着倒在地上的学生不记得自己为什么这样了。

14.【答案】D

【解析】下文警察在谈论交通事故，因此这里指开车的时候睡着了。

15.【答案】D

【解析】因为司机开车的时候睡着了，所以发生了交通事故。

16.【答案】B

【解析】当司机睡着时，他们开车偏离公路。off 表示“离开”。

17.【答案】A

【解析】下文的 they are not seriously hurt 表明，如果这些司机幸运的话，故选 lucky。

18.【答案】D

【解析】作者在这里用来举例说明司机睡着的例子，故选 for example。

19.【答案】B

【解析】后文中的 thought it was raining 暗示着这位女司机把车开到水中了。

20.【答案】A

【解析】句意：当人们感到疲劳时在哪里都可以睡着，没什么能阻挡了的，故选 tired。

Passage 3

1.【答案】C

【解析】本句的意思是：“成功或失败在很大程度上取决于你是否能扬长避短。”improvement 改进；victory 胜利；achievement 成果，成就。这三个词都不合题意，只有 C failure“失败”最合适。

2.【答案】A

【解析】to a great extent 是固定短语，意思是“很大程度上”，符合题意。类似的说法还有：to a large extent，to some extent，to an extent，to a certain extent，to that extent，to the extent of。the，some，certain 都不能与 great extent 搭配。

3.【答案】B

【解析】on 与前面的 depend 构成本句谓语。

4.【答案】B

【解析】of 与名词连用，表示具有某种性质，状态，做表语。置于句首，表强调。正常语序为：Your attitude is of the utmost importance.

5.【答案】A

【解析】A person 后应当是定语从句，“开始工作的那个人”。

6.【答案】C

【解析】本句的意思是“如果一个刚刚开始工作的人就深信自己不会喜欢或肯定不适应这项工作，那么阻碍他成功的缺点就暴露出来了。”or 后面省了主语 he。ensure 保证；certain 肯定的（只能用于 it 做主语的句子里）；surely 确实地；sure 肯定的。

7.【答案】D

【解析】in one’s belief 相信。其它选项都不能与 belief 搭配。

8.【答案】C

【解析】capable of doing 是固定搭配，意为“能够干什么”。

9.【答案】D

【解析】attempt 用做名词，后接介词 at，意为“试图，努力”；如果后接介词 on，表示攻击的意思。其他两项都不能与 attempt 搭配。

10.【答案】C

【解析】本句的意思是“具有某一工作的必要技能是一个优势”此处应句子的主语，故选动名词 having。

11.【答案】D

【解析】本句主语是 A bookkeeper or carpenter。根据主谓一致原则其谓语应当用单数，而不是复数 are，being，been 都是分词，应该排除。

12.【答案】D

【解析】on 与前面的 capitalize 搭配，表示“利用”。做不定式 help 的补语。其余选项不能与 capitalize 搭配。

13.【答案】B

【解析】本句的意思是“克服缺点”，应选 weakness（缺点，弱点）。idea 观点；strength 优点；advantage 优势。

14.【答案】B

【解析】固定短语 take stock of，意为“对……估价，对……做出判断”。

15.【答案】A

【解析】本句的意思是：“随着更深入的阅读”，从语法角度，此处应填关联词。四个选项中，只有 as 能用做关联词。

16.【答案】D

【解析】选项 A、B、C 分别是 deal（处理，论述，涉及）的原形，过去分词及被动语态。

根据语法和语义，此处应填将来进行时，意思是“随着书中内容的进一步深入，我们将详细论述发展和加强学习技能的具体过程。”

17.【答案】C

【解析】根据上下文，这里应当指“学习技能”。

18.【答案】B

【解析】固定短语 to begin with，意为“首先，第一”，常用做插入语。

19.【答案】A

【解析】谓语动词 pause 后，examine 又是动词原形，所以这里应当选 to，可构成动词不定式，做目的状语。其余选项都是介词，不合题意。

20.【答案】C

【解析】本句对应全文进行总结概括，与文章的开头相呼应，of the utmost importance is your attitude 故选 attitude。

Passage 4

1.【答案】B

【解析】此处意为：当人类刚刚开始进化，他们如同新生儿一样不会运用语言这种工具。evolved 逐渐发展，进化符合题意。generated 生殖，发展；born（bear 的过去分词）不能做谓语动词；originated 起源，不能用 first 修饰。

2.【答案】A

【解析】根据语法分析，答案应是用来修饰语言的。valuable 珍贵的；appropriate 合适的，适当的；convenient 方便的，便利的；favorite 最喜欢的。语言并不是人类选择的结果，而是人类在进化过程中慢慢发展起来的，对人类来说，应当是珍贵的。

3.【答案】A

【解析】此处意思是：语言的发展增加了人类未来成就和文化进步的可能性。attainments 成就；feasibility 可行性；entertainments 娱乐；evolution 进化。

4.【答案】D

【解析】此处意为：许多语言学家认为进化使人们产生和具备了语言的能力。固定短语 be responsible for 对……负责，是……的原由。其余选项不与 for 搭配。

5.【答案】C

【解析】根据语法分析，空格后应是一个宾语从句，而 A，B，D 三项后都不能接从句做直接宾语，confirm（确认）；inform（通知）sb of sth；convince（使某人确信）sb of sth。

6.【答案】D

【解析】固定搭配 provide sb with sth 意为“向（人）提供（物）”。

7.【答案】B

【解析】此处意为：我们高度发达的大脑是我们具备了其它低等动物所不具备的语言能力。显然，这里是把人和低等动物相比较。因此选 organisms 有机体，生物体。

8.【答案】A

【解析】此句意思是：人类的语言能力是与生俱来的，但语言本身也在逐渐发展，所以这种能力应该是潜在的。potential 潜力；performance 履行；preference 偏爱；passion 激情。

9.【答案】A

【解析】此句句义是：语言本身作为童年时期大脑生长的一种功能，其发展是缓慢的。as（作为，当作）合乎题意。like 作为介词的意思是“像……一样”。

10.【答案】B

【解析】此句意为：语言的发展有一个关键期，人体的成长是生物变化的过程。biological 生物的；ideological 思想上的；social 社会的；psychological 心理的。

11.【答案】A

【解析】此处意为：目前人们对“先天论”评论观点不一、但是支持某些天生能力的证据却是确凿无疑的。reviews 评论；reference 参考；reaction 反应；recommendation 推荐。

12.【答案】C

【解析】从 11 题可看出，作者是倾向于先天论的，为了进一步证明先天论是有道理的，作者选择了以学校为例加以说明，因此这里应填一个表示递进关系的词 Indeed（甚至）。

13.【答案】D

【解析】此处意思是：越来越多的学校发现在什么年级学外语较容易，根据常识（低年级学外语较容易）以及后文的 Young children often can learn several languages by being to them，while adults 可以选定答案。

14.【答案】B

【解析】此处意为：通过接触多种语言，孩子们可以学会好几种语言。be exposed to 是固定搭配，接触到。reveal（显露）sth to sb，不合题意，因本题中的 them 指 languages。其余选项不与搭配，engage in 从事；be involved in 参与。

15.【答案】C

【解析】此句意思是：一旦母语的规则被深深印入脑海中，成年人就很难再学好另一种语言。rules 规则，规律；regulations 规则；ormations 构成，构造；constitutions 宪法，章程。

16.【答案】A

【解析】分析上下文的逻辑关系，从句意思是：语言的某些方面肯定是先天的。主句意思是：语言不会在与人隔绝的状况下自行发展。前后应为转折关系。

17.【答案】D

【解析】此句意为：与人隔绝的儿童不能掌握好一门语言。isolated 孤立的，与人隔绝的；distinguished 区别的，杰出的；different 不同的；protected 受到保护的。

18.【答案】D

【解析】此句总结前几句，意为：必须通过与他人交往，语言才能够发展。interaction 相互作用；exposition 暴露；comparison 比较；contrast 对比。

19.【答案】A

【解析】根据分析，本句中的“this”和“even more basic”分别指代上句的“interaction with other human beings”和“necessary”，此处所填词对应上文中的 language development。也就

是说，language acquisition 语言习得。appreciation 欣赏，感激；requirement 要求；alternative 转移，转变，转换。

20.【答案】C

【解析】本句功能是以另一种方式解释前文中的“imitative，learned behavior（模仿性的后天行为)”。in other words 换言之，换句话说；as a result 结果是；after all 毕竟；above all 首先。

Passage 5

1.【答案】A

【解析】考查动词词义和语境理解。die 去世；come 来；return 返回，归还；visit 拜访。有下文 death 可知母亲“去世了”。

2.【答案】B

【解析】考查动词词义和语境理解。disappear 丢失不见；burn 燃烧；break 打破；drop 降低，落下。有后文的我感到“忧心如焚”及“归还”（return）可知此处是指项链丢失了。

3.【答案】D

【解析】考查动词词义和语境理解。找了几天没有找到，几天之后别人“告诉”（tell）了我项链的下落。show 展示；comfort 安慰；persuade 劝服。

4.【答案】C

【解析】考查动词辨析和语境理解。既然是赚了一大笔钱，捡到项链的那个人肯定是把它卖了。hide 隐藏；steal 偷（没有证明项链是那个人偷走的）；wear 穿戴。

5.【答案】A

【解析】考查副词词义和语境理解。项链失而复得，“我”是幸运地。Luckily 幸运地；Naturally 自然地；Surely 确定地；Hopefully 有希望地。

6.【答案】A

【解析】考查动词词义和语境理解。母亲去世前我“护理”了她六个月。nurse 护理，照料；cure 治愈（母亲已去世，没有治愈)；miss 怀念；guard 保护，守卫。

7.【答案】B

【解析】考查形容词词义和语境理解。在万家团圆的圣诞节，母亲刚去世，对我来说一定很难熬。

8.【答案】D

【解析】考查副词词义和语境理解。我已来到小镇 Morzaine 就“立刻”喜欢了它。immediately 立刻，马上。suddenly 突然；finally 最后，终于；nearly 几乎，差不多。

9.【答案】C

【解析】考查短语辨析和语境理解。一开始到这来旅游的目的是放松心情。be supposed to 认为应该……；be said to 据说……；be proved to 据证明……；be judged to 据判断……。

10.【答案】D

【解析】考查形容词词义和语境理解。light 明亮的，敞亮的；smart 伶俐的，聪明的；high 高的；firm 结实的，牢固的。我的心情比过去的几个月“敞亮了”很多。

11.【答案】B

【解析】考查动词词义和语境理解。hire 雇佣；honour 尊敬；regard 看作，注意；train 训练。我“受雇”到这里来当宾馆的经理。

12.【答案】D

【解析】考查名词词义和语境理解。后文的“but，by summer，we got married”暗示此处为刚开始我没有心情谈及“婚姻”，因为我“还”沉浸在失去母亲的痛苦当中。

13.【答案】C

【解析】考查副词词义和语境理解。解释同上，still 仍然，仍旧；recently 最近；once 一旦，一次；first 第一、最早，首先。

14.【答案】B

【解析】考查动词词义和语境理解。Paul 理解我的心情，从不“催促”我结婚。push 催促；leave 离去，离开；surprise 使惊讶，使诧异；interrupt 打断。

15.【答案】A

【解析】考查语境理解。上文提到被解雇做宾馆的经理，现在我们开了家自己的“宾馆”。

16.【答案】A

【解析】考查语境理解。后文说到每间客房都是围绕我们的生活记忆装饰的，我们这样做是为了让客人有一种“家”的感觉。

17.【答案】B

【解析】考查情态动词和语境理解。这把小椅子“以前”是放在母亲的卧室里的。

18.【答案】D

【解析】考查语境理解。母亲已去世，但是我们的幸福生活在她在天堂可以“感觉”的到。

19.【答案】C

【解析】考查连词和语境理解。这里是在解释我认为母亲在天堂可以感觉到我们的幸福生活的原因。because 引导原因状语从句；while 引导时间和比较状语从句；though 引导让步状语从句。

20.【答案】D

【解析】考查对语境的理解。前文一直围绕着母亲给“我的项链”在记述。

Passage 6

1.【答案】A

【解析】come out of our mind 从我们的脑海中浮现。其他的几个选项不符合。brain 是脑子，指具体的人脑。mind，可以理解为，脑海，潜意识，思想。

2.【答案】A

【解析】根据后面的一句，知道应该是当我们中国人互相打招呼问候的时候。A 遇到。B 看到，D 欺骗。

3.【答案】A

【解析】这个日常的问候才能够更好的展示了美食文化在我们的日常生活中如此的重要。其他的几个意思分别为，每月的，每周的，每年的。

4.【答案】B

【解析】不管是哪种场合，商业谈判或者家庭聚会。A 情况，B 条件，D 环境。

5.【答案】D

【解析】like to do sth。

6.【答案】C

【解析】人们聚餐的是为了促成商业谈判的成功，或者加强增进家庭关系。A 加长，B 使变高，D 扩宽。

7.【答案】A

【解析】考察固定搭配，be regared as 被视为……

8.【答案】C

【解析】吃饭并不仅仅意味着填饱肚子。固定搭配，mean doing sth。

9.【答案】D

【解析】还能够品尝到食物的美味。其他的均不符合。

10.【答案】B

【解析】世界上再也没有其他地方，像中国一样有大量美食的国家。no other 名词，等于 no others。no 后面跟可数名词复数或不可数名词。

11.【答案】A

【解析】a variety of 多种的，为固定搭配。

12.【答案】B

【解析】固定搭配，contribute to 为……做出贡献。attribute to 把……归因于。一些美食家对中国的美食发展做出了很大贡献。

13.【答案】D

【解析】在某方面杰出，用介词 in。苏东坡不仅诗写的好。

14.【答案】B

【解析】be talented as 作为……而出名。意思是，他作为一个美食家而出名。

15.【答案】B

【解析】此处需要副词修饰后面的动词。他做的东坡肉得到一致好评。

16.【答案】A

【解析】固定搭配，play a role in……在……中扮演重要角色。

17.【答案】D

【解析】cooking techniques 烹饪方法。其他的几个意思不符合。

18.【答案】C

【解析】这本书覆盖了 300 多种流行于 18 世纪的菜品。

19.【答案】A

【解析】固定搭配。range from…to。范围从……到……

20.【答案】B

【解析】固定搭配。从异国的肉菜到高级海鲜。

Part Five

Reading Comprehension
阅读理解

格言

Fear not that the life shall come to an end, but rather fear that it shall never have a beginning.

不要害怕你的生活将要结束，而应该担心你的生活从来没有真正开始。

第一章　阅读理解的基本介绍

一、考试要求

专升本英语考试的阅读理解部分共20题，占总分的比例情况（如表5—1所示）：

表5—1　2012—2022年专升本英语考试阅读理解占总分比例评情表

年份	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022
阅读分值	40分	40分	40分	40分	40分	40分	40分	40分	40分	40分	40分
试卷总分	150分	150分	150分	150分	150分	150分	150分	150分	150分	150分	150分

阅读理解的分值一直是40分，分值较高且文章难度有所增加，所以阅读理解仍然是专升本英语考试的重中之重。要求考生阅读4篇短文，总的阅读量在1000个单词左右，每篇文章有5个问题，考生需根据文章内容从每道题目的四个选项中选出一个最佳答案。

根据《大学英语教学大纲（修订本）》的要求，专升本考试要求考生对语言难度中等的一般性题材的文章，掌握中心大意，了解说明中心大意的事实和细节，并能进行一定的分析、推理和判断；阅读速度能达到每分钟40～50个单词。阅读理解的测试包括准确度和速度两方面的要求，那么要在有限的时间内做到速度和正确率的和谐统一，就必须具备相应的语言基础和阅读技巧。

纵观历年试题，文章的题材主要包括人物传记、社会、文化、日常生活、科普常识等。题材主要包括记叙文、说明文、议论文。对于人文类的文章，考生应该重点从作者的态度入手；对于自然科学的文章，应该注意文章的结构；对于说明文，我们应该注意重要的事实和数据；对于议论文，尤其需要关注的是作者的观点和结论。以下以2001—2016年试题为例，对文章的类型进行分类，见表5—2。

表5—2　2007—2022年专升本英语历年真题阅读理解文章分类表

类型 年份	说明文	议论文	记叙文
2007	2	1	1
2008	1	3	0
2009	1	2	1
2010	1	3	0
2011	3	1	0

续表

类型 年份	说明文	议论文	记叙文
2012	1	1	2
2013	1	3	0
2014	1	2	1
2015	2	1	1
2016	3	1	0
2017	1	2	1
2018	2	2	0
2019	1	1	2
2020	3	0	1
2021	1	1	2
2022	2	2	0

《大学英语教学大纲（修订本）》要求，文章的语言难度中等，对于无法猜测而又影响理解的关键词，如果超出教学大纲的要求，用汉语注明词义。这样，出题者在词汇难度方面没有太大的发挥余地。从近些年的考题来看，绝大多数的词汇都是大纲范围之内的，即使有超出大纲的，也都有中文注解，但出题者在句子结构方面做了很多文章，通过增加句子的长度和难度来增加考试难度。常见的难句子主要来源于以下几个方面（见表5—3），希望考生能够有针对得进行复习。

表5—3　阅读理解难句分析表

难句分类	复习提示
多重复合句	先抓住句子的主干，即句子的主谓宾关系，再看句子的其他成分和句子的插入成分 E. g. Great writers are those（who not only have great thoughts but also press these thoughts in words which appeal powerfully to our minds and emotions）.（Passage 4，2004）
多重并列句	主要注意理解主句的意思 E. g. The rear section of the brain，（which controls functions like eating and breathing），does not contract with age，and one can continue living（without intellectual or emotional facilities）.（Passage 2，2004）
被动句	特别是当文章中被动句较多时，注意将被动句转化为主动句来理解 E. g.（With a tremendous roar from its rocket engine），the satellite is sent up into the sky. （The marvel of the machine age），the electronic computer has been in use only since 1946.（Passage 1，2003）
插入成分分割句	先略过插入成分，理解主句的意思，回过头来再来理解插入成分的意思 E. g.（No doubt on your way up through the ranks），you have come across managers（who — while they may be very good at other aspects of their job — are decidedly lacking in interpersonal skills）.（Passage 2，2002）
备注	重难句还包括省略句、倒装句、双重否定句，此处就不一一赘述。

二、阅读方法详解

1. 阅读的三个层次

在了解了专升本考试的基本要求以后，我们可能最关心的就是如何提高自己的阅读能力，从而提高分数。什么样的阅读方法才是最科学，能够在最短的时间内达到正确和速度二者兼顾呢？

阅读不是一个独立的活动，它是一种对英语能力综合要求的体现。阅读的提高主要体现在以下三个层次：

（1）基础词汇和语法。对于任何想打好英语基础的人，首要的任务就是要掌握大纲所要求的词汇。对于一般常规性单词，要求了解基础词义；对于专升本核心词汇，除了基本词义，还要了解其引申义、近义词的辨析和同根词。对于语法，不是要我们对浩瀚的语法有全面的认识，这对于广大考生是不现实，也是不必要的。但是考题里出现的语法现象，考生必须做到理解和掌握。比如非限制性定语从句、现在分词、过去分词，等等。总之，足够的词汇量和一定的语法知识是打好语言基础的前提。

（2）正确的方法和技巧。关于阅读方法，很多参考书给出了不同的见解，这一点也是仁者见仁，智者见智。我们将根据多年的教学经验，给出一个比较科学的方法，希望能给广大考生很好的帮助。关于做题的技巧，我们将在后面分题型给大家分别讲述。

但是要注意一点，任何的方法和技巧都是建立在词汇和语法的基础上，如果有些同学抛开基础，盲目的追求方法和技巧，把他们看做是提高阅读成绩的灵丹妙药，那么这种舍本逐末的方法，只能带来事倍功半的结果。

（3）反复的练习和体会。很多同学在复习备考的时候，都特别重视自己的学习方法和技巧，但任何方法和技巧，都需要一个练习的过程才能成为自己的东西，这个环节是我们广大考生都知道的，但也是最容易忽略的一点。所以，通过练习，将自己所学的方法和技巧理解、消化，最终变成自己的东西，并根据具体情况摸索出适合自己的方法才是正确的学习英语的途径。

2. “三步走”阅读方法

（1）目前比较流行的阅读方法。对于专升本阅读，用传统的从头到尾的阅读方法是行不通的，这样不但速度慢，而且准确率低，抓不住重点。为此，很多考生和老师在实践中摸索出多种阅读方法，目前比较流行的为以下几种：

①多数考生在阅读时喜欢采用以下传统的“三部曲”：读文章，看题目，有拿不准的地方再回头看文章。这种方法对于了解文章主题有好处，准确率高，但是速度慢，时间上很紧张。

②第二种是先浏览题目，记住大致考点，再读文章，划下重点位置，然后做题，一气呵成。这种方法的好处在于有的放矢，节省时间，但是在不了解文章结构、主题和细节的情况下，对问题的理解，记忆都有困难，可能反而节约不了时间。

③直接从问题入手，边读题边回原文找答案。这种方法关键在于把问题读懂，如果是细节题，阅读时应该仔细一点，对于主旨题把握就要差一些。而且，要求有很好的记忆能力。

（2）“三步走”阅读方法解析

综合以上阅读方法的优势，我们这里推荐“三步走”的阅读方法。

第一步：扫描题干核心词

阅读前快速扫描题目的题干，对于主旨题和推理题，可以不考虑。主要是关注细节题，标出核心词。核心词就是题干中明显能够帮助我们快速回到原文定位这道题目的词。关于核心词，没有统一答案，但是核心词的特征是：一般为名词或形容词，具有一定的标示性，比如人名、地名、公司名、时间、年代等等，能够使我们很快在原文中找到出处的词。扫描题干的时间很短，应该在30秒内完成。

此处要提醒大家注意的是，在标出核心词之后，阅读时不用刻意的去找出核心词，在看到时有所提示即可。如果有些同学记忆核心词会影响阅读速度，则完全可以不去记忆。即使这样，做题时，核心词依然能够给我们定位原文提供很大的帮助。当然我们还是希望同学们在练习的过程中，学会带着核心词回原文读文章。

第二步：定位原文出题点

速读文章，注意读各段的首句以及末句。这些句子是我们理解文章结构，把握文章大意的基础。这样的句子如果阅读时无法理解，应该停下来，重新读一遍，分析句子的语法结构，彻底搞清楚句子的意思。将涉及到后面核心词的句子、难句标注出来就可以了。对于这些句子的仔细理解，需要结合第三步中的题目，如果题目涉及到了该句话，再根据题目来仔细理解。

第三步：结合原文选答案

速读完文章看考题时，首先要分清考题的题型。题型的特征和标志将在第二章详述。分清题型以后可以根据不同的题型寻找答案。

对于主旨题和宏观性的推理题，直接根据速读后的印象选择答案，不必再回读文章，以免浪费时间并产生犹豫，容易受细节题的影响而产生歧义。记着第一印象往往就是正确的。

对于细节题，词汇题以及涉及细节的推理题，则要根据题干核心词回原文定位，仔细阅读相关的句子，选出正确答案。这就要充分利用速读阶段在原文上标出的句子，快速定位。回读的内容不需要全，也不需要多，只读相关的句子就可以了。因为我们已经掌握了全文的大意，又通过核心词定位了句子，只要读这些句子就可以了，其他的句子因为不在考点上，不必读，读了也只会干扰思路，影响选择答案的坚定性。

根据题型，找到考点以后，就可以通过与原文的重叠，找出正确答案。这时要注意出题者的惯用伎俩，如“局部相似，以偏概全”，这些将在后续的章节中论述。

下面我们以一篇真题为例，具体论述“三步走”如何操作。

If you listen to American music，watch American television or magazines，you will probably agree that the most popular subject of these forms of entertainment is love. Romantic love always finds an audience in the United States. Falling in love，solving the problems of love，and achieving the happy ending—the big wedding are subjects of interest to both the adult and the teenage public. Millions of Americans celebrate Valentine's Day with special cards and gifts that announce their love to their mates，their friends and their families. Popular songs tell us that “all the world loves a lover ” . A popular saying is “Love conquers all” . Numerous columns in magazines and newspapers offer advice to the lovelorn, those with difficulties of heart. To most Americans, romantic love is central to a happy life.

Not only do Americans believe in romantic love but they also believe that it is the best basis for making a happy marriage. Despite the high divorce rate in the United States, young men and women continue to marry on the basis of romantic love. Americans consider marriage a private arrangement between the two people involved. Young Americans feel free to choose their own marriage partners from any social, economic or religious background. The man or woman may have strong ties with parents, brothers or sisters, but when he or she falls in love, the strongest feelings are supposed to be for the loved one. When an American couple marries, they generally plan to live apart from both sets of parents and build their own independent family structure.

71. What is the most popular subject of all forms of entertainment?

A. Marriage　B. Love　C. Families　D. Friendship

扫描题干核心词 the most popular subject，定位原文出题点在第一段第二行，结合此处得出答案 B。

72. Who is interested in the subject of love?

A. Adults who are single.　B. Teenagers whose parents are divorced.

C. Old people who have no children.　D. Both adults and teenagers.

扫描题干核心词 interested，定位原文出题点在第一段第四行，结合此处 both the adult and the teenage public 得出答案 D。

73. What do most Americans think of romantic love?

A. It is central to a happy life.

B. It is not the basis for marriage.

C. It is not necessarily important in people's life.

D. Many people long for it, but it is unbelievable.

扫描题干核心词 most Americans, romantic love，定位原文出题点在第一段最后一句，结合此处得出答案 A。

74. What factors do young Americans consider when choosing their own marriage partners?

A. They will think their social background.

B. They think economic background is essential.

C. They won't choose a marriage partner from different religious backgrounds.

D. They don't think social, economic or religious background is important.

扫描题干核心词 young Americans, marriage partner，定位原文出题点在第二段四五两行，结合此处“年轻的美国人从任何的社会，经济或者宗教背景自由地选择结婚对象”可知，他们不会考虑这些因素，得出答案 D。

75. What does an American couple plan to do when they marry?

A. They continue to live with their parents after their marriage.

B. They plan to live by themselves.

C. They plan to earn more money to buy a house.

D. They plan to travel all over the world.

扫描题干核心词 American couple，定位原文出题点在第二段最后一句，结合此处“当一对美国夫妻结婚的时候，他们一般计划远离双方父母生活，并且建立他们自己独立的家庭结构”可得出答案 B。

第二章　阅读理解的命题原则和解题方法

在分析专升本考试之前，我们先来看看考试大纲对专升本考试阅读的要求：

1. 掌握文章的主旨和大意。
2. 了解和说明文章的事实和细节。
3. 能理解字面意思，还能根据所读材料进行一定的推理，引申和判断。
4. 能够理解上下文的逻辑关系，通过上下文来猜测单词的意思。

根据大纲的要求，我们将专升本阅读试题分为主旨题、细节题、推理题和词义题。下面对不同的题型一一进行分析，并找出解决问题的办法。

第一节　主旨题

一、题型特点

主旨题是专升本考试的必考题型。它是测试考生对于整篇文章的理解程度，它针对整篇文章的中心思想进行提问，测试考生归纳全文主要信息的能力。

通常在考试中，主旨题以下列形式提出：

The subject of this passage is ________.

What is the main idea of the passage?

What is the main topic of the passage?

What is the passage mainly concerned?

The passage is mainly about ________.

有的要求考生确定相应的文章标题来测试对全文中心思想的理解，常用的出题形式有：

Which of the following is the best title of the article?

The best title of the passage is ________.

What might be the best title of this passage?

The topic of the passage would probably be ________.

这些问题其实都是对主旨进行发问的，希望大家能够熟悉这些提问方式。

二、解题思路

对于主旨题的解题思路，主要有以下三种：

1. 主旨句

主旨句是最重要的考点标志，文章主旨就来自于主旨句。主旨句表达中心思想，其他句子均围绕其展开说明或议论。主旨通常以判断句（以 be 动词居多）的形式出现，在文章中的位置为：

（1）首段的开头

许多文章开门见山，一开始就摆出要说明的主要对象或要论述的主要观点。接下去的句子和段落都说明或论述它。这样文章的结构就属于“一般到具体”，主旨也就在首段首句。例如：2011 年专升本真题 Passage 1 的第一句“Researchers have found that REM（rapid eye movement）sleep is important to human beings.”就开章见义，说明“研究者发现快速眼部运动的睡眠形式对人类来说是重要的”。这就是通篇的主旨句，它的特点是具有高度的概括性，并且使用了一种判断性的语气和句式（注意主旨句多数情况下是 be 动词的句子，因为要下定义和给概念，也就是“什么是什么”）。这篇短文的倒数第二个问题就是：

64. The subject of this passage is ________.

A. why people sleep
B. the human need for REM sleep
C. the characteristics of REM sleep
D. physical changes in the human body

如果同学们读文章时已经在主题句处做了标记，那这儿就可以很容易地判断出 C 为正确答案：这篇文章主要说明了快速眼部运动睡眠的特点。当文章首句为概括性很强的陈述句，对某一现象或观点进行了总结性的归纳，或者是一个判断句，若它后面的句子不再含有首句论述对象以外的事物，不存在如“however，but，yet，on the contrary，in fact”等含有转折倾向的词语，即作者行文既不偏离此句的内涵，又不反对此句的观点，则这句话为文章的主旨句。

（2）首段的末句或二段的首句

首段末句或二段首句也是主旨句常出现的地方。特别是当文章的首句后出现了转折性的陈述时，但所涉及的主体事物没有发生改变，那么文章的主旨往往是转折词后出现的与首句观点相对立的结论。

这种形式的主旨句之前通常有表示转折的提示词，如 however，but 等转折之后就出现主旨句的情况较多，这种套路可以用“去旧存新，标新立异”八个字概括。文章中诸如“every parent”“a popular belief”“frequently assumed”“universally accepted”等词句提示作者可能在下文提出一个与之不同的观点标新立异，假若如此，那么作者“标新立异”之处的观点就是主旨大意。对于某一现象，过去已有解释，作者提出新的解释，新解释就是主旨大意。这体现了上述的“去旧存新”原则。例如，我们来看下面这篇文章的第一段：

When a consumer finds that an item she or he bought is faulty or in some other way does not live up to the manufacturer’s claim for it，the first step is to present the warranty，or any other records which might help，at the store of purchase. In some cases，this action will produce results. **However**，if it does not，there are various means the consumer may use to gain satisfaction.

文章开始论述了一系列的关于如何得到合理索赔的方式。但是文章的论述重心是本段的最后一句，直接指出该篇文章的重点不是在于如果像开头所说得那样去提供所谓的 warranty（保单），或者是 records（收据），而是强调更为有效的办法来索赔。所以我们来看这篇文章对应的题目：

35. The passage tells us ________.

A. how to settle a consumer's complaint about a faulty item

B. how to make an effective complaint about a faulty item

C. how to avoid buying a faulty item

D. how to deal with complaints from customers

通过对 however 后面一句话的总结，我们可以得出文章的中心就是在于告诉消费者如何能够进行有效的索赔。正确答案为 B。

再看一篇文章的第一段：

Engineering students are supposed to be examples of practicality and rationality，but when it comes to my college education，I am an idealist and a fool. In high school I wanted to be an electrical engineer and，of course，any sensible student with my aims would have chosen a college with a large engineering department，famous reputation and lots of good labs and research equipments. But that's not what I did.

其最后一句，话锋一转，态度来一个 180 度大转弯：“但我没这么做!”这才是作者的真实意图。这种主旨段最后一句的强烈转折，引出主旨句，尤其需要引起重视，不要只读第一段的前半段就匆忙臆想出文章的主旨，作者经常会在第一段末或第二段首来个大转折，出题人也就会利用这种地方给考生设下陷阱。

对于专升本阅读理解的文章，我们在寻找主旨句的时候，只要是从以上两个位置考虑。正确答案一定是对于主旨句的改写、归纳。

2. 归纳各段的段落大意

有时候文章中没有明确的主旨句，可以根据各段首句的段落大意，从中总结和归纳出整个文章的中心思想。

我们以下面一篇文章为例，分析一下如何通过归纳各段段落大意来得出文章的主旨。

It is，everyone agrees，a huge task that the child performs when he learns to speak，and the fact that he does so in so short a period of time challenges explanation.

Language learning begins with listening. Individual children vary greatly in the amount of listening they do before they start speaking and late starters are often long listeners. Most children will “obey” spoken instructions some time before they can speak，though the word obey is hardly accurate（精确的）as a description of the eager and delighted cooperation usually shown by the children. Before they can speak，many children will also ask questions by gestures and by making questioning noises.

Any attempt to trace（探察）the development from the noises babies make to their first spoken words leads to considerable difficulties. It is agreed that they enjoy making noises，and that during the first few months one or two noises sort themselves out to show joy，sadness，and so on. But since these cannot be said to show the baby's intention to communicate，they can hardly be regarded as early forms of language. It is agreed，too，that from about three months they play with sounds for enjoyment，and that by six months they are able to add new sounds to their repertoire（能发出的全

部声音）. This self-imitation（自我模仿）leads to deliberate（有意识的）imitation of sounds made or words spoken to them by other people. The problem then arises as to the point at which one can say that these imitations can be considered as a speech.

65. The best title for this passage would be ________.

A. How Babies Learn to Speak B. Early Forms of Language

C. A Huge Task for Children D. Noise Making and Language Learning

全文共分三段：第一段指出孩子学说话是一个很艰巨的任务。而孩子是如何在很短的时间内完成这一任务的，还需要进一步的解释。

第二段指出孩子说话之前，是先从听开始的。

第三段说明研究孩子从发出噪音到开始说第一句话这样一个过程是比较困难的。

根据我们介绍的阅读方法，每段的开头句是我们阅读的重点，那么在充分理解每段的开头句，也就是该段的段落大意以后，我们稍加归纳就可以得出，这篇文章论述的中心就是小孩是如何学习说话的。所以 65 题的正确答案应该是 A。

3. 归纳主旨词

归纳主旨词主要是针对 best title 的题目。一篇文章的主旨词一般有以下的特征：

（1）通常是名词，有一定的概括性。

（2）出现频率很高。

（3）通常出现在第一段。

例如 2003 年河南省专升本英语考试的第四篇文章：

Mrs. Cox teaches English in a large high school located in the inner area of a big city on the West Coast. Ever since she was a young girl，Mrs. Cox had wanted to become a teacher. She has taught for eight years now and hasn't changed her mind.

After she graduated from high school，Mrs. Cox went on to college. Four years later，she received her bachelor's degree（B. A.）in English and her teaching certificate. Then she was qualified to teach in the secondary schools of her state. In the summers，Mrs. Cox takes more classes. Someday she hopes to get a master's degree（M. A.）. With an M. A.，she will receive a higher salary.

The school day at Mrs. Cox's high school，like that in many high schools in the United States，is divided into six periods of one hour each. Mrs. Cox must teach five of these six periods. During her free period，which for her is from 2 to 3 p. m.，Mrs. Cox must meet with parents，order supplies，make out examinations，check assignments，and take care of many other things. In short，her free period isn't really free at all. Mrs. Cox works steadily from the time she arrives at school in the morning until the time she leaves for home late in the afternoon.

70. The best title for the passage would probably be ________.

A. A Typical School Day B. Teacher Mrs. Cox

C. Mrs. Cox Likes Teaching D. Mrs. Cox Has Got Her Teaching Certificate

从整个文章中我们可以看出，这篇文章就是在介绍 Mrs. Cox 的过去、现在的工作和将来的打

算。Mrs. Cox 在原文中反复出现，而且整个行文都是围绕着 Mrs. Cox 开展的。所以正确的答案应该是 B。

再如 2003 年河南省专升本英语考试的第三篇：

City traffic jam—one of the least wanted effects of the motor vehicle—is something with which we're all familiar and for which most of us have an answer. But which solution is best?

Some people suggest for better roads，others for cars to be banned（禁止）from city centers and yet others say better public transport would attract drivers from their lonely and boring journeys.

But the important question is what natural power creates a big city center. We are，after all，in an age of electronic communication；our shopping areas have moved out of city centers，and our living areas moved out of them long ago.

Yet some force causes offices and service industries related to them to gather in London or New York or Tokyo. This suggests that far from the problems of a crowded environment forcing companies and people to move out，there is a critical（重大的）size beyond which more companies are attracted to move in. Nobody seems to know why，yet the answer is important to the way traffic jam is dealt with.

65. The topic of this passage would probably be ________.

A. Best Answer to Traffic Problem　　B. The Banning of Cars in the City Center

C. The Formation of City Center　　D. Searching for Ways to Solve Traffic Problem

由整篇文章的论述我们可以得出，文章是在围绕着交通问题来开始的。所以 B、C 选项一定不对，那么 A、D 两个选项中，本文开头就引出城市的交通问题，进而提出不同的解决方案，分析问题的原因，所以我们通过对核心词的判断，以及全文的把握可知 D 为正确答案。

三、主旨题干扰选项特征

1. 细节信息

细节信息出现在主旨题选项中，是最常见的一种干扰。细节信息包括文章某处的一个细节，或者是文章某个段落的段落大意，这些都不能成为主旨题的正确答案，比如还以 2003 年第四篇为例：

70. The best title for the passage would probably be ________.

A. A Typical School Day　　B. Teacher Mrs. Cox

C. Mrs. Cox Likes Teaching　　D. Mrs. Cox Has Got Her Teaching Certificate

A 选项是第三段的中心意思，C 选项是第一段的细节，D 选项是第二段的一个细节，所以正确答案是 B。

2. 与原文无关的信息

有文章本身无法推断出来的信息，即文章中未提到，找不到语言根据的信息。例如下面这篇文章：

Exchange a glance with someone，and then look away. Do you realize that you have made a statement? Hold the glance for a second longer and you have made a different statement. Hold it for 3 seconds，and the meaning has changed again. For every social situation，there is a permissible time that you can hold a person's gaze without being intimate，rude，or aggressive. If you are on an elevator，what gaze-time are you permitted? To answer this question，consider what you typically do. You very likely give other passengers a quick glance to size them up（打量）and to assure them that you mean no threat. Since being close to another person signals the possibility of interaction，you need to send out a signal telling others you want to be left alone. So you cut off eye contacts what sociologist Erving Goffman（1963）calls "a dimming of the lights". You look down at the floor，at the indicator lights，anywhere but into another passenger's eyes. Should you break the rule against staring at a stranger on an elevator，you will make the other person extremely uncomfortable，and you are likely to feel a bit strange yourself.

If you hold eye contacts for more than 3 seconds，what are you telling another person? Much depends on the person and the situation. For instance，a man and a woman communicate interest in this manner. They typically gaze at each other for about 3 seconds at a time，and then drop their eyes down for 3 seconds，before letting their eyes meet again. But if one man gives another man a 3-second-plus stare，he signals，"I know you". "I am interested in you." or "You look peculiar and I am curious about you." This type of stare often produces hostile feelings.

55. The passage mainly discusses ________.

A. the limitations of eye contacts

B. the exchange of ideas through eye contacts

C. proper behavior in situations

D. the role of eye contact in interpersonal communication

选项 D 是对原文具体叙述的总结，为正确答案。C 的内容超出了本文的内容，而 A、B 在原文中根本找不到根据，为无关答案。

第二节　细节题

一、题型特点

细节型试题是专升本阅读理解测试中的又一种常见题型。要求考生能抓住那些往往会直接影响到读者对全文理解的某些特定细节。诸如：作者为阐明中心思想而列举的例证，所申诉的理由，所提出的论点，所进行的过程，以及要计算的数字等，这些都是重要的特定细节。它们是涉及 who，what，which，when，where，why，how 和 how much，how many，how often 等一类问题的答案。在扫视全文过程中，要留意上述细节内容。如果说中心思想是一篇文章的骨架，那么，这些重要细节内容无疑就是支撑骨架的实体。可见搞清细节内容对了解全文意义的重要性。细节型试题不同于主体型试题，它无需太多地运用分析、推理与归纳概括这一套，有时直接或间接地就可以从文

章中找到答案。所以如何快速的定位细节题就成了解决细节题的重点。而如何快速定位细节题，又和第一步的阅读能否把握文章的结构和段落大意有着直接的关系。同时我们所强调的核心词也是帮助我们能够很快返回原文定位的一个重要方法。

这类要求查找某些特定重要细节内容的试题常以下列形式提出来：

Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?

Which of the following is NOT discussed in the passage?

All of the following are true except ________.

The reason of…is that ________.

How does the author of this passage feel about the ________?

This passage has probably been taken from ________.

According to the passage，when（who，what，which，when，where，why，how，how often，etc.）…

或者我们也可以换一个思路：主旨题、推理题和词意题都具有明显的标志，如果一个问题不属于以上三种题型，就可以将其作为细节题来处理。

二、解题思路

那么如何答好细节题呢？关键是要找准原文中的位置。专升本英语考试的每一个细节题都可以在原文中找到对应的某一句话甚至某几个词。在读题干和选项时，我们要注意其中的核心词，这些核心词往往就是对照原文的线索。然后我们再通过把这些核心词与原文中的关键词对比，往往就能准确定位。需要注意的是，在一些难题的题干和选项中，常使用的是原文中关键词的同义词。

关于细节题的做法，请看第一章介绍阅读方法时的例子。

三、细节题干扰选项特征

细节题有难有易，较容易的可以根据题干或选项的线索回原文定位，然后由相关句得到答案；对于较难的细节题，可以运用排除法，去掉干扰项，得到正确答案。细节题干扰项有以下几种：

1. **无**

选项中所讲的内容在原文中根本不存在，或找不到语言依据，如本身正确但在原文无语言根据的无关选项。原文中根本没有提甲，但选项中提到甲；或者原文中有甲和乙，但对甲和乙未做比较，而选项中说甲比乙如何；原文说甲有乙特征，但选项中说甲有乙以外的特征；选项中的限定词表示的范围或程度大于或小于文中所提的范围或程度。

2. **反**

选项的内容与原文相矛盾——原文说西，选项说东；原文说高，选项说低。

3. **混**

原文中说甲事物有某特征，但选项却张冠李戴，挪到了乙的身上。

4. **偏**

原文说某事物有诸多特征，而且题干要求多种特征但选项仅讲了一种特征，这就属于偏。

我们来看一篇文章：

Overhead bridges are found in many parts of Beijing，especially in places where traffic is very heavy and crossing the road is dangerous.

The purpose of these bridges is to enable pedestrians to cross roads safely. Overhead bridges are used in very much the same way as zebra crossings. They are more efficient although less convenient because people have to climb up a long flight of steps. This is inconvenient especially to older people. When pedestrians use an overhead bridge，they do not hold up traffic. However，when they cross a busy road using a zebra crossing，traffic is held up. This is why the government has built many overhead bridges to help pedestrians and to keep traffic moving at the same time.

The government of Beijing has spent a large amount of money on building these bridges. For their own safety，pedestrians should be encouraged to use them instead of risking their lives by dashing across the road. Old people，however，may find it a little difficult climbing up and down the steps，but it is still much safer than walking across the road with all the danger of moving traffic.

Overhead bridges serve a very useful purpose. Pedestrians，both old and young，should make it a habit to use them. This will prevent unnecessary accidents and loss of life.

67. Why were overhead bridges built in Beijing?

A. Because they save money for the government.

B. Because they provide an easy way for the drivers to cross the road.

C. Because they prevent traffic from being held up.

D. Because they save time for the pedestrians.

问题问的是为什么在北京建立天桥。A 选项因为他们为政府省钱，结合第三段第一句得出北京市政府斥巨资在这些天桥上，故 A 是正话反说，属于“反”。B 选项因为他们为司机过马路提供了一种容易的方式。结合第二段第一句得出，天桥的目的是使行人能够安全的过马路。把行人换成了司机是张冠李戴，属于“混”。D 选项因为他们为行人节约时间，文中并未提到，是无中生有，属于“无”。C 选项因为他们预防交通被阻挡，结合第二段第四行，当行人使用一个天桥的时候，他们就不会阻挡交通。所以正确答案应该是 C。

第三节　词义题（含指代题）

一、题型特点

专升本阅读考试中涉及的词义考试题，其重要的一个思路就在于：它并不是考查这个单词考生是否认识，是否背过，而是重点考查考生能否通过上下文的逻辑关系推出这个单词的意思。所以同学们看到一个词汇题时不必因为不认识而紧张，也不要因为认识这个单词而放松警惕。一定要联系上下文去体会该词在文中的意思。

二、解题思路

所谓猜词的技巧，就是指利用文章上下文意思，逻辑推理，语法及语篇完整性，以及所有背景知识推测词语的意思。这似乎只是在遇到生词时用的，其实不然，熟悉的词在特定语境中的取义，如何具体理解，用到的是同样的能力。而这些用途普遍到你只要阅读就会遇到，你一旦有困难它就能帮忙。词汇、语法甚至整篇文章的理解都是以此为主。专升本英语考试一个重要的思路就是通过上下文来猜测单词。此处给出一个词汇的思路，**那就是往往越是同学们看上去越熟悉的选项，越符合我们平时对该单词背诵的意思，越可能是迷惑你的错误答案**。正确答案一定是放在原文中使意思最通顺的选项。

例如2011年河南省专升本英语考试的第一篇文章：

Researchers have found that REM (rapid eye movement) sleep is important to human beings. This type of sleep generally occurs four or five times during one night of sleep lasting five minutes to forty minutes for each occurrence. The deeper a person's sleep becomes, the longer the periods of rapid eye movement.

There are physical changes in the body to show that a person has changed from NREM (non-rapid eye movement) to REM sleep. Breathing becomes faster, the heart rate increases, and, as the name implies, the eyes begin to move quickly.

Accompanying these physical changes in the body is a very important characteristic of REM sleep. It is during REM sleep that a person dreams.

62. The word "deeper" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to which of the following?

A. heavier B. louder C. stronger D. happier

deeper这个单词是我们考生都认得的单词，而我们最常见到的意思就是指“更深”“更进一步”“深层次的”，而这些意思分别对应了题目的A、C选项，可是我们通过上下文来推测，这里最合适的意思应该是睡眠加深，换句话说也就是睡眠的程度很深。所以我们通过上下文推测出正确答案是A。

我们再来看一套2011年河南专升本英语考试的试题：

In 1939 two brothers, Mac and Dick McDonald, started a drive-in restaurant in San Bernadino, California. They carefully chose a busy corner for their location. They had run their own businesses for years, first a theater, then a barbecue（烤肉）restaurant and then another drive-in. But in their new operation, they offered a new, shortened menu: French fries, hamburgers and sodas. To this small selection they added one new concept: quick service, no waiters or waitresses and no tips.

Their hamburgers were sold for fifteen cents. Cheese was another four cents. Their French fries and hamburgers had a remarkable uniformity, for the brothers had developed a strict routine for the preparation of their food, and they insisted on their cooks' sticking to their routine. Their new drive-in became incredibly popular, particularly for lunch. People drove up by the hundreds during the busy noontime. The self-service restaurant was so popular that the brothers had allowed ten copies of their restaurant to be opened. They were content with this modest success until they met Ray Kroc.

Kroc was a salesman who met the McDonald brothers in 1954，when he was selling milk shake-mixing machines. He quickly saw the **unique** appeal of the brothers" fast——food restaurants and bought the right to franchise（特许经营）other copies of their restaurants. The agreement struck included the right to duplicate the menu. The equipment，even their red and white buildings with the golden arches（拱门）.

Today McDonald's is really a household name. Its names for its sandwiches have come to mean hamburger in the decades since the day Ray Kroc watched people rush up to order fifteen-cent hamburgers. In 1976，McDonald's had over ＄1 billion in total sales. Its first twenty-two years is one of the most incredible success stories in modern American business history.

80. As used in the second sentence of the third paragraph，the word "unique" means ________.

A. special　　B. financial　　C. attractive　　D. peculiar

四个选项给出的意思分别是：A"特别的"；B"财经的"；C"吸引人的"；D"独特而唯一的"。从词汇角度来讲，四个意思都不尽相同。但是结合上下文，我们可以看出此处unique是指看到了麦当劳与其他快餐店的不同之处，最重要的是特别而且唯一，所以正确答案是D选项。

附注：指代题做题方法

一、题型特点

指代题也是专升本英语考试中常见的题型之一，可以看作是词汇题的一种变体。就位置而言，代词所指代的名词通常在本句或其前一句之中。就数而言，单数代词指代单数名词，复数代词指代复数名词。例如：it指代单数名词（单数可数或不可数名词），也可指代一个句子，they指代复数名词。除了位置、性、数、格等方面的要求外，逻辑和意义也是衡量的标准，也就是说，正确答案应该意义（主要指语法搭配）上和逻辑（主要指思想内容）上都说得通。

二、解题思路

下面给出做指代题的两个重要的方法，希望大家仔细体会。

1. 第二句话的代词指代的是它前面那一句话的主语或宾语。

2. this，it和that既可以指代名词，也可以指代它们之前的句子。

我们以2003年的河南省专升本英语考试的第三篇文章为例进行分析：

City traffic jam—one of the least wanted effects of the motor vehicle—is something with which we're all familiar and for which most of us have an answer. But which solution is best?

Some people suggest for better roads，others for cars to be banned（禁止）from city centers and yet others say better public transport would attract drivers from their lonely and boring journeys.

But the important question is what natural power creates a big city center. We are, after all, in an age of electronic communication; our big shopping areas have moved out of city centers, and our living areas moved out of them long ago.

Yet some force causes offices and service industries related to them to gather in London or New York or Tokyo. This suggests that far from the problems of a crowded environment forcing companies and people to move out, there is a critical (重大的) size beyond which more companies are attracted to move in. Nobody seems to know why, yet the answer is important to the way traffic jam is dealt with.

63. The word "This" (Line 2, Para. 4) refers to ________.

A. some force

B. traffic jam

C. the force that causes offices to move in or out

D. the fact that companies gather in big cities

我们可以看出，this 所在的一句话的前一句的主语是 some force，宾语是 offices and service。我们将主语和宾语的意思分别带入 this 所在的句子，得出 this 指代的是一句话。所以正确答案是 D。

第四节　推理题

一、题型特点

推理题是阅读理解题型中难度较大的一种，它要求在理解表面文字信息的基础上，做出一定的判断和推论，从而得到文章的隐含意义和深层意义。推理题所涉及的内容可能是文中某一句话，也可能是某几句话甚至全文内容，但做题的指导思想都是以表面文字信息为依据，既不能做出原文中找不到文字依据的推理，也不能根据表面文字信息做多步推理。所以，推理题的答案只能是根据原文表面文字信息进一步推出的答案，即对原文某一句话或某几句话做同义改写（paraphrase）或综合。推理题的目的是考识别能力，并不涉及复杂的判断和推理。

此类题目最常用的提问形式有：

It can be inferred from the passage that ________.

What can be inferred from the passage?

The last sentence of the passage implies that ________.

The passage suggests that ________.

It is most likely that ________.

An inference which may not be made from this passage is ________.

二、解题思路

解题思路是根据题干或选项中的线索回原文定位，仔细阅读找到的相关句，然后比较选项，排除不正确的，找到对相关句进行同义表达或综合的正确答案。既然是暗示推理题，那么答案不能一字不差地照搬原文词句，而应对原文词句做出同义改写。这种改写可以通过利用同义词、改变原句顺序或结构等方式完成。题干中如含有 learn from the passage that 也可以视为这种推理题。

例如2011年河南省专升本英语考试的第二篇文章：

Foxes and farmers have never got on well. These small dog-like animals have long been accused of killing farm animals. They are officially classified as harmful and farmers try to keep their numbers down by shooting or poisoning them.

Farmers can also call on the services of their local hunt to control the fox population. Hunting consists of pursuing a fox across the countryside，with a group of specially trained dogs，followed by men and women riding horses. When the dogs eventually catch the fox they kill it or a hunter shoots it.

People who take part in hunting think of it as a sport；they wear a special uniform of red coats and white trousers，and follow strict codes of behavior. But owning a horse and hunting regularly is expensive，so most hunters are wealthy.

It is estimated that up to 100，000 people watch or take part in fox hunting. But over the last couple of decades the number of people opposed to fox hunting，because they think it is brutal（残酷的），has risen sharply. Nowadays it is rare for a hunt to pass off without some kind of confrontation（冲突）between hunters and hunt saboteurs（阻拦者）. Sometimes these incidents lead to violence，but mostly saboteurs interfere with the hunt by misleading riders and disturbing the trail of the fox’s smell，which the dogs follow.

Noisy confrontations between hunters and saboteurs have become so common that they are almost as much a part of hunting as the pursuit of foxes itself. But this year supporters of fox hunting face a much bigger threat to their sport. A Labour Party Member of the Parliament，Mike Foster，is trying to get Parliament to approve a new law which will make the hunting of wild animals with dogs illegal. If the law is passed，wild animals like foxes will be protected under the ban in Britain.

70. It can be inferred from the passage that ________.

A. killing foxes with poison is illegal

B. limiting the fox population is unnecessary

C. hunting foxes with dogs is considered cruel and violent

D. fox-hunting often leads to confrontation between the poor and the rich

通过 It can be inferred from the passage that 我们没有办法给这道题定位，只能采用排除法。A 选项说用毒药猎杀狐狸是违法的，文章没有体现，不正确。B 选项说限制狐狸的数量是没有必要的，刚好和文章的观点相反，不正确。C 选项说带狗猎杀狐狸是残忍和暴力的，正是文章第四段所

体现的，正确。D 选项说猎狐经常会导致穷人和富人之间的冲突，也不正确，文章中说的是猎狐者和阻拦猎狐者之间的矛盾。所以我们可以推测出正确答案应该是 C。

总之，碰到这种推理题，都应尽可能在速读全文后再做，因为它的综合性较强。与主旨有关的推理题，可以仔细阅读文中表达主旨的相关句。在读完文章后，扫一下选项，排除不太可能的选项（如：与原文明显相矛盾的，提到了原文找不到依据的事实、细节或观点），剩下的选项回原文寻找语言证据，两相对照，能够由原文表面文字信息合理推出来的，即为正确答案。

第三章　阅读理解部分历年真题精解

Passage 1

If you want to stay young，sit down and have a good think. This is the research finding of a team of Japanese doctors，who say that most of our brains are not getting enough exercise，and as a result，we are ageing unnecessarily soon.

Professor Taiju Matsuzawa wanted to find out why otherwise healthy farmers in northern Japan appeared to be losing their ability to think and reason at a relatively early age，and how the process of ageing could be slowed down.

With a team of colleagues at Tokyo National University，he set about measuring brain volumes of a thousand people of different ages and varying occupations.

“Computer technology enabled the researchers to obtain precise measurements of the volume of the front and side sections of the brain，which related to intellect and emotion，and determine the human character.” The rear section of the brain，which controls functions like eating and breaking，does not contract with age，and one can continue living without intellectual or emotional facilities.

Contraction of front and side parts—as cells die off—was observed in some subjects in their thirties，but it was still not evident in some sixty and seventy-year-olds.

Matsuzawa concluded from his tests that there is simple remedy to contraction normally associated with age using the head.

The findings show in general terms that contraction of the brain begins sooner in people in the country than in the towns. Those least at risk，says Matsuzawa，are lawyers，followed by university professors and doctors. White collar workers doing routine work in government offices are，however，as likely to have shrinking brains as the farm workers，bus drivers and shop assistants.

Matsuzawa’s findings show that thinking can prevent the brain from shrinking. Blood must circulate properly in the head to supply the fresh oxygen the brain cells need. “The best way to maintain good blood circulation is through using brain，” he says，“Think hard and engage in conversation. Don’t rely on pocket calculators.”

(2004)

36. The team of doctors wanted to find out ________.

A. how to make people live longer　　B. the size of certain people’s brains

C. which people are most intelligent　　D. why certain people age sooner than others

37. On what are their research findings based?

A. A survey of farmers in northern Japan   B. The study of brain volumes of different people

C. Tests performed on a thousand old people   D. The latest development of computer technology

38. The doctors tests show that ________.

A. our brains shrink as we grow older

B. the front section of the brain does not shrink

C. sixty-year-olds have better brains than thirty-year-olds

D. some people's brains have contracted more than other people

39. The word "subjects" in the sentence of paragraph 5 "Contraction of front and side parts—as cells die off—was observed in some subjects in their thirties，but it was still not evident some sixty and seventy-year-olds." means ________.

A. something to be considered

B. branches of knowledge studied

C. any member a state except the supreme ruler

D. persons chosen to be studied in experiment

40. According to the passage，which people seem to age slower than others?

A. Shop assistants，lawyers and professors.   B. Farmers，doctors and farmers.

C. Clerks，professors and farmers.   D. Lawyers，professors and doctors.

【答案与解析】

36.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。第一段第二句指出有一组日本医生在研究为什么有的人过于衰老。

37.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。第三段讲到，这些研究人员研究不同人的大脑容量。

38.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。第五段所讲的研究结果表明，某些人 30 多岁时就发现有大脑萎缩现象，因为细胞死亡了。

39.【答案】D

【解析】词义题。第五段提供的研究结果是：某些 subject 30 多岁就发现有脑萎缩现象，此处的 subject 指的是接受试验的人。

40.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。第七段第二句的结论是：律师、大学教授、医生脑萎缩的危险性最小。

【译文】

如果你想保持年轻，坐下来好好思考。这是日本的医生们最近的研究成果。我们大多数人的大脑没有得到足够的锻炼，于是造成了我们不必要的衰老。

Taiju Matsuzawa 教授试图去发现为什么北部日本的健康的农民在他们相对比较早期的阶段就

丧失了思考和推理的能力，以及这个衰老的过程如何被减慢。

和东京国立大学的同事一起，他开始着手测量不同年龄，不同职业的 1 000 人的脑容量。

“计算机科技使研究者可以准确的得到大脑的前面和侧面的容量。这些部分和人的智力，感情都有关系，决定了一个人的性格。”而控制像饮食，休息功能的大脑后部不会随着老化而萎缩。一个人可以在没有智力和感情的情况下活下去。

随着细胞的死亡而造成前部和侧部萎缩，在有些对象身上 30 岁就有体现，而有些对象直到 60 岁或 70 岁也不明显。

Matsuzawa 从他的实验总结出一种简单的对抗由衰老引起的脑萎缩的疗法——用脑。

结果表明生活在农村的人比在城市的人脑部萎缩早。Matsuzawa 说律师的风险是最小的，其次是大学教授和医生。但是在政府例行公事的白领和农场工人，公交司机和超市导购更有可能脑部萎缩。

Matsuzawa 的结果显示思考可以防止脑部萎缩。血液必须正常在脑部循环从而提供新鲜的氧气给脑细胞。他说：“用脑是最好保持血液脑部循环的方法。勤于思考，积极参与对话，不要依赖于口袋里的计算器”。

Passage 2

When we turn on a tap to get water，or press a switch to get electricity，we do not think of all the pipes and wires which bring these main services to our homes.

The water is brought from the waterworks to each street by a large underground pipe—the water in this pipe is then forced by pressure into the smaller pipes which carry it to storage tanks at tops of the buildings. Other pipes bring the water down from the storage tank to the kitchens and bathrooms in the building.

When the water has been used，it is taken away from the building by drainpipes. These take the waste water to another large pipe under road—the main sewer. The waste water then flows along the sewer to the sewage works where it is cleaned. This “clean” water is then poured into the sea or into a river，or in some countries，sent back to the waterworks to be used again.

Electricity is also brought to the house by a main，in this case a cable. This cable may be underground or，in country districts，it may hang above ground on pylons. The cable is connected to a meter in the building. Near the meter there is a master switch can cut off the supply of electricity. There are also fuse boxes when between the master switch and the wires which take the electricity to each of the switches in the building. All these wires，fuses and switches are the “wiring circuit” .

（2004）

41. It can be inferred from this passage that ________.

A. water and electricity are the only main services in our houses

B. the pipes bringing water to our homes are unimportant

C. water is less significant than electricity in our homes

D. we are unaware of how water or electricity is brought to our homes

42. We call water，electricity and sewer ________.

A. wiring circuit　　B. pipes，cables and drains

C. main services　　D. underground services

43. How is clean water brought to our homes?

A. Through pipes from the sewage works.

B. Through underground main pipes.

C. Through pipes from storage tanks.

D. Through small pipes under the road.

44. What happens to the waste water?

A. It is kept in a large storage tank.

B. It flows away through drains to a sewer.

C. It flows away through a water main.

D. It is returned to the waterworks.

45. Between a main cable and the master switch in our homes is ________.

A. a light switch　　B. a pylon　　C. a fuse box　　D. a meter

【答案与解析】

41.【答案】D

【解析】推理题。第一段指出，当我们打开水龙头或打开电钮时，我们并没有想到管道和电线，由此可知，我们并不了解管道和电线是如何进到家里的。

42.【答案】C

【解析】推理题。第二段出现了供水的 water main。第三段出现了排污的 main sewer，第四段出现了供电的 main，所以这些统称 main services（干线）。

43.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。第二段第二句讲述了供水的过程：从水管到水槽然后输送到家里。

44.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。第三段第三句讲述了排去污水的过程。

45.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。第四段第三四句指出连接电缆和总开关的设备是 meter（电表）。

【译文】

当我们打开水龙头，或按下电源开关的时候，我们没有想过那些把水和电送到我们家的管道和电线。

水通过铺设在地下的一个大的管道从水厂到每一条街道的供水系统。管子里的水通过压力进入到小型管子，然后储存在建筑物的顶部的水箱里。另外的管子将水从水箱送到各家的厨房和卫生间。

水用过以后将会通过下水管道流出建筑物。下水管道将废水流到地下的一根更大的管道——下水系统。废水通过下水管道流到废水处理厂净化。净化过的“干净的”水会排入大海或河流，或者在某些国家送入水厂再次利用。

电也是通过主电缆送到家庭的。电缆可以是在地下，或者在郊区通过电缆塔悬挂在地面以上。电线连接在建筑的电表上。电表附近有一个主开关可以切断电源。同时在电送到各个分开关之前，

在主开关和电线之间还有一个保险盒。所有的电线，保险丝盒开关组成一个“电路回路”。

Passage 3

The management of logistical（物流的）operation is about movement and storage of materials and finished products. Logistical operations start with the initial shipment of a material or component part from a supplier and are finished when a manufactured or processed product is delivered to a customer.

From the initial purchase of a material or component，the logistical process adds value by moving inventory（移动库存）when and where needed. If all goes well，a material gains value at each step of its transformation into finished inventory. In other words，an individual part has greater value after it is put into a machine. Likewise，the machine has greater value once it is delivered to a buyer.

To support manufacturing，work-in-process inventory must be moved to support final assembly. The cost of each component and its movement becomes part of the value-added process. The final or meaningful value that is added occurs only with final ownership transfer of products to customers when and where specified.

For a large manufacturer，logistical operations may consist of thousands of movements，which finally develop into the delivery of products to an industrial user，retailer，wholesaler，dealer，or other customer. For a large retailer，logistical operations may start with gaining products for resale and may finish with consumer pickup or delivery. For a hospital，logistics starts with purchasing and ends with full support of patient surgery and recovery. The significant point is that regardless of the size and type of enterprise，logistics is essential and requires continuous management attention. For better understanding it is useful to divide logistical operations into three areas：physical distribution，manufacturing support and procurement（筹措、采购）.

（2005）

41. Logistical operations are concerned with ________.

A. transfer of materials and finished products

B. manufacturing of materials and finished products

C. inventory of materials and finished products

D. both A and C

42. The logistical process increases value by ________.

A. manufacturing　　B. inventory flow

C. finished products　　D. operational management

43. In the last paragraph，the writer gives the examples of logistical operations in order to show that ________.

A. a large retailer purchases products for resale

B. a consumer has to pick up or deliver products himself

C. logistics is important to an enterprise and needs continuous management

D. a large manufacturer has to deliver products to its customer

44. The paragraph following the last one in the passage will probably discuss ________.

A. inventory　　B. manufacturing support

C. physical distribution　　D. procurement

45. The main idea of the passage is about ________.

A. moving inventory

B. logistical operations

C. transformation of materials and finished products

D. storage of materials and finished products

【答案与解析】

41.【答案】D

【解析】细节题（也含有词语理解的内容）。题干的大意：物流操作关注的是……答案就在文章的首句，只不过选项中的词语有所变化：把 movement 变成了 transfer（调动）；把 storage 变成了 inventory（存货清单）。但以上两组词均为同义词，并且在第二段中都可以找到，不存在理解上的问题。

42.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：物流过程提高其价值是通过……答案可在第二段的首句中找到：“the logistical process adds value by moving inventory…”。选项 B “inventory flow” 和 moving inventory 是相同意思。

43.【答案】C

【解析】推理题。题干的大意：在最后一段，作者给出了物流操作的一些例子，其目的是显示……。考生通过阅读最后一段，可以找出主题句：“…logistics is essential and requires continuous management attention.”进而推理判断出选项 C 为最佳答案。

44.【答案】C

【解析】推理题。题干的大意：文章最后一段作者给出了物流操作的一些例子，其目的是表明物流不仅对公司很重要，而且需要不断的管理，为了更好的理解它，我们把物流操作分为三个领域：physical disthpution（物资调运），manufacturing support（生产支持）and procurement（筹措，采购）。如果继续写下一段应具体讨论 C 项 physical distribution（物资调运）。

45.【答案】B

【解析】主旨题。题干的大意：本文的主要意思是……整篇文章的关键词（key words）就是“logistical operations（物流操作）”，这是本篇文章的中心。

【译文】

物流操作管理就是有关对物质和制成品的流动和储存。物流操作首先以供应商对原材料或零部

件的装船开始，然后以加工制成品转交到客户而结束。

从最初的原材料或零部件的购买，物流过程提高其价值是通过在需要的时候对库存进行移动。若一切顺利，原材料将在其转化成最终存货的每一个过程都提高其价值。换句话说，个别零件在被放进机器以后价值将有很大的提高。同样机器再被运到客户手中后价值也有很大提高。

为了支持制造业，整个工作进程中的移动库存一定会为最后的组装而移动。每个部件的花费和转运都成为提高价值过程的一部分。最终且合理的增值发生在货物最终所有权转移到指定的消费者。

对一个大的制造商来说，物流操作可能包含数千次的运转。这种移动最终发展成将货物交付给工业品使用者、零售商人、批发商、经销商、或其他消费者。对一个大的零售商来说，物流操作就是从人为转售而汇集商品开始到消费者收到货品或交货结束。对医院来说，物流从购买医疗物品开始，以病人的恢复结束。重要的是不管企业大小和类型，物流学是一门基本的学科它需要不断的管理、完善。为了更好地理解它，我们把物流操作分为三个领域：物资分配、生产支持及采购。

Passage 4

Newspapers，along with reporting the news，instruct，entertain，and give opinions. An important way for reading a large，big-city newspaper is knowing how to take it apart. Can you find these separate sections：world news，national and local news，sports，business，entertainment，opinions，classified ads? Does your paper have other sections?

News stories give facts，not the author's opinions. Editorials do the opposite：you can expect an editorial to take sides. Some newspaper editorials have a by-line with the author's name，but many newspapers have unsigned editorial. These reflect the opinions of the publisher or editor.

You can be a better reader if you know what to expect in a newspaper. For example，you can expect headlines to omit unnecessary words. You can except to find the most important facts in the lead paragraph (the first paragraph) of a news story. You can expect important news items to be on the front page. You can expect less important items to be on the inside pages.

Most of all，the more you know about the current news，the more you will understand what is in the newspaper；important stories are generally presented one day and followed up on following days. So，an important way for reading newspapers is reading one frequently.

(2005)

46. A good way to read a large newspaper is ________.

A. to do some paper cutting　　B. to read it from cover to cover

C. to find separate sections　　D. to predict what is inside the newspaper

47. Which of the following statements about news stories is TRUE?

A. News stories reflect the opinions of the publisher and editor.

B. News stories contain both facts and opinions.

C. News stories tell the facts without any comments.

D. News stories express the writers' opinions.

48. If you want to read some less important news without any details, you can read ________.

A. the lead paragraphs of the news on the front pages

B. the headlines on the inside pages

C. news items on the front pages

D. the headlines of some current news on the front pages

49. The best way for reading newspapers is to ________.

A. read extensively and thoroughly　　B. read often and with certain skills

C. read occasionally and carefully　　D. read them in detail everyday

50. The main idea of the passage is ________.

A. how to find important news stories　　B. how to read newspapers

C. how to tell apart different news sections　　D. how to read stories and editorials

【答案与解析】

46.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：阅读大报的好方法是……。从文章第一段可以找出答案："…how to take it apart. Can you find these separate sections…"。很明显能找到分类部分（to find separate sections）才是读大报的好方法。

47.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：下列哪一种对新闻报道的陈述是正确的？从第二段的首句即可找到答案："News stories give facts，not the author's opinions."很显然选项C为正确答案。

48.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：如果你想看一些不太重要的消息，也不要太多的情节，你可以读……。从第三段中，尤其是第三段的最后一句（You can expect less important items to be on the inside pages.）可找到选项B是正确答案。

49.【答案】B

【解析】推理题。题干的大意：阅读大报的最好方法是……。从文章最后一段，特别是最后一句，可以得出结论：阅读报纸的最好方法是常常并且有些技巧（read often and with certain skills）。

50.【答案】B

【解析】主旨题。纵观全文，作者论述的都是对报纸的阅读，选项A、C、D均是事实和细节，只有选项B才是本文的主旨大意。

【译文】

报纸可以报道新闻、通知、娱乐、和发表评论。读大型的大城市报纸一个重要的方法就是学会区分他们。你能分清国际新闻、国内新闻、当地新闻、以及体育、商业、娱乐、评论和广告吗？你的报纸还有其他部分吗？

新闻只报道事实，不含作者的个人观点。而社论却正好相反，你可以预料到偏激的社论出现，一些报纸的评论者的名字和社论者的名字一起出现，有的却是不记名的。这种反映了发行商和编辑的观点。

如果你知道你从报纸上想要什么，那你将是个好的读者。例如你有望通过大字标题而省略多余的措辞。你有望在文章的第一段就能了解事件的重要事实。你可能见到重要的新闻能放在头版。如果你想看一些不太重要的消息，你可以读内页的栏目。

最重要的是，你对时事了解得越多，你就会越清楚的知道报纸中有什么，一些重要的新闻常常今天报道过之后，随后几天里还会有后续报道的。所以一个重要的方法是你要常读报。

Passage 5

Once somebody thought that air pollution affected only the area immediately around large cities with factories and heavy automobile traffic. Today，we know that although these are the areas with the worst air pollution，the problem is literally worldwide. On several occasions over the past decade，a heavy cloud of air pollution has covered the entire eastern half of the United States and led to health warnings even in rural areas away from any major concentration of manufacturing and automobile traffic. In fact，the very climate of the entire earth may be affected by air pollution. Some scientists feel that the increasing concentration of carbon dioxide in the air resulting from the burning of fossil fuels (coal and oil) is creating a greenhouse effect—holding in heat reflected from the earth and raising the world's average temperature. If this view is correct and the world's temperature is raised only a few degrees，much of the polar ice cap will melt and cities such as New York，Boston，Miami，and New Orleans will be under water.

Another view，less widely held，is that increasing particular matter in the atmosphere is blocking sunlight and lowering the earth's temperature—a result that would be equally disastrous. A drop of just a few degrees could create something close to a new ice age，and would make agriculture difficult or impossible in many of our top farming areas. At present we do not know for sure that either of these conditions will happen (though one recent government report prepared by experts in the field concluded that the greenhouse effect is very likely) . Perhaps，if we are very lucky，the two tendencies will offset each other and the world's temperature will stay about the same as it is now.

(2005)

51. This passage is mainly concerned with ________.

A. the greenhouse effect
B. the potential effect of air pollution
C. the burning of fossil fuels
D. the probability of a new ice age

52. As described at the beginning of the passage，people used to think that air pollution ________.

A. had damaging effects on health
B. existed merely in urban and industrial areas

C. affected the entire eastern half of the United States

D. caused widespread damage in the countryside

53. As far as the greenhouse effect is concerned, the author ________.

A. thinks that it will destroy the world soon
B. rejects it as it is ungrounded
C. is uncertain of its occurrence
D. shares the same view with the scientists

54. The word “offset” in the 2nd paragraph could properly replaced by ________.

A. set up
B. make up for
C. slip up
D. catch up with

55. It can be inferred from the passage that ________.

A. raising the world’s temperature only a few degrees would not do much harm to life on the earth

B. almost no temperature variations have occurred over the past decade

C. lowering the world’s temperature merely a few degrees would lead many major farming areas to disaster

D. the world temperature will remain constant in the years to come

【答案与解析】

51. 【答案】B

【解析】主旨题。题干的大意：本篇文章主要关注的是……本文的关键词是“air pollution”（大气污染），本文围绕“air pollution”展开讨论，关注“大气污染”的潜在影响（the potential effect of air pollution）。

52. 【答案】B

【解析】细节题（也含有词语的理解）。题干的大意：正像本文开头所描述的，人们过去常常认为大气污染……本题的答案就在本文的首句中，选项B中的“urban and industrial areas”和首句“large cities and factories”意思相同。

53. 【答案】C

【解析】推理题。题干的大意：就温室效应（地球大气层逐渐变暖）而论，作者……通过第一段后半部分的叙述，尤其是最后一句的假设句，可以判断选项C为正确答案。

54. 【答案】B

【解析】词义题。题干的大意：第二段中的“offset”这个词可以用……替代。从“… the word’s temperature will stay about the same…”可以判断选项B为正确答案。

55. 【答案】C

【解析】推理题。题干的大意：从本文中可以推断。选项A和B不符合文中的表达，选项D只是作者的一种假设。通过第二段的前两句可以推断选项C符合文中的表达，为正确答案。

【译文】

曾经有人认为大气污染仅影响到那些工厂众多，交通拥挤的大城市的周边地区。今天，我们知道虽然这些地方空气污染最严重，但大气污染问题已经波及全世界。过去的十年已经发生了好几次

这样的事件：空气污染的浓重的阴云覆盖了整个美国的东部，甚至给远离制造业聚集地和汽车拥挤地的农村也敲响了健康警钟。事实上地球上这种特定的气候可能会受大气污染的影响。有专家认为由于化石燃料（煤和石油）的燃烧导致了大气中二氧化碳浓度的增加，从而使地球热量被反射形成温室效应，并使地球的平均温度升高。如果这种观点是正确的，那么全球气温仅升高几度，许多极地冰帽将融化，像纽约、波士顿、迈阿密、新奥尔良等城市将被淹没在海水中。

还有少数一部分人持这样的观点，大气中增加的二氧化碳可以挡住太阳光的照射，从而降低地表温度，然而这样做同样会引发灾难性的后果。仅仅降低几度就可能引起一个新的冰期到来，也会使我们许多肥沃的农作物生长困难或无法生长。我们并不能确定这二者中会是哪一个发生，（虽然这个领域的专家们在最近的一份政府工作报告中指出温室效应可能发生）如果我们幸运的话或许这两种趋势将会互相作用，从而使全球气候保持现状。

Passage 6

Mountain climbers around the world dream about going up Mountain Everest（珠穆朗玛峰）. It is the highest mountain in the world. But many people who have climbed the mountain have left waste material that is harming the environment.

A team of Americans is planning the largest clean-up effort ever on Mountain Everest. They will make the risky trip up the mountain next month.

The team of eight Americans will be guided by more than twenty Sherpas of Nepal（尼泊尔夏尔巴人）. Their goal is to remove all the trash they see. They will spend two months cleaning up the mountain by gathering oxygen bottles，fuel containers，batteries，drink cans，human waste and other kinds of trash. They are expected to remove at least three tons of trash in large bags.

Team leader Robert Hoffman is making his fourth trip up the mountain. He says he hopes to bring Everest to the condition it was in before the first successful climb fifty years ago. He says he hopes the effort will influence other people to clean up the environment closer home.

Human waste on Everest is a major concern. So the clean-up team will take along newly development equipment to collect and treat human waste. Over the years，the waste articles have polluted the mountain. In the warm season when the ice melts，the polluted water flows to Nepali villages below. The problem has gotten worse in recent years because climbing Everest has become more popular.

（2005）

56. When those Americans are planning the trip up Mountain Everest，they are concerned about ________.

A. the success in climbing up the mountain　B. the environment pollution of the mountain

C. the equipment for their trip to the mountain　D. the risks facing the mountain climbers

57. From the passage we will learn that the clean-up effort ________.

A. is the largest one supported by Sharps Nepal　B. is opposed by the local people

C. is encouraged by the American government　D. is the greatest one ever made in the world

58. Team leader Mr. Hoffman hopes to turn Mountain Everest into ________.

A. a place with no pollution at all
B. its former state a few years ago
C. its original condition half a century ago
D. the cleanest mountain in the world

59. On the trip up the mountain，the American team plans ________.

A. to tell climbers not to leave waste materials
B. to make Everest even cleaner than it was
C. to take away all the trash they could find there
D. to collect and treat human waste before the ice melted

60. The best title for the passage is probably ________.

A. Pollution on Mountain Everest
B. A Risky Trip up Mount Everest
C. Mount Everest-Clean-up Effort
D. Robert Hoffman and His Clean-up Team

【答案与解析】

56.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：当这些美国人计划攀登珠穆朗玛峰时，他们关心的是……从文中第三段中“Their goal is to remove all the trash they see”可以找到正确答案（选项 B）。

57.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：通过本文我们将知道这一清扫珠穆朗玛峰的努力……从文中第二段首句“A team of Americans……”和第三段的首句“the team of eight Americans will be guided by more than twenty Sherpas of Nepal.”可以找到正确答案（选项 A）。

58.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：队长霍夫曼先生希望把珠穆朗玛峰变为……从第四段的第二句“…he hopes to bring Everest to the condition it was in before the first successful climb fifty years ago.”可以找到正确答案（选项 C）。

59.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：在攀登珠穆朗玛峰的行程中，美国登山队计划……从第三段中可以找到正确答案（选项 C）。

60.【答案】C

【解析】主旨题。题干的大意：本文最合适的标题应是……选择的标题必须突出主题大意，选项中唯有：Mount Everest-Clean-up Effort（珠峰清扫的行动）最合适。

【译文】

全球的登山者都梦想着能够登上珠穆朗玛峰，这是世界上最高的山，但许多已经登上过这座山的人丢下的垃圾污染了这里的环境。

一支美国登山队正筹划最大规模的一次清理珠穆朗玛峰垃圾的计划。他们将在下月冒险登山。

这个队的八名美国人将由二十多名尼泊尔夏尔巴人做向导。他们的目标是清除他们所看到的所有垃圾，他们将花费两个月的时间清理山上的氧气瓶、燃料储蓄罐、电池、饮料罐、人类垃圾及一

些其他垃圾。他们有望用大袋子清除至少三吨垃圾。

队长罗伯特·哈夫曼正在第四次登山，他说希望能使珠峰恢复到他五十年前登到山顶的模样。他还说他希望他们的努力能够影响其他人把环境打扫干净的像家一样。

珠峰上的人类垃圾是个重大的隐患，因此清洁队将携带最新的高技术设备来收集和处理他们，过去的几年，垃圾已经污染了环境，当暖季到来时，冰雪融化，被污染的水将流到尼泊尔下面的村庄，因为登峰的流行，最近几年这个问题已经变得更加严峻。

Passage 7

Who takes care of the elderly in the United States today? The fact is that family members provide over 80% of the care that elderly people need. In most cases the elderly live in their own homes. A very small percentage of America's elderly live in nursing homes.

Samuel Preston, a sociologist at the University of Pennsylvania, studied how the American family is changing. He reported that by the time the average American couple reaches about 40 years of age, their parents are usually still alive. The statistics show the change in lifestyles and responsibilities of aging (老龄化) Americans. The average middle-aged couple can look forward to caring for elderly parents sometime after their own children have grown up. Moreover, because people today live longer after an illness than people did years ago, family members must provide long-term care. These facts also mean that after caregivers provide for their elderly parents, who will eventually die, they will be old and may require care too. When they do, their spouses (配偶) will probably take care of them because they have had fewer children than their parents did.

Because Americans are living longer than ever, more social workers have begun to study ways of caregiving to improve the care of the elderly. They have found that all caregivers share a common characteristic: They believe that they are the best people for the job. The social workers have also discovered three basic reasons why the caregivers take on the responsibility of caring for an elderly, dependent relative. Many caregivers believe they had an obligation (职责) to help their relatives. Some think that helping others makes them feel more useful. Others hope that by helping someone now, they will deserve care when they become old and dependent.

(2006)

51. Samuel Preston's study shows that ________.

A. lifestyles and responsibilities of the elderly are not changing

B. most American couples over 40 have no living parents

C. middle-aged Americans have to take care of their children and parents at the same time

D. elderly people may need care for a long time because they live longer after an illness

52. Who will most probably take care of the middle-aged Americans when they need care themselves?

A. They themselves.　　B. Their close friends.

C. Their children. D. Their husbands or wives.

53. All caregivers believe that they can ________.

A. care for their elderly parents better than any other people

B. keep closer to their old parents by this means

C. do much better if they have a job as social workers

D. improve the care of the elderly with the help of the social workers

54. Which of the following is NOT a reason why people look after their relatives?

A. They feel they are of use to other people.

B. They want to set an example to their children.

C. They think it is their duty to help their relatives.

D. They hope they deserve care when they need it.

55. What is the main idea of the passage?

A. Most old people live longer today after an illness than people did years ago.

B. Many old people are put into nursing homes by their families，who do not visit them regularly.

C. Most elderly people are taken care of by their families，who assume the responsibility for different reasons.

D. Most elderly people are satisfied with the better ways of care giving that social workers have come up with.

【答案与解析】

51.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：Samuel Preston 的研究表明了……由二段第五句可知：家人必须提供更长时间的照料是因为与以前相比，老年人大病后的生存能力提高。符合词义的只有 D。

52.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：美国现代中年人将来会由谁来照料？二段末句意为“当他们（Middle aged American）需要帮助时，他们的配偶将再照料他们”由此可以确认答案为 D。

53.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。由 All caregivers 可定位到三段二句冒号后的内容：“They believe that they are the best people for the job.”意思是“他们认为他们是该工作的最佳选择”。故答案为 A。

54.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。由题干中的 reason 可定位置到第三段第三句话，文中 reason 与选项比较后可知 B 选项未被提及。

55.【答案】C

【解析】主旨题。本文描述了美国老年人的基本情况。文章开头处“The fact is that family members prouide over 80% of the care that elderly people need.”可知晓“实际上超过 80%的老人还是由自己的家庭成员来照看”。A、B、D 所述内容与文章明显不符，故选 C。

【译文】

是谁在照顾今日的美国老人？实际上超过80％的老人还是由自己的家庭成员来照看。也就是说大多数的老人还是生活在自己家里。只有很少一部分的老人居住在私人疗养院。

Samuel Preston，是一位宾夕法尼亚州大学的社会学家，致力于研究美国家庭的转变。他的研究报告证实，年龄平均在40岁左右的美国人，他们的父母依旧健在。数据显示老龄化的美国人在生活方式和义务上的变化。中年夫妇渴望在他们自己的孩子成人后再来照顾他们的父母。此外，因为今天的人在生病之后，比先前的人活得寿命要长，所以这就需要家庭成员必须提供长期护理。这种事实也就意味着护理他们年迈的父母，直到他们去世，总有一天他们也会变老也会需要帮助。当那一天到来的时候，可能他们的配偶会来照顾他们，因为他们的孩子远没有父母的多。

因为当代的美国人比以前活得更久，越来越多的社会工作者开始学习如何改进护理方法。他们认为所有的护理者都有一个共同的特征：他们都认为自己是最好的护理员。社会工作者同时也发现护理工作者为什么选择该工作的三个基本原因。许多护理人员认为照顾自己的亲属是自己应尽的责任。另外一些人还认为帮助别人让他们感觉自己很有用。还有人说，现在帮助别人，等自己老了他们也可以得到同样的帮助。

Passage 8

I once knew a young man，nineteen years of age，who lived with absolute outward（外表的）confidence and self-possession for a number of years before I discovered that he could not read or write. His various methods of trick，which were also skills of self-protection，were so skillful and so desperate（绝望）that neither I nor any of his other adult friends were aware of his entire helplessness in face of written words until we went to dinner one night at a local restaurant—and suddenly discovered that he could not read.

Even here，it was not the first time we went out to eat，but something like the second or third，that Peter’s desperation shocked me. The first time，he was clever enough to cover the truth. He studied the menu for a moment，then looked up to the waitress and asked her if he could have “just a coke and a hamburger” . He told me later that he had done the same thing many times before and that he had learned to act as if he were examining the menu：“Then I ask for a coke and a hamburger … Sometimes they give me a hamburger on a plate with salad and potatoes… Then I ask them for a roll and make my own hamburger. ”

As we began to go out to eat more frequently，Peter would ask to go to Howard Johnson’s. I soon discovered the reason for his choice：The photographs，attached in cellophane（玻璃纸）containers to each of the standard items on the menu，could help him not to struggle with the shape of words at all. Howard Johnson’s，whether intentionally or not，had provided the perfect escape for the endangered pride of an adult who was illiterate（文盲）.

（2006）

56. When he went to a restaurant，Peter would ________.

A. pretend that he could not read or write B. pretend to be studying the menu

C. be desperate for help from other people D. protect himself by playing a musical instrument

57. The young man was not found to be illiterate until ________.

A. he dined out with his adult friends at Howard Johnson's

B. he could no longer come up with various ways of deception

C. he had dinner with his friends at a certain local restaurant for the second or third time

D. he was not careful enough to be aware of his entire helplessness in face of written words

58. What did the young man usually have at a restaurant?

A. Standard items on the menu. B. Foods that other people ordered.

C. A hamburger made by himself. D. A coke and a hamburger.

59. The word "self-possession" (Para. 1) probably means ________.

A. self-confidence B. self-consciousness C. self-discipline D. self-devotion

60. Why did the young man like to go to Howard Johnson's?

A. Howard Johnson's provided a perfect escape when anything dangerous should happen.

B. The menu at Howard Johnson's gave a clear introduction of the food it served.

C. The photographs attached to the main items on the menu helped conceal his illiteracy.

D. He would feel at ease because eaters at Howard Johnson's were all adult non-readers.

【答案与解析】

56. **【答案】**B

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：当去餐馆时，Peter 可能……专有名词可定位置到第二段，再由第二段四句中的“he had learned to act as if he were examining the menu”意为“他学会假装去看菜单”，与 B 选项一致，其中 act as if 与 pretend 是同意。

57. **【答案】**C

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：这个年轻人直到……才被人发现是文盲，由第一段末句和第二段首句可知，作者是在和年轻人一起出去吃饭时发现他是文盲的。但不是第一次，而是第二次或第三次才发现的，故选 C。

58. **【答案】**D

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：“这个年轻人在餐馆里都常吃些什么?”由二段三句引导部分“just a coke and a hamburger”可直接找到答案。

59. **【答案】**A

【解析】词义题。本题重点考查“and”，and 前后为并列关系，意义应一致，所以“self-possession”应与 confidence 相近，故选 A。

60. **【答案】**C

【解析】细节题。题干的大意：为什么年轻人喜欢去 howard johnson's 由人名直接定位末段。其中第二句大意为：我很快就发现了他这一选择的原因，照片能让他不为文字而苦恼。符合词

义的为C。

【译文】

我曾经结识过一个十九岁的年轻人，在我发现他不会读和写以前，他非常自信的并且冷静地生活了很多年。他那些种种自我保护的掩饰，看起来也是非常的熟练。更令人绝望的是不论是我还是他其他的朋友都没意识到他在拼写上是那么的无助。直到有一天夜晚我们去当地的餐厅就餐，才突然发现他是个文盲。

但是，这已经不是我们第一次出去吃饭了，好像是第二次第三次的样子。Peter的绝望让我震惊。第一次他很聪明的隐瞒了真相。他看了会菜单，然后抬头向服务员询问，他能不能要杯可乐和一只汉堡。他过后还告诉我他已经那样做了好多次，并且他已经学会自己看菜单。“然后我就会要了杯可乐和一只汉堡。有时候他们会用盘子给我一个带色拉和土豆的汉堡。”然后我就给他们要个面包卷，然后做自己的汉堡。

随着我们在一起频繁的吃饭，Peter常喜欢去Howards Johnson。我不久就发现他这样选择的原因。菜单上每项食物的照片都在桌边容器里。那些玻璃纸可以帮助他避免说出他们的名字。Howards Johnson，不管是有意还是无意，都为那些文盲的成年人受危害的自尊提供了完美的逃避方式。

Passage 9

After practicing as a surgeon for several years，Dr. Giroux decided to apply for membership in the American College of Surgeons（美国外科医生学会），a highly selective and distinguished（著名的）professional organization.

As part of the application procedure（手续），Dr. Giroux was asked to prepare a list of all the operations performed in the previous seven years. Slowly，as she worked on the long list，she began to feel uncertain. She began to question some of her decisions. Had she used the best technique in that case? Maybe，in this case，she should have given one more test before operating? On the other hand，maybe she should have… Would the doctors on the selection committee understand that，as the only trained surgeon in the area，she usually could not get advice from others and therefore，had to rely completely on her own judgment? For the first time，Dr. Giroux felt lonely and isolated.

The longer Dr. Giroux worked on the application forms，the more depressed she became. As hope faded，she wondered if a “country doctor” had a realistic chance of being accepted by the American College of Surgeons.

（2006）

61. Dr. Giroux was working in ________.

A. a large city
B. the American College of Surgeons
C. an area far from any big city
D. a selective organization

62. It was most probable that Dr. Giroux was ________.

A. a member in that organization

B. a well-trained surgeon

C. a graduate from American College of Surgeons

D. a distinguished surgeon in America

63. When she was filling the application forms，Dr. Giroux began to be ________.

A. realistic　　B. depressed　　C. puzzled　　D. decisive

64. The application forms must include ________.

A. the decision procedure　　B. the college achievements

C. the best technique　　D. a list of advice and judgments

65. When filling the forms，Dr. Giroux felt depressed because ________.

A. she didn't perform enough operations

B. some operations were unsuccessful

C. she didn't get advice from the selection committee

D. she was doubtful about her previous operations

【答案与解析】

61.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干的大意是：Dr. Cinoux 在工作的地方是……由文章第二段倒数第二行中的“as the only trained surgeon in the area”可知 Dr. Ginoux 最可能工作地比较偏远，故选择 C 选项。

62.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干的大意是：Dr. Cinoux 是……由第二段倒数第二行中的“as the only trained surgeon in the area”可知应选 B。

63.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干的大意是：当填写申请表时……Dr. Cinoux 变得越来越怎么了。由末段首句（随着申请表的填写 Dr. Cinoux 变得越来越沮丧），可知答案为 B。

64.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。从第二段第四句可以知道，正确答案为 C。其中 A、B、D 在原文中未涉及。

65.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。从第二段前两句和第三段第一句得知作者感觉到不确定，并且开始沮丧。所以正确答案选 D。

【译文】

在做了几年见习外科医生后。Dr. Cinoux 决定申请美国外科医生学会的成员，这是一个有很强选择性的很著名的专业组织。

作为申请手续的一部分，Dr. Cinoux 被要求准备前些年所做手术的记录清单。慢慢的，当她列

出那些长单子的时候开始感觉不太确定。她开始质疑自己的一些决定。她有没有在曾经的手术中使用最好的技术？或许，在这次，他应该在手术前再测试一次。另一方面，可能她本应该……选拔委员会的医生是否明白，作为那个地区唯一被训练的外科医生，她基本上得不到其他人的建议，因此她只能完全依靠自己的判断？这是 Dr. Cinoux 第一次感到孤立无援。

Dr. Cinoux 越写那些申请项目，就越感到郁闷。随着希望的逐渐消失，她想要知道，一个“乡村医生”能否成为美国外科医生学会的成员。

Passage 10

Advertising follows us everywhere. Whenever we turn on the television，listen to the radio or open a newspaper or magazine，we are bombarded with advertisements. They invite us to try a new type of orange juice，wear X-brand jeans or watch the latest film. They beg us to notice the difference and discover the advantages. They exist to make us want what they are selling.

Strangely，the more we are exposed to advertising，the less we notice it. We get so used to seeing advertisements everywhere that they become largely invisible，as if they were another part of our everyday lives. But does that mean that we are no longer affected by them?

One advertising expert believes that the special power of advertising lies in the fact that we do not pay much attention to it. Dr. Krugman，who was head of research for a major advertising company for many years，says that the less we notice ads，the more we are affected by them. D. Krugman believe that when we stop noticing advertisements，we lower our defenses，allowing the messages of the advertisements to be taken in and stored，ready to be triggered into action at the right moment. He says that the effects of advertising on the individual are small，but over a period of time they have a powerful effect on the masses.

When asked about the power of advertising in research surveys，most people agree that it works，but not on them. Almost everyone believes that they have complete control over how thousands of ads they see every day affect them.

(2007)

51. Ads exist to make people want ________.

A. a new type of orange juice　B. X-brand jeans

C. to watch the latest film　D. what they advertise

52. The more we see ads，the less we ________.

A. pay attention to them　B. feel tired of them

C. neglect them　D. put up with them

53. Although we may think we are not affected by them，Dr. Krugman believes that advertisements affect ________.

A. all of us　B. most of us　C. some of us　D. a few individuals

54. Dr. Krugman believes that when we stop noticing ads，we begin to ________.

A. like them B. be on guard against them

C. accept them D. dislike them

55. When asked about the power of ads, most people agree that ads are ineffective on ________.

A. individuals B. masses C. others D. them

【答案与解析】

51.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。由第一段最后一句可知，广告的存在就是促使我们购买他们正在销售的产品。而 A、B 和 C 选项只是众多广告中的一种产品。所以选 D。

52.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。由第二段第一句可知，我们越多的接触广告，却越来越少的去注意它。所以选 A。

53.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。由第三段最后一句可知，克拉格曼博士认为：虽然广告对个人的影响是微小的，但一段时间后，便会对大众有一股强有力的影响，“大众”即“大多数人”，故选 B。

54.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。由第三段第三句可知，克拉格曼博士认为：当我们不在去注意广告时，就会降低防范。允许广告的信息侵入并贮存在大脑里，以至于在某一特定的时刻转换为购买。所以选 C。

55.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。由最后一段第一句可知，虽然，许多人都认为广告的确起作用了，但他们自己却没有受其影响。所以选 D。

【译文】

广告无处不在，当我们看电视，听广播或翻阅报纸、杂志时，我们都会看到广告。他们吸引我们去品尝一种新口味的橙汁，去试穿某品牌的牛仔裤，或去看一部最新的影片。他们希望我们去注意他们的与众不同和发现他们的优点。广告的存在就是促使我们购买他们正在销售的产品。

奇怪的是，当我们越来越多的接触广告，我们却越来越少的去注意它。我们如此习惯地看到随意可见的广告以至于我们很大程度都忽略了它的存在，好像他们是我们日常生活另外的部分。但这意味着我们不再受他们的影响了吗?

一位广告专家认为：广告的特殊力量就是使我们不再注意它。克拉格曼博士——一个大型广告公司进行多年研究的负责人。他说：越少去注意广告，我们就越会受其影响。克拉伯曼博士认为：当我们不在去注意广告时，我们就降低了对他们的防范，允许广告信息侵入并贮存在我们脑中，以至于在某一特定时刻转换为购买。他说：广告的影响对个人来说是微小的，但一段时间后，便会对大众产生有力的影响。

当在调查中被问及广告的影响力时，大部分人都同意广告的确起作用了，但自己却没受其影响。几乎所有人都认为他们对每天接触到的成千上万的广告有完全的控制力。

Passage 11

Like most people，I was brought up to look upon life as a process of getting. It was not until in my late thirties that I made this important discovery giving away makes life so much more exciting. You need not worry if you lack money. This is how I experimented with giving away. If an idea for improving the window display of a neighborhood store flashes to me，I step in and make the suggestion to the storekeeper. One discovery I made about giving away is that it is almost impossible to give away anything in this world without getting something back，though the return often comes in an unexpected form. One Sunday morning the local post office delivered an important special delivery letter to my home，though it was addressed to me at my office. I wrote the postmaster a note of appreciation. More than a year later I needed a post office box for a new business I was starting. I was told at the window that there were no boxes left，and that my name would have to go on a long waiting list. As I was about to leave，the postmaster appeared in the doorway. He had overheard our conversation. “Wasn’t it you that wrote us that letter a year ago about delivering a special delivery to your home?” I said yes. “ Well，you certainly are going to have a box in this post office if we have to make one for you. You don’t know what a letter like that means to us. We usually get nothing but complaints. ”

（2007）

56. From the passage，we understand that ________.

A. the author did not understand the importance of giving until he was in late thirties

B. the author was like most people who were mostly receivers rather than givers

C. the author received the same education as most people during his childhood

D. the author liked most people as they looked upon life as a process of getting

57. According to the author ________.

A. giving means you will lack money

B. the excitement of giving can bring you money

C. you don’t have to be rich in order to give

D. when you give away money，you will be rich

58. The author wrote a note of appreciation to the post office because ________.

A. he knew what such a note would mean to the post office

B. he had discovered giving-away made life all the more exciting

C. he believed he would get something back by doing so

D. the postman delivered an important letter in time

59. When the author needed a post office box，________.

A. he had to put his name on a waiting list

B. he wrote the postmaster a note of appreciation

C. many people had applied for post-office boxes before him

D. he asked the postmaster to make one for him

60. In reply to the postmaster's question, the author said ________.

A. it was the special delivery　　B. it was the post-office box

C. it was the note of appreciation he wrote　　D. it was he who wrote him a letter a year ago

【答案与解析】

56.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。由文章前两句话可知，作者直到三十多岁时，才知道给予会使生活变得更加有趣。所以，选A项。

57.【答案】C

【解析】推理题。由作者自己的经历可知，帮助店主出主意，这种给予不是从物质上去帮助别人，所以选C。

58.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。由文中第七句可知，尽管信封上写的是办公室的地址，但邮局把这封重要的邮件送到了作者家。可知，作者因邮局及时送递了一封重要的邮件而写信感谢。所以选D。

59.【答案】C

【解析】推理题。由文中作者被告知没有邮箱了，需要等很长时间可知，在作者之前已经有很多人申请邮箱了。所以选C。

60.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。文中邮政局长问：你是不是一年前写了一封感谢信。作者回答：是。所以，选D。

【译文】

像大多数人一样，我从小就把生活看作是一个索取的过程。直到三十多岁时，我才知道：给予经常会使生活变得更有趣。如果你没有钱，你不必担心。下面是我怎样拿给予做实验的。如果我突然想起一个改善邻家商店橱窗摆设的主意，我便会走进去把我的建议告诉老板。关于给予，我发现：在这个世界上几乎不可能存在没有回报的给予，尽管回报经常以一种意想不到的方式到来。一个周日的早晨，当地邮局送来了一封特别重要的邮件给我。虽然，信封上写的是我办公室的地址，当地邮局却将其送到了我家。之后，我给邮政局长写了一封感谢信。一年多后，由于开办新业务，我需要一个新邮箱。我在邮政服务窗口得知已经没有邮箱了，而且我还要等很长时间才能得到。当我准备走时，邮政局长在门口出现，他无意中听到了刚才的对话，他问："你是不是一年前写感谢信的人?"我回答"是"。他说："嗯，你肯定会得到一个邮箱的。你不知道你那样一封信对我们的意义有多大，我们通常只会得到抱怨。"

Passage 12

Generations of Americans have been brought up to believe that a good breakfast is one of life's essentials. Eating breakfast at the start of the day, we have all been told, is as necessary as putting gasoline in the family car before starting a trip.

But for many people the thought of food first thing in the morning is by no means a pleasure. So despite all the efforts, they still take no breakfast. Between 1977 and 1983, the latest years for which figures are available, the number of people who didn't have breakfast increased by 33 percent-from 8. 8 million to 11. 7 million-according to the Chicago-based Market Research Corporation of America.

For those who feel pain or guilt about not eating breakfast, however, there is some good news. Several studies in the last few years indicate that, for adults especially, there may be nothing wrong with omitting breakfast. "Going without breakfast does not affect performance." said A mold E. Bender, the former professor of nutrition at Queen Elizabeth College in London, "nor does giving people breakfast improve performance."

Scientific evidence linking breakfast to better health or better performance is surprisingly inadequate, and most of the recent work involves children, not adults. "The literature," says one researcher, Dr. Emesto Pollitt at the University of Texas, "is poor" .

(2002, 2007)

61. The passage is mainly concerned with ________.

A. a study of the Chicago-based Market Research Corporation

B. one of life's essentials

C. latest figures of people who don't eat breakfast

D. breakfast and human health

62. For those who do not take breakfast, the good news is that ________.

A. several studies have been done in the past few years

B. not eating breakfast does no harm to one's health

C. adults have especially made studies in this field

D. eating little in the morning may be good for health

63. In the third paragraph, "nor does giving people breakfast improve performance," means ________.

A. anyone without breakfast does improve his performance

B. not giving people breakfast improves performance

C. people having breakfast do improve their performance

D. having breakfast does not improve performance, either

64. The word "literature" in the last sentence refers to ________.

A. stories about breakfast　　B. written works on a particular subject

C. any printed materials　　D. the modern novels of American

65. What is implied but not stated by the author is that ________.

A. not eating breakfast might affect the health of children

B. breakfast does not affect performance

C. Professor Bender once taught college courses in nutrition in London

D. people who don't eat breakfast have increased

【答案与解析】

61.【答案】D

【解析】主旨题。通读全文可知，文章试图阐明早餐与身体健康的关系，有人认为早餐对健康有影响，而有的人则不以为然。所以选D。

62.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。文章第三段研究结果表明，不吃早餐对人的身体并没有危害，这对不吃早餐者来说是个好消息。所以，选B项。

63.【答案】D

【解析】词义题。这一句应与上句放在一起理解。本句的意思是：吃早餐也不会提高一个人的表现。所以，选D项。

64.【答案】A

【解析】词义题。题干的大意是：最后一句中“literature”这个词指的是……。英语中literature有很多意思，其中有选项B（关于某一课题的书面作品），还有选项C（印刷品、宣传品），选项D（美国现代小说），还有“文献”等意思。但根据上下文来看，此处只能指“人们对于早餐的看法及证据”（即选项A）。

65.【答案】A

【解析】推理题。作者在最后一段中指出，大多数对早餐与健康的研究都是针对儿童的。所以，选A项。

【译文】

世世代代的美国人从小就相信一顿丰盛的早餐是生活的必需品之一。我们都被告知把吃早餐作为一天的开始，就像出门旅游先给汽车加油一样有必要。

但是对很多人来讲，早上起来第一件事就是吃饭决不是一件愉快的事。尽管做了这么多努力，但是他们仍然不吃早饭。根据美国市场研究公司芝加哥分公司的调查，最近几年可获得的数据表明，在1977年到1983年间，美国不吃早餐人数从880万增加到1 170万，增加了33%。

但是对于那些觉得不吃早饭是痛苦或者负罪的人来说传来了好消息。过去几年的研究表明，不吃早餐并没有什么影响，特别是对于成年人。前伊丽莎白女王学院的营养学家Arnold E. Bender说：“不吃早餐并不会影响一个人的表现，吃早餐也不会提高一个人的表现。”

将早餐与更好的身体和更好的表现联系在一起的科学依据匮乏到令人吃惊。最近大多数研究工作都是关于儿童的，不是成人。Texas大学的Dr. Ernesto Poillit说：“证据十分的不足。”

Passage 13

Each day，computers help millions of people do their jobs more effectively. For example，they can help managers decide on a future course of action，and they can then help with the follow up checks on performance to see if planned goals are being achieved. By using accurate and timely facts supplied by data base management software，a manager can do a better job of identifying problems and opportunities. And managers may not need to spend as much time in controlling when a computer can respond with a triggered report if actual performance varies from what was planned. The time saved in controlling may allow managers to give more attention to employees'concerns，and this，in turn，may result in improved morale（士气）.

But employment benefits certainly aren't restricted to managers. Healthcare researchers and other scientists also use computers to conduct research into complex problem areas that couldn't otherwise be studied. Lawyers use online legal data banks to locate precedent（先前的）cases in order to serve clients better. Salespeople can receive more timely information about products in stock，can promise customers that their sales orders will be handled promptly，and can thus improve their sales performance because of the computer system. And the job duties of some office and factory workers have changed from routine，repetitive operations to more varied and appealing tasks through computer usage. For example，office workers who understand text processing，computing，and data communication usually have vital roles and are given critical office functions to perform.

(2007)

66. Which of the following examples shows the controlling function of a computer?
    A. Helping managers decide on a future course of action.
    B. Helping managers check if planned goals are reached.
    C. Helping managers save time in writing a report.
    D. Helping managers design a spreadsheet package.
67. Employees may have better morale if ________.
    A. they have more time to rest
    B. a computer is used in their work
    C. the manager spends more time with them
    D. the managers pay more attention to them
68. Which of the following is the most essential to a successful businessman?
    A. He can use computers in his work.
    B. He can handle orders promptly.
    C. He can get timely information.
    D. He can improve his sales performance.
69. The office duties used to be ________.
    A. difficult
    B. boring
    C. heavy
    D. appealing
70. Which of the following is the best suggested title?
    A. Computers and Management
    B. Computer Functions
    C. Computer and Work Performance
    D. Employment Benefits by a Computer

【答案与解析】

66.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。文中第一段第四句写道：由于计算机的使用，经理们不用再花费很多时间在控制管理上，取而代之由电脑帮助完成。因为如果实际工作表现与原定计划不同时，电脑便能迅速作出反应。由此可知，电脑的控制功能是指帮助经理来检验原定工作目标是否达到。所以，选 B。

67.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。由第一段最后一句可知，处理报告节省下的时间能够使经理们更多去关心员工的忧虑，这样会更鼓舞士气。所以，选 D。

68.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。由第二段第四句可知，由于电脑的使用，生意人能及时获得货存信息，告诉顾客他们的预定会很快到货，从而增加销售量。由此可知，获得及时的货存信息对商人来说至关重要。所以，选 C 项。

69.【答案】B

【解析】推理题。由第二段第五句“routine”“repetitive operation”可知，使用电脑之前的办公人员和工人的工作非常“boring”所以，选 B 项。

70.【答案】D

【解析】主旨题。整篇文章都在说由于电脑的使用，给不同职业的人都带来了便利。可知，文章最好的标题是：使用电脑所带来的好处。所以，选 D 项。

【译文】

每天，电脑帮助数百万人更有效的做工作。例如，他们能够帮助经理们制定未来的工作行程，之后帮助经理们检验原定目标是否能实现。另外，数据库管理软件能够提供准确及时的信息，这样，经理们就能更好地发现问题和把握良机。并且，他们不再需要花费很多时间在控制管理上，取而代之由电脑帮助完成。因为如果实际工作表现与原定计划不同时，电脑便能迅速作出反应。控制管理节省下来的时间能够使他们更多去关心员工的忧虑，这样会更加鼓舞士气。

然而，使用电脑的益处并不局限于经理们。健康医疗研究者和其他一些科学家也使用电脑对之前无法研究的复杂领域问题进行研究。律师利用在线数据库的先前案例能够更好地为顾客服务。使用电脑，生意人能及时获得货存信息，告诉顾客他们的预定会很快到货，从而增加销售量。同样，由于电脑的使用，办公人员和工人的工作由机械重复变得灵活多变且有吸引力。比如，那些熟练掌握文字处理，计算和数据资料传输的员工在工作中起到关键作用并被给予重要的工作任务。

Passage 14

Procrastination（犹豫不决）is a disease of the mind. A scientific study in recent years has shown that it is a close relative of sadness and attention disorder; that procrastinators tend to be the result of low self-confidence and are likely to experience anxiety.

The research has shown, what is more, that the illness has become quite common. Susan Robert, a behavioral psychologist who has written a book called Living With Procrastination, says that about a quarter of the adult population of the United States and Canada is reported to have serious problems with procrastination. "When we say 'serious' we mean people for whom procrastination causes great discomfort and suffering. We've found that such people are more troubled by daily life than others, that possibility of anxiety is much higher among them than in the rest of the population."

In a society driven by achievement, it is little wonder that not being able to work at full steam will bring people sadness. Surely, in the land of opportunity, this anxiety has produced an industry of experts offering solutions. Many books and specialist solutions have appeared. In exchange for ＄19.95, Dr. Jerome Murray will send out an audio-cassette called "Protect your future from the thief of procrastination." Dr. Murray promises that if you follow his step-by-step rules you will be empowered to "turn self-defeat into self-realization". "Since the start of the 1990s, procrastination has been taken more and more seriously," said Dr. Roberts, who has been treating patients troubled by the condition for more than 20 years. "It is now recognized as a true mental health problem and is being seen more as a psychological problem and less as a moral issue."

(2008)

41. What is the main topic of this passage?

A. Don't hesitate to give up smoking.
B. Don't regard depression as not important.
C. Delay can be a sign of illness.
D. Don't work too hard to stay healthy.

42. Which statement is NOT true according to the passage?

A. Procrastination is a disease of the mind.
B. Procrastination is likely to cause a great discomfort and suffering.
C. Procrastination is not considered as a psychological problem but a moral issue.
D. Dr. Jerome Murray provides some ways to get rid of procrastination.

43. How does the author look at procrastination?

A. It is something like running.
B. It is a disease of the mind.
C. It is not a permitted act.
D. It is not full of stress.

44. These are the signs of procrastination except ________.

A. discomfort
B. suffering
C. pleasure
D. sadness

45. What's the main idea of Dr. Murray's cassette "Protect your future from the thief of procrastination"?

A. Turn defeat to self-realization.

B. Turn depression into enthusiasm.

C. Procrastination has been taken more and more seriously.

D. Turn self-defeat into self-realization.

【答案与解析】

41.【答案】C

【解析】主旨题。题干大意：这篇文章的主题思想是……此题对应文章的第一句话：Procrastination 犹豫不决、做事不果断相当于 delay（延迟），故选 C，延迟是一种疾病的标志。

42.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：由文章可知以下哪项是不正确的。由文章的最后一句话可知，Procrastination 现在被更多地认为是一种精神和心理健康疾病而不仅只是一个伦理道德问题。选项 C 与原文意思相反。

43.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：作者怎么样看待犹豫不决。对应文章第一句话，故选 B。

44.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：犹豫不决的标志有什么，除了……，第二行有 sadness，第二段第三句有 discomfort 和 suffering，故没有 pleasure。

45.【答案】D

【解析】主旨题。题干大意：Murry 博士出版的音像“保护你的未来不被犹豫之贼侵袭”的主要思想是……。该题对应第三段第 5 句“turn self-defeat into self-realization”，故选 D。

【译文】

犹豫不决是一种思维疾病，近年来一个科学的研究显示犹豫不决与痛苦和注意力不集中有很大关系，是不自信和焦虑的结果。

另外，调查显示犹豫不决已经变得非常普遍。行为心理学家 Susan Robert 在其著作 Living With Procrastination 中写道大约四分之一的美国和加拿大成年人都被报道有犹豫不决的严重问题。我们所说严重是指犹豫不决对那些人造成了不安和痛苦。我们已经发现犹豫不决的人比其他人更容易被日常生活所困，在他们中间焦虑的可能性比其他人群更高。

在这个被成功驱逐的社会中，毫无疑问不能全神贯注的工作将会使人们陷入痛苦之中。当然在这个充满机遇的社会中，这种焦虑已经产生了一种行业，就是专家专门提供解决方案，许多书籍和专家的解决方法已经出现了。Dr. Jerome Murray 以 19.95 美元的定价出版了一套名叫《保护你的未来不被犹豫之贼侵袭》的音像制品。Dr. Jerome Murray 承诺只要你按这本书一步步去做就会从自我困惑过度到自我实现。作为医治不自信病人 20 多年的医生 Dr. Roberts 说：“自从 20 世纪 90 年代之初以来，犹豫不决已经变得越来越严重。它现在被认为是一种精神健康问题，而且与其说它是个道德问题，倒不如说是个心理问题。”

Passage 15

Parrots are becoming one of the most popular pets in America and for good reasons. The parrot is an extraordinary bird that can be taught to talk，can be easily cared for，and can create a lively atmosphere anywhere. With the help of an energetic parrot owner，a parrot can develop an enormous vocabulary. In addition，a parrot can be trained to say "Pretty boy" or "Polly wants a cracker，" and it also can learn to whistle or sing. No matter what an owner decides to teach a bird，training a parrot takes much patience，but the reward is a stream of chatter. Another reason for the parrot's popularity is that this pet does not require much care. For example，even a spoiled parrot does not need a house-sitter for the purpose of daily walks and daily feeding. In fact，a parrot owner may leave his or her pet with enough food for five days and have no fear that the parrot will overeat. Still another advantage of owning a parrot is its inexpensive food，including seeds，nuts，corn，and grain along with an apple，banana，or carrot. Perhaps the most likely reason the parrot is becoming such a well-liked pet is that it is a combination of tameness and wildness. Because the parrot can live in almost any environment，it makes a fine，tame companion for many people. In addition，because it can be easily trained，it is a delightful performer. At the same time，its colorful feathers give it an air of the mystery of the parrot's native home，the jungle. Thus，the parrot，once a highly valued gift presented to kings and noble families，is now appreciated by a growing number of people.

（2008）

46. A parrot can be trained to do all the following but ________.

A. talk　　B. help its owner

C. sing　　D. create a lively atmosphere

47. Which of the following is not a reason for the easy raising of the parrot?

A. It eats very little.　　B. Its food is inexpensive.

C. It does not need a house-sitter.　　D. It does not require daily walks as dogs do.

48. The word "tameness" in the passage means ________.

A. the quality of being brave or unafraid　　B. the quality of being kind or warm-hearted

C. the quality of being uncontrolled or fierce　　D. the quality of being gentle or trained

49. The word "jungle" probably means ________.

A. boundless desert with very little plant life

B. large apartment building with pleasing surroundings

C. wild land overgrown with thick bushes and trees

D. snow-covered mountain top in very cold areas

50. The writer ________.

A. likes the parrot　　B. dislikes the parrot

C. does not like nor dislike the parrot　　D. values the parrot highly

【答案与解析】

46.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：一只鹦鹉能够被训练做以下事情，除了……对应文中第 2 句和 4 句，故选 B。

47.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。题干大意：以下哪一个不是鹦鹉容易饲养的原因？对应文章第 7 句、9 句，鹦鹉不需要人照顾，不需要人带着遛鸟，食物不贵，故选 A。

48.【答案】D

【解析】词义题。题干大意：“tameness ”在文章中的意思是……，对应文中倒数第 5 句，此处是并列关系，后面是有野性的，前面有个 combination 表示结合的意思，那么应该是不同的两个方面的结合，所以前面的意思应该是与野性相反的，因此为驯服的，答案选 D。

49.【答案】C

【解析】词义题。题干大意：jungle 这个单词可能意味着……，该题对应文章倒数第 2 句“the parrot’s native home，the jungle”此题可用排除法去做。鹦鹉不可能生活在 A：很少有植物生长的沙漠；B：有快乐氛围的公寓大楼；D：白雪覆盖着山顶的寒冷地区。故选 C。

50.【答案】A

【解析】作者态度题。根据文章作者的基调，以及部分词汇的使用，比如“delightful，popular，highly valued”，可以确定作者对于鹦鹉的态度是喜欢的，所以选 A。

【译文】

在美国，鹦鹉有充分的理由成为最流行的宠物之一，广受欢迎。鹦鹉是一种特别的鸟，可以教其说话，容易喂养，还能创造一种愉快的气氛。在一个精力充沛的主人帮助下，鹦鹉能够记住大量词汇，另外，鹦鹉能够被训练去说“漂亮男孩”或“波利想要一块饼干”，他还会学习吹口哨和唱歌。不管主人决定要教它什么，训练鹦鹉都需要花费很多耐心，但能换来的是鹦鹉的滔滔不绝。鹦鹉流行的另外一个原因是这种宠物不需要太多照顾。例如，甚至一个被宠坏的鹦鹉也不需要专人照顾其日常的遛鸟和喂食。事实上，鹦鹉的主人可能留足 5 天的食物而不用害怕鹦鹉吃多了。鹦鹉还有一个优势是它的食物很便宜，只是一些草籽、坚果和谷物掺和着苹果、香蕉或胡萝卜。或许，鹦鹉成为如此受欢迎的宠物，最可能的原因是它们有着温顺和野性两者的结合。因为鹦鹉几乎能在任何一种环境中生存，它能够成为很多人的好伙伴。另外，因为它容易被训练，是一个出色的表演家。同时，它鲜艳的羽毛赋予它的家园——丛林一种神秘感。因此，鹦鹉曾经作为珍贵的礼物送给国王或贵族，现在也得到了越来越多人的欣赏。

Passage 16

In my long life I have seen many changes in our habits and customs and conditions in general. I think that you might be interested if I told you some of them.

The world I entered at the age of eighteen when I became a medical student was a world that knew nothing of such advanced things as planes，films，radios or telephones. It was a very cheap world. Prices were stable. When I entered St. Thomas' hospital I rent a set of rooms in Vincent square for which I paid 18 shillings a week. My landlady provided me with a very good breakfast before I went to the hospital and a dinner when I came back at half past six. I only had to pay for the breakfasts and dinners twelve shillings a week. For four-pence I lunched at St. Thomas' on bread and butter and a glass of milk. I was able to live very well，pay my fees，buy my necessary instruments，clothe myself，and have a lot of fun on fourteen pounds a month. And I could always pawn my microscope for three pounds.

I spent five years at St. Thomas' hospital. I was a bad student，for my heart，as you might have guessed，was not in it. I wanted，I had always wanted to be a writer，and in the evenings，after my dinner，I wrote and read. Before long，I wrote a novel called "Liza of Lambeth"，which I sent to a publisher and was accepted. It came out during my last year at the hospital and it was successful. It was of course an accident，but I didn't know that. I felt I could afford to give up medicine and make writing my profession；so，three days after I graduated from the school of medicine，I left for Spain to write another book，I did not realize，at that time，that I was taking a great risk.

（2008）

51. The text is a talk given by the writer when ________.

A. he was 18　　B. his first novel was published

C. he graduated from the school of medicine　　D. he was at an advanced age

52. The writer graduated from the school of medicine when he was ________.

A. 18　　B. 28　　C. 23　　D. 30

53. "And I could always pawn my microscope for three pounds" means the writer could always ________.

A. exchange his microscope for three pounds

B. borrow his microscope and pays three pounds

C. have his microscope repaired with three pounds

D. lend his microscope for three pounds

54. In the sentence "I was able to live very well，pay my fees，buy my necessary instruments，clothe myself…"，the word "clothe" means ________.

A. wear clothes　　B. make clothes for　　C. wash clothes for　　D. buy clothes for

55. The writer wanted to be a writer because ________.

A. he liked to take risks　　B. he found it easier to make a living by writing

C. he was interested in writing　　D. he could not study medicine well

【答案与解析】

51.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。题干大意：这篇文章是作者什么时候写的，本题对应开头 in my long life 在我的一生中，所以写时应该是 D 选项：年龄大时。

52.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：作者从医学院毕业时有多大。文章第二段开头说作者入校时 18 岁。第三段开头时说 I spent five years at St. Thomas’s hospital 所以毕业时 23 岁。

53.【答案】A

【解析】词义题。题干大意：我可以一直典当我的显微镜换来了英镑。Pawn 是典当的意思，典当本身就是一种以物易物的过程，所以题意只有交换与之对应，B、D 选项都是借的意思，与之不匹配，C 选项是修理的意思，因此选 A。

54.【答案】D

【解析】词义题。题干大意：在这句话中 clothe 的意思是……，该句子及其前面的文字，作者都在写自己能够支付得起自己的生活费用，所以 clothe 是买衣服。

55.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：作者想成为作家是因为……。最后一段，作者先写作为医学学生，他不合格，因为他对医学没有兴趣，接着又写他想成为作家，并将其大量时间用于写作和阅读，可见作者对写作非常感兴趣。

【译文】

在我的一生中，我目睹了在大众中许多风俗习惯上的变化。如果我告诉你其中的一些，我想你可能会很感兴趣的。

当我十八岁时，我成为一名医学学生，那时我对飞机、电影、广播和电话等高级事物一无所知。那是一个廉价的社会，物价平稳。当我进入圣汤姆斯医院的时候，我在文森广场租了一套房，一周 18 先令的租金。我只需每周付 12 先令，女房东就提供美味的早餐和晚餐，我每天中午在圣汤姆斯医院花费 4 便士吃黄油面包和牛奶。我能够过得很好，支付自己的费用，买必需仪器、买衣服，只需花费 14 磅便会有很多乐趣。我还经常以 3 磅的价格当掉我的显微镜。

我在圣汤姆斯医院度过了 5 年。作为医学学生我并不合格，正如你们猜想的，我的心思就不在那儿。我常常想要成为一个作家，吃过晚饭后，我常常写作和阅读。不久前，我写了一部小说叫《兰贝斯的丽萨》，我将其送到出版社之后被接受了，在我呆在医院的最后一年这本小说出版了并大获成功。它纯粹是个偶然，但我并不这样认为。我感觉我能够舍弃医学来养活自己。所以当我从医学院毕业的三天之后，我到了西班牙写我的另外一本书。那时我没有意识到我是在冒险。

Passage 17

How often one hears children wishing they were grown up，and old people wishing they were young again！Each age has its pleasures and its pains，and the happiest person is the one who enjoys what each age gives him without wasting his time in useless regrets.

Youth is a time when there are few tasks to make life difficult. If a child has good parents，he is fed，looked after and loved whatever he may do. It is impossible that he will ever again in his life be

given so much without having to do anything in return. In addition, life is always presenting new things to the child—things that have lost their interest for older people because they are too well-known. But a child has his pains: he is not so free to do what he wishes to do; he is continually being told not to do things, or being punished for what he has done wrong.

When the young man starts to earn his own living, he can no longer expect others to pay for his food, his clothes, and his room, but has to work if he wants to live comfortably. If he spends most of his time playing about in the way that he used to as a child, he will go hungry. And if he breaks the laws of society as he used to break the laws of his parents, he may go to prison. If, however, he works hard, keeps out of trouble and has good health, he can have the great happiness of building up for himself his own position in society.

(2008)

56. People can experience happiness if they ________.

A. always thinks of the past and regret it　　B. value the present

C. are no longer young　　D. become old and have much experience

57. When people were young, they used to ________.

A. be in charge of many businesses

B. have few things to think about and take on

C. look after their younger sisters and brothers

D. face a lot of difficulties

58. The pains of children lie in the fact that ________.

A. no one helps them make right decision

B. they are often beaten by their parents

C. they can not be accepted and praised by others

D. they are not allowed to do what they like to do

59. Children are usually happy because ________.

A. old people lose interest in them

B. they are free to do wrong

C. they are familiar with everything going on around them

D. things are new to them

60. Which of the following is NOT needed for a young man to be happy?

A. Hard work　　B. Being free from trouble

C. Wealth　　D. Health

【答案与解析】

56.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：人们能够体验幸福，如果他们……对应文章第 2～3 行，说幸

福的人是那种能够享受每个年龄段带给他的东西，而不是把时间浪费在无用的懊恼上。故选 B。

57.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：当人们年轻时，他们曾经常常干……对应文章第二段第一句，说年轻就是很少有让生活感到困难的时候，所以年轻人一般很少考虑事情。故选 B。

58.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。题干大意：孩子们痛苦在于……对应文章第二段倒数第 1～2 行，他们没有自由做他们喜欢做的事。故选 D。

59.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。题干大意：孩子们经常很高兴是因为……对应第二段 3～4 行，ABC 都不符文章含义，文中没有提到。

60.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：以下哪一项对于年轻人幸福是不需要的？文中最后一句提到 A、B、D 三项，故选 C。

【译文】

我们经常听到孩子们说希望自己是成人，老年人希望自己年轻。每一个年龄段都有自己的快乐和痛苦，最快乐的人是那种能够享受每个年龄段带给他的东西，而不是把时间浪费在无用的懊恼上的人。

年轻就是很少有任务让生活感到困难的时候。如果一个孩子有好的父母，那么不管他做什么，他都会被喂养、被照顾和被爱。当他成人以后，他什么都不做就能获得这么多是不可能的。另外，生活经常呈现给孩子新的事情，这些事情在成人眼中由于太熟悉而对其失去了兴趣。但是孩子也有他们自己的痛苦，他们不能自由地去做他们想要做的事情，他们一再地被告知不可以，或为他们所做的错事而遭受惩罚。

当年轻人开始谋生时，他就不能期望别人支付他的衣食住行，如果他们想过的舒适，他就必须得努力工作。如果他像小时候一样花太多的时间去玩，他就要挨饿。如果像过去违背父母规定那样违反社会法律，他可能会去坐牢。但是，如果他努力工作，克服困难和拥有健康，他就会在这个社会上树立自己的地位拥有幸福。

Passage 18

A wealthy Persian Prince loved good stories. The older he grew, the fonder he became of them. But he always regretted they had to have an end. So he decided to give half his wealth and his beautiful daughter to the man who could tell him a story without an end. Anybody who failed would be sent to prison for life. The risk was so great that nobody came to the palace to tell the Prince a story for a whole year. Then one day a tall, handsome young man came and said he wanted to tell a story that would go on forever. The prince agreed but warned him what would happen if he failed. “The risk is worth your fair daughter,” the young man replied poetically（得体地）. He then began this well-known story:

"Once upon a time there was a certain King who feared famine. So he ordered his men to build an enormous storehouse, which he filled with corn. Then, when it was set up, made water-proof and made fire-proof, the King felt happy. But one day he noticed a small hole in the roof and as he looked at it, a locust came out with a grain of corn. A minute later, another locust came out with another grain of corn. Then a third locust with another grain of corn. Then a fourth locust, flying at great speed, pushed through the hole and came out with two grains of corn. Then a fifth locust came and…"

"Stop" shouted the Prince. "I can't," answered the young man. "I must go on until I tell you what happened to each grain of the corn." "But that will go on forever." The prince protested. "Exactly" the young man replied, and he smiled as he turned towards the Prince's beautiful young daughter.

(2009)

41. The prince always felt regretted about story because ________.

A. he had too much wealth
B. there was terrible famine
C. all stories have ends
D. there was no story-teller

42. The young man risked to tell an endless story to the prince for ________.

A. a great sum of money
B. the prince's beautiful daughter
C. showing his bravery
D. Both A and C

43. The young man would be sent to prison ________ if he failed to tell a story without an end.

A. forever
B. for some time
C. for a while
D. for a year

44. In order to prevent famine, the King asked to build ________.

A. a huge storehouse
B. a large farm
C. a beautiful palace
D. a waterproof kitchen

45. The thing the king noticed first in the roof was ________.

A. a loaf
B. a small hole
C. a grain of corn
D. a locust

【答案与解析】

41.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：国王（prince）为什么总是觉得故事很遗憾。此题对应文章第一段第三句话，"they had to have an end."故选 C。

42.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：那个年轻人为了什么去给那个国王讲无结尾的故事。此题对应文章第一段倒数第二句话，"the risk is worth your fair daughter,"故选 B。

43.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。题干大意：这个年轻人如果讲没有结尾的故事失败了他将被关进监狱多

久。此题对应第一段第三行“ would be sent to prison for life”life 即指一生，故选 A。

44.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。题干大意：为了防止饥荒，这个国王要求建立什么。此题对应第二段第二句“to build an enormous storehouse”故选 A。

45.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：国王首先注意到屋顶上的什么。此题对应第二段第三行“he notice a small hole in the roof.”故选 B。

【译文】

一位富有的波斯国王很喜欢好听的故事。他年龄越大，就越喜欢它们。但是他总是懊恼故事不得不有一个结尾。因此他决定将一半的财产和漂亮的女儿给一位能够讲没有结尾故事的人。无论任何人失败了，都将终身待在监狱。这个风险非常大，因此一整年都没有人到宫殿给国王讲故事。然而有一天，一位个子高大长相英俊的年轻人来这说，他想讲一个永远继续下去的故事。国王同意了，但是警告他如果失败了会发生什么。“这个风险就是你漂亮的女儿。”这个年轻男人得体地回答道。然后就开始了这个著名的故事：

“曾经有一位国王很害怕饥荒。因此他命令他的部下去建一间巨大的储藏室，用来存放谷物。接着，当建好时做了防水和防火处理，国王感到很高兴。但是有一天他注意到房顶上有一个小洞，当他看到它时，一只蝗虫带着一粒谷物出去了。一分钟后另一只蝗虫带着另一粒谷物出去了。然后第三只蝗虫带着另一粒出去了。然后第四只蝗虫以飞快的速度冲向洞口并带走了两粒谷物，然后第五只蝗虫来了并……”

“停”国王喊道。“我不能”年轻人回答道，“我必须要继续，直到我告诉你每一粒谷物发生了什么。”“但是那会永远继续下去”国王抗议道。“的确”这位年轻人回答，并笑着转向了国王年轻漂亮的女儿。

Passage 19

Packaging is an important form of advertising. A package can sometimes motivate someone to buy a product. For example, a small child might ask for a breakfast food that comes in a box with a picture of a TV character. The child is more interested in the picture than in the breakfast food. Pictures for children to color or cut out, games printed on a package, or small gifts inside a box also motivate many children to buy products or to ask their parents for them.

Some packages suggest that a buyer will get something for nothing. Food products sold in reusable containers are examples of this. Although a similar product in a plain container might cost less, people often prefer to buy the product in a reusable glass or dish, because they believe the container is free. However, the cost of the container is added to the cost of the product.

The size of a package also motivates a buyer. Maybe the package has “Economy Size” printed on it. This suggests that the large size has the most product for the least money. But that is not always true. To find out, a buyer has to know how the product is sold and the price of the basic unit.

The information on the package should provide some answers. But the important thing for any buyer to remember is that a package is often an advertisement. The words and pictures do not tell the whole story. Only the product inside can do that.

(2009)

46. Which of the following statements could best summarize the main idea of the passage?

A. Children are interested in some packages of products.

B. Package is one of the important ways of advertising.

C. People prefer to buy the products in plain containers.

D. The size of a package usually motivates a buyer.

47. The phrase "a buyer will get something for nothing" (Line 1, Para 2) probably means ________.

A. a buyer will get something free of charge   B. a buyer will get something useless

C. a buyer will get something useful   D. nothing is worth buying

48. Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?

A. Sometimes people are easily motivated by packages.

B. Small children sometimes are more interested in games printed on a package than the product itself.

C. A product in a reusable container must be cheaper than a similar product in a plain container.

D. "Economy Size" doesn't always suggest that people can buy the most product for the least money.

49. What does the word "them" (Line 5, Para. 1) refer to ________?

A. small gifts   B. pictures   C. games   D. products

50. What does the author imply in the last paragraph?

A. Package is just an advertisement.

B. Buyers shouldn't believe the information on the package too much.

C. The package has nothing to do at all with the product.

D. Buyers can always find answers in the information on the package.

【答案与解析】

46.【答案】B

【解析】主旨题。题干大意：以下哪种陈述能够最好地总结本文的主要内容。此题对应文章开头第一句，即为主旨句，"Packing is an important form of advertising"，其余选项均为细节陈述，故选 B。

47.【答案】A

【解析】词义题。题干大意：短语"a buyer will get something for nothing"可能是以下哪个意思。对应文章第二段，整段都在举例说明这句话的含义，本段大意为，人们更愿意去买那些包装在玻璃或瓶里的东西，因为他们认为这些包装是免费的，即用 nothing 可以获得 something（玻璃或盘子之类的包装），故选 A。

48.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：依据这篇文章，以下哪个陈述不对。对应第二段，文中并没有特别说明“装在可再次使用容器里的产品就一定比装在普通容器里的相似产品便宜。”此选项无中生有，故选C。

49.【答案】D

【解析】词义题。题干大意：单词them指什么。对应第一段最后一句，“供孩子们涂色或剪切的图画，印在包装上的游戏，或者盒子里的小礼物也激发孩子去买产品或者让父母买产品。”由连词“or”可知后面them所指代内容应和前面保持一致，故选D。

50.【答案】B

【解析】推理题。题干大意：最后一段作者暗示了什么。对应文章最后一句话。“包装上的语言和图片不能告诉我们全部，只有里面的产品才能告诉我们。”是B选项的同义替换，“购买者不应该太相信包装的信息”，故选B。

【译文】

包装是一种重要的广告形式，有时一种包装能够促使某个人去买一件产品。例如，一个小孩也许会要一份用盒子装的早餐，上面有电视人物的图片。相对于早餐，孩子们对图片更感兴趣。让孩子们去涂色或剪切的图片，印在包装上的游戏，或是盒子里的小礼物也能促使许多孩子们来买产品，或是向他们的父母要它们。

一些包装暗示买家可以不付出任何代价买到一些东西，在可回收的容器中卖食品就是这样一个例子。尽管装在一个普通容器里的产品也许价格更低，但人们更愿意去买装在可回收玻璃器皿或盘子里的产品，因为他们相信包装物是免费的。然而包装的成本都被添加到了商品里面。

包装物的大小也刺激着买家，也许一个包装上印有“经济型”在上面，这就暗示着可以用最少的钱买到大包装里最多的产品。但是那往往不是真实的。为了弄清这个，一个买家不得不找出商品是怎么销售的，以及最初产品的价格。

包装上的信息应该提供一些答案。但是买家应记得的最重要的事情就是包装常常只是一种广告。上面的语言和图片不能告诉我们整个内容。只有里面的产品可以做到。

Passage 20

For any Englishman, there can never be any discussion as to who is the world’s greatest poet and greatest dramatist. Only one name can possibly suggest itself to him: that of William Shakespeare. Every Englishman has some knowledge, however slight, of the work of our greatest writer. All of us use words, phrases and quotations from Shakespeare’s writings that have become part of the common property of English-speaking people. Most of the time we are probably unaware of the source of the words we use, rather like the old lady who was taken to see a performance of HAMLET and complained that “it was full of well-known proverbs and quotations.”

Shakespeare, more perhaps than any other writer, made full use of the great resources of the English language. Most of us use about five thousand words in our normal employment of English;

Shakespeare in his works used about twenty-five thousand. There is probably no better way for a foreigner to appreciate the richness and variety of the English language than by studying the various ways in which Shakespeare used it. Such a study is well worth the effort (it is not，of course，recommended to beginners) even though some aspects of English usage，and the meaning of many words，have changed since Shakespeare's day.

(2009)

51. English people ________.

A. have never discussed who is the world's greatest poet and greatest dramatist

B. never discuss about the world's greatest poets or dramatists

C. are sure who is the world's greatest poet and greatest dramatist

D. do not care who is the world's greatest poet and greatest dramatist

52. Every Englishman knows ________.

A. more or less about Shakespeare　　B. Shakespeare，but only slightly

C. all the Shakespeare's writings　　D. only the name of the greatest English writer

53. Which of the following is TRUE?

A. We use all the words，phrases and quotations from Shakespeare's writings.

B. Shakespeare's writings have become the property of those who are learning to speak English.

C. It is likely to be true that people often do not know the origins of the words they use.

D. All the words people use are taken from Shakespeare's writings.

54. "HAMLET" is ________.

A. a play written by Shakespeare　　B. a play recommended by Shakespeare

C. a play appreciated by Shakespeare　　D. a play people have been complaining about

55. It is worthwhile to study the various ways in which Shakespeare used English because ________.

A. English words have changed a lot since Shakespeare's time

B. by doing so one can be fully aware of the richness of the English language

C. English words are now being used in the same way as in Shakespeare's days

D. English words are now the same in various ways as in Shakespeare'days

【答案与解析】

51.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。此题干对应文章第一句话，"对于任何英国人而言，关于谁是世界上最伟大的诗人和剧作家"的问题从来没有争议。只有一个名字能够诠释——那就是威廉·莎士比亚，故选C。

52.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。题干大意：每个英国人都知道什么。对应第一段2～3行，"Every Englishman has some knowledge，however slight."即每个英国人都知道，或者较少地知道伟大作家的作品，故选A。

53.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。题干大意：下面哪一项正确。对应第一段第6行，“most of the time we are probably unaware of the source of the words we use”和选项C表达同样的意思，故选C。

54.【答案】A

【解析】词义题。题干大意：HAMLET是什么。由文章可知，莎士比亚是最伟大的诗人和剧作家，所以，HAMLET应是莎士比亚的作品。

55.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：学习“莎士比亚语言多样的运用方式是值得的原因是什么”，对应文章第二段第三行“no better…than…”句型，即对于外国人而言，没有什么比学习莎士比亚语言多样的运用方式更好地学习英语语言的丰富性和多样性了。故选B。

【译文】

对于任何一个英国人来说在关于谁是世界上最伟大的诗人和剧作家的问题上没有任何争议，只有一个人的名字可以与之匹配：威廉·莎士比亚。每个英国人都知道一些，也许很少，关于我们伟大作家的作品。我们所有人使用的来自于莎士比亚作品中的词、短语和引言已经变成了说英语人们的共同财产。大多数的时候，我们也许不清楚我们使用语言的来源，就像一个被带去看戏剧《哈姆莱特》的老龄妇女在抱怨“全都是些有名的谚语和引语。”

莎士比亚，也许比其他作家更充分地使用英语语言的巨大资源，大多数人大约日常使用5 000个英语单词，莎士比亚在他的作品中大约使用了25 000个英语单词。对于一个外国人来说，要想欣赏英语的丰富性和多样性，学习莎士比亚如何使用语言的多变性可能是最好的方式了。这样的学习是很值得的（当然不推荐给初学者），即便英语习惯用语的一些方面，和很多单词的意思从莎士比亚时代发生了变化。

Passage 21

Most cities and states in the U. S. collect a sales tax on almost everything you buy. You must ask when you move into a new community how much the local sales tax is，and what items are and are not taxable. Both taxable items and the amount of tax vary considerably from place，from one or two percent in some places up to eight or ten in others. The New York City sales tax，for examples，is currently 8%，so if you buy a pair of $ 40 shoes you will actually have to pay $ 43.20. This makes paying and getting correct changes much more difficult（not to mention making everything more expensive）.

Another thing that makes money exchanges more complicated is tipping. The Chinese people have happily put an end to tipping，but Westerners are still plagued（遭受折磨）with this indignity. Waiters and waitresses，cab drivers，hotel bellboys，barbers and hairdressers and all sorts of other people must be tipped. Their employers give them low wages because it is expected that you，the customer，will make up the difference. If you don't，the service person can't earn a living. Tipping also varies from place to place，generally in the area of 15% of your bill（before taxes），

but again you should ask local residents whom to tip and how much.

There is another kind of tipping as well. You are generally expected to give something (either cash or a bottle of whisky) to the mailman at Christmas time. You should discuss this also with neighbors and friends.

(2009)

56. The main idea of this passage is ________.

A. shopping and tipping　　B. sales and shopping

C. sales taxes and tipping　　D. sales taxes and people

57. According to the passage, if you buy a pair of $ 50 shoes in the New York City, you pay extra ________ as sales tax.

A. $4.5　　B. $4　　C. $5　　D. $5.5

58. Usually, cab drivers ________.

A. get high wages from the employer　　B. get great benefits from the employer

C. get low wages from the employer　　D. get prize from the employer

59. According to the passage, which of the following statements is true?

A. The Chinese people have to pay tips in western countries.

B. The westerners don't have to pay high tips in their own country.

C. Barbers, hotel bellboys and all sorts of other people can earn a living if they are not tipped.

D. Tipping varies from place to place, generally in the area of 20% of your bill.

60. Usually, taxable items and the amount of tax ________.

A. have no difference from place to place in the U. S.

B. are over 15% in the U. S.

C. have been put an end in the U. S.

D. vary from place to place in the U. S.

【答案与解析】

56.【答案】C

【解析】主旨题。题干大意：这篇文章的主要内容是什么。对应整篇文章，尤其是第一段和第二段的首句，讨论的就是销售税和小费两个话题。故选 C。

57.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干大意：根据文章，假如你在纽约买了一双 50 美元的鞋，你应支付额外的多少钱作为销售税。对应第一段第四行“纽约的现行的销售税为 8%”，由此可知，50 乘以 8% 为 4 美元，故选 B。

58.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。此题对应第二段第四行“their employers give them low wages”即为他们

的雇主给他们低薪水，故选 C。

59.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。题干大意：根据文章下面哪一个陈述是对的。对应第二段第二句，“中国人幸福地终结了小费，但西方人依然遭受小费的折磨”。由此可知，中国人如果到了西方国家，也要入乡随俗地支付小费，故选 A。

60.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。此题对应第一段第三行，“税收项目和税收数量从一个地方到另一个地方变化很大”，故选 D。

【译文】

美国的很多城市对你买的一切东西征收销售税，当你搬到一个新的社区的时候，你必须问一下当地的销售税是多少，征税的项目和不征税的项目。征税项目和征税数额从一个地方到另一个地方变化很大，从一些地区的 1%～2%上升到另一些地区的 8%～10%。例如，纽约的销售税率现在为 8%，所以假如你买了一双 40 美元的鞋子，你将支付 43.2 美元，这就造成了支付和收取正确的零钱时更困难（更不用说所有东西都更贵了）。

另外一件让交易变得更复杂的事是小费。中国人已经幸福地终结了小费，但西方人依然遭受这种有损尊严事情的折磨。男服务生和女服务生，出租车司机和旅店的服务生，理发师和发型师以及其他各类人员必须被给予小费。他们的雇主给他们低薪水是因为他们希望顾客能够弥补这个差额，如果你不支付的话，服务人员不能够维持生活。小费也是从一个地方到另一个地方不等，通常在你的账单的 15%之内（税前），但是你也得问下当地居民需要给谁并且给多少小费。

还有另外一种小费，你通常应该在圣诞节的时候给邮差东西（可以是现金或者是一瓶威士忌），你应该和你的邻居朋友一起讨论下这个问题。

Passage 22

Thousands of years ago, in the middle of an ocean, miles from the nearest island, an undersea volcano broke out. The hot liquid got higher and higher and spread wider and wider. In this way, an island rose up in the sea.

As time went on, hot sun and cool rains made the rock split and break to pieces. Sea waves hit against the rock. In this way, soil and sand came into being.

Nothing lived on the naked soil. And then the wind and birds brought plant seeds, spiders and other little living things there. Only plants could grow first. Only they, in sunlight, could produce food from the soil, water and air. While many animals landed on the island, they could find no food. A spider made its web uselessly, because there were no insects (昆虫) for its web to catch. Insects couldn't stay until there were plants for them to eat. So plants had to be the first life on this new island.

(2010)

41. The passage centers on ________.

A. how an undersea volcano broke out

B. how an island rose up in the sea

C. how soil was formed on a new island

D. how life began on a volcano produced island

42. According to the passage，the island got its first soil from ________.

A. sea waves B. the sand brought by the wind

C. its own rock D. cool rains

43. The word “naked”（in Para. 3）could be replaced by which of the following?

A. red B. new C. old D. bare

44. The order of coming into being on the island is ________.

A. soil，plants and animals B. soil，little creatures and plants

C. soil，birds and plants D. soil，human beings and animals

45. According to the passage，which of the following is TRUE?

A. Spiders were the first life that could live on the island.

B. The island is far away from any piece of land.

C. Insects could not live on the island without plants.

D. Plants were brought to the island by human beings.

【答案与解析】

41.【答案】D

【解析】主旨题。全文主要在讲述在一个火山形成的小岛上生命是怎样起源的。

42.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。在文章第二段，冷热让岩石碎裂，然后经过海浪的作用形成土壤。

43.【答案】D

【解析】词义题。文章的第三段第两句，通过 nothing 知道在岛上是没有任何生命迹象的，那么这种土壤一定是光秃秃的，裸露的，所以答案选 D，bare（裸露的）正符合此意。

44.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。从文章的最后一段可知，在小岛上各种东西出现的顺序是先有土壤，然后有植物，最后才有动物。

45.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。排除法找出一个正确的。A 选项说蜘蛛是第一个可以在小岛上生存的生物是错误的，文章的最后一句告诉我们说小岛上第一个生物是植物，蜘蛛不属于植物。B 选项说小岛远离任何一个岛屿，有 any 太绝对了，并且根据第一段第一行中 miles from the nearst island 所以也不正确。C 选项说没有植物任何昆虫都是无法生存的是正确的因为文章中说植物可以给昆虫提供食物。D 选项说是人类把植物带到小岛上是错误的，文章最后一段刚开始给出是鸟类和风把植物的种子带到岛上的。

【译文】

几千年以前在海洋的中央，离最近的岛屿也有数公里的地方，一个海下火山爆发了。炽热的液体逐渐升高并不断扩大。在这种情况之下，海上出现了一个小岛。

随着时间的流逝，炽热的太阳和冰冷的雨水使岩石裂开并裂成了碎块。海浪拍打岩石，在这种情况下出现了土壤和沙子。

在裸露的土地上是没有任何生物的。然后风和鸟类把植物种子、蜘蛛和其他小生物带到了岛上。刚开始只有植物可以生长。也只有它们，在阳光下可以通过土壤、水和空气制造食物。但是很多动物来到岛上都找不到食物。蜘蛛织网是没有用的，因为岛上就没有昆虫，根本不需要网去捕捉。直到有植物可以吃，才会有昆虫停留在这里，所以植物必须是这个新兴小岛上第一批生物。

Passage 23

Ernest Miller Hemingway was born on July 21，1899 in Oak Park，Illinois. In the nearly sixty two years of his life that followed，he built a literary fame unsurpassed（无法超越）in the twentieth century.

As a boy he was taught by his father to hunt and fish along the shores and in the forests around Lake Michigan. The Hemingways had a summer house in northern Michigan，and the family would spend the summer months there trying to stay cool. Hemingway would either fish the different streams that ran into the lake，or would take the small boat out to do some fishing there. He would also go squirrel hunting in the woods，discovering early in life the peace to be found while alone in the forest or going through a stream. It was something he could always go back to throughout his life，and though he often found himself living in major cities like Chicago，Toronto and Paris early in his life，once he became successful he chose somewhat isolated places to live in.

When he wasn't hunting or fishing his mother taught him the good points of music. She was a skilled singer who once had wished a life on stage，but at last settled down with her husband and spent her time by giving voice and music lessons to local children，including her own. Hemingway was never talented for music and suffered through singing practices and music lessons，however，the musical knowledge he got from his mother helped him share in his first wife Hadley's interest in the piano.

（2010）

46. Ernest Hemingway died in ________.

A. 1969　B. 1979　C. 1981　D. 1961

47. Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?

A. His father taught him to fish and hunt when he was a boy.

B. His family had a summer house in northern Michigan.

C. He taught himself music when he was a boy.

D. He also went squirrel hunting in the woods.

48. After he became successful，Ernest Hemingway ________.

A. preferred to stay in big cities

B. chose to live in somewhat isolated places

C. moved his family to Paris

D. killed himself

49. Being talented in music，Hemingway's mother once wanted to ________.

A. be a music teacher

B. help Hemingway learn music

C. perform on the stage as a singer

D. marry a rich husband

50. The passage is most probably from ________.

A. a literary biography

B. a science textbook

C. a term paper

D. a personal diary

【答案与解析】

46.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。从文章首句知道海明威生于 1899 年，而后面又说到在他 62 年的一生中，所以该题就成了简单的加法运算，1899＋62＝1961。故选 D。

47.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。A 选项说他还是小孩的时候他父亲就教他捕鱼和打猎，从文章第二段开头知道是正确的。B 选项说他家在北密歇根有个夏季别墅，文章第二段第二句说到了，所以也是正确的。C 选项说他在小的时候自学了音乐是错误的，文章最后一段提到是他母亲教他学习音乐的，而不是自学。D 选项说他到林子里打松鼠是正确的，在文章的第二段第五行可以找到。

48.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。文章第二段最后一句提到成名后他更愿意住在与世隔绝的地方。

49.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。文章最后一段第二句说道海明威的母亲曾经想作为歌手登台演出，这道题的答题关键在于 once 这个词，在这里是曾经的意思，也就是今昔对比，这里考的是以前。

50.【答案】A

【解析】推理题。题中有 probably 这个词，所以是推理题。A 是文学传记，B 是科学文献，C 是学期论文，D 是个人日记。写传记的话一般都采取叙事的方式，而且是从童年写起，所以 A 正确。B 科学文献不会采取叙事的方式展开文章，所以不对。C 学期论文，根本就是不对的，格式也不对。D 个人日记，格式也不对，没有时间和日期，最重要的是时间跨度太大。

【译文】

欧内斯特·米勒·海明威于 1899 年 7 月 21 日出生在美国伊利诺州的橡树园。在他将近 62 年的一生中，他创造了 20 世纪的一个无法超越的文学盛誉。

幼年的时候，他的父亲在密歇根湖附近的湖边和林子里教会了他捕鱼和打猎。海明威一家在密歇根北部有一个避暑处，夏季炎热的月份一家人会在那里避暑。海明威或者在湖口的汇流处钓鱼，或者就划着小船出去钓鱼。他也会去树林里捕猎松鼠，他及早地发现了那种在树林里徘徊或者穿越河流带来的平静。尽管他自己早期一直住在像芝加哥、多伦多和巴黎这样的大城市，但是树林和湖

泊却一直是他想要回去的地方。一旦他成功了，他会选择住在一个与世隔绝的地方。

当他不再打猎和捕鱼的时候，他母亲教给了他音乐的真谛，他母亲是个娴熟的歌手，曾经一直梦想登台演出，但是最后却选择了和自己的丈夫呆在一起，把自己的时间投入到了教当地的孩子们声乐课上，也包括她自己的孩子。海明威对音乐从来就没有天赋并且一直忍受着声乐练习和音乐课程的煎熬，但是他从母亲那里得到的音乐知识帮助了他跟他的第一任妻子海德里在钢琴这个爱好上有所分享。

Passage 24

What will man be like in the future — in 5,000 or even 50,000 years from now? We can only make a guess, of course, but we can be sure that he will be different from what he is today. For man is slowly changing all the time.

Let us take an obvious example. Man, even five hundred years ago, was shorter than he is today. Now, on average, men are about three inches taller. Five hundred years is a relatively short period of time, so we may assume that man will continue to grow taller.

Again, in the modern world we use our brains a great deal. Even so, we still make use of only about 20% of the brains' capacity. As time goes on, however, we shall have to use our brains more and more, and eventually we shall need larger ones. This is likely to bring about a physical change — the head, in particular the forehead, will grow larger.

Nowadays our eyes are in constant use. In fact, we use them so much that very often they become weaker and we have to wear glasses. But over very long period of time it is likely that man's eyes will grow stronger.

On the other hand, we tend to make less use of our arms and legs. These, as a result, are likely to grow weaker. At the same time, however, our fingers will grow more sensitive because they are used a great deal in modern life.

But what about hair? It will probably disappear from the body altogether in course of time because it does not serve a useful purpose any longer. In the future, then, both sexes are likely to be bald.

Perhaps all this gives the impression that future man will not be a very attractive creature to look at. This may well be true. All the same, in spite of all these changes, future man will still have a lot in common with us. He will still be a human being, with thoughts and emotions similar to our own.

(2010)

51. The passage tells us about ________.
    A. how man's life will be in the future
    B. how future man will look like
    C. the fact that man's organs will function differently in the future
    D. the fact that man is growing uglier as time passes

52. There is evidence that man is changing because ________.

A. he has been growing taller over the past 500 years

B. he has got stronger eyes than he ever had

C. his hair is getting thinner and thinner

D. his limbs are getting weaker because he tends to make less use of them

53. Man's forehead will grow larger because ________.

A. he will make use of only about 20% of the brain's capacity

B. the other 80% of his brain will grow in due time

C. he had rather narrow forehead a few hundred years ago

D. he will have to use his brain more and more as time goes on

54. Future man will probably ________.

A. have smaller eyes　　B. have larger eyes

C. see better　　D. have to wear better glasses

55. The reason for believing that future man will be different is that he ________.

A. will grow stronger　　B. never stops changing

C. hopes for a change　　D. will live a different life

【答案与解析】

51.【答案】B

【解析】主旨题。A说的是未来人类生活会变成什么样子，不正确。B说是未来人类是什么样子，正确。C说的是未来人类器官会起到不同作用，不正确。D说的是人类会随着时间流逝变得越来越丑，也不正确。

52.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。从文章第二段开头可知：人们五百年以前是比现在更低的。因此，可以得出人类在过去的500年中一直在长高。

53.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。给果求因。答案在第三段可以搜寻到，随着用脑的增加，脑容量会增大，而体现最为明显的是前额的变大。

54.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。第四段最后说到人类的眼睛会比以前变得更加强大，也就是会变得越来越好。A、B选项在说眼睛的大小问题，文章没有提到。D选项说要戴更好的眼睛，文章也没有体现。

55.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。给果求因，题干中出现了the reason。答案从文章的第一段可以知道，我们相信未来的人类会变得与众不同是因为人类一直处于缓慢的变化中。

【译文】

5 000年或者甚至50 000以后的未来人类会是什么样子呢？我们当然只能做一个猜测，但是我

们可以确信的是一定会与现在不同。因为人类一直在不停地缓慢地变化着。

让我们举一个很明显的例子。500 年前人类比现在的人要矮。现在的人类平均要比以前高 3 英寸。500 年是个相对来说比较短的时间段，所以我们可以定论的是人类会继续长高。

还有就是我们在现代社会生活中频繁用脑。即使是这样，我们只使用了我们大脑容量的 20%左右。随着时间的流逝，我们用脑会越来越多，最后就需要更加庞大的大脑。这种现象会带来一个生理变化——头部，特别是我们的前额会变大。

现在我们在持续用眼。事实上，我们多次频繁地使用眼睛，使它们变得越来越弱，就不得不去配戴眼镜。但是经过漫长的时期后人类的眼睛会变得越发强大。

另一方面我们趋向于更少去使用我们的四肢。结果是它们变得更弱了。同时，因为在现代生活中大量使用手指，所以它们会变得越发灵敏。

头发会怎样呢？它很有可能会在一定时间内从身体部分全部消失，因为它不在发挥有效作用。在未来，不管男女都可能会变成秃头。

可能所有的这些变化会给出一个印象就是，未来人类不会被作为一个非常吸引人的生物看待。这可能是真的。仍然值得相信的是，抛开所有的这些变化，未来人类依然和我们有很多共同之处。他和我们一样始终是人类，富有思想和感情。

Passage 25

Auctions（拍卖）are public sales of goods，made by an officially approved auctioneer. He asked the crowd assembled in the auction room to make offers，or bids，for the various items on sale. He encouraged buyers to bid higher figures，and finally named the highest bidder as the buyer of the goods. This is called “knocking down” the goods，for the bidding ends when the auctioneer bangs a small hammer on a table at which he stands. This is often set on a raised platform called a rostrum.

The ancient Romans probably invented sales by auction，and the English word comes from the Latin auction，meaning “increase” . The Romans usually sold in this way the spoils taken in war，these sales were called “sub hash”，meaning “under the spear”，a spear being stuck in the ground as a signal for a crowd to gather. In England in the eighteenth century，goods were often sold by the candle：a short candle was lit by the auctioneer，and bids could be made while it stayed alight.

Practically all goods whose qualities varied are sold by auction. Among these are coffee，hides，skins，wool，tea，cocoa，furs，spices，fruit，vegetables and wines. Auction sales are also usual for land and property，antique furniture，pictures，rare books，old china and similar works of art. The auction rooms at Christie’s and Sotheby’s in London and New York are world famous.

An auction is usually advertised beforehand with full particulars of the articles to be sold and where and when they can be viewed by prospective buyers. If the advertisement cannot give full details，catalogues are printed，and each group of goods to be sold together，called a “lot”，is usually given a number. The auctioneer need not begin with Lot 1 and continue in numerical order. He may wait until he registers the fact that certain dealers are in the room and then produce the lots they are likely to be interested in. The auctioneer's services are paid for in the form of a percentage of the price the goods are sold for. The auctioneer therefore has a direct interest in pushing up the bidding as high as possible.

(2010)

56. A “bidder” (in Para. 1) is a person ________.

A. who sells something　　B. who buys something

C. who offers a price　　D. who borrows something

57. Auctioned goods are sold ________ price offered.

A. for the highest　　B. for the fixed　　C. for the lowest　　D. for the unexpected

58. The end of the bidding is called “knocking down” because ________.

A. the auctioneer knocks the buyer down

B. the auctioneer knocks the rostrum down

C. the goods are knocked down onto the table

D. the auctioneer bangs the table with a hammer

59. The “candle” used in paragraph 2 is ________.

A. because they took place at night

B. as a signal for the crowd to gather

C. to give light to the auctioneer

D. to limit the time when offers could be made

60. An auction catalogue gives prospective buyers ________.

A. the current market values of the goods　　B. details of the goods to be sold

C. the order in which goods must be sold　　D. free admission to the auction sale

【答案与解析】

56.【答案】C

【解析】词义题。从文章第一段第三句可以得知这个词的意思就是指在拍卖的过程中给出标价的人，故选 C。

57.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。文章第一段可以得知只有出价最高的人才有权利把物品买走，故选 A。

58.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。给果求因，文章第一段倒数第二句说到拍卖的最后一锤定音，所以才叫做拍价，故选 D。

59.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。由题干可知答案应去第二段寻找，文章中说到蜡烛亮着的时候，人们开始标价，而且还说到是短蜡烛，也就是说蜡烛是限制标价时间的一个工具。故选 D。

60.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。文章最后一段第二句可以知道目录是为了给潜在购买者提供详细的出售物品的信息，故选 B。

【译文】

拍卖是由官方认可的拍卖人承办的物品公开销售活动。拍卖人把人员召集到拍卖行去为要出售的多种商品做估价或者竞价。他鼓励买方出更高的价格，最后确定最高标价人为商品的买主。我们称拍卖为“一锤定音”，是因为拍卖人一旦敲响桌前的小锤，拍卖即告结束。整个拍卖都发生在一个台子上，即为标台。

很可能是古罗马人发明了拍卖销售，拍卖的英语单词来源于拉丁文的拍卖，意思是上升。罗马人通常用这种形式销售战利品，这些交易被叫作“混乱之下”，意思是“长矛之下”，就是说把一根长矛插在地上作为人群聚集的信号。在 18 世纪的英格兰，物品经常以“蜡烛交易”的形式出售：由拍卖人点燃一根短蜡烛，然后在蜡烛亮着的时候竞争标价。

实际上所有质地不同的物品都是通过拍卖销售的。其中有咖啡、兽皮、皮毛、羊毛、茶叶、可可粉、毛皮、香料、水果、蔬菜和葡萄酒。地皮和财产拍卖也很常见，比如古董家具，字画，善本，古瓷器和类似的艺术品。伦敦的 Christie 和纽约的 Sotheby 拍卖行闻名于世界。

拍卖通常会预先以广告的形式给拍卖品附上详尽的特点说明并告知潜力购买者物品会在何时何地展出。如果没有详尽的广告，拍卖方将提供打印的目录，那么每组一起拍卖的物品被叫做“标的”，通常会附上号码。拍卖人不必以 1 号标的开始，同时不需要按照数字顺序进行。他可以等到一定数量的商人进入到房间后，然后再根据他们的喜好创造标的。拍卖人的服务费是以出售物品的百分比的形式来支付的。因此拍卖人对把标价抬得越高越好是有直接兴趣的。

Passage 26

Researchers have found that REM (rapid eye movement) sleep is important to human beings. This type of sleep generally occurs four or five times during one night of sleep lasting five minutes to forty minutes for each occurrence. The deeper a person’s sleep becomes, the longer the periods of rapid eye movement.

There are physical changes in the body to show that a person has changed from NREM (nonrapid eye movement) to REM sleep. Breathing becomes faster, the heart rate increases, and, as the name implies, the eyes begin to move quickly.

Accompanying these physical changes in the body is a very important characteristic of REM sleep. It is during REM sleep that a person dreams.

(2011)

61. According to the passage, how often does REM sleep occur in one night?

A. Once　　B. Twice

C. Four or five times　　D. Forty times

62. The word “deeper” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to which of the following?

A. heavier　　B. louder　　C. stronger　　D. happier

63. Which of the following shows that a person is NOT dreaming in his sleep?

A. His eyes begin to move.
B. His breathing becomes faster.
C. His heart rate increases.
D. His eyes stop moving.

64. The subject of this passage is ________.

A. why people sleep
B. the human need for REM sleep
C. the characteristic of REM sleep
D. physical changes in the human body

65. Which of the following is the best title of the article?

A. REM Sleep
B. Two Types of Sleep
C. Sleepers
D. What Happens to Sleepers

【答案与解析】

61.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。定位到文章第一段第二句可以知道是原词再现，故选 C。

62.【答案】A

【解析】词义题。从文章第一段最后句可知人睡得越熟，快速眼部运动的时间就持续的越久。那么可以知道这里的 deeper 是表示程度很深，故选 A。

63.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。定位到第二段第二句可知 A、B、C 都是文章中提到的，只有 D 眼睛会停止运动肯定是不对的。故选 D。

64.【答案】C

【解析】主旨题。A 选项说人们为何睡觉，文章没有讲原因，不正确。B 选项说人类需要 REM 睡眠，也不正确。C 选项说 REM 睡眠的特征，正是文章全篇所探讨的，正确。D 选项说人类身体发生的物理变化，跟文章主旨无关，不正确。故选 C。

65.【答案】A

【解析】主旨题。根据文章开头第一句主旨句可以知道，文章主要就是在阐述 REM 睡眠，故选 A。

【译文】

研究者发现 REM（快速眼部运动）睡眠对人类来说是重要的。这种睡眠类型每夜主要发生 4 到 5 次，每次持续 5 到 40 分钟。人睡得越熟，快速眼部运动的周期就越长。

人体内会存在一些物理变化来表征一个人从 NREM（非快速眼部运动）到 REM 睡眠。比如像呼吸加快，心率增加，还有正如 REM 这个名字所暗示的，眼睛也会加快运动。

伴随着这些身体发生的物理变化正是 REM 睡眠的一个重要的特征。正是在 REM 睡眠期间人们会做梦。

Passage 27

Foxes and farmers have never got on well. These small dog-like animals have long been accused of killing farm animals. They are officially classified as harmful and farmers try to keep their numbers down by shooting or poisoning them.

Farmers can also call on the services of their local hunt to control the fox population. Hunting consists of pursuing a fox across the countryside, with a group of specially trained dogs, followed by men and women riding horses. When the dogs eventually catch the fox they kill it or a hunter shoots it.

People who take part in hunting think of it as a sport; they wear a special uniform of red coats and white trousers, and follow strict codes of behavior. But owning a horse and hunting regularly is expensive, so most hunters are wealthy.

It is estimated that up to 100,000 people watch or take part in fox hunting. But over the last couple of decades the number of people opposed to fox hunting, has risen sharply because they think it is brutal（残酷的）. Nowadays it is rare for a hunt to pass off without some kind of confrontation（冲突）between hunters and hunt saboteurs（阻拦者）. Sometimes these incidents lead to violence, but mostly saboteurs interfere with the hunt by misleading riders and disturbing the trail of the fox' s smell, which the dogs follow.

Noisy confrontations between hunters and saboteurs have become so common that they are almost as much a part of hunting as the pursuit of foxes itself. But this year supporters of fox hunting face a much bigger threat to their sport. A Labour Party Member of the Parliament, Mike Foster, is trying to get Parliament to approve a new law which will make the hunting of wild animals with dogs illegal. If the law is passed, wild animals like foxes will be protected under the ban in Britain.

(2011)

66. Rich people in Britain have been hunting foxes ________.

A. for recreation　　B. in the interests of the farmers

C. to limit the fox population　　D. to show off their wealth

67. What is special about fox hunting in Britain?

A. It involves the use of a deadly poison.

B. It is a costly event which rarely occurs.

C. The hunters have set rules to follow.

D. The hunters have to go through strict training.

68. Fox hunting opponents often interfere in the game ________.

A. by resorting to violence　　B. by confusing the fox hunters

C. by taking legal action　　D. by demonstrating on the scene

69. A new law may be passed by the British Parliament to ________.

A. prohibit farmers from hunting foxes

B. forbid hunting foxes with dogs

C. stop hunting wild animals in the countryside

D. prevent large-scale fox hunting

70. It can be inferred from the passage that ________.

A. killing foxes with poison is illegal

B. limiting the fox population is unnecessary

C. hunting foxes with dogs is considered cruel and violent

D. fox-hunting often leads to confrontation between the poor and the rich

【答案与解析】

66.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。本题是问英国富人猎狐是出于什么目的。由 rich 定位到第三段最后一句的 expensive 和 wealthy，其相关内容从第三段的第一句可知，人们把猎狐当成一项运动（think of it is a sport）。A 选项 for recreation 为了消遣，是该句的同句转述。B 选项 in the interests of the farmers 为了农民的利益和 D 选项 to show off their wealth 炫耀财富，偏离考点，文中无内容支持。应该明白，富有是猎狐的条件，而不是猎人想炫耀的东西，故排除。所以答案选 A。

67.【答案】C

【解析】细节题。本题是问在英国猎狐有何特别之处。C 选项 The hunters have set rules to follow 遵循一定的准则与第三段的：follow strict codes of behavior 遵循严格的行为准则内容一致，且 codes＝rules。A 选项 It involves the use of a deadly poison. 猎狐中涉及使用致命毒药，是农场主的行为。而 B 选项 It is a costly event which rarely occurs 猎狐花费大，很少发生。但由第 3 段最后一句“但是拥有一匹马并且定期打猎花费很高，所以大部分猎人都很富有”来看，猎狐花费大是对的，但不是很少发生，而是定期发生的。所以正确答案选 C。

68.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。本题是问猎狐反对者们通常采用什么手段来干扰猎狐。定位到第四段：… but mostly saboteurs（＝hunting opponents）interfere with the hunt（＝interfere in the game）by misleading riders and disturbing the trail of the fox's smell（＝confusing the fox hunters）阻拦者误导猎手和混淆狐狸气味的踪迹。A 选项 by resorting to violence 为诉诸暴力，题干中 often（经常）与文章中 sometimes（有时）相悖；C 选项 by taking legal action 通过合法行动，文章末提到要求议会通过反猎狐的法律，说明当时并不存在相关法律，无法可依，不可能采取法律手段；D 选项 by demonstrating on the scene 通过猎狐现场示威游行，原文未提及。故答案为 B。

69.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。题干中的 to 这个关键词表目的，考查英国议会通过这项新法律的目的。通过关键词 a new law 定位到最后一段的最后两句，新法律将使 the hunting of wild animals with dogs illegal（非法的）成为非法行为，而 foxes 属于 wild animals 由此可推断出选 B 选项 forbid hunting foxes with dogs。A 选项 prohibit farmers from hunting foxes 禁止农民猎狐，文中禁止的对

象是任何狩猎野生动物的人，不单指农民，不准确；C 选项 stop hunting wild animals in the countryside 禁止在乡间猎狐，文中并未提及猎狐地点是乡下，而且此选项忽略了 a new law 中提及的狩猎方式 with dogs，排除；D 选项 prevent large-scale fox hunting 阻止大规模狩猎，文中未提及。正确答案为 B。

70.【答案】C

【解析】推理题。C 选项 hunting foxes with dogs is considered cruel and violent 借助猎狗来猎狐的行为被认为是残忍和暴力的。此选项可对应第四段第二句，brutal＝cruel，文中描写的猎狐也反映了暴力、残忍。A 选项 killing foxes with poison is illegal 用农药毒死狐狸是非法的，文中未提及；B 选项 limiting the fox population is unnecessary 没有必要限制狐狸数量，文章第一段说狐狸杀害农场牲畜而被归为有害动物，并且农民们试图通过打猎或投毒来减少他们的数量，此项排除；D 选项 fox-hunting often leads to confrontation between the poor and the rich 猎狐经常导致穷人和富人之间的冲突，文中提到猎狐的多富人，也提到的猎狐和反猎狐者常常冲突，但无法推断冲突双方就是穷人和富人。正确答案为 C。

【译文】

狐狸和农民一直关系不好。长久以来，这些身形小、像小狗一样的动物因为杀害农场牲畜而遭受批评。通常，它们被归为有害动物，并且农民们试图通过打猎或投毒来减少他们的数量。

农民们还可以求助于当地的打猎服务来控制狐狸的数量。有一群经过特殊训练的狗在前面，骑着马的猎人跟在狗后面，他们为了追逐狐狸，穿梭在村子里。当狗抓到狐狸的时候，狗会把它弄死，或者由人们开枪把狐狸打死。

参加打猎的人会把这看作是一项运动。他们穿着特殊的服装，红外套，白裤子。他们遵循严格的打猎行为准则。但是拥有一匹马，并且定期打猎是花费很高的，所以大部分猎人都很富有。

据估计，多达十万人观看或参加猎杀狐狸的行动。但是在过去的几十年里，反对猎杀狐狸的人数急剧增多，因为他们认为这是很残酷的。如今，对于一个猎人来说，要想在没有任何冲突的情况下就猎杀是很少见的了。有时候这些冲突会引发暴力事件，但是大多数阻止猎杀的人会通过把猎人引向错误的方向或改变狗所追踪的狐狸味道留下的踪迹来干扰捕猎。

猎人和阻止猎杀的人之间的激烈的冲突已经变得非常普遍了，所以捕杀狐狸是打猎的一部分，这些矛盾冲突也已经变成打猎的一部分了。今年支持猎杀狐狸的人面对着一个更大的问题。迈克·福斯特，国会工党的一员，正努力让国会通过一项新的法律，这项法律将规定由狗带领，猎杀野生动物是违法的。如果这项法律被通过，像狐狸这样的野生动物在英国将受到保护。

Passage 28

If you listen to American music，watch American television or magazines，you will probably agree that the most popular subject of these forms of entertainment is love. Romantic love always finds an audience in the United States. Falling in love，solving the problems of love，and achieving the happy ending—the big wedding are subjects of interest to both the adult and the teenage public. Millions of Americans celebrate Valentine’s Day with special cards and gifts that announce their

love to their mates, their friends and their families. Popular songs tell us that "all the world loves a lover". A popular saying is "Love conquers all". Numerous columns in magazines and newspapers offer advice to the lovelorn, those with difficulties of heart. To most Americans, romantic love is central to a happy life.

Not only do Americans believe in romantic love but they also believe that it is the best basis for making a happy marriage. Despite the high divorce rate in the United States, young men and women continue to marry on the basis of romantic love. Americans consider marriage a private arrangement between the two people involved. Young Americans feel free to choose their own marriage partners from any social, economic or religious background. The man or woman may have strong ties with parents, brothers or sisters, but when he or she falls in love, the strongest feelings are supposed to be for the loved one. When an American couple marries, they generally plan to live apart from both sets of parents and build their own independent family structure.

(2011)

71. What is the most popular subject of all forms of entertainment?

A. Marriage B. Love C. Families D. Friendship

72. Who is interested in the subject of love?

A. Adults who are single.
B. Teenagers whose parents are divorced.
C. Old people who have no children.
D. Both adults and teenagers.

73. What do most Americans think of romantic love?

A. It is central to a happy life.
B. It is not the basis for marriage.
C. It is not necessarily important in people's life.
D. Many people long for it, but it is unbelievable.

74. What factors do young Americans consider when choosing their own marriage partners?

A. They will think their social background.
B. They think economic background is essential.
C. They won't choose a marriage partner from different religious backgrounds.
D. They don't think social, economic or religious background is important.

75. What does an American couple plan to do when they marry?

A. They continue to live with their parents after their marriage.
B. They plan to live by themselves.
C. They plan to earn more money to buy a house.
D. They plan to travel all over the world.

【答案与解析】

71.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。定位到文中第一句可以知道是 love，原词再现，故选 B。

72.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。定位到第一段第三句 the big wedding are subjects of interest to both the adult and the teenage public，原词再现，故选 D。

73.【答案】A

【解析】细节题。定位到第一段最后一句 To most Americans，romantic love is central to a happy life. 原词再现，故选 A。

74.【答案】D

【解析】细节题。定位到第二段第四句 Young Americans feel free to choose their own marriage partners from any social，economic or religious background. 可知美国人选择配偶时不认为社会、经济或者宗教背景是重要的。故选 D。

75.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。定位到文中最后一句 When an American couple marries，they generally plan to live apart from both sets of parents and build their own independent family structure. 可知当一对美国夫妇结婚后，他们大多数计划离开彼此的父母，建立属于自己的独立的家庭结构。故选 B。

【译文】

如果你听美国音乐、看美国电视节目或读美国杂志，你可能会认同：这些娱乐的形式当中，最受欢迎的主题就是爱。在美国浪漫的爱都会有观众。坠入爱河、解决爱的问题、迎来欢乐的结局——盛大的婚礼，对于成年人还是十几岁的青少年来讲都是令他们感兴趣的主题。成千上万的美国人庆祝情人节，他们用特殊的节日卡片和礼物来宣布他们对伴侣、朋友和家人的爱。流行歌曲告诉我们“全世界的人爱着自己的爱人”。有一句广为流传的话“爱征服一切”。许多杂志和报纸的专栏为那些失恋有心事的人提供建议。对于大部分美国人来说，浪漫的爱是欢乐生活的核心。

美国人不仅仅是相信浪漫的爱，他们还相信要拥有快乐的婚姻生活，爱是基础。尽管美国的离婚率很高，年轻男女还是在真爱的基础上结婚的。美国人把婚姻看做是两个人的私人安排。美国年轻人很自由地选择婚姻对象，不管对方的社会背景、经济情况或信仰。一个人也许和父母、兄弟姐妹之间有很强的联系，但是当其坠入爱河的时候，最强的联系应该是和所爱的人之间的。当一对美国人结为夫妻的时候，他们会计划建立属于自己的独立的家庭结构，这时候，就会和父母分开了。

Passage 29

In 1939 two brothers，Mac and Dick McDonald，started a drive-in restaurant in San Bernardino，California. They carefully chose a busy corner for their location. They had run their own businesses for years，first a theater，then a barbecue（烤肉）restaurant and then another drive-in. But in their new operation，they offered a new，shortened menu：French fries，hamburgers and sodas. To this small selection they added one new concept：quick service，no waiters or waitresses and no tips.

Their hamburgers were sold for fifteen cents. Cheese was another four cents. Their French fries and

hamburgers had a remarkable uniformity，for the brothers had developed a strict routine for the preparation of their food，and they insisted on their cooks' sticking to their routine. Their new drive-in became incredibly popular，particularly for lunch. People drove up by the hundreds during the busy noontime. The self-service restaurant was so popular that the brothers had allowed ten copies of their restaurant to be opened. They were content with this modest success until they met Ray Kroc.

Kroc was a salesman who met the McDonald brothers in 1954，when he was selling milk shake-mixing machines. He quickly saw the unique appeal of the brothers' fast-food restaurants and bought the right to franchise（特许经营）other copies of their restaurants. The agreement struck included the right to duplicate the menu，the equipment，even their red and white buildings with the golden arches（拱门）.

Today McDonald's is really a household name. Its names for its sandwiches have come to mean hamburger in the decades since the day Ray Kroc watched people rush up to order fifteen-cent hamburgers. In 1976，McDonald's had over ＄1 billion in total sales. Its first twenty-two years is one of the most incredible success stories in modern American business history.

（2011）

76. This passage mainly talks about ________.
    A. the development of fast food services
    B. how McDonald's became a billion-dollar business
    C. the business careers of Mac and Dick McDonald
    D. Ray Kroc's business talent
77. Mac and Dick managed all of the following businesses except ________.
    A. a drive-in　B. a cinema　C. a theater　D. a barbecue restaurant
78. We may infer from this passage that ________.
    A. Mac and Dick McDonald never became wealthy for they sold their idea to Kroc
    B. the location the McDonalds chose was the only source of the great popularity of their drive-in
    C. forty years ago there were numerous fast-food restaurants
    D. Ray Kroc was a good businessman
79. The passage suggests that ________.
    A. creativity is an important element of business success
    B. Ray Kroc was the close partner of the McDonald brothers
    C. Mac and Dick McDonald became broken after they sold their ideas to Ray Kroc
    D. California is the best place to go into business
80. As used in the second sentence of the third paragraph，the word "unique" means ________.
    A. special　B. financial　C. attractive　D. peculiar

【答案与解析】

76.【答案】C

【解析】主旨题。文章主要描述了 Mac and Dick McDonald 的生意生涯。A 选项说快餐行业的发展，不正确；B 选项说麦当劳是怎样变成一个百万美元的事业的，不正确；D 选项说 Ray Kroc 的经营天赋，与主旨无关；故选 C。

77.【答案】B

【解析】细节题。定位到第一段第三句 They had run their own businesses for years，first a theater，then a barbecue（烤肉）restaurant and then another drive-in 只有 B 没有提到。故选 B。

78.【答案】D

【解析】推理题。A 选项说 Mac and Dick McDonald 把点子卖给了 Kroc，因此绝不可能变得富有，太绝对，不正确；B 选项说地址是他们受欢迎的唯一因素，太绝对，不正确；C 选项说 40 年前有很多快餐店，文中没有体现，不正确；D 选项说 Kroc 是个不错的商人，正是文章告诉我们的。故选 D。

79.【答案】A

【解析】推理题。A 选项说创新是商业成功的重要因素，正是文章告诉我们的。B 选项说 Ray Kroc 是 McDonald 两兄弟的亲密伙伴，文章未提及，所以不正确；C 选项说 Mac and Dick McDonald把点子卖给了 Kroc 之后就破产了，与原文不符，不正确；D 选项说加州是最佳的生意之地，文章未提及，所以不正确。故选 A。

80.【答案】D

【解析】词义题。出处在文章的第三段第二句话，A 选项是特别的；B 选项是财经的；C 选项是吸引人的；D 选项是独特且唯一的，由原文可知麦当劳快餐店是独特且唯一的。故选 D。

【译文】

在 1939 年，Mac 和 Dick McDonald 两兄弟在加州 San Bernardino 运营了一家免下车餐厅。他们细致地选择了一个繁忙的角落作为店址。他们做生意已经有些年头了，刚开始时开一间剧院，然后是烤肉店，再后来是另一家免下车餐厅。但是在他们新的运营当中，他们提供了一个新颖的、简短的菜单：薯条、汉堡包还有苏打饮料。为了一个细小的选择，他们添加了一个全新的概念：快捷服务，没有服务员，没有小费。

他们的汉堡包卖到 15 美分。奶酪 4 美分。他们的薯条和汉堡包相当的一致，因为他们发展了一套严格的食物准备流程。他们坚持自己的厨艺，走自己的路线。他们的新免下车餐厅难以置信的流行起来了，特别是午餐。在中午繁忙的时候人们可以不用下车直接买快餐。快餐店是如此的流行以至于他们允许了 10 家分店的开设。直到他们遇见 Ray Kroc 之前，他们对自己的成功都很满意。

Kroc 是个销售人员，1954 年遇见了麦当劳兄弟。当他卖牛奶料理机的时候，他迅速发现了麦当劳快餐店的吸引力，买断了其他分店的特许经营权。协议包括菜单、设备、甚至带金色拱门的红白相间建筑的全部权利。

今天麦当劳已经成为家喻户晓的名字。自从 Ray Kroc 看到人们争相订购 15 美分的汉堡那天起，在接下来的几十年里，麦当劳的三明治就意味着汉堡包。在 1976 年，麦当劳的销售额已经超过 10 亿美元。麦当劳刚开始的 22 年是美国商业史上最不可思议的成功故事之一。

Part Six

True or False
判断正误

格言

You do not lack time to study；you are lacking the efforts.

并非缺乏时间学习，而是缺乏努力。

第一章　判断正误分析与技巧

这一题型是2021年新出现的一种题型，一篇文章，后面配有5道题，每题2分，合计10分。它的题目通常是陈述句，要求结合原文所给出的信息，判断每道题目是对（A）、错（B）。这种题型的难度在于：在有限的时间内，快速有效的阅读全文；并在文章中进行定位；同时要警惕同义替换。

一、解题步骤

STEP One：**定位**。

1. 找出题目中的关键词，最好先定位到原文中的一个段落。

2. 从头到尾快速阅读该段落，根据题目中的其它关键词，在原文中找出与题目相关的一句或几句话。

3. 仔细阅读这一句话或几句话，根据第二大步中的原则和规律，进行判断。

STEP Two：**判断**。

1. 正确（A）

第一种情况：题目是原文的同义表达。通常用同义词或同义结构。

例：原文：Few are more than five years old.

译文：很少有超过五年的。

题目：Most are less than five years old.

译文：大多数都小于五年。

解析：题目与原文是同义结构，所以答案应为正确（A）。

第二种情况：题目是根据原文中的几句话做出推断或归纳。

例：A visitor visits an island where two tribes live. One tribe（部落）always tells the truth and the other always lies. The truth tellers live on the western side of the island，and those who lie live on the eastern side. The visitor wants to determine whether the native beside him is a truth teller or not by asking only one question. He asks the native，“Go and ask the native in the distance which side of the island he lives on.” When the messenger returns，he says，“He said he lives on the western side of the island.”

题目：According to the messenger’s answer，the visitor can conclude that the messenger lives on the western side of the island because he tells the truth.

解析：本题是推测有关信使（近处的当地人）的情况的。我们知道，讲真话的部落住在岛的西部，撒谎的部落住在岛的东部。这个信使去问远方的当地人住在岛的哪一边（东部还是西部）。远方的当地人只能有两种情况，要么住在岛的西部，要么住在岛的东部。假如他住在岛的西部，他就

是一个讲真话的人，他就会如实回答他住在西部。假如他住在岛的东部，他就是一个撒谎的人。他本来住在东部，但在回答时，必须要说谎，他只能回答他住在西部。所以远方的当地人不管是住在东部还是西部，他的回答只有一个：“我住在西部”。假如信使告诉参观者远方的当地人住在西部，信使无疑是说了真话，那么信使一定是住在岛的西部。反之，假如信使告诉参观者远方的当地人住在东部，那么信使就说了假话，信使肯定住在东部。故此题答案是正确（A）。

2. 错误（B）

第一种情况：题目与原文直接相反。通常用反义词、not 加同义词及反义结构。

例：原文：A species becomes extinct when the last one dies.

译文：最后一个个体死亡时，一个物种就灭亡了。

题目：A species is said to be extinct when only one exists.

译文：当只有一个个体存活时，一个物种就被说是灭亡了。

解析：可以看出题目与原文是反义结构。原文说一个物种死光光，才叫灭绝，而题目说还有一个个体存活，就叫灭绝，题目与原文直接相反，以答案应为错误（B）。

第二种情况：原文是多个条件并列，题目是其中一个条件（出现 must 或 only）；反之，原文是两个或多个情形（通常是两种情形）都可以，题目却是“必须”或“只有”其中一个情况。均为错误（B）。

例：原文：Booking in advance is strongly recommended because all tours depend on tourists’ demands. If some tickets are available，you can buy them from the drivers.

译文：我们强烈建议您提前预订，因为所有的旅行安排都是由旅客的需求决定的。如果还有票，你可直接向司机购买。

题目：Tickets must be bought in advance from an authorized agent.

译文：票必须提前从一个认证的代理处购买。

解析：原文是提前预定、直接向司机购买都可以，是多个条件的并列。题目是必须提前预定，是必须其中一个情况。所以答案为错误（B）。

第三种情况：题目中涉及的范围大于或小于原文涉及的范围。

例：原文：Tourists in Cyprus come mainly from Europe.

译文：到塞浦路斯旅游的游客主要来自欧洲。

题目：Tourists in Cyprus come mainly from the UK.

译文：到塞浦路斯旅游的游客主要来英国。

解析：题目中涉及的概念“UK”比原文中涉及的概念“Europe”要小。原文只说到塞浦路斯旅游的游客主要来自欧洲，有可能主要来自英国，也可能主要来自欧洲的其他国家。所以答案应为错误（B）。

二、注意事项

1. 一定要依据原文，不能凭皆自己的知识。

原文是判断的唯一根据。所以，无论你对文章内容或背景多么熟悉，或者你的知识多么丰富，

都不能凭借自己的知识来确定答案。

2. 可以依据原文做适当的推断，但不能做无根据的自行推断或过度推断。

有些题目需要根据原文做适当的推断，才能确定正确答案，但必须是根据原文来做推断，不能做毫无根据的推理。而且一般来讲，即使有推理，也只推一步，不要推得很深。有些阅读水平好的同学，如果不掌握前面的规律和方法，做这种题型反而错得更多，主要原因就是想得太多，或推理得太多和太深。

3. 要注意题目要求答什么。

同是是非题，有时题目要求考生答 True/False，有时要求答 T/F，而河南专升本考试中又要求考生答 A/B，必须按照要求去做。在平常练习中就按照题目的要求去答，而不是随心所欲。

4. 题目中若出现 must、only、all 及 always，答案一般不会是正确（A）的。

题目中出现这些词很常见，大部分的答案都不是正确（A）的。除非原文中也有。

5. 要相信自己的第一感觉，不要轻易改答案。在考试中，除非有特别强的理由，否则不要轻易改答案，人的第一感觉往往是正确的。很多同学都将正确的答案改错了。

6. 要注意上述规律和方法的运用，不要钻牛角尖。

下面我们以 2021 年的考题为例，体会一下我们上面所提及的方法和注意事项（正确为 A，错误为 B）：

New research shows even light physical activity among adolescents was linked to better mental health as they got older. “Moderate activity of any kind, getting out and doing something, is associated with improvements, lower levels of depressive symptoms, lower levels of anxiety, and better well-being,” Dr. Elaine McMahon said.

Dr. Elaine McMahon is a research fellow at the National Suicide Research Foundation and the School of Public Health, University College Cork in Ireland. She is the lead author of a 2017 study coming out of a large research project on European adolescents.

They studied more than 11,000 13-to 15-year-olds in 10 countries. They found that only 13.6 percent of the participants met the recommended guidelines. The guidelines included 60 minutes of moderate to vigorous exercise a day.

There was a clear association between physical activity and levels of depression and anxiety. However, the most significant difference was between the least active group (active for 60 minutes or more on zero to three of the past 14 days) and the somewhat active group (four to seven of the past 14 days). The most active group (eight to 14 of the past 14 days) had the highest levels of well—being and the lowest levels of depression and anxiety. However, within that group, daily activity conferred no special benefit. In addition, the study found that being in a sports team was associated with an extra improvement in mental health, and the association was particularly strong for girls.

There were striking differences among the 10 countries. In Slovenia, 66.9 percent of the boys and 49.7 percent of the girls were in the most active group; in Italy, it was only 27.8 percent of the boys and 9.6 percent of the girls.

1. (　　) In the research light physical activity is found to be positively associated with better

mental health.

2. (　　) According to the research, moderate activity will make people depressed.

3. (　　) Most of the research participants had at least 60 minutes' exercise a day.

4. (　　) From the research we can know that being in a sports team is particularly helpful for boys' mental health.

5. (　　) Within the most active group in the research, daily activity brought about no special benefit.

答案 & 解析

1.【答案】A

【解析】研究表明，轻度体力活动被发现与更好的心理健康呈正相关。文章第一段中提到"New research shows even light physical activity among adolescents was linked to better mental health as they got older"（新的研究表明，随着年龄的增长，即使是青少年的轻度体力活动也与更好的心理健康有关）文中原句范围大，包含题干描述内容，故正确。

2.【答案】B

【解析】根据这项研究，适度的活动会使人们抑郁。第一段中提到"Moderate activit of any kind, getting out and doing something is associated with improvements, lower levels of depressive symptoms, lower levels of anxiety, and better well-being"（任何一种适度的活动，出去做点什么，都能带来改善，降低抑郁症状，降低焦虑水平，提升幸福感）由此可知，本题描述相反，故错误。

3.【答案】B

【解析】大多数研究参与者每天至少锻炼60分钟。根据文章第三段中"They found that only 13. 6 percent of the participants met the recommended guidelines. The guidelines included 60 minutes of moderate to vigorous exercise a day."（他们发现，只有13.6%的参与者符合推荐的指南。该指南包括每天60分钟的中度到剧烈运动），而不是大多数者，故描述错。

4.【答案】B

【解析】从研究中我们可以知道，加入运动队对男孩的心理健康特别有帮助。从文章第四段"the study found that being in a sports team was associated with an extra improvement in mental health, and the association was particularly strong for girls."（研究发现，加入运动队与心理健康的额外改善有关，而这种关联对女孩来说尤其强烈），原文是女孩而不是男孩，故描述错误。

5.【答案】A

【解析】在研究中最活跃的群体中，日常活动并没有带来任何特殊的好处。根据文章第四段"However, within that group, daily activity conferred no special benefit."（然而，在这一群体中，日常活动并没有什么特别的好处）题干与原文描述一致，故正确。

参考译文

新的研究表明，随着青少年年龄的增长，即使是轻微的体育活动也与更好的心理健康有关。伊莱恩·麦克马洪博士说："任何形式的适度活动，走出去做一些事情，都与改善、降低抑郁症状水

平、降低焦虑水平和更好的幸福感有关。”

伊莱恩·麦克马洪博士是爱尔兰科克大学公共卫生学院和国家自杀研究基金会的研究员。她是2017年一项针对欧洲青少年的大型研究项目的主要作者。

他们研究了10个国家的1.1万多名13至15岁儿童。他们发现只有13.6％的参与者达到了推荐的指导方针。该指南包括每天60分钟的中等到剧烈运动。

体育活动与抑郁和焦虑水平之间存在明显的联系。然而，最不活跃的组（过去14天中有3天运动超过60分钟）和稍微活跃的组（过去14天中有4天到7天）之间的差异最显著。最活跃的一组（过去14天中的8到14天）幸福感最高，抑郁和焦虑程度最低。然而，在这组人中，日常活动并没有带来特别的好处。此外，研究发现，加入运动队与心理健康的额外改善有关，这种联系在女孩身上尤其明显。

这10个国家之间存在显著差异。在斯洛文尼亚，66.9％的男孩和49.7％的女孩是最活跃的群体；在意大利，男孩和女孩的比例分别为27.8％和9.6％。

第二章　判断正误习题讲解

Passage One

It happened to me recently that I was telling someone how much I had enjoyed reading Barack Obama' s Dreams From My Father and how it had changed my views of the current US President. The person I was talking to agreed with me that it was, in his words, "a wonderfully written book." However, he then proceeded to talk about Mr. Obama in a way that suggested he had no idea of his background at all. I sensed that I was talking to a book liar.

And it seems that he is not the only one. Clearly two thirds of people have lied about reading a book which they haven' t. In The World Book Day survey, Dreams From My Father is at number 9. The survey lists top ten books, and various authors, which people have lied about reading. As I' m not one to lie too often, I' ll admit here and now that I haven' t read the entire ten books. But I am pleased to say that I have read the book at number one, George Orwell' s 1984. I think it' s absolutely outstanding.

Asked why they lied, the most common reason was to impress someone they were speaking to. This could be difficult if the conversation became more in—depth!

The World Book Day survey also has some other interesting information in it. It shows that many people lie about having read classical works by Jane Austen, the Bronte sisters, Charles Dickens and so on. But when asked which authors they actually enjoy, they named JK Rowling, Jilly Cooper, and Stephen King. Forty—one percent of people asked admitted they turned to the back of the book to read the end before finishing the story.

1. (　　) The main reason why people lie about reading is to please the listener.

2. (　　) Dreams From My Father is written by Stephen King.

3. (　　) The World Book Day survey lists top ten books and various authors.

4. (　　) The writer hasn' t yet read all the top ten books that the survey lists.

5. (　　) More than half of people asked admitted they turned to the back of the book to read the end before finishing the story.

Passage Two

An increase in students applying to study economics at university is being attributed to the global economic crisis awakening a public thirst for knowledge about how the financial system works.

Applications for degree courses beginning this autumn were up by 15% this January, according to UCAS, the Universities and Colleges Admissions Service. A spokesman for the Royal Economic Society said applications to do economics at A-level were also up.

Professor John Beath, the president of the society and a leading lecture at St Andrews University, said his first-year lectures—which are open to students from all departments—were drawing crowds of 400, rather than the usual 250.

"There are a large number of students who are not economics majors, who would like to learn something about it. One of the things I have done this year is to relate my teaching to contemporary events in a way that one hasn't traditionally done." He added.

University applications rose 7% last year. But there were rises above average in several subjects. Nursing saw a 15% jump, with people's renewed interest in careers in the pubic sector, which are seen as more secure in economic crisis.

A recent study showed almost two thirds of parents believed schools should do more to teach pupils about financial matters, and almost half said their children had asked them what was going on, although a minority of parents felt they did not understand it themselves well enough to explain.

Zack Hocking, the head of Child Trust Funds, said: "It's possible that one good thing to arise from the downturn will be a generation that's financially wiser and better equipped to manage their money through times of economic uncertainty."

6. (　　) Professor John Beath's lectures are given in a traditional way.

7. (　　) Careers in the public sector are more attractive because of their greater stability.

8. (　　) In the opinion of most parents, the teaching of financial matters should be strengthened.

9. (　　) According to Hocking, the global economic crisis might make the youngsters confident about their future careers.

10. (　　) College students benefit a lot from economic uncertainty.

Passage Three

A lot of people are crazy doing shopping through the Internet now. Why is it so popular? There are some reasons. First, more and more people have their own computers and their computers can be joined with the Internet. So it is possible for many of them to do shopping through the Internet. Second, shopping through the Internet can save them some money and a lot of time. Third, they don't need to go to the shop themselves. Because of these good facts, few people refuse it.

On the other hand, some people don't like this new way of shopping. They are worried about the safety of shopping on line. Customers can only see the pictures of products on the Internet. And they can't enjoy the pleasure of buying things in large supermarkets or some wonderful stores. These are the reasons why they do not like it.

But I think more and more people will like this new kind of shopping in the future.

11. (　　) Many people are interested in shopping on line.
12. (　　) Shopping on line can only save money.
13. (　　) All the productions on the Internet are good.
14. (　　) Some people dislike shopping online because they don't have their own computers.
15. (　　) The writer of the passage supports（支持）shopping on line.

Passage Four

Dolphins（海豚）are not fish. They are mammals（哺乳动物）. They live in groups and speak to each other in their own language. But they aren't the same as almost all land animals. Their brains are as big as men's and they live a long life — at least 20 or 30 years.

Like some animals, dolphins use some sounds to help them find their ways around. They also use sounds to talk to each other and to help them find food. They don't use their ears to receive sounds, but use the jaws（下颚）.

It's strange that dolphins are friendly to men, and for thousands of years, there are many stories about dolphins and men. In the 19th century, in a dangerous part of the sea near New Zealand, there was a dolphin. The seamen liked him very much and gave him a very good name, Jack. From1871 to 1903, Jack met every boat in the area and showed it the way. In1903, a passenger on a boat with the name of "The Penguin" shot and hurt Jack. Luckily the dolphin didn't die, and after a long time he was well again. He guided the ships through the area for nine more years, but he refused to help the boat "The Penguin".

Today, some people still kill dolphins, but more people in the world protect them.

16. (　　) Dolphins are not only fish but also mammals.
17. (　　) Dolphins use their jaws to receive sounds.
18. (　　) Jack is a name of a seaman.
19. (　　) At last, Jack didn't help the ship "The Penguin" any more.
20. (　　) Today all people are protecting dolphins.

Passage Five

Hawaii has always been a magic name to people who like traveling. People from all over the world dream of seeing the beautiful islands in the middle of the ocean. It's always one of their dreams to watch the sun going down. The sun drops like a ball of bright fire into the sea, and it drops so quickly that you can even see it move.

About two thousand years ago, the first people went to Hawaii in a very small boat. They found the beautiful white sand beaches and the waving palm trees. But it was difficult for people to go to Hawaii at that time. And there were no big hotels like the ones today. Now people can get to

Hawaii in different ways. More and more people go to Hawaii. So lots of nice big hotels have been built in recent years. However, the scenery in Hawaii hasn't changed much. The whites and beaches and the waving palm trees are still there. People often have a peaceful time, taking a walk along the water in the morning. At night, they get together to hold parties, chatting and dancing. So if you're thinking about relaxing yourself, Hawaii is surely the first place for you to choose.

21. (　　) The sun in Hawaii drops too quickly for people to see it move.

22. (　　) In Hawaii, a large number of nice big hotels have been built in recent years.

23. (　　) The scenery in Hawaii is quite different from what it was many years ago.

24. (　　) According to the passage, it's common for people to hold parties in Hawaii at night.

25. (　　) The passage mainly tells us the first people who came to Hawaii.

答案 & 解析

Passage One

1. 【答案】B

【解析】人们撒谎的主要原因是为了取悦听众。根据文章第 3 段 "Asked why they lied, the most common reason was to impress someone they were speaking to."（当被问及为什么撒谎时，最常见的原因是为了给对方留下深刻印象）可知本题错误。

2. 【答案】B

【解析】《我父亲的梦想》是斯蒂芬·金写的。根据文章第 1 段 "It happened to me recently that I was telling someone how much I had enjoyed reading Barack Obama's Dreams From My Father"（最近，我告诉别人我是多么喜欢读巴拉克·奥巴马的《我父亲的梦想》）可知该书作者是奥巴马，故错误。

3. 【答案】A

【解析】世界读书日调查列出了十佳书籍和不同的作者。根据文章第 2 段 "The survey lists top ten books, and various authors" 可知几乎是照抄原文，故正确。

4. 【答案】A

【解析】作者还没有读完调查列出的前十本书。根据文章第 2 段 "As I'm not one to lie too often, I'll admit here and now that I haven't read the entire ten books."（由于我不是一个经常说谎的人，我现在在这里承认，我还没有读完这全部十本书。）可知本题正确。

5. 【答案】B

【解析】超过一半的受访者承认，他们在读完故事之前会翻到书的末尾去看结尾。根据末段末句 "Forty—one percent of people asked admitted they turned to the back of the book to read the end before finishing the story."（41%的受访者承认，在读完故事之前，他们会先翻到书的末尾去看结尾。）可知本题错误。

参考译文

最近，我告诉别人，我非常喜欢读巴拉克·奥巴马的《我父亲的梦想》，这本书改变了我对现任美国总统的看法。和我交谈的那个人也同意我的看法，用他的话来说，这是“一本写得非常棒的书”。然而，他接着谈到奥巴马时的语气表明，他对奥巴马的背景完全不了解。我感觉到我在跟一个读书骗子说话。

而且他似乎不是唯一一个这样做的人。很明显，三分之二的人谎称自己读过一本他们没有读过的书。在世界读书日的调查中，《我父亲的梦想》排在第九位。该调查列出了人们在阅读方面撒过谎的十大书籍和不同作者。由于我不是一个经常说谎的人，我现在在这里承认，我还没有读完这全部十本书。但我可以很欣慰地说，我读过排名第一的书，乔治·奥威尔的《1984》。我认为它绝对是本杰出作品。

当被问及为什么撒谎时，最常见的原因是为了给对方留下深刻印象。如果对话变得更深入，这可就难喽！

世界读书日调查还包含了其他一些有趣的信息。该调查表明，许多人谎称自己读过简·奥斯汀、勃朗特姐妹、查尔斯·狄更斯等人的古典作品。但当被问及他们真正喜欢的作家是谁时，他们认为是JK罗琳、吉莉·库珀和史蒂芬·金。41％的受访者承认，在读完故事之前，他们会先翻到书的末尾去看结尾。

Passage Two

6.【答案】B

【解析】约翰·贝斯教授的讲座采用传统的授课方式。根据第4段第2句“One of the things I have done this year is to relate my teaching to contemporary events in a way that one hasn’t traditionally done.”（今年我做了一件事，就是用一种传统上没有的方式，将我的教学与当代事件联系起来）可知授课用了新的形式，故本题错误。

7.【答案】A

【解析】公共部门的职业更有吸引力，因为它们更稳定。根据第5段第2句“Nursing saw a 15％ jump，with people’s renewed interest in careers in the pubic sector，which are seen as more secure in economic crisis.”（随着人们对在经济危机中更为安全的公共部门的工作重新产生兴趣，护理行业的人数增长了15％。）可知公职岗位吸引力更大的原因是人们想在经济危机中获得更多安全感和安定感，故本题正确。

8.【答案】A

【解析】在大多数家长看来，金融方面的教育应该加强。根据文章倒数第2段“A recent study showed almost two thirds of parents believed schools should do more to teach pupils about financial matters”（最近的一项研究显示，近三分之二的家长认为学校应该更多教授学生金融方面的知识）可知本题正确。

9.【答案】B

【解析】霍金认为，全球经济危机可能会让年轻人对自己未来的职业充满信心。根据文章末段

霍金的表述“It’s possible that one good thing to arise from the downturn will be a generation that’s financially wiser and better equipped to manage their money through times of economic uncertainty.”（经济衰退带来的一个好处可能是，在经济不确定的时期，这一代人在财务上更明智，更有能力管理自己的资金）可知经济危机带来的可能的好处是让人们增强理财能力，而非增强职业信心，故本题错误。

10.【答案】B

【解析】大学生从经济的不确定性中获益良多。本文主要讲述全球性的金融危机使公众想更多地了解有关经济体系方面的一些问题，所以更多的学生申请经济学专业，本文正是对此展开的论述，并未阐述大学生们从经济不确定性这一现实中获得利益，故本题错误。

参考译文

申请大学经济学专业的学生人数增加，这一现象的出现，是由全球经济危机唤醒了公众对金融体系如何运作的知识的渴望所引起。

根据大学和学院招生服务中心 UCAS 的数据，今年 1 月，申请今年秋季开始的学位课程的人数上升了 15％。英国皇家经济学会的一位发言人表示，申请参加 A－level 课程经济学课程的人数也有所上升。

该协会的主席、圣安德鲁斯大学的主讲教师约翰？贝斯教授说，他的第一年课程——对所有院系的学生开放——吸引了 400 人，而不是通常的 250 人。

“有很多不是经济学专业的学生，他们想了解一些经济学方面的知识。今年我做的一件事就是以一种传统上没有的方式将我的教学与当代事件联系起来。”他补充说。

去年大学申请人数增长了 7％。但有几个科目的数据高于平均水平。随着人们对在经济危机中更为安全的公共部门的工作重新产生兴趣，护理行业的人数增长了 15％。

最近的一项研究显示，近三分之二的家长认为学校应该更多教授学生金融方面的知识，近一半的家长表示，他们的孩子问过他们发生了什么事，尽管少数家长觉得他们自己对这方面的了解不够，无法解释清楚。

儿童信托基金的负责人扎克・霍金说：“经济衰退带来的一个好处可能是，在经济不确定的时期，这一代人在财务上更明智，更有能力管理自己的资金。”

Passage Three

11.【答案】A

【解析】由文章开头第一句话 a lot of people are crazy doing shopping through the Internet now 中的关键词“crazy”意思是“疯狂的”可知“很多人对在线购物感兴趣”是正确的。

12.【答案】B

【解析】细读第一段内容可知“网购”有三个好处其中“save money”只是其中之一所以是错误的。

13.【答案】B

【解析】从第二段“they are worried about the safety of shopping online”和“Customers can only see the pictures of production on the Internet”可以推出人们担心的是网购的安全性包括商品的质量好坏所以“网上的所有商品都是好的”是错误的。

14.【答案】B

【解析】从文章的第二段内容就可以看出人们不喜欢购物的原因不是“they don’t have their own computer”.

15.【答案】A

【解析】从文章的最后一句话就可以看出。

参考译文

现在很多人在网上疯狂购物。为什么这么受欢迎？是有原因的。首先，越来越多的人拥有自己的电脑，他们的电脑可以与互联网连接。因此，他们中的许多人可以通过互联网购物。第二，通过网络购物可以为他们节省一些钱和很多时间。第三，他们不需要自己去商店。因为这些好的事实，很少有人拒绝。另一方面，有些人不喜欢这种新的购物方式。他们担心网上购物的安全性。顾客只能在网上看到产品的图片。他们不能享受在大型超市或者一些很棒的商店买东西的乐趣。这些就是他们不喜欢它的原因。但是我想将来会有越来越多的人喜欢这种新型的购物方式。

Passage Four

16.【答案】B

【解析】由第一段第一句“Dolphins（海豚）are not fish.”海豚不是鱼。

17.【答案】A

【解析】由第二段最后一句“They don’t use their ears to receive sounds，but use the jaws.”他们不使用自己的耳朵接收的声音而是使用下颚。

18.【答案】B

【解析】由文中第三段“The seamen liked him very much and gave him a very good name，Jack.”此处 him 指的是海豚可见 Jack 是海豚的名字。

19.【答案】A

【解析】由文中第三段最后一句“he refused to help the boat‘The Penguin’”可知它拒绝帮助那艘“企鹅号”船只。

20.【答案】B

【解析】由文章最后一句“Today，some people still kill dolphins，but more people in the world protect them.”今天有些人仍然杀海豚但更多的人在世界上保护他们可知不是所有人都在保护企鹅。

参考译文

海豚不是鱼。它们是哺乳动物。他们生活在一起，用自己的语言相互交流。但是它们和几乎所有的陆地动物不一样。它们的大脑和人类一样大，而且寿命很长———至少 20 或 30 年。像一些动物一样，海豚用一些声音帮助它们找到周围的路。它们也用声音互相交谈，帮助它们找到食物。它

们不用耳朵接收声音，而是用下颚。海豚对人类友好真是奇怪，几千年来，有很多关于海豚和人类的故事。19世纪，在新西兰附近海域的危险地带，有一条海豚。水手们非常喜欢它，给了它一个非常好的名字，杰克。从1871年到1903年，杰克遇到了该地区的每一条船，并为它指明了道路。1903年，一艘名叫“企鹅”的船上的一名乘客开枪打伤了杰克。幸运的是海豚没有死，过了很长一段时间他又恢复了健康。他带领船只在这个地区又航行了九年，但是他拒绝帮助船只“企鹅”。

Passage Five

21.【答案】B

【解析】根据第一段最后一句 it drops so quickly that you can even see it move. 可知“太阳下降的如此的快甚至你能看出它在移动”。而此句意为“夏威夷的太阳下降得太快人们看不出它在移动”故选B。

22.【答案】A

【解析】此句与第二段第七句句意相符意为“最近几年大量豪华的宾馆被建设了起来”故选A。

23.【答案】B

【解析】根据第二段第七句句意“夏威夷的景色与许多年以前一样美丽”可知此句句意与原文不相符。

24.【答案】A

【解析】根据第二段倒数二三两句可知人们经常在夏威夷举办聚会故选A。

25.【答案】B

【解析】短文主要告诉我们夏威夷的美丽景色被发现被开发的过程而不是主要介绍第一批到达夏威夷的人故选B。

参考译文

夏威夷对于喜欢旅游的人来说一直是个神奇的名字。来自世界各地的人们都梦想着看到大洋中央的美丽岛屿。看日落总是他们的梦想之一。太阳像一团明亮的火球落入大海，它下落得如此之快，你甚至可以看到它移动。大约两千年前，第一批人乘坐一艘很小的船去夏威夷。他们发现了美丽的白色沙滩和摇曳的棕榈树。但那时候去夏威夷对人们来说很困难。没有像今天这样的大酒店。现在人们可以用不同的方式去夏威夷。越来越多的人去夏威夷。所以最近几年建了很多漂亮的大旅馆。然而，夏威夷的风景并没有改变多少。白色的海滩和摇曳的棕榈树仍然在那里。人们通常有一个平静的时间，在早上沿着水边散步。晚上，他们聚在一起举行聚会，聊天和跳舞。所以如果你想放松一下，夏威夷肯定是你的第一选择。

Part Seven

Translation
翻 译

格言

The pain of study is temporary; the pain of not study is lifelong.

学习之苦痛是暂时的，不学之苦痛是终生的。

第一章　测试概况及题型

一、测试目的

考查考生英汉两种语言的互译能力。

二、题型

本题为主观试题，分两个部分。

第一部分 Section A：Translate Chinese into English。由五个汉语句子所组成，要求将此译成英语。近年来考查的都是简单句。

第二部分 Section B：Translate English into Chinese。由五个英语句子组成，要求将此译成汉语。

2021 年题型有变，英译汉考生只需要根据选项匹配答案，难度有所下降。

从近些年的命题趋势来看，专升本考试翻译有如下特点：

1. 翻译测试的重中之重在于考查学生对于一些核心句型和重点词组的运用能力。

2. 翻译测试里的另一个重点在于考查学生对于时态语态、从句、倒装结构等基础语法知识的运用能力。

三、测试要求与分析

这两部分要求应试者运用汉译英，英译汉的理论和技巧。译文必须忠实原意。语言通顺、流畅。翻译往往是让考生感到较难对付的一类题型。究其原因，一共有三个：

1. 翻译考试较之其他考试如口语，听力来说，它对语言基本功、综合技能运用、知识面等诸方面要求得更高些。譬如考生要对中英文的不同特点有所了解，要具备一定水平的词汇、语法和修辞三个环节的连续运用能力，还要知道一些翻译理论，掌握并熟练运用翻译技巧等。

2. 考试不同于练习，既不能查阅字典和参考书，又有时间限制，就是说，考生要全凭自己现有英语水平的知识面，在规定时间内完成某一体裁或风格的翻译试题。如果基本功不扎实，经验不足，自然感到困难不少。

3. 汉语的断句也是个难点。汉语是形散意连，断句不如英语那样严格。如何划分汉语的语句之间的关系，在很多情况下要取决于读者的语感和对语句的理解。

第二章　汉译英的翻译难点及应试策略

既然是翻译，无论是汉译英还是英译汉，都要按“忠实、通顺”这个基本标准来要求译文，而且也都要正确的把握翻译的尺度：既不能硬译、死译，造成生硬、难懂的局面；也不能乱译、胡译，把原文的意思说的走了样。一般来说，在确保意思传达无误的前提下，汉译英特别重视译文的“顺”，即特别强调译文语言的“通顺”和“地道（符合英语的习惯）”。

汉译英无疑是对英语从文字基本功到意思组织表达能力实实在在的检验。另外汉译英也是对汉语理解能力的检验：①汉语行文的逻辑分析能力；②词义含义的准确体会；③对文体风格差别的敏感程度。

考生要按照上述的要求，把中文译成“通顺”“地道”的英文，必须克服中英文理解和表达两个方面的问题。

一、汉英句子的对比

汉语句式非常复杂，按用途或功能可分为陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句四大类。按结构可分为单句和复句。

汉译英时，无论句型多么复杂，均可用英语基本句型及变式译出。一个汉语句子还可用好几种英语句式译出。

如：“内战使他们的生意萧条”可译为：

1. Their business has suffered much through the Civil War.
2. The Civil War has affected their business to a remarkable extent.
3. The Civil War has rendered their business dull.
4. The Civil War has done harm to their business.
5. The effect of the Civil War upon their business has been depressing.

当然，哪种句式最合适要视具体语境而定。上例说明，汉译英时句式的处理是很灵活的。

由于汉语的语言系统是及其复杂的。对不少句法问题语言学家至今看法不一、甚至对单句复句的划分标准有时也莫衷一是。因此，汉译英时，只需要掌握汉语句子的基本句型特点，不必对单句复句作详细的探讨。重要的是通过分析关系理解句子的意义和功能，然后用合适的英语句式来表达。

二、表达难点及应试策略

总的来说，尽管考生存在一些对汉语理解的问题，但是，英语作为我们的外语，汉译英的主要

难点还是在于表达方面，即考生不知如何正确的用英语来表达汉语所说的意思。当然，理解是表达的前提，没有深刻的理解，就不可能有正确的完美表达。但是，有了好的前提，即深刻的理解之后，考生还必须具备一定的英文表达能力、语言和文学方面的知识及一定的文化素养，只有这样才会有较好的表达，顺利通过专升本汉译英的关卡。综合素养的问题需要考生平时的积累和文化沉淀，因此我们在此主要讲解一些语言表达上面的难点。一般来说，汉译英的表达难点和容易出错的地方主要表现在以下几个方面：

1. **拼写错误**

［陷阱］

（1）名词复数的不规则变化，即以-o，-f，-s，-x，-sh，-ch，-y，-fe 等结尾的名词变复数时，往往需要做不规则的变化。另外，个别名词复数形式比较特殊，如 child 的复数是 children。

（2）动词在一般现在时第三人称单数中的特殊变位（如加-s 或-es）、动词过去式和现在分词的不规则变化、以一个辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节需要双写最后一个字母再加-ed 或-ing 的变化等。

［对策］

努力培养英语思维，遇到名词时多想想是可数还是不可数，如果是可数名词的话再考虑单复数；遇到动词要看看对应的人称和时态。

2. **时态、词性和单复数问题**

［陷阱］

（1）与汉语中时间的概念主要通过词汇来表达不同，英语中时间变化主要通过动词时态的改变来传递。汉语的时态无明显的标记，而英语则没有一句话不涉及时态。例如：“你进来之前，他就在那里好一会儿了。”这句话怎样译更好呢？这里有两个动作（或状态动作，即英语中的 be 动词），一个是“进来”（在后）另一个是“在那里”（在前），而这两个动作显然都是一前一后已经发生了的，过去的过去用过去完成时，后一个动作用一般过去时。因此，这个句子可以翻译成：“He had been there for a while before you came in.”

（2）汉语中数的概念不像英语那样在语法和词法上都具有独特的形态特征，汉语中，除非给出具体的数字，单复数的判断必须依据上下文的描述才能做到，否则单看一句话根本不知道指的是单数还是复数。如：“他已经把碗收拾起来了。”在没有上下文的情况下，这里的“碗”究竟是一个还是多个，我们无法判断。

［对策］

（1）正确理解英文在时间概念上的表达习惯，尤其对于那些现在与过去的相互交融，叙述、描写与抒情相混杂的片段，翻译的时候更要小心判断事情发生的先后顺序及其反应在英语中的习惯时态。

（2）除了正确了解中英文中词性表达的不同之处外，还需掌握不同词性的词之间的修饰关系。例如，不论是中文还是英文，副词都能修饰动词和形容词以及其他副词和句子，而形容词只能修饰名词。

（3）注意结合上下文分辨名词所指的是可数还是不可数。英语的可数名词和不可数名词，其中的概念有一定的约定俗成的原因，不能按照汉语的表达习惯去推论，汉语中有的看似可数的词，有时在英语中却是不可数的。例如：“钱”“家具”“面包”“设施”等，在英语中都是不可数的，平时要注意收集和记忆这类单词。

3. **虚拟语气**

［陷阱］

虚拟语气是英语中的一种比较特殊的语法现象，它会引起谓语动词的重大变动，是中国学生极容易误译、乱译的一个语法难点。其实，中文也不是没有虚拟语气，只不过都是通过一些语气来体现，因而也更容易掌握其使用方法罢了。试比较：

例 1　我要是去了就好了

If only I had gone.

例 2　你如果能早 2 分钟到（就好了），你就会见到他了。

If only you had come just 2 minutes earlier，you'd have seen him.

例 3　我真希望自己是只小鸟。

I wish so much that I were a bird.

例 4　我要是一只小鸟就好了。

If only I were a bird.

［对策］

除了熟悉虚拟语气在假设条件句中的基本结构特征之外，还要掌握它在特定的动词、名词以及形容词之后应该具备的形态。具体有如下几种情况：

（1）熟悉表示要求、建议、命令等的动词如 desire，demand，insist，prefer，propose，recommend，request，require，suggest 等引导的宾语从句和主语从句的虚拟语气形式。

（2）熟悉以 decision，desire，instruction，order，requirement，resolution 等名词引导的表语从句和同位语从句后的虚拟语气。

（3）熟悉表示必要性、重要性、可行性的形容词如 advisable，appropriate，desirable，essential，fitting，imperative，important，impossible，necessary，obligatory，proper 等引导的主语从句后的虚拟语气。

（4）熟悉连词 if only 和 as if（感官动词除外）后面所引导的虚拟语气。

（5）熟悉句型 It be（high/about）time that…引导的虚拟语气。

4. 对称性表达和倒装句的用法

［陷阱］

（1）either…or，neither…nor，not only…but also，both…and，not…but 等成对使用的表达法。

（2）逻辑主语要求跟主句的主语一致的分词状语表达法。

（3）由 although，because 引导的让步、原因状语从句。

（4）only 后面接状语（only if 引起的状语从句除外）的句型和否定词置于句首时所引起的倒装句型。

［对策］

（1）either…or，neither…nor，not only…but also，both…and，not…but 等要求句子形成一个对称的结构，是固定搭配，不能拆开来重新组合使用。如：将 either…or 变成 either…nor 或将 not only…but also 变成 not only…and 等，都是不对的。因此，考生一定要熟记这些固定搭配。

（2）分词作状语时（独立主格结构除外），其逻辑主语要求跟主句的主语一致。例如：Newly trimming（trimmed），his hair looks neat. 显然，在这里，trim 的逻辑主语应该是“his hair”，头发不会自己修理自己，如果用 trimming，那么逻辑主语就应该是某个人（动作的施予者），这就和主句的主语 his hair 不一致。因此，这里应该用过去分词的形式以表被动之意。类似的错误还有很多，考生一定要完全领会原文的真实意思所在，然后用正确的英语来表达。

（3）在用 although，because 来引导让步和原因状语从句的时候，考生最容易犯的错误就是按照中文的语法习惯在主句面前加上 but，thus，therefore 和 so 等词，以表示转折或者结果等，好像不加的话听或读起来就不通畅，这是需要自己有意识地克服的一个习惯。

（4）only 后面接状语（only if 引起的状语从句除外），或否定词位于句首时，其后的主句中主语和谓语要倒装。

5. 代词与冠词的运用

汉语中代词种类较少，使用比较简单，而冠词则根本就不存在。因此，以中文为母语的学生最容易出错的词类就是代词和冠词。

［陷阱］

（1）在使用第二及第三人称代词如 you，it 和 they 的时候（包括他们不同的“格”的形式），常有一种用这些词来代指一个模糊的概念的倾向，有时造成指代不清或不统一。

（2）有时候出现一个代词代指几个对象而使读者感到迷糊的情况。另外，所指对象离代词太远，造成读者对代词的意义不明确的情况也屡见不鲜。

（3）冠词，尤其是定冠词的用法模糊不清。

（4）不定冠词 a 和 an 在用法上的差异不确定。

［对策］

（1）在使用第二及第三人称代词的时候，一定要明确代词的具体所指，不要造成上下文中突然出现某个代词，却缺乏明确所指的情况。

（2）注意语义上的连贯，前后统一；注意所指对象不要离代词太远。

（3）汉语中没有冠词，因此对学生而言是个难点。解决的办法只有一个，就是在学习中不断积累，最终达到掌握冠词用法的规律。其中包括：第一、区别定冠词和不定冠词的用法；第二、注意元音音素开头而非元音字母开头（如 hour 就属元音音素开头）的可数名词单数用 an 而不是 a。

（4）在明确定冠词的特指、类指和独指性用法的同时，更要在日常学习中注意冠词跟名词的搭配，如：the People’s Republic of China，the SAR government，the SARS Virus 等。另外，像 society 和 nature 这样的词，在没有修饰词进行特指的情况下，不应该在前面加上定冠词。如 Let nature has its way. 不能说 Let the nature has its way.

6. 英汉文化差异

基于英汉文化的差异，很多的翻译并不能够严丝合缝地进行直译，在某些场合下，译文与字面意思甚至有天壤之别。

（1）He is really a lady-killer.

【误译】他确实是个女杀手。

【正译】他确实是个对女人很有吸引力的男人。

（2）His wife is out of this world.

【误译】他太太漂亮极了。

【正译】他的太太去世了。

（3）Would you like high tea?

【误译】你喜欢喝浓茶吗?

【正译】你喜欢喝“下午茶”吗?

（4）Some ten people were present.

【误译】有好几十人出席。

【正译】大约有十个人出席。

（5）Dahai is his fair-weather friend.

【误译】大海是他的好天气朋友。

【正译】大海是他的酒肉朋友。

（6）当有人在生气时对你说：Go to bath!

【误译】洗澡去!

【正译】滚蛋!

（7）经常听到有人问身边结婚的朋友说：Are you a hen-pecked husband?

【误译】你是一个被母鸡啄过的丈夫吗?

【正译】你怕老婆吗?

（8）我们可能偶尔会听到有人跟另外的一个人说：Can you live with it?

【误译】你能与它生活在一起吗?

【正译】你能忍受吗?

（9）Do you think she is the girl of the old school?

【误译】你认为她是旧学校的学生吗?

【正译】你认为她是保守的学生吗?

（10）Jack is a true-blue person.

【误译】Jack是一个真正蓝眼睛的人。

【正译】Jack是一个忠实的人。

第三章　英译汉的翻译难点及应试策略

由于译入的语言是我们的母语，因此，英译汉最大的难点就是容易出现理解上的错误或者误差，其次才是表达上的难点，即如何用汉语准确、流畅地传达原文所要表达的内容。这两个方面是相辅相成的。理解首先要从原文的语言入手，然后还要注意语言的文化背景、逻辑关系和具体的语言环境；而表达则要求考生把自己所理解的内容正确、充分而又自然地传达给读者。理解是表达的前提，表达是理解的结果。当然，理解并不意味着一定会有正确、流畅的表达。因为表达除了取决于正确的理解外，还取决于考生的汉语水平和翻译技巧的综合运用。表达不好就会使翻译出来的东西晦涩难懂，甚至引起误解。

一、语言现象的理解及表达手段

尽管英译汉题型变成了选择，但是这只是难度降低了，英译汉的标准和要求仍然没有变化，只有同学们熟练掌握英译汉翻译要点，做题才能灵活应变。

［陷阱］

1. 一词多意是英语的一个重要的语言特点，一个单词在一个地方是这个意思，出现在另一个地方其含意有可能大相径庭，相差甚远。

例 1　He broke her up by telling her that he did not love her any more.

当他告诉她，他不再爱她的时候，她的心都碎了。

例 2　He really wants to have a break of all this hamburgers every day.

他实在不想继续天天吃汉堡包了。

2. 尽管英语和汉语中的许多专有名词都是对等的，如 computer（电脑）、ear phone（耳机）、supermarket（超级市场）等。但是，由于历史、文化、地理、经济、政治背景和社会习俗等的不同，两种语言反映客观事物的角度、方法等也有着极大的差别。例如：英语中的“black tea”在汉语中却是“红茶”，因为英语是从茶叶本身的颜色定义的，而与之相对应的汉语则是从所泡出来的茶水的颜色来定义的。

3. 任何一种语言，在使用的过程中都会形成一些固定的词组和常用的搭配，英语也是一样。这些搭配有的可以直接翻译成汉语，有的则不然。例如：raining dogs and cats（倾盆大雨），eat like a horse（食量超人），heavy drinker（嗜酒成瘾的人）等。如果这些英文被分别翻译成：“下着狗和猫，吃的像匹马，沉重的喝酒人”，那么一定会让人不知所云。

4. 两种语言虽然词类数目相差无几，词类也大同小异，但词的使用与表达方式却不尽相同，英语中原来属于哪类的词，译成汉语却不一定非得是那种词性，比如说名词不一定非得译成名词，动词也不一定非得是动词，它们可以先相互转换，有时必须转换成另一类不同的词。如果按照词性一

一对译，在很多情况下难以表达其真正的含义，而且译文也可能不合乎汉语的表达习惯和规范。例如：

For 20 years they were passive witnesses to deterioration of prices of our raw materials and an excessive increase of the prices of manufactured goods.

不理想译文：在20年中，我们是原料价格下跌，工业品价格暴涨的消极目击者。

说明：上面的译文中，词类大致与原文相符，但译文却不太符合汉语的表达习惯。

理想译文：他们在20年内见证了原料价格的下跌与工业品价格的暴涨。

［对策］

1. 鉴于英语中一词多义的现象十分普遍，因此，在英译汉时，一定要结合其词性和上下文仔细推敲，确定其在具体语境中的确切含义，切忌望文生义，不求甚解。

2. 对于一些专有名词、术语、固定词组和常用搭配等，由于不能自由发挥，因此在平时学习中一定要注意积累，尽可能的多记忆。

3. 词类转换是翻译中一个非常重要的方法和技巧，目的是用标准、规范、符合汉语习惯的表达方式准确体现原文的意义。现介绍几种常用的方法。

二、直译和意译

直译是既忠于原文形式，又忠于原文内容的翻译方法，这就要求翻译者在保持原意的基础上，力求使原文在选词、句法、修辞及文章风格等各个方面尽可能趋于一致。直译法经常用于一些短语和习语的翻译。

例：cold war 冷战，money politics 金钱政治，hot line 热线，black market 黑市，a one-stone-killing-two-bird plan 一石两鸟之计。

上面这些例子通过直译保存了原文的表现手法。

意译一般情况下是指忠实于原文内容而不拘泥于原文结构形式和修辞手法的翻译方法。语言是文化的载体，体现不同民族、种族间不同的历史、文化、风俗、地域差异，所以，当我们进行翻译的时候，我们要根据具体的文化背景做具体的翻译，如 black sheep 害群之马。

三、词义的选择与引申

1. 词义的选择

在英语中有些词的意思就不下几十种，这种现象在英语和汉语中都很普遍，如：“take”。再如汉语中的“下”，仅仅用简单的英语“under”或者“below”解释是根本行不通的，它必须是在表示实在意义的情况下，才能够做到准确翻译，如：“下班”“下地”“下面”等。造成这种一词多义的原因，一是这些词本身就是多义词；二是这些词在不同的场合下使用，具体表示的意思有所不同。

（1）就汉语词汇而言，一个“老”字的选择到英语中就可以翻译成若干个版本。老百姓 common people，老板 boss，老伴儿 husband or wife，老本 capital，老粗 an uneducated person，老底

one’s past，老公 husband，老虎 tiger，老话 old saying，老家 native/hometown，老江湖 a well-traveled，worldly-wise person，老酒 wine，老外 foreigner，老爷 master。

（2）就英语词汇而言，hold 可以说是多义词的典范。如在《牛津高阶英汉双解词典》中，其意义可达几十个。虽然都是动词，但是也不能简单的翻译成为“拿着”。例如：

①I don’t think the shelf will hold if we put anything else on it.

我看再放上其他东西，那架子就不稳了。

②If their luck holds，the Chinese football team could win the championship in the 2010 World Cup.

如果能够继续交好运，中国足球队有可能获得 2010 年世界杯的冠军。

③A good teacher must be able to hold her pupils attention.

优秀的教师一定能够吸引住学生。

④The ship is holding a northeast course.

船只继续向东北方向航行。

⑤He is afraid that his criminal record will be held against him when he applies for a job.

他担心自己有犯罪前科，不好找工作。

⑥He promised her a honeymoon in Paris when they got married，and she held him to it.

他们结婚时，他答应她到巴黎度蜜月，她要求他遵守诺言。

以上六个例子都体现了“hold”一词的用法，词意不尽相同。当然，这只是《词典》中的一部分。所以，对于一个翻译者来说，不能对词的翻译一概而论，而是要具体问题具体分析。要做到准确翻译，要考虑的因素很多，因为本书的编撰主要是针对同学们对于翻译的实践性的了解和运用，我们现在就具体分析一下我们在翻译过程中应该具体注意的问题。

2. 词义的引申

词义引申是英语翻译和汉语翻译中常常会使用的方法之一、目的就是使一种文化中的习惯用法能够被另一种文化的读者所读懂。翻译中我们经常会看到这样的问题，就是某些英语句子的翻译，如果按着字面意思翻译，就会令汉语读者非常费解，同样，如果一些汉语句子按照字面意思翻译成英语，同样也会使英语国家的读者不知所云。为了避免这种情况，我们就会用到引申的手法。

（1）词义转换的引申手法。这种情况的使用主要是因为在某些翻译中，找不到合适的释义，如果按照字面意思翻译，会使文章读起来很别扭。如：

China claims that international trade should not be a one-way street and should obey win-win concept.

中国宣称国际贸易不应当有来无往，应该遵循双赢策略。

The high price for the package tour in the travel service has discouraged its business income.

这家旅行社跟团游价格高，使其收入受到限制。

（2）抽象化的引申方法。在翻译中，我们常常可以看到一些用具体形象的词或短语来表示某种特性、事物、概念等的用法，在这种情况下，我们可以把这种含义用比较笼统概括的词加以表达。如：

The poor people also have their smiles and tears.

穷人们也有自己的欢乐和悲伤。

The technological process was then a newcomer in China，so not so many people are familiar with that.

这种技术流程当年在中国才刚刚问世，所以熟悉它的人不多。

（3）具体化的引申方法。我们也需要把一些含义比较朝向而概括的词用含义比较明确而具体的词表达出来。如：

At 50，it was the first time that I had learned what it is to leave my hometown.

50 岁的时候，我第一次真正体会到背井离乡的滋味。

Many voices have been raised to attack the terrorists after 9 • 11 tragedies.

很多人在“9 • 11 事件”以后都要求打击恐怖分子。

四、词类转换

在汉译英时，如果照搬翻译成汉语句子中相对应的成分，这样会使句子读起来很拗口，所以我们要根据句子的用法和习惯，对所要翻译的句子在忠实原文的基础上，适当地进行词类转换。看看下面的例子：

1. Those small factories are also lavish consumers，and wasters of raw materials.

原译：那些小厂还是原材料极大的消耗者和浪费者。

改译：那些小厂还极大消耗和浪费了原材料。

把英语中“consumers”和“wasters”直接翻译，使得句子读来很不地道，而改译后的句子则更符合中国人的阅读习惯。

2. Tom is a great football player.

在此句中 player 可以翻译为运动员或选手，但依据汉语习惯，翻译为动词更合适，即：汤姆足球踢得很好。所以不难看出，词类转换是一种突破原文词性束缚，避免硬译、死译，使译文准确、通顺的一种非常有效的方法。

五、英汉翻译中的语法分析

从中学学习英语时起，我们大家就陆续学习过一些基本的语法知识，这些语法知识在英汉翻译里有很大用武之地。搞英汉翻译实践，就是要探讨如何运用已学过的普通语法知识来解决翻译中所遇到的实际困难，最终把译文表达好。

英语句子的语序排列是：主语—谓语—宾语（补语）。修饰部分（定语，状语等）放置在被修饰语的前面后面。句子结构，尤其是语法排序发生变化时就会给译者在理解和表达方面带来一定的困难。

1. there be 结构与翻译

这是一种特殊而常用的英语句型，专门用来表示存在。这种句子常与地点连用，相当于汉语的“有”。实际上，在科技、时政英语中，这种结构往往不带状语，而带有各种结构不同的定语，译者

要引起注意，翻译时根据上下文灵活掌握。下面将进一步分析。

译成谓语。如：

There are different elements in nature.

自然界有各种不同的元素。

不带状语的“There be”结构，有时可以把原文的主语部分拆开来译，一部分译成汉语的主语，另一部分译成谓语“有”的宾语。如：

There are three ways of heat transfer：conduction，radiation and convection.

传热的方式有三种：传导、辐射、对流。

带地点状语“There be”结构，一般可译成汉语的“某处有……”。如：

Is there anything in the fridge电冰箱里有东西吗?

不带状语“There be”结构，有时可以直接译文汉语主句“有”或其他动词。如：

Where there is a will，there is a way. 有志者事竟成。

There may have been an accident. 可能发生事故了。

译成兼语式。如：

There are several ways of turning sunshine directly into electricity.

有几种方法可以把阳光直接转换成电。

除上面列举的一些形式外，还有其他一些译法，考生可根据情况灵活处理。

2. **倒装**

倒装有两种：一种为修饰性倒装；一种为非修饰性倒装。非修饰性倒装由原文语法结构所决定，因此又叫做结构性倒装。英语中的疑问句、感叹句、there be结构，以so，then等开头的句子，某些由as引导的让步状语从句等都属于此类。这类句子不给句子增加任何附加意义或感情色彩，故本书不予讨论。

修辞性倒装是一种用来加强语气，突出顽抗到底的某一部分的手段。实际上，句子的任何一个部分都可以成为强调的对象，也就是说，都可以进行倒装。这些用作强调的被提前或后移的部分，在理解上不会造成太大的困难，不过要在译文中恰如其分的体现出原文的确切含义和分寸，考生还需要费些苦心。

（1）主谓倒装

例如：On came the hoof tramps and the voices of the riders，two grave old voices，covering soberly as they drew near.

马蹄声和骑马人的说话声越来越近了，两个低沉而苍老的声音正在安详地交谈。

These two poets you cannot avoid reading aloud to yourself，or（as it chances）to some single person listening.

对着两位诗人的作品，你肯定会忍不住要吟颂出来或者（凑巧的话）读给某一位知己倾听。

（2）状语倒装

例如：Softly，frozen with anxiety and fear，she turned the door handle.

她怀着沉重的忧虑和恐惧，轻轻地转动门把。

3. **被动语态**

在被动句中，英语使用“主语＋谓语（＋by 短语）”的结构形式来表达“受事者—行动—施事者”相互间的关系。这种结构与汉语的表达方式有很大的不同。不同之处主要有两点：①英语用分词形式，即“be＋过去分词”形式，汉语没有这一形式；②英语句子必须主、谓、宾齐全，以受事者作主语，目的既可能是不希望施事者出现，也可能是强调受事者，或基于句子连贯、修辞等方面的考虑；汉语一般都放在谓语之后，汉语由介词带出的施事者一般不放在谓语之后。译者在翻译时，需考虑到英汉语被动句的差异，根据汉语的用法特点做适当的调整。例如：

It must be dealt with at the appropriate time with appropriate means.

【译文】这个计划必须在适当的时候用适当的手段予以处理。

在翻译这句英语时，译者在汉语译文动词前加“予以”这两个词，句子结构达到平衡。

英语被动语态是英语中一种复杂的语言现象。从意义上看，要区别被动意义和主动意义却不是十分容易的，因为即使是“be＋过去分词”这种被动形式的句子也不都是被动意义的：相反，有的主动语态形式却有被动意义。例如：

He was tempted to go on.（被动式，主动意）他想继续干下去。

The book needs printing.（主动式，被动意）书要印刷。

从英语被动句的汉译情况看，汉语用虚词、动词或用其他一些特殊结构表达被动意义与英语被动句表达的被动意义并不是一致对等的。说汉语的人对汉语被动意义的句子所产生的联想和说英语的人对英语被动句的联想，有时存在较大的差异。

英语被动句一般认为比较客观，不带任何感情色彩，因此在一些科技理论性文体中使用较多。

汉语中表达比较客观的态度，往往是一些无主句。因此，汉语理论性文体中经常出现无主句，如：加强公路建设，改善农村条件。同时，大力加强邮电通信建设。因此，在翻译英语被动句时，有时，可以译为 无主句，如：Quality must be guaranteed first. 首先要保证质量。(无主语句)

汉语被动句可以分为有标志被动句和无标志被动句。汉语是以表意为主的语言，如果表达的被动意义清楚，汉语中是不一定要用“被”“叫”等字的。如：独立思考的能力还未养成。有标志的被动句就是那些借助词汇表示被动意义的句子，如：他叫人打的下不了地。

有标志的被动句，由于其被动意义的词本身所具有的感情色彩，在英语被动语态的翻译时，要明辨原文句子所包含的情感，选择恰当的汉语表达被动意义的词，这样才能把原文的含义较好地表达出来。

英语受事者所受到的行为，如果是不愉快的、不幸的，汉译时，选用“被”“给”“遭受”等，如：

He was policed by the boss’s cops. 他受到了老板所雇佣的警察的监督。

Our foreign policy is supported by the people all over the world.

我们的外交政策得到全世界人民的支持。

而“加以”“予以”“为”“由”等汉语词用在被动句中，有时表示愉快动作，有时也可以表示不愉快的动作，有时则是中性的，既没有愉快的感觉，也没有不幸的感觉。如：

The matter must be discussed at the meeting.

（中性）这件事必须在会上予以讨论。

总之，英语被动句的汉译，绝不可能出现完全整齐的对译。在理解上，我们要区别被动语态的

真正含义，是形式被动和意义被动一致，还是不一致；另外，还要明辨其内在的情感。在表达上，要考虑本国的表达习惯，以及汉语表达被动意义的词汇有可能产生的联想意义。只有这样，才能把英语被动语态准确地转成地道的汉语。

六、语序调整

语序是句子中词的先后顺序的排列，而学习英语的人不难发现，汉语和英语在语序方面的差别是很大的。这就要求在翻译过程中，能够对语序有一定的调整和变化，这样才能使句子更加自然。例如：

I cannot bear the sight of that man.

原译：我无法忍受看见那个人。

改译：我一看到那个人就难受。

比较一下我们可以看出：原译拘泥于原文，让人读起来别扭，而改译后的句子读起来就比较上口。下面，我们就语序调整的问题看看以下几种情况。

1. 定语语序的调整

英语中定语种类繁多，形式也各不一样，而且所放的地方也各不相同，所以就需要对不同情况下的定语语序有一个了解，这样在翻译过程中，我们就能尽可能让句子顺畅一些。

（1）单词后置定语语序的调整。英语中，单词构成后置定语的情况下，翻译时，要置于所修饰的中心词之前，这类后置的单词主要包括：

以-able或-ble结尾的形容词。例如：

This is the only reference book available here about the subject.

这是这里唯一能够找到的有关该题目的参考书。

They are trying their best to get all the assistance possible.

他们正竭尽全力，争取得到一切可能得到的帮助。

一些表示时间，地点的副词。如：

The strong dollar abroad has reduced exports and increased imports.

国外美元的坚挺已经使美国的出口下降，进口增加。

The social system there has undergone great changes for the past few years.

过去几年里，那里的社会经历了巨大的变革。

修饰由some，any，nobody，everything等构成的不定代词的定语。例如：

He wants to get someone reliable to help the work.

他想找一个可靠的人帮助做这项工作。

Everybody present was deeply moved.

在场的每一个人都深受感动。

（2）两个或两个以上前置定语语序的调整。在英语中，如果有两个或两个以上的词语做前置定语，语序安排的基本原则是：从范围小到范围大的，由次要的到主要的，从程度弱的到程度强的，由一般到专有，但是在汉语中这类词的排序却恰恰相反。所以，在翻译过程中要注意这种变化和调

整。例如：

The solution is to globalize major Australian corporations.

解决的办法就是将澳大利亚的主要公司推向全球。

They endeavor to produce more and better products to meet the growing home and world market needs.

他们努力生产更多更好的产品，以满足国内外市场日益增长的需要。

（3）中心词又有前置定语，又有后置定语时的语序调整。在这种情况下，一般是将后置定语调整为前置定语，而后置定语的位置则需要根据具体情况调整。例如：

The old professor in spectacles is the head of the English Department.

那个戴眼镜的老教授是英语系的主任。

APEC will also face different problems arising from the growing up.

亚太经济合作组织也将面临发展过程中出现的各种问题。

2. 定语从句词序的调整

（1）英语中定语从句在翻译时，如果句子较短，则翻译为前置定语，如果句子较长，则根据情况翻译，有的翻译为并列句，有的翻译为各种独立成分。例如：

Everything that is around us is matter.

我们周围的一切事物都是物质。

He was one of the earliest English grammarians who paid attention to this problem.

他是最早注意到这一问题的英语语法学家之一。

在翻译过程中，需要将英语中的后置状语翻译成汉语中的前置状语，这种调整适用于做状语的单个副词，或一些短语，而且有些状语从句也可以这样处理。例如：

I remember I have seen him somewhere.（2011年）

我记得在哪见过他。

There isn’t such a word in English so far as I know.

据我所知，英语里并没有这样一个词。

（2）一个句子中同时出现几个状语的语序调整。无论是在英语中还是在汉语中，有可能在同一个句子中包含几个状语，英语中状语的排列顺序一般是：方式状语—地点状语—时间状语，而在汉语中这些状语的次序往往相反：时间状语—地点状语—方式状语。所以，在翻译的时候，要根据具体的情况有所调整。例如：

We ate to our heart’s content at her home last Sunday.

我们上个星期在她家饱餐了一顿。

The communications satellite can provide voice and data signals to any place and any time effectively.

通讯卫星可以在任何时间向任何地点有效地传递声音和数据信号。

（3）一个句子中同时出现两个（或更多）时间状语或者地点状语，通常是代表较小单位的状语在前，代表较大单位的状语在后，而汉语中则是恰恰相反，越大的单位越在前面，单位越小越往后，因此，英汉翻译中也必须针对两种语言的这种差异做出调整。例如：

This contract signed in New York on 8 August，1998.

该合同于1998年8月8日在纽约签订。

For further detail，contact：International Language Center，86York，London.

欲知详情，请询问：伦敦市约克街86号，国际语言中心。

3. **插入语语序的调整**

因为插入语本身和句子的关系不是很紧密，插入语可以放在句子的前面或后面，比较灵活。所以，在翻译的时候，不一概而论，只要符合汉语的语言习惯，又不会改变句子原文的意思即可。例如：

In the long term，however，Thailand has to give way to Indonesia as ASEAN's most popular tourism destination.

然而，从长远来看，泰国作为东盟最受欢迎的旅游地的地位，可能要让位于印度尼西亚。

There were eighteen people present，to be precise.

确切的说，出席的有18人。

4. **倒装句语序的调整**

倒装句在表达上有强调，或者突出句子的意思，所以，在翻译的时候，首先要搞清楚倒装句要表达的语气，再根据具体的情况来调整句子，使表达清晰明了。例如：

What they are asked to do in 10 days，they finished in two days.

让他们十天做的事情，他们两天就做完了。

Little do we suspect that this district is rich in mineral resources.

我们一点都不怀疑这个地区矿产资源丰富。

5. **并列成分的语序调整**

句子中有并列句时，有些时候英语和汉语的排列次序差异很大。英语中通常按照逻辑上的轻重、前后、因果或部分与整体的顺序安排，汉语中则通常是将较大、较强、较突出或给人印象较深的成分前置。如：

food，clothing，shelter and transportation 衣食住行

north，south，east and west 东南西北

differences between the rich and poor 贫富差别

第四章　翻译历年典型真题详解

为使同学们更加精确的把握应试试题难度及趋势，在此特别选出部分英译汉及汉译英试题进行详细解析，帮助各位同学节省学习时间，加深题目理解。

1. 物体离我们越远，看起来就越小。(2010)

【翻译】The farther an object is away from us，the smaller it looks.

【解析】这道题的考查重点是“the＋比较级，the＋比较级”。

2. 邻居们都不能容忍他那样对年迈的父亲说话。(2007)

【翻译】The neighbors can’t bear the way he talks to his old father.

【解析】本题考查的是大家对于 the way 做先行词，当定语从句不缺成分时它的定语从句中关系词可以是 that，in which 或者省略。

3. “After you，please!” the gentlemen said politely to the lady when they came to the entrance. (2011)

【翻译】当他们在进口处时，这些绅士礼貌对女士说，“您先请!”

【解析】这个题目没有难词，但是很多人在翻译“after you”的时候直译成在你后面，但其实我们可以想象一下场景，绅士对女士是礼貌的，肯定是说“您先请”啦!

4. When it came to his amazing achievements，the famous scientist put an emphasis on the importance of creating rather than waiting for opportunities. (2010)

【翻译】当谈及自己惊人的成就时，那位著名的科学家强调了创造机会而非等待机会的重要性。

【解析】“when it comes to…”这个句型在作文中经常用到，翻译成“当谈及到……”而后半句则要考查“put an emphasis on”，强调的意思。

5. 就是在这间小屋里，他们勤奋地工作着。(2006)

【翻译】It is in this small house that they are working hard (industriously) .

【解析】本题考查的是强调句“It is＋强调部分＋that…”“正就……/就是。”

6. 这口钟大约有三个人那么高。(2003)

【翻译】The bell is about three times as tall as a person.

【解析】本题考查的是形容词同级比较的倍数的表示方法，基本结构“……倍数＋as…as…”

7. A punctual person is in the habit of doing a thing at the proper time and is never late in keeping an appointment. The unpunctual man，on the other hand，never does what he has to do at the proper time. (2003)

【翻译】守时的人习惯于按时行动，并从来不会在约会中迟到；而不守时的人却从不按时行动。

【解析】意思理解上要准确把握词汇 punctual，unpunctual 及词组 keep an appointment 和 on the other hand 的含义和译法；由转折连词“on the other hand”可知前后两句话的意思应该相反。

8. 由你决定邀请谁来参加下周的聚会。(2004)

【翻译】It's up to you who will be invited to the party next week.

【解析】"be up to sb." 意思是"由……决定，由……选择"。此题的另一个难点是考生要根据语义判断出英文应译成被动句。

9. 这部电影使我回想起了在北京所看到的情景。(2004)

【翻译】The film reminds me of the sight I saw in Beijing.

【解析】"remind sb of sth." 是固定用法，意思是"使某人想起某事"。另外，the film 也可以用 the movie 代替。I saw in Beijing 是一个定语从句对其前的 sight 进行修饰限定。

10. Jim used to think that the more time he spent on his studies, the better grades he would receive. But now he has realized that it is not always the case. (2004)

【翻译】吉姆过去常常认为花在学习上的时间越多成绩就会越好，但是现在他认识到事实往往并非如此。

【解析】正确理解和翻译短语 used to do（过去常常，过去一直）；句型 the more…the better（越多……越好）及常用表达法 it is not the case（事情/事实并非如此）。

11. It is useful to be able to predict the extent to which a price change will affect supply and demand. (2005)

【翻译】能预测物价的变动对供应和需求的影响程度是有用的。

【解析】本句的结构：It 为形式主语，真正的主语是动词不定式短语 be able to predict…，to which 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 the extent。翻译的关键是按汉语习惯调整语序，恢复动词不定式主语地位，同时将原文的后置定语从句变成前置定语。

12. 直到天黑了，他才意识到太晚了而无法回家。(2005)

【翻译】He didn't realize it was too late to go home until it was dark.

Not until it was dark did he realize that it was too late to go home.

【解析】汉语的"直到……才……"在英语中常用"not…until"句型来表达，"太晚而无法回家"则要用英语"too…to"太……而不能……结构翻译。

13. 既然你明天就要动身，今晚我们可以一起共进晚餐。(2005)

【翻译】Since you are leaving tomorrow, we can have dinner together tonight.

【解析】汉语"既然"虽表示原因，但语气较轻，一般不译成"because"或"as"，而要译成"since "。考察引导原因状语从句的连词的区别和用法。此外，英语中 come，go，leave 等短暂性动词，常用进行时表示将来安排好的活动和事件，这一点需要考生特别注意。

14. It is obvious that the development of science and technology is vital to the modernization of China. (2006)

【翻译】很明显，科技的发展对中国现代化有着至关重要的作用。

【解析】理解要点：题干句型为 it 做形式主语，真正的主语是 that 引导的从句。形容词短语"be vital to…"意思是"对……至关重要"。

15. As far as the method itself is concerned, it is worth trying. (2006)

【翻译】就这种方法本身而言，是值得试一试的。

【解析】理解和翻译的难点有两个：其一"as far as sb./sth. be concerned"是习惯表达法，意

为“就……而言”。其二“be worth doing”意为“值得做某事”或“某事是值得做的”。

16. 和远方的朋友保持联系不是一件容易的事。(2007)

【翻译】It is not easy to keep in touch with friends when they are far away.

【解析】此句翻译的关键有二：一是判断出英语应采用形式主语句，原文主语转换成不定式短语；二是正确使用词组“to keep in touch with sb”来翻译“和……保持联系”。

17. 随着经济的发展，在中国旅游正越来越受到人们的欢迎。(2008)

【翻译】With the development of economy，travelling is becoming more and more popular in China now.

【解析】此句翻译的关键是将原句的“随着经济的发展”转换成英语中介词“with ”引导的短语，做句子的伴随状语。此外，现在进行时也是本句的考查重点。

18. 他的演讲激励我们比以往任何时候都要更加努力工作。(2008)

【翻译】His speech inspired us to work harder than ever before.

【解析】本句考查的重点是比较句的表达。考生还需要掌握核心词“激励”，即便写不出答案上的说法，也可以写成“encourage sb to do”“than ever before（比以往任何的时候)”，这是一个基本的比较从句。

19. 一个人想要健康，每天锻炼身体是非常必要的。(2008)

【翻译】It’s very necessary for a person who wants to be healthy to do exercises every day.

【解析】此句考查的的重点有两个：一是条件从句；二是考生对形式主语句句式结构的掌握。此外，如果考生将实际主语译成从句形式，还要注意“it is necessary that…”表达式中，不管主语是单数还是复数，动词要用原形形式。

20. 人们只有生病了才知道健康的价值。(2009)

【翻译】Only when people fall ill can/will they come to know the value of health.

【解析】此题考查的是倒装句的使用。当 only 含有绝对含义的词位于句首时，句子的主谓要倒装，其结构为：only＋条件状语＋情/助/be＋主＋动词形式。考生可以此题为例，牢记这一结构。另外，关于“生病”的表达，英语中也有很多，be sick，be ill，get ill 都可以。

21. We know that a cat whose eyes can take in many more rays of light than our eyes，can see clearly at night. (2009)

【翻译】我们知道，由于猫的眼睛比人的眼睛能吸收更多的光线，所以它在夜里能看得很清楚。

【解析】此句在专升本考试中算是较难的句子。包含了两个层次，“we know…”是主干，属于主句，引导接下来的宾语从句；whose eyes…. 是定语从句，在此处定语从句的翻译也比较灵活，可以按照汉语的逻辑关系，使用“因为……所以”的语义关联词，翻译成因果关系。

22. 无论生活多难，我都不会失去信心。(2010)

【翻译】No mater how hard life is，I will never lose my faith/confidence.

【解析】此句考查的是专升本的重点句型，较为简单，但是此句型也是在专升本考试中常常出现，考生要给与一定的关注度。“no matter…”，译为“无论……都……”，no matter how/however＋adj. /adv. ＋主＋谓……（无论怎样/无论多么)；失去信心在英语中的表达也可以很多，比如：lose hope，lose confidence 都可以得分。

第五章　翻译历年真题及答案

2001 年

Section A：Translate the following into Chinese.

61. In addition，75％ of the world's mail is written in English. 60％ of the world's radio station is broadcasted in English.

62. A supermarket is different from other types of stores in several ways.

63. A product that is placed at eye level on a shelf sells much better than one which is placed on a lower or higher shelf.

64. How men first learned to invent words is unknown，in other words，the origin of language is a mystery.

65. We should，therefore，learn to choose our words carefully and use them accurately or they will make our speech silly and vulgar.

Section B：Translate the following into English.

66. 学好一门外语是非常重要的。

67. 他花了大约半年的时间才完成这篇论文。

68. 你让我做的事情我都已做完了。

69. 一旦他适应了新环境，他就会取得更大的进步。

70. 无论贫富，人人都有受教育的权利。

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into Chinese.

61. 另外，世界上 75％的信件是用英语写成的，60％的广播电台是用英语播音的。

62. 超市在某些方面都与其他类别的商店有所不同。

63. 放在货架目视水平线上的商品要比放在低处或高处的商品卖的好。

64. 我们不知道，人们最先是如何学会去发明文字的，换句话说，语言的起源是一个谜。

65. 所以，我们应该学会慎重地选择和准确地运用词汇，否则就会使我们的讲话变得愚蠢和粗俗。

Section B：Translate the following into English.

66. It's very important to learn a foreign language well.

67. It took him about half a year to finish the paper/essay.

68. I have done what you asked me to do.

69. Once he adapts to the new surroundings (atmosphere/circumstance/environment), he will make greater progress.

70. Whether rich or poor, everyone has the right to receive education.

2003 年

Section A: Translate the following into English.

71. 这口钟大约有三个人那么高。

72. 我听说刘同志在申请回原单位。

73. 这本书非常有趣，我一口气就把它读完了。

74. 我跟他说了几次，可他一个劲地看书，根本就没听见我说什么。

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

75. As well as being used for taking photographs, X-rays are used for treating diseased parts of the body in order to kill the disease.

76. A punctual person is in the habit of doing a thing at the proper time and is never late in keeping an appointment. The unpunctual man, on the other hand, never does what he has to do at the proper time.

77. In Britain today it is easier for young people to commit crimes because they have more freedom to go where they like and more money to do what they like.

78. A young housewife in Mexico looks into the cooking pot to see if the food she is cooking is done. She is especially interested in her dinner because she is using a new kind of cooker—one that gets its heat directly from the sun.

KEY

Section A: Translate the following into English.

71. The bell is about three times as tall as one person.

72. I heard that Mr. Liu was applying for returning to his former unit.

73. The book is so interesting that I finished reading it without any stop.

74. I had told him several times, but he kept on reading without hearing what I said.

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

75. X 光不仅用来照相，而且也用来治疗身体的病变部位。

76. 守时的人习惯于按时行动，从来不会在约会中迟到；而不守时的人却从不按时行动。

77. 当今，英国年轻人比以往更容易犯罪，因为他们有更多自由去他们想去的地方，有更多的钱去做想做的事情。

78. 一位年轻的墨西哥家庭主妇朝锅里看饭是否已经做好了，她对做晚餐特别感兴趣。因为她正用着一种新型的厨灶——一种直接从太阳那里获得热量的厨灶。

2004 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

71. 电脑在我们的日常生活中起着非常重要的作用。

72. 只要你不断努力，你迟早会取得成功的。

73. 由你决定邀请谁来参加下周的聚会。

74. 这部电影使我回想起了在北京所看到的情景。

75. 我已经习惯了这种生活方式。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

76. Success relies not only on one's ability but also on willingness to cooperate.

77. In spite of all the difficulties，they are determined to carry out their promises.

78. Educate a man and you educate an individual. But educate a woman and you educate a whole family.

79. Scientists have done countless experiments to show that praise is far more effective than criticism in improving human behavior.

80. Jim used to think that the more time he spent on his studies，the better grades he would receive. But now he has realized that it is not always the case.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

71. Computers play a very important role in our daily life.

72. If you keep working hard，you will achieve success sooner or later.

73. It's up to you who will be invited to the party next week.

74. The film reminds me of the scene I saw in Beijing.

75. I have already been used to this life style.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

76. 成功不仅取决于一个人的能力而且取决于合作的意愿。

77. 虽然有很多困难，他们还是下定决心履行诺言。

78. 教育男人就意味着教育了一个人。教育女人就意味着教育了一个家庭。

79. 科学家们已经作了无数实验来证明表扬要远比批评更能有效地改进人的举止。

80. 吉姆过去常常认为花在学习上的时间越多成绩就会越好，但是现在他认识到事实往往并非如此。

2005 年

Section A：Translate the following into Chinese

71. In Britain today women make up 44% of the workforce，and nearly half the mothers with children are in paid work.

72. It is useful to be able to predict the extent to which a price change will affect supply and demand.

73. We love peace，yet we are not the kind of people to yield to any military threat.

74. Whenever circumstances permitted，they would come and lend us a helping hand.

75. It won't make much difference whether you leave or stay.

Section B：Translate the following into English

76. 正式语言主要用于政府报告、考试作文和商业信函中。

77. 据当地报纸报道，昨天这家银行遭到抢劫。

78. 直到天黑了，他才意识到太晚了而无法回家。

79. 既然你明天就要动身，今晚我们可以一起共进晚餐。

80. 英国人对不同的文化和不同的做事方式不太熟悉，这种情况在其他国家也是如此。

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into Chinese.

71. 当今在英国，妇女占劳动总人数的44%。几乎一半有孩子的妇女工作赚钱。

72. 能预测物价的变动对供应和需求的影响程度是有用的。

73. 我们热爱和平，然而我们不是那种屈服于武力威胁的人。

74. 无论任何时候情况允许的话，他们会来帮助我们。

75. 你走还是留没太大影响。

Section B：Translate the following into English.

76. Formal language is mainly used in government reports，examination compositions and business letters.

77. It is reported in the local newspaper that the bank was robbed yesterday.

78. He didn't realize it was too late to go home until it was dark.

79. Since you are leaving tomorrow，we can have dinner together tonight.

80. The British are not so familiar with different cultures and different ways of doing things，as is often the case in other countries.

2006 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. 就是在这间小屋里，他们勤奋地工作着。

92. 如果我们不努力的话，就学不好英语。

93. 一个人的学习能力是无限的。

94. 人和动物的最大区别在于人能学习并使用语言。

95. 萨姆买不起他极想要的那种照相机，因为那相机太贵了。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

96. Whenever our motherland needs me，I will respond to her call.

97. It is obvious that the development of science and technology is vital to the modernization of China.

98. She refused to hand over the car keys to her husband until he had promised to wear his safety belt.

99. Quite a few young people nowadays have the habit of listening to background music while doing their homework.

100. As far as the method itself is concerned，it is worth trying.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. It is in this small house that they are working hard (industriously) .

92. If we don't work hard，we will never learn English well.

93. The ability of one's learning (the learning ability of a person) is unlimited.

94. The biggest difference between animals and human beings is that human can learn and use language.

95. Sam cannot afford the camera (which/that) he eagerly wants，because it's too expensive.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

96. 无论我们的祖国什么时候需要我，我都将响应她的号召。

97. 很明显，科技的发展对中国现代化有着至关重要的作用。

98. 直到丈夫答应把安全带系好，她才把车钥匙交给他。

99. 当今，有许多年轻人有做家庭作业时听背景音乐的习惯。

100. 就这种方法本身而言，是值得试一试的。

2007 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. 他一直全身心地扑在工作上。

92. 一天，苏珊（Susan）在浏览书籍时，被一个真实故事吸引住了。

93. 和远方的朋友保持联系不是一件容易的事。

94. 邻居们都不能容忍他那样对年迈的父亲说话。

95. 李大伯自己虽不富裕，但在别人需要帮助时他从不犹豫。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

96. Whether we like it or not，the world we live in has changed a great deal in the last hundred years.

97. The key to our room is attached to a large plastic block with the room number on it.

98. As I viewed these once familiar surroundings，images of me as a child there came to my mind.

99. Over years，I have written extensively about animal-intelligence experiments.

100. You'd better open a savings account at the bank near the university.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. He has devoted himself to his work.

92. One day，while scanning books，Susan was attracted by a true story.

93. It is not easy to keep in touch with friends when they are far away.

或 It is not easy to keep in touch with friends who are away from us.

94. The neighbors can't bear the way he talks to his old father.

95. Although he himself isn't rich，uncle Li never hesitates to help others in need.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

96. 无论我们喜不喜欢，我们生活的世界在过去一百年间已经变化了许多。

97. 我们的房间钥匙系在一块标有房门号的大塑料板上。

98. 当我看到这些我曾经熟悉的环境时，我想起了我孩提时住在那儿是个什么模样。

99. 多年来，我写了大量关于动物智力实验的文章。

100. 你最好在这所大学附近的那所银行开个储蓄账户。

2008 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. 随着经济的发展，在中国旅游正越来越受到人们的欢迎。

92. 他的演讲激励我们比以往任何时候都要更加努力工作。

93. 不管他们说什么，做你认为是正确的事。

94. 一个人想要健康，每天锻炼身体是非常必要的。

95. 他试了好几次，但实验还是以失败而告终。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

96. It's a great pleasure to have a friend coming from afar.

97. The good traditions of the Chinese people are certain to be passed on from generation to generation.

98. Love is like warm sunlight，which will not only bring joy to those who are loved but also add more pleasure to those who love.

99. People from all walks of life expressed their great respect to our soldiers because they are the loveliest people in the world.

100. Congratulations on your success in the National College Entrance Examination.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. With the development of economy，travelling is becoming more and more popular in China now.

92. His speech inspired us to work harder than ever before.

93. Whatever they say/No matter what they say, do what you think is right.

94. It's very necessary for a person who wants to be healthy to do exercises every day.

95. He had tried several times, but the experiment ended in failure.

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

96. 有朋自远方来不亦乐乎。

97. 中华民族的优良传统肯定会一代一代地传下去。

98. 爱犹如温暖的阳光，它不仅会给被爱的人带来快乐，也会给爱的人带来更多的快乐。

99. 各行各业的人向战士们表达了崇高的敬意，因为他们是世界上最可爱的人。

100. 祝贺您今年高考旗开得胜，金榜题名。

2009 年

Section A: Translate the following into English.

91. 他们已经十年没见面了。

92. 在我看来，讨论是解决问题的好方法。

93. 你应该利用课外一切机会学英语。

94. 她对知识有强烈的渴望，但不知道如何求知。

95. 人们只有生病了才知道健康的价值。

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

96. A friend in need is a friend indeed.

97. This idea sounds good, but will it work in practice?

98. It is estimated that about 80% of the world's population cannot afford to have proper food, housing or medical care.

99. Americans often say that there are only two things a person can be sure of in life: death and taxes.

100. We know that a cat, whose eyes can take in many more rays of light than our eyes, can see clearly at night.

KEY

Section A: Translate the following into English.

91. They haven't met each other for ten years.

92. In my opinion, discussion is a good solution to the problem.

93. You should take advantage of every opportunity to learn English out of class.

94. She has a strong desire for knowledge, but she doesn't know how to obtain it.

95. Only when people fall ill can/will they come to know the value of health.

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

96. 患难见真情。

97. 这个主意听起来不错，但实际上行得通吗?

98. 据估计，世界上大约有 80%的人口支付不起合理的饮食、住房和医疗保健费用。

99. 美国人常说，人的一生只有两件事是可以肯定的：死亡和纳税。

100. 我们知道，由于猫的眼睛比人的眼睛能吸收更多的光线，所以它在夜里能看得很清楚。

2010 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 长城是中国的历史文化符号之一。

82. 无论生活多难，我都不会失去信心。

83. 物体离我们越远，看起来就越小。

84. 政府已经采取积极措施防止空气污染。

85. 建设和谐校园的关键在于让每个学生都能积极参与进来。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. Practice should go hand in hand with theory.

87. What are closely related to our daily life are goods prices.

88. One who makes no investigation has no right to speak.

89. Individual freedom does not in any way mean that you can do what you like at your freewill.

90. When it came to his amazing achievements，the famous scientist put an emphasis on the importance of creating rather than waiting for opportunities.

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. A：你好！我叫张明，我在外语系学习，你学的是什么专业?

92. B：我学的是数学，英语难学吗?

93. A：难学，不过很有趣。

94. B：我很喜欢英国的文化，和我们国家的不一样。

95. A：是的，如果想更好地了解英国文化，首先应该学好英语。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

96. A：I like this dress. It's the latest，but the problem is the price，sort of expensive.

97. B：The price is quite reasonable，Madam.

98. A：But I'm still wondering if you could possibly give me a discount.

99. B：It's already been on sale，Madam. But since it fits you so perfectly，10% off，is that OK?

100. A：That's a deal！Thank you and I'd like to pay by credit card.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. The Great Wall is one of the symbols of Chinese history and culture.

82. No mater how hard/difficult life is，I will never lose my faith/confidence.

83. The farther an object/a body is away from us，the smaller it looks.

84. The government has already taken active measures/steps to prevent/stop the air pollution.

85. The key to constructing/building a harmonious campus is to have every student take part in it actively.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 实践应该和理论相结合。

87. 商品价格与我们的生活密切相关。

88. 没有调查就没有发言权。

89. 个体自由在任何意义上都不意味着你可以按照自由意志行事。

90. 当谈及自己惊人的成就时，那位著名的科学家强调了创造机会而非等待机会的重要性。

Section A：Translate the following into English.

91. A：Hi！ My name is Zhang Ming and I'm studying in Foreign Language Department. What's your major?

92. B：I'm major in Mathematics. Is English difficult to learn?

93. B：Yes. The language is hard to learn，but it's very interesting.

94. B：I like English culture very much. It's quite different from ours.

95. A：Yes，it is. If you want to learn English culture well/If you want to know more about English culture，you must first of all learn English well.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

96. A：我喜欢这件衣服，它是最新款的，但问题是价格，有点贵了。

97. B：夫人，这价格已经很合理了。

98. A：不知道您能不能给我打个折。

99. B：这件衣服已经在打折了，不过既然您穿上这么合适，打九折，怎么样。

100. A：就这么定了，谢谢您，我刷卡/我用信用卡付款。

2011 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 我记得我曾在哪里见过他。

82. 杰克想买一辆和玛丽一样的轿车。

83. 尽管困难重重，他们还是想方法提前完成了任务。

84. 昨天我急急忙忙地赶到火车站时，发现火车已经开走了。

85. 那位老人宁愿独居乡下，也不愿和儿子一起住在城里。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. The house was more luxuriously decorated than what was expected of it.

87. They didn't realize the consequence of their action，or they wouldn't have done such a thing.

88. "After you，please!" the gentlemen said politely to the lady when they came to the en-

trance.

89. Don't forget to remind me of returning the books to the library.

90. I won't be free tomorrow morning because I'll be seeing a friend off.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. I remember I have ever seen him somewhere.

82. Jack wants to buy a car that is the same as Mary's.

83. In spite of all the difficulties，they managed to finish the task ahead of time.

84. Yesterday，I hurried to the railway staion，only to find the train had already left.

85. That old man would rather live in the countryside alone than live in the city with his son.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 这个房子装修得比我们想象之中的还要奢华。

87. 他们没有意识到他们行为的后果，否则他们不会做出这样的事情。

88. 当他们在进口处时，这些绅士对女士说，“您先请!”

89. 不要忘记提醒我把书还给图书馆。

90. 我明天早上没空，因为我还要为一个朋友送行。

2012 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 你和同学相处得好吗?

82. 使我们失望的是，他没有恪守诺言。

83. 我前天收到了一封用法语写的信。

84. 他年纪轻轻就已经成为了世界上最杰出的艺术家之一。

85. 就是在那个电影院我们第一次相遇。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. He talks about you nine times out of ten when we have a chat.

87. That's the last thing I'd expect you to do.

88. Not all the new drugs have been sufficiently tested for safety.

89. We will not make greater progress unless we face up any difficulties bravely.

90. We are used to thinking that women enjoy shopping more than men.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. Do you get along well with your classmates?

82. To our disappointment，he didn't keep his promise.

83. I received a letter (which had been) written in French the day before yesterday.

84. Although he is young, he has been one of the greatest artists in the world.

85. It was at the cinema that we met each other for the first time.

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 我和他聊天的时候，十次有九次他都要谈到你。

87. 我最不期望你做那件事。

88. 不是所有的药物都进行过充分的安全试验。

89. 除非我们勇敢地面对任何困难，否则我们不会取得更大的进步。

90. 我们习惯性认为，女人比男人更享受购物这件事。

2013 年

Section A: Translate the following into English.

81. 无论问题看起来怎么复杂，他总能找到解决办法。

82. 吃过早饭后，作家就坐在书房里处理早上来的信件。

83. 她总是很愉快地向我打招呼。

84. 你旅游是走陆路还是水路?

85. 孩子的性格受家庭环境影响很大。

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

86. Prices vary with the seasons.

87. A pen is to a writer what a gun is to a fighter.

88. Many girl students specialize in English.

89. Thanks to a kind-hearted taxi driver, Amy arrived at the meeting room in time.

90. The motives for suicide can be categorized into various areas such as failure, the need for attention, stress and so on.

KEY

Section A: Translate the following into English.

81. No matter how complicated the problems may seem to be, he always finds ways to solve them.

82. Having had/taken breakfast, the writer sat in the study dealing with morning letters.

After she had taken/had breakfast, the writer sat in the study dealing with her morning letters.

83. She always gives me a cheery greeting.

84. How do you travel, by land or by sea?

85. A child's character is greatly influenced by family environment.

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 物价随季节而变动。

87. 笔对于一个作家正如枪对于一名战士一样。

88. 许多女生专攻英语。

89. 幸亏遇到一位好心的出租车司机，Amy 及时到达了会议室。
90. 人们自杀的原因种类很多，例如失败、需要被关注和压力等。

2014 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 她喜欢看书时听音乐。
82. 我们认为节约用水非常重要。
83. 我想知道他把表送给谁了。
84. 所有的公共场所都应完全禁止吸烟。
85. 事实胜于雄辩。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. It is quite typical of him to be late.
87. It's no good learning English without practice.
88. Man was，is and always will be trying to improve his living conditions.
89. An idle youth，a needy age.
90. The doctor will get more practice out of me than out of ten ordinary patients.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. She enjoys listening to music while reading.
82. We believe it is very important to save water.
83. I wonder whom he gave the watch to.
84. Smoking should be completely banned in all public places.
85. Actions speak louder than words.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 迟到是他的典型风格。
87. 学英语不实践是没用的。
88. 人类无论过去、现在、还是将来都会一直努力改善生活条件。
89. 少壮不努力，老大徒伤悲。
90. 医生从我身上得到的实践，要比从 10 个普通病人身上得到的实践还多。

2015 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 这个漂亮干净的城市给外国旅游者留下了深刻的印象。
82. 他们住进了市里最好的宾馆。
83. 教师应当更多地关注学生的差异。
84. 不敲门就进屋是不礼貌的。

85. 你开车时系安全带吗?

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

86. I' d like to make an appointment with Dr. Smith.

87. He is more of a poet than a musician.

88. Good teachers often encourage their students to think for themselves.

89. Can you promise to return me the computer?

90. A typical English gentleman often takes an umbrella with him.

KEY

Section A: Translate the following into English.

81. The beautiful and clean city has left a deep impression on the foreign tourists.

82. They checked in at the best hotel of the city.

83. Teachers should pay more attention to the differences among the students.

84. It is impolite to enter the room without knocking at the door.

85. Do you wear a safety belt while driving?

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 我想预约史密斯医生。

87. 与其说他是音乐家，倒不如说他是诗人。

88. 好老师总是鼓励他们的学生独立思考。

89. 你能保证归还我的电脑吗?

90. 一个典型的英国绅士经常随身携带雨伞。

2016 年

Section A: Translate the following into English.

81. 只要明天天气好，我们就和同学一起去游泳。

82. 有这么多人的关心，在国外的最初几个月里，她感到非常幸福。

83. 新图书馆比以前的大两倍（或者译为“新图书馆是以前的三倍大”)。

84. 这张照片让我想起了在上海度过的快乐时光。

85. 地震中，许多房屋受损严重，成千上万的人无家可归。

Section B: Translate the following into Chinese.

86. Professional hair-care products indicate that consumers are paying as much attention to their hair as to their skin.

87. Women would double their risk of suffering from lung cancer if they were exposed to 40 or more years of household tobacco smoke.

88. Though technically quite advanced today, the Internet is far from being popular with average household users in some developing countries.

89. Your new product would not have sold so well but for a lot of advertisements we put on the

television.

90. The regulations make it safer for you to use your credit card for shopping on the Internet or over the phone.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. As long as it is fine tomorrow，we will go swimming with classmates.

82. With so many people's concern，she felt very happy in the first few months abroad.

83. The new library is three times as large as the old one.

84. The photo reminds me of the happy time I spent in Shanghai.

85. A lot of houses were so seriously damaged in the earthquake that thousands of people were left homeless.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 专业护发产品表明消费者既重视护肤，也重视护发。

87. 妇女在吸烟的家庭环境中生活 40 年或更长时间，她们患肺癌的风险就会加倍。

88. 尽管互联网技术现在已经很先进，但在一些发展中国家还远远没有普及到一般家庭。

89. 若不是我们做了大量的电视广告，你们的新产品销路不会这么好。

90. 这些规章制度可以保证你在使用信用卡进行网上或者电话购物时更安全。

2017 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 众所周知，肺癌至少部分地是由于吸烟过多而引起的。

82. 要是我们接受的忠告的话，我们本来是可以避免犯这样的错误的。

83. 他毕业后接替他父亲当了公司的总裁。结果证明他比他父亲更成功。

84. 他会说点汉语，因此能很容易地适应北京的生活。

85. 据报道，暴风雨极有可能在未来的 24 小时内到达本市。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. We have received your letter and would be grateful if you would tell us in detail the way of cooperation.

87. As far as Advertising and Sales Manager is concerned，excellent oral English is also a necessary requirement.

88. Everything taken into consideration，the plan put up by our manager seems to be more workable.

89. When it comes to successful overseas investments that can yield high profits，the key is which country you should put your capital in.

90. Thus ，if want to learn to communicate well in a foreign language，we must understand the culture that gives that language meaning.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. It is well known that at least part of the lung cancer was caused by excessive smoking.

82. If we had followed his advice，we would have avoided making such mistakes.

83. He took over from his father and became the CEO of the company after graduation，which turned out that he was more successful than his father.

84. He can speak a little Chinese，so it is easy for him to adapt to the life in Beijing.

85. It is reported that the storms will be likely to reach the city in 24 hours.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 我们已收到您的来信，如果您将合作细节告知我们，我们将不胜感激。

87. 就广告经理而言，流利的口语也是一项必要的要求。

88. 如果将所有事都考虑在内，我们经理提出的计划似乎更可行。

89. 就海外投资能否成功地获取高额利润而言，关键在于应该把资金投在那个国家。

90. 因此，我们想学好如何用外语进行交流，就必须理解出该语言的文化意义。

2018 年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 即时短信是如此的便捷以至于大家都用它。

82. 我们对人生应该有积极的态度。

83. 毫无疑问，她是我们班上学习最好的同学之一。

84. 整个团队的未来取决于他的决定。

85. 我们必须仔细观察市场的变化。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. If you were to exert your influence on him，he might change his mind.

87. Although she was new，she got a promotion three months later for her diligence and intelligence.

88. When choosing a job ， you should find out what you enjoy doing instead of just applying for any job.

89. He spoke on behalf of all staff of the company.

90. The more exercise you take，the less you are likely to catch a cold.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. Instant message is so convenient that everyone uses it now.

82. We should have the positive attitude towards life.

83. There is no doubt that she is one of the best students in our class.

84. The future of the team depends on his decisions.
85. We have to observe the market changes carefully.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 如果你给他施加影响，他可能会改变主意。
87. 虽然她是新人，但是她凭借自己的勤奋和智慧于三个月后得到晋升。
88. 当你选工作时，应该弄清楚你喜欢做什么而不只是申请工作。
89. 他代表公司所有员工讲话。
90. 你锻炼的越多，你感冒的几率越小。

2019年

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. 这本书是我看过的最有趣的一本。
82. 他带学生去参观工厂。
83. 给我足够的时间，我也能做好。
84. 谢谢你给我们帮了这么多的忙。
85. 昨天我是在街道上遇见他的。

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. As is known to us all，light runs faster than sound.
87. He feels it his duty to help others.
88. Nothing has happened since we parted.
89. He cannot be operated upon as he is very weak.
90. It should be understood that to err is human.

KEY

Section A：Translate the following into English.

81. This book is the most interesting book I have ever read.
82. He took his students to factory for a visit.
83. Given enough time，I can do it well too.
84. Thank you for giving us so much help.
85. It was in the street that I met him yesterday.

Section B：Translate the following into Chinese.

86. 众所周知，光速比声速快。
87. 他觉得帮助别人是他的责任。
88. 自我们分别后没发生什么事情。
89. 他身体很弱，不能动手术。
90. 应该理解犯错误是人之常情。

2020 年

Part Ⅳ Translation（**2×10**）

Directions：*There are 10 sentences in this part. Please translate sentences 81－85 from Chinese to English, and translate sentences 86－90 from English into Chinese. Write your answer on the* **Answer Sheet.**

81. 无论你怎么说，我都不会放弃这个计划。
82. 我们现在住的房子离公司太远了。
83. 暑假期间，大量的学生选择做兼职工作
84. 接二连三的失败会让人对工作失去兴趣。
85. 大学生需要具备独立学习的技能。
86. Nowadays people wear masks against the novel coronavirus when outside in public places.
87. We soon grew weary of her constant complaints.
88. It is said that oil price may be on the rise this month，so we decide to go to work by subway.
89. It is the aid from a stranger that enabled him to complete his college studies.
90. The taxi driver often reminds passengers to take their belongings when they leave the car.

KEY

81. Whatever you say，I won′t give up the plan.
82. The house we live in now is too far away from our company.
83. During the summer vacation，a large number of students choose to do part－time jobs.
84. Constant success can make people lose interest in work.
85. College students need to have independent learning skills.
86. 现在人们在公共场所戴口罩以防新型冠状病毒。
87. 我们很快就厌倦了她不断的抱怨。
88. 据说本月石油价格可能会上涨，所以我们决定乘地铁去上班。
89. 正是一个陌生人的帮助使他得以完成大学学业。
90. 出租车司机经常提醒乘客下车时要带走自己的物品。

2021 年

Part Ⅳ Translation（40**points**）

Section A

Directions：*There are* 5 *sentences in this part. For each of them there are* 4 *choices marked A，B，C and D. You should decide on the best choice and mark the corresponding letter on the* **Answer Sheet.**（2×5）

46. When you see them working hard to get good academic scores，how can you stand in the same place?

A. 当看到他们都在努力工作，你怎么能站在原地呢?

B. 当看到他们都在努力工作争取优良的学术成果，你怎么能原地踏步呢?

C. 当看到他们都在努力学习，你怎么能站在原地呢?

D. 当看到他们都在努力学习争取好成绩，你怎么能原地踏步呢?

47. The newly broadened swimming pool is two times the size of the previous one.

A. 新扩建的游泳池是先前的两倍大。

B. 新扩建的游泳池比先前的大两倍。

C. 游泳池扩建两次后面积未变。

D. 游泳池扩建后面积增加了两倍。

48. Hardly had the football match begun when it started raining.

A. 足球比赛还未开始就下雨了。

B. 足球比赛无法开始了，因为下雨了。

C. 足球比赛已经开始了，天也下雨了。

D. 足球比赛刚一开始就下雨了。

49. There were so many customers in the shop during the Spring Festival that the shop assistant couldn't offer timely service to all of them.

A. 春节期间店里要遵守的习俗太多，导致店员无法提供所有服务项目。

B. 春节期间店里顾客如此之多，导致店员无法向所有顾客提供服务。

C. 春节期间店里顾客太多，导致店员无法向所有顾客都提供及时的服务。

D. 春节期间店里要遵守的习俗太多，导致店员无法向顾客提供所有服务。

50. As long as he works hard, I don't mind when he finishes his new project.

A. 他长时间努力工作，我不知道他什么时候能完成新项目。

B. 只要他努力工作，我不介意他何时能完成新项目。

C. 他长时间努力工作，所以我不在意他何时能完成新项目。

D. 只要他努力工作，我不介意他能否完成新项目。

Section C

Directions: *Translate the following sentences into English and write your answers on the* **Answer Sheet.** (3×5)

56. 工作越努力，你的进步就越大。

57. 不管你是谁，都要遵守法律。

58. 这是她见过的最漂亮的校园。

59. 我们期待学校在未来会有振奋人心的发展。

60. 政府使公众相信这个问题很快会得到解决。

KEY

Section A 英译汉选择

46.【答案】D

【解析】A 与 C 译文不完整，缺少 to get good academic scores 的翻译。结合语境 academic scores 译为学习成绩更合适。

47.【答案】A

【解析】倍数表达法“倍数＋the＋n.＋of”译为是……的几倍。previous 译为先前的、早先的。

48.【答案】D

【解析】句型翻译“hardly…when”一……就……

49.【答案】C

【解析】注意关键词 customers 为顾客、消费者。timely 及时的

50.【答案】B

【解析】注意 as long as 译为只要。

Section C

56. The harder you work，the more progress you can make.
57. Whoever you are，you should obey the law.
58. This is the most beautiful campus that he has seen.
59. we expect that the school will have an exciting development in the future.
60. The government convinced the public that this matter will be solved soon after.

第六章　选词填空

第一节　选词填空分析与技巧

选词填空为2021年考试题型改革后的新增题型，一篇短文有5个空，10个选项。要求学生从所给的若干词或者词组中选出最佳的选项，有一定难度。它集词的用法与搭配、词语辨析、语法、单句理解、语篇理解等考察于一体，既考察考生的语言知识水平，又检测了考生的分析判断能力和综合运用语言知识的实践能力。下面介绍一些基本的做题技巧：

一、做题步骤

第一步：熟悉选项

先把选项一一了解，对词性做简单的标记，掌握选项的词义。注意：如有选项形式相近或意思相近的做标记，比如2021年真题选项中的folk art和folk arts。

第二步：通读全文

选词填空是文章的填空，考察考生对文章的理解能力。所以考生需要通读汉语文章以及英语短文，了解文章大意。接下来，逐字逐句对比汉语文章以及英语短文。着重分析空格前后，判断空格处所缺成分及所需词性。

第三步：选词填空

在填空时，注意结合汉语文章的画线部分来判断英语短文中空格处的中文含义，可以采取排除法选出答案。另外还可根据空格处所需的词性、首字母大小写以及固定搭配等方法进行填空，从而找出最佳答案。

第四步：回顾检查

在确定答案后，将所选答案带入到英语短文中，对比汉语文章再次复读全文，检查所选选项是否恰当、上下文是否通顺、内在逻辑关系是否连贯。如有问题，谨慎调整。

二、注意事项

1. 注意词性、词义辨析

在选词填空中，词义辨析往往以形近词、近义词或者同义词的形式出现。考生在背单词时，一定要注意近义词、形近词的辨析。另外，在做题时，也要注意单词或者短语的词性，根据原文空格处所需单词或短语的词性，缩小正确选项范围。

2. 注意固定搭配

选词填空也会考察固定搭配，所以考生也要注意固定搭配的积累。

三、如何提高选词填空技能

1. 了解词缀知识，扩充词汇量；
2. 掌握词汇之间的常用搭配；
3. 提高自己分析复合句的语法技能；
4. 多阅读，注意语言细节。

2021 年真题

Directions：*Choose the appropriate translation to fill in each blank to make the following paragraph meaningful and write down* **the corresponding letter** *on the* **Answer Sheet .**（3×5）

剪纸是中国最为流行的传统民间艺术形式之一。中国剪纸有一千五百多年的历史。人们常用剪纸装点居家环境。特别是在春节和婚庆期间，剪纸被用来装饰门和房间，以增加喜庆的气氛。剪纸最常用的颜色是红色，象征健康和兴旺。

Paper cutting is one of China's most popular traditional ___1___ . Chinese paper cutting has a history of more than 1，500 years. People often ___2___ their homes with paper cutting. During the Spring Festival and ___3___ ，in particular，paper cutting is used to ornament doors，windows and rooms in order to enhance the ___4___ . The color most frequently used in paper cutting is red，which ___5___ health and prosperity.

A. happy hours
B. joyous atmosphere
C. folk art
D. create
E. symbolizes
F. wedding celebrations
G. illustrates
H. folk arts
I. decorate
J. marriage engagement

答案解析：

1—5 HIFBE

A. happy hours 快乐时光
B. joyous atmosphere 喜庆的气氛
C. folk art 民间艺术（单数）
D. create *v.* 创造
E. symbolizes *v.* 象征
F. wedding celebrations 婚庆
G. illustrates *v.* 解释
H. folk arts 民间艺术（复数）
I. decorate *v.* 装饰，装点
J. marriage engagement 婚约

第二节 选词填空习题精解

Exercise 1

年画是中国特有的一种绘画体裁。贴年画的习俗源于在房子的大门上贴门神的传统。传统年画以精美的木刻和鲜艳的色彩闻名。主题主要是花鸟、可爱的婴儿、神话传说与历史故事等，表达人们祈望丰收的愿望和对幸福生活的憧憬。随着印刷技术的提高，制作年画的材料也不断增多。这种传统的艺术形式如今仍充满生机，深受人们喜爱。

New Year Picture is a ___1___ type of painting in China. The ___2___ of pasting New Year pictures came from the tradition of pasting Door Gods on the external doors of houses. The traditional New Year Pictures are well-known for their ___3___ block print and bright colors. Their subjects are mainly flowers and birds，lovely babies，myths and legends，and historical stories，etc，conveying people’s wishes for a ___4___ and a happy life. With the improvement of printing technologies，there are more and more new materials for New Year Pictures. This traditional ___5___ is still full of vigor today and deeply loved by people.

A. custom	B. celebrate	C. unique	D. good luck
E. artistic form	F. habit	G. elaborate	H. urban
I. good harvest	J. artistic achievements		

Exercise 2

近年来，中国越来越多的博物馆免费向公众开放。博物馆展览次数和参观人数都明显增长。在一些广受欢迎的博物馆门前，排长队已很常见。因此，这些博物馆必须采取措施限制参观人数。如今，展览形式越来越多样。一些大型博物馆利用多媒体和虚拟现实等先进技术，使展览更具吸引力。不少博物馆还举办在线展览，人们可在网上观赏珍稀展品。然而，现场观看展品的体验对大多数参观者还是更具吸引力。

In recent years，more and more museums in China have been open to the public free of charge. ___1___ museum exhibitions and visitors to the museum has seen an obvious increase. It has become very common to see that people stand in long queues in front of some widely popular museums. Therefore，these museums must take ___2___ to restrict the number of visitors. Nowadays，the forms of exhibitions become increasingly diverse. Some large museums use ___3___ such as multimedia and virtual reality to make their exhibitions more ___4___. Quite a few museums also hold online exhibitions where people can enjoy the sight of rare and precious exhibits. ___5___，the experience of viewing the exhibits on the site is more appealing to most visitors.

A. advanced technologies
B. attraction
C. But
D. cheap technologies
E. A number of
F. However
G. The number of
H. measures
I. attractive
J. act

Exercise 3

黄河是亚洲第三、世界第六长的河流。“黄”这个字描述的是其河水浑浊的颜色。黄河发源于青海，流经九个省份，最后注入渤海。黄河是中国赖以生存的几条河流之一。黄河流域是中国古代文明的诞生地，也是中国早期历史上最繁荣的地区。然而，由于极具破坏力的洪水频发，黄河曾造成多次灾害。在过去几十年里，政府采取了各种措施防止灾害发生。

The Yellow River is Asia’s third longest and world’s sixth longest river. The word “yellow” ____1____ the color of its unclear water. The Yellow River ____2____ from Qinghai, flowing through nine provinces, and flows into Bohai Sea. The Yellow River is one of the rivers that China lives on. The Yellow River basin was the birthplace of Chinese ____5____, and was the most prosperous area in early Chinese history. However, the Yellow River had caused a number of disasters because of the extremely ____4____ floods that happened frequently. Over the past decades, the government has taken all kinds of measures to ____5____ disasters from happening.

A. forbid
B. originates
C. prevent
D. ancient culture
E. originate
F. describes
G. ancient civilization
H. destructive
I. symbolizes
J. creative

Exercise 4

“你要茶还是咖啡?”是用餐人常被问到的问题，许多西方人会选咖啡，而中国人则会选择茶。相传，中国的一位帝王于五千年前发现了茶，并用来治病，在明清期间，茶馆遍布全国，饮茶在六世纪传到日本，但直到18世纪才传到欧美，如今，茶是世界上最流行的饮料之一，茶是中国的瑰宝。也是中国传统和文化的重要组成部分。

“Would you like tea or coffee?” That’s a question people are often asked when having meal. Most westerners will choose coffee, while the Chinese would like ____1____ tea. According to legend, tea was discovered by a Chinese emperor five thousand years ago, and then was used to ____2____. During the Ming and Qing Dynasties, tea houses were ____3____. Tea drinking spread to Japan in the 6th century, but it was not until the 18th century that it spread to Europe and America. Nowadays, tea is one of ____4____ beverage in the world, and it is not only ____5____ but also an important part of Chinese tradition and culture.

A. choosing
B. to choose
C. all over the country
D. the feature of China
E. cure disease
F. heart disease
G. the treasure of China
H. the most popular
I. more popular
J. all over the world

Exercise 5

皮影戏是一种中国民间艺术，表演者拿着兽皮或纸板制成的人物，通过光线将其反射在白色幕布上。表演会用带有地方特色的曲调伴奏。它经常在庙会、婚礼或葬礼等场合演出。如今精致的皮影人物已成为一种收藏品，深受外国人的喜爱。

The shadow play is a kind of Chinese ___1___. Performers hold human figures which are made of animal hides or ___2___ and ___3___ them on the white curtain through the light. The performance will be accompanied by tunes with local colour. The shadow play is often in ___4___, weddings or funerals, etc. Nowadays, ___5___ shadow figures have become a kind of collection and are greatly loved by foreigners.

A. paperboard
B. message boards
C. folk art
D. delicate
E. folk arts
F. influence
G. temple fairs
H. sensitive
I. reflect
J. country fairs

参考答案

Exercise 1

1—5 CAGIE

A. custom *n.* 习俗，风俗
B. celebrate *v.* 庆祝
C. unique *adj.* 特有的，独特的
D. good luck 好运
E. artistic form 艺术形式
F. habit *n.* 习惯
G. elaborate *adj.* 精美的
H. urban *adj.* 城市的
I. good harvest 丰收
J. artistic achievements 艺术成就

Exercise 2

1—5 GHAIF

A. advanced technologies 先进的技术
B. attraction *n.* 吸引
C. But 但是
D. cheap technologies 廉价技术
E. A number of 大量，许多
F. However 然而（后＋逗号）
G. The number of ……的数量
H. measures *n.* 措施
I. attractive *adj.* 有吸引力的
J. act *n.* 行动

Exercise 3

1—5 FBGHC

A. forbid *v.* 禁止
B. originates *v.* 起源于（动词单三形式）
C. prevent *v.* 防止
D. ancient culture 古代文化
E. originate *v.* 起源于（动词原形）
F. describes *v.* 描述
G. ancient civilization 古代文明
H. destructive *adj.* 破坏性的，破坏力的
I. symbolizes *v.* 象征
J. creative *adj.* 有创造力的

Exercise 4

1—5 BECHG

A. choosing 选择
B. to choose（would like to do sth. 想要做某事）
C. all over the country 遍及全国
D. the feature of China 中国的特色
E. cure disease 治疗疾病
F. heart disease 心脏病
G. the treasure of China 中国的瑰宝
H. the most popular 最流行的
I. more popular 更流行的
J. all over the world 全世界

Exercise 5

1—5 CAIGD

A. paperboard 纸板
B. message boards 留言板
C. folk art 民间艺术（单数）
D. delicate *adj.* 精致的
E. folk arts 民间艺术（复数）
F. influence *v.* 影响
G. temple fairs 庙会
H. sensitive *adj.* 敏感的
I. reflect *v.* 反射，反映
J. country fairs 乡村集市

Part Eight

Error Correction
改　错

格言

You do not lack time to study; you are lacking the efforts.

并非缺乏时间学习，而是缺乏努力。

第一章　考试概况及要求

一、测试概况

自2021年专升本考试起，单句改错共计10个小题，每题2分，合计20分。该题型不仅要求考生发现错误，并要予以改正。该题型主要检测考生发现、判断、纠正错误的能力，要求考生掌握一定的词汇，语法知识，能够掌握一定的句型、词组，清楚连贯地进行英语表述。

二、改错要求

单句改错（Error Correction）不仅要求考生有发现错误的能力，而且要求考生有修改错误的能力，修改错误时，一般有以下两种更改形式：

1. 删除（delete）

把句子中多余的选项写在答案处，并用斜线划掉。

2. 改正（correction）

把需要更正的选项写在答案处，并把正确答案写出来。

第二章　考点分析及应对策略

一、改错考点分析

单句改错和语法词汇关系较大，考查点多为专升本语法词汇的基础，核心考点较为固定，考生可以借助核心考点一一判断，具体核心考点及分析顺序如下表 7—1 所示：

表 7—1　核心考点及分析

考点	具体分析内容	
动词	若是谓语	时态：1. 时态关键词；2. 需借更大的语境判定
		语态：重点看是否应用被动语态，关键是找出其逻辑主语
	若非谓语	重点：看是否应用动词的非谓语形式，尤其是分词形式
	搭配：尤其看动词与介词，副词的搭配是否正确	
名词	数：重点看单复数是否正确，关键是借助其前后的修饰语	
	词性：其次要看词性是否使用错误，关键是看是否应该使用其相应的形容词	
	搭配：尤其看它与句中的动词或介词是否搭配	
形容词	词性：重点是看其词性是否正确，尤其是看是否应该用副词或名词	
	级别：偶尔也要看看是否应该用比较级或最高级	
介词	搭配：主要看它与句中的动词或名词是否搭配	
代词	一致：主要是人称代词是否与其指代的名词在数上保持一致	
关系词 连接词	如果是非限制性定语从句，关系代词是否使用正确	
	如果是同位语从句，是否使用了 that	
	如果是限制性定语从句，是否将关系代词和关系副词混用，或者是省略了不该省略的关系代词	
	是否将连接代词 what 换成了其他词，尤其是 that	
副词	词性：词性是否使用正确，尤其是看是否用作形容词	
冠词	重点看定冠词是否使用正确	
连词	搭配：1. 重点看符合连词的搭配是否正确；2. 是否有词组混用现象	

二、错误类型

下面就以上表格中提及的核心考点逐一分析应对策略。

（一）主谓不一致

英语中谓语动词必须与主语一致，即主语的人称和数决定动词的形式，这通常被称为主谓一致关系。主谓一致的错误具体体现在两者“数”上的不一致，从而牵扯到相关“形”上的不一致。改错题中，主语谓语间会插入其他成分，如定语、同位语，这些成分往往会对识别错误构成干扰。

识别此类错误，应从以下几方面入手：

（1）从形式上判断。规则名词看字形，不规则名词要熟记，单复数同形的名词可借助句中其他线索，如从句或并列句中的谓语动词是单数还是复数。

（2）从含义上判断。有些集合名词既表示单数概念，也可表示复数概念，因此谓语动词的数要根据句中的上下文含义判定。很多情况下，概念上的一致是一条行之有效的原则。

（3）熟悉主谓一致的考点。熟练掌握主谓一致方面的语法知识和习惯用法。如：either、neither 等词作主语时，谓语动词按习惯用法应为单数。

（4）锁定主语，排除干扰。注意寻找谓语动词的主语或逻辑主语，不要受分割成分的干扰。尤其要注意定语从句中的谓语动词，其逻辑主语应是关系词前面的先行词。

1. 语法一致原则

（1）分数或者百分数做主语时。当“几分之几（百分之几）＋of＋名词”结构做主语时，一般应根据 of 后的名词的单复数决定谓语动词的单复数。

【示例】Over twenty percent of the city were destroyed in the war.

【分析】were→was. 如果作主语的名词词组是由“分数/百分数＋of”词组构成，其动词形式取决于 of 词组中名词的类别；句中的谓语动词应与 city 的数保持一致。

（2）“many a ＋单数名词”或“more than one＋单数名词”做主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

【示例】More than one student have failed the exam.

【分析】have→has. “more than one ＋单数名词”结构后的动词遵循“语法一致”原则，用单数形式。

（3）主语附有假性主语时。with，together with，along with，as well as，like，such as，as much as，no less than，rather than，including，besides，but，except，in addition to 等短语后的主语称为假性主语，是附属成分，谓语动词由原主语而定，也就是遵循就远原则。

【示例】Some of the employees as much as the manager was responsible for the failure.

【分析】was→were. as much as 后面是假性主语，谓语动词的数和前面的保持一致。本题谓语动词应和 some of the employees 的复数保持一致。

2. 意义一致原则

（1）当 and 连接两个名词做主语时。如果两个并列的单数主语在意义上指的是同一人，同一事物或同一概念时，谓语动词用单数形式，如 the poet and writer，a knife and fork 等。

【示例】A knife and fork were what I need.

【分析】were→was. a knife and fork 意为“一副刀叉”，视为一个不可分割的整体，谓语动词用单数形式。

（2）当 every…and every…等结构做主语时。every…and every…或 each…and each…或 no…

and no…结构做主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

【示例】No doctors and no nurses are invited to the party.

【分析】are→is. no…and no…连接主语时谓语动词用单数。

（3）当表示时间，距离等复数名词做主语时。表示时间、距离、金额、重量等复数名词做主语，通常视为整体，谓语动词用单数形式。

【示例】Two hours are a long time to take over a coffee.

【分析】are→is. Two hours 是一个整体，谓语动词应该用单数形式。

3. **就近原则**

（1）在关联连词的并列主语中。在由 not…but…，not only…but also…，either…or…，neither…nor 等连接并列主语中，谓语动词的人称和数应该和它距离最近的主语相一致。

【示例】Is neither you nor he fit for the work?

【分析】is→are. 距离谓语动词最近的主语是 you，谓语动词应该用 are.

（2）在 there，there be 句型中。由 there，here 引起的主语不止一个时，谓语通常和最邻近的主语保持一致。

【示例】There were a dollar and six pounds in each of the stockings.

【分析】were→was. 邻近的主语是 a dollar，谓语动词应该用单数形式。

（二）时态、语态错误

1. **时态误用**

（1）时间状语是关键。有时候有明显的时间状语，根据句中的时间状态类型判断应该使用哪种时态。

【示例】The prisoners closely guarded escape from the prison last night.

【分析】escape→escaped. 时间状语是 last night，谓语动词应该用一般过去式。

（2）宾语从句中的时态。主句用一般现在时，宾语从句可以根据需要用各种时态；主句用一般过去时，宾语从句要用相应的过去时态。

【示例】I met John yesterday. He told that he will go to the college last year.

【分析】will→would. 主句中用一般过去时，从句中应该用相应的过去时态，故将一般将来时改为过去将来时。

（3）多个谓语时的时态。连词连接两个或多个谓语时，时态一般遵循对称原则。

I left school as soon as I could and started work.

（4）某些固定句式中的时态。在某些固定句式中，时态的使用是固定的：

①since 引导从句中常用一般过去时。

②if 引导条件句时，主句用一般将来时，从句用一般现在时；主句用过去将来时，从句用一般过去时。

③hardly…when…结构中，主句用过去完成时，从句用过去时。

④no sooner…than…结构中，主句用过去完成时，从句用过去时

2. **语态误用**

(1) 只有及物动词或及物动词短语才有被动语态。当主语和谓语是被动关系时应用被动语态。注意：只有及物动词和及物动词短语才有被动语态，不及物动词无被动语态。

【示例】The foreign guests were give a warm welcome by the children.

【分析】give→given. 外宾应该是“被欢迎”是被动关系，应该用 be done 结构的被动语态。

(2) 用主动形式表示被动意义的情况。某些连系动词，如 smell，taste，feel，sound，prove 等，可用主动形式表被动意义。

【示例】The old methods was proved best after all.

【分析】was→去掉 was. prove 意味“证明是”，是连系动词，没有被动语态。

（三）非谓语动词误用

1. 不定式，现在分词和过去分词的区别

一般来说，不定式通常指将来的动作，而现在分词指正在进行的动作，动词的过去分词形式指已经完成的动作。

【示例】Do you know the man sit in the middle of the first row?

【分析】sit→sitting 句意是“你认识坐在第一排中间的那个人吗”强调“正在坐”应该用动词的 ing 形式作定语。

现在分词或不定式做宾语补足语时，表示它与宾语之间的关系是主动关系；用过去分词做宾语补足语时，一般表示它与宾语之间是被动关系。

【示例】We heard the song sing next door.

【分析】sing→sung. 歌曲是“唱”这个动作的承受者，故用过去分词做宾语补足语。

2. 不定式用主动形式表示被动意义的情况

在 easy，difficult，hard，interesting，pleasant 等形容词后的不定式用主动形式表被动意义。

It is hard to know what he is really thinking.

3. 动名词用主动形式表被动意义的情况

当主语是物时在 be worth，want，need，require 等后用动名词的主动形式表示被动含义。

【示例】The book is worth written.

【分析】written→writing. be worth 后面应该用动词 ing 的主动形式表示被动含义。

4. 分词作表语的区别

现在分词作表语时，表示主动概念，主语常常是事物，表示令……的；过去分词做表语时，主语是人，表示“感到……”。

【示例】I get exciting whenever I hear the playing of our national anthem.

【分析】exciting→excited. 主语是人，表示感到兴奋激动，应该用 excited；exciting 意为“令人激动的”。

（四）介词误用

介词错用的情况非常复杂，但主要侧重意思相近或用法相近的介词混用的情况，常考易混的介词有以下几组：

before/ago
among/between
after/in
below/under
on/above/over
over/across/through
except/besides
to/for
like/as

【示例】Miss Gao lives on 12，Zhongshan Road，Dalian.

【分析】on→at. 在具体的门牌号前的介词要用 at。

【示例】Can you swim through the river?

【分析】through→across. across 表示“横穿，横过”；through 表示从“中间穿过”。此处题意为“游过河”，应该用介词 across。

【示例】Tom went to the party. Except him，all the other students in the class were present at the party.

【分析】Except→Besides. 由 Tom went to the party 可知，除 Tom 之外，其他同学也都出席了这次舞会。besides 表示“除了……之外，其他也都”符合这层含义；except 则表示把某人排除在某一整体之外。

（五）代词误用

1. 人称代词主格和宾格的混用

【示例】China will always do what her has promised to do.

【分析】her→she. 在从句中作主语，应该用代词的主格形式。

2. 人称代词和反身代词混用

【示例】You first of all should respect you or no one would respect you.

【分析】第二个 you→yourself. 同一句中，动作的主语和承受者是同一人，宾语应用该人称的反身代词。该主语是 you，表示“你应该尊重你自己”，应用反身代词作宾语。

3. 形容词性的物主代词和名词性的物主代词混用

【示例】It is not my computer. My is on the desk.

【分析】My→Mine. 此处做主语，不能用形容词性的物主代词 my，应该用名词性的物主代词，mine＝my computer.

4. one, ones, it, that, those 混用

【示例】The days in summer are longer than that in winter.

【分析】that→those. 指代前面提到的 the days，应该用复数 those。

5. 不定代词与限定词混用

some, any all, both, none, no one, nothing any, either, everyone, every one none, neither other, others, another

【示例】They both came on time，but every left ahead of time.

【分析】every→each. every 只能做定语，这里是作主语，应该用 each。

（六）名词误用

1. 不可数名词没有复数形式

【示例】How much moneys I earn is none of your concern.

【分析】moneys→money. money 意为“钱，金钱”，是不可数名词，没有复数形式。

2. **当表示两个或两个以上的概念时，可数名词要用复数形式**

【示例】You can buy fruit here—oranges and banana，for example.

【分析】banana→bananas. 水果店不可能只卖一根香蕉，表示两个或两个以上的概念，因此应该用复数形式。

3. **有些名词单复数同形**

常考的有：means，sheep，deer 等

【示例】The deers escaped to the deep forest.

【分析】deer→deers. deer 是单复同形的名词。

4. **有些名词既可以做可数名词，又可以做不可数名词**

名词	不可数	可数
experience	经验	经历
paper	纸	试卷，论文，报纸
time	时间	倍数，次数
light	光	灯
chicken	鸡肉	小鸡
character	性格	人物

5. **名词的普通格和所有格混用**

【示例】Many students eyesight is getting poorer and poorer.

【分析】students→students’表示某人或某物归另外的人或物所属时用名词所有格。students 以 s 结尾，应该加’。

（七）冠词的误用

冠词使用中的几种特殊情况。

1. **一日三餐前一般不用冠词，但如果前面有了定语修饰，则要加上不定冠词 a/an。**

【示例】Did you have wonderful supper last night?

【分析】have wonderful→have a wonderful. supper 前有修饰词 wonderful，且 wonderful 是辅音音素开头，其前面应该加不定冠词 a。

2. **表示世界上独一无二的事物前一般加定冠词 the，但如果前面有修饰语，则可以用不定冠词 a/an。**

【示例】Man traveled to moon scores of years ago.

【分析】to moon→to the moon. 月亮是世界上独一无二的，其前应加定冠词 the。

【示例】It’s sunny today. Let’s go out to enjoy the warm and bright sun.

【分析】the→a. sun 前面有修饰语 warm and bright，前面应该用不定冠词。

3. **乐器名词前一般用定冠词 the，但如果前面有定语修饰，则可以用不定冠词 a/an。**

He is playing a borrowed guitar. 他正在谈论一把借来的吉它。

4. **表示语言的名词前一般不用冠词，但后面如果出现 language 一词，前面需要加定冠词 the。**

The origins and development of the English language. 英语的起源与发展。

5. **以元音音素开头的单词前用不定冠词 an，以辅音音素开头的单词前用不定冠词 a。**

It is a useful book and，what is more，not an expensive one.

这是一本有用的书，更难得的是它不贵。

（八）形容词、副词误用

1. 形容词和副词的语法功能

形容词可用做定语修饰名词，用作表语说明主语的性质或特征；副词做状语修饰动词、形容词，其他副词和全句。

【示例】There you go. It is nothing seriously at all.

【分析】seriously→serious. 做定语修饰不定代词 nothing，说明性质，应该是形容词。

【示例】John lives happy because he uses his time well to study.

【分析】happy→happily. 此处修饰谓语动词 lives，应该用副词。

2. 比较级和最高级

（1）英语中某些形容词没有比较级和最高级

right	last	empty
wrong	possible	impossible
excellent	first	wooden
final	east	favourite

【示例】Your examination results are more excellent.

【分析】more→去掉 more. excellent 意为“优秀的，极好的”，没有比较级和最高级的形式。

（2）as…as…和 not as/so…as 结构中用形容词或副词的原级

【示例】It wasn't as better as I had expected.

【分析】better→good. as…as 结构中应该用形容词或副词原级。

（3）关于比较级的两个固定句型

①“比较级＋and＋比较级”意为“越来越……”

He was having more and more trouble selling his fruits.

他在出售他水果方面的困难越来越多。

②“the＋比较级（…），the＋比较级（…）意为“越……越……”。

The more you speak，the better you will speak.

你说的越多，就会说的越好。

（4）最高级表示三者或三者以上中的程度最高

【示例】Swimming is the more interesting sports I have ever known.

【分析】more→most. 运动不止三种，表示所有运动中最有趣的，应该用最高级。

（九）关系词误用

1. 名词性从句

在句中起名词作用的各种从句，统称为名词性从句。其中包括主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。引导词包括连接词 that，whether/if，连接代词 who（ever），whom（ever），whose，which（ever），what（ever）连接副词 when，where，how，why。

（1）that 的用法

①that 引导主语从句，表语从句和同位语从句时，不充当任何成分且毫无意义，但是不能省略。

②that 引导宾语从句时可省可不省，其中以下情况不可省略：

A. 当 that 从句和主句的谓语动词之间有插入语或者从句主语之间有插入语时；

B. 当 that 从句和另一名词从句做并列宾语时；

C. 当 that 做介词宾语时。

③that 引导的从句在句中做主语和宾语时，可以用 it 代替，做形式主语或宾语。

④that 引导的主语从句的疑问形式和句子的一般疑问形式一样。

（2）what 和 that 的用法比较

①what 在名词性从句中充当主语，宾语或表语，意义上相当于 the thing（s）；引导主语从句时，其谓语动词的单复数依句意而定。

②that 在名词性从句中不充当任何成分，只起连接词的作用，无任何意义。引导主语从句时，常用 it 做形式宾语，谓语动词用单数。

2. 定语从句

在句子中起定语作用，修饰一个名词或代词，有时可以修饰一个句子。被定语从句修饰的词叫作先行词，定语从句必须放在先行词的后面，由关系代词或关系副词引导，且关系词在从句中充当成分。

［关系代词］

that 指人或物，在从句中作主语、宾语、表语；which 常指物，在从句中作主语，宾语，表语，定语；who 指人，在从句中作主语，表语；whom 指人，在从句中作宾语；whose 指人或物，在从句中作定语。

［关系副词］

where 在从句中作地点状语；when 在从句中作时间状语；why 在从句中作原因状语。

（1）只用 that 引导宾语从句的情况

①当先行词为 anything，everything，nothing，all，much，little，few 等不定代词或被这些不定代词修饰时；

②先行词被序数词或形容词最高级修饰时；

③先行词被 the only，the very，the just 修饰时；

④先行词既指人又指物时；

⑤当主语是以 who 或 which 开始的特殊疑问句时，其后引导的定语从句常用 that；

⑥有两个定语从句，其中一个已用 which，另一个宜用 that 引导。

（2）只用 which 引导定语从句的情况

①which 可以引导非限制性定语从句，而 that 不可以；

②关系代词前有介词时，用 which 引导；

③先行词后面有插入语时，用 which 引导；

④一个句子中有两个定语从句时，为避免重复，一个用 that 引导，另一个用 which 引导。

（3）whose 的用法

①whose 在定语从句中做定语，一般不能单独使用，要和名词一起在句中充当主语或宾语成分，在定语从句中可以指人也可以指物。whose 在定语从句中做定语，可以换作 of whom 或 of which。

②whose 后接名词做定语时，该名词前通常不加冠词修饰；但在 of whom/which 结构中，其后的名词前的定冠词 the 不能省略。

3．状语从句

（1）状语从句中的时态问题

在时间、条件、让步等状语从句中，一般不用将来时，通常用一般现在时表示将来，用一般过去时表示过去将来。

（2）可作“一……就……”解的引导词

as soon as，immediately，directly，no sooner…than…，hardly…when…，instantly 引导时间状语从句时，表示主句和从句的动作发生的时间间隔不长，其中，no sooner…than…，hardly…when…结构中，主句的谓语动词常用过去完成时，从句一般用过去时；主句通常用倒装结构，即把助动词提到主语前。

（3）since 引导的时间状语

since 在引导的时间状语从句中，若从句的谓语动词是延续性动词，往往表示某一动作或状态的终止；从句中的谓语动词是终止性动词，往往表示某一动作的开始。

第三章　改错典型真题详解

为使同学们更加精准地把握专升本英语改错题的难度及趋势，在此特别对 2021 年的改错真题进行详细解析，帮助各位同学节省学习时间，加深题目理解。

61. It is hard for me to get ready for the trip all by me.
A　B　C　D

【答案】D→myself

【解析】此题考点是代词。by＋oneself 译为独自，本句意思为对于我来说独自一人准备旅行是很难的。

62. If I had wings, I will fly back to my hometown as soon as possible.
A　B　C　D

【答案】B→would

【解析】此题考点是虚拟语气。对现在事实相反的假设，主句用一般过去时，从句用 would/could/should/might，题干中 will 为一般将来时，需改为虚拟语气形式。本句意思为如果我有翅膀，我就会尽快飞会家乡。

63. We can't go outside now because the rain is too big.
A　B　C　D

【答案】D→heavy

【解析】此题考点是固定搭配。形容雨雪下得大用 heavy，不要 big。本句意思为因为雨下的太多了，我们现在不能去外面。

64. Those who haven't handed in the compositions are required to hand it in today.
A　B　C　D

【答案】D→them

【解析】本题考点为代词。it 用来指代上文中同类同物的名词单数。compositions 为复数，要改为 them. 本句意思没有上交作文的人需要今天内上交。

65. Because it costs too much, the tool limit in practical use.
A　B　C　D

【答案】C→is limited

【解析】本题考点为主谓一致和语态。由题干可知，tool（工具）为单数，谓语动词需用单三形式，工具是被限制的，需要用被动，be limited in 在……方面受限。本句意思为由于成本太高，这个工具在实际使用中受到了限制。

66. His friends appreciate to work with him because he has a good sense of humor.
A　B　C　D

【答案】B→working

【解析】本题考点为固定搭配。appreciate doing sth 欣赏，感激做某事。本句意思为他的朋友欣赏和他一起工作，因为他很有幽默感。

67. Neither Jim nor his friends was interested in this novel when it was published.

A B C D

【答案】C→were

【解析】本题考点为主谓一致。neither…nor…考察就近原则，谓语动词和主语 his friends 保持一致，用复数形式。本句意思为当小说发行的时候，吉姆和他的朋友对小说都不感兴趣。

68. Weather permits, she will go out for a walk after supper with her parents.

A B C D

【答案】A→permitting

【解析】本题考点为非谓语。表示时间，天气，心跳等不可抗因素，非谓语动词用主动形式 doing。本句意思为天气允许的话，她会和父母在晚饭后散步。

69. He came to the conclusion that the greatest speed in the universe was that of light.

A B C D

【答案】D→is

【解析】本题考点为时态。客观真理，格言谚语只用一般现在时。本句意思为他得出结论，宇宙速度最快的是光速。

70. It was in 2000 when the country successfully launched the first manned spaceship.

A B C D

【答案】B→that

【解析】本题考点为强调句。强调句结构为 It is/was…that…. 译为正是……/就是……。本句意思为正是在 2000 年，这个国家成功发射第一艘载人宇宙飞船。

第四章　历年真题

Part V Error Correction（1×10）

Directions：There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A，B，C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part，then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. It was kind of him to meet me at the station and drove me to his home.
A B C D

92. A house built of brick lasts longer than the one that is made of woods.
A B C D

93. Neither he nor his two brothers was responsible for the fire which had caused great losses to the family.
A B C D

94. The professor’s lecture on grammar was three hours long and Sam felt very boring.
A B C D

95. I asked him where he’d like to go to.
A B C D

96. The climate here is often said to be similar in that of Japan.
A B C D

97. Although he is considered a great writer，but his works are not widely read.
A B C D

98. Without the sun we would freeze to die and starve in almost total darkness.
A B C D

99. Japan，after the Second World War，grew into an industrial country rapid.
A B C D

100. I’m afraid that I have to stop to talk with you because I have to go to the doctor’s for my toothache.
A B C D

改错答案：

91. C→drive/to drive
92. D→wood
93. B→were
94. D→bored
95. D→go
96. C→to
97. B→~~but~~
98. C→death
99. D→rapidly
100. B→talking

Part V Error Correction (1×10)

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. She is so a good teacher that all the students like her.
A B C D

92. Supposed he does not come, shall we go without him?
A B C D

93. Neither of them were in good health, but both worked very hard.
A B C D

94. I'm look forward to hearing good news from you.
A B C D

95. More and more, she wanted to communicate for others.
A B C D

96. Her wallet has been stolen from her unlocked car, only because of her carelessness.
A B C D

97. Weather permit, the Johnsons will hold open-air garden party.
A B C D

98. No sooner had they reached there then they were ordered to return to London.
A B C D

99. He must have stayed up late last night, mustn't he?
A B C D

100. That tests can actually give measurement of the languages skills of the students are
A B C
questioned by many teachers.
D

改错答案:

91. B→such
92. A→Supposing
93. B→was
94. A→looking
95. C→with
96. A→was stolen
97. A→permitting
98. C→than
99. C→didn't
100. C→is

Part V Error Correction (1×10)

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. It is when you nearly lose someone when you become fully conscious of much you value them.
A B C D

92. After reading the novel he was too exciting to go to sleep that night.
A B C D

93. Have run out of fuel, the plane crashed to the ground.
A B C D

94. All male guests at this restaurant are respectfully requested that they are put on coat and tie.
A B C D

95. Nobody can work well if he is distracting.
A B C D

96. It took years for Einstein's theory to gain acceptably.
A B C D

97. There is nothing so admirable as a man whose sacrifices his life and happiness for others.
A B C D

98. Cars turn into dead weapons when they are driven carelessly.
A B C D

99. The wound soldier made an effort to stand up, but the general stopped him.
A B C D

100. The only way to conquer fear is to face it, and doing so as frequently as possible.
A B C D

改错答案：

91. B→that
92. C→excited
93. A→Having
94. D→（should）put
95. D→distracted
96. D→acceptance
97. C→who
98. B→deadly
99. A→wounded
100. C→to do

Part V Error Correction（1×10）

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. As usually, when his parents don't like what he wears, they start to bug him.
A B C D

92. He is an experienced businessman; he has engaging in foreign trade for a few years.
A B C D

93. It was so a long journey that we felt very tired when we arrived.
A B C D

94. Jenny is an university student, and she is an honest girl.
A B C D

95. It took fifteen minutes for her realize that she had spelled my name incorrectly.
A B C D

96. Let's give the patient the hand. The car is waiting for us outside the school.
A B C D

97. Every means have been tried but without much success.
A B C D

98. No sooner he had entered the room than the telephone rang.
A B C D

99. It was in the classroom which we had class meeting yesterday.
A B C D

100. No one knows that the experiment will succeed or not.
A B C D

改错答案：

91. A→usual
92. B→been engaged
93. B→such
94. A→a
95. B→to realize
96. B→a
97. A→has
98. B→had he
99. C→that
100. C→whether

Part V Error Correction (1×10)

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. Mr Black, a good friend of me, likes drawing horses.
A B C D

92. Don't stay at home. You had better to go out for a walk.
A B C D

93. In the girls' 100-metre race, Lily from Class 1 ran very fast.
A B C D

94. There is a people in the room. But nobody knows who it is.
A B C D

95. We will hold a sports meeting next Monday if it won't rain.
A B C D

96. The boy called Tom was born in the morning of May 2nd, 1990.
A B C D

97. Mother asked me if the Blacks were going to move here long before.
A B C D

98. Today is September the tenth. Happy Teachers' Day to you. Thank you for teach us so well.
A B C D

99. Jim is much cleverer than any other students in Grade 3, but he doesn't work hard.
A B C D

100. Look! Two hundreds students are watching a football match on the playground.
A B C D

改错答案：

91. B→mine
92. C→go out
93. D→（the） fastest
94. B→person
95. D→doesn't
96. C→on
97. D→before long
98. C→teaching
99. B→any other student
100. A→hundred

Part V Error Correction (1×10)

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. It would save him much trouble if he has known her telephone number.
A B C D

92. A mature man is one who is good at turning failure into succeed.
A B C D

93. Which really matters is not what you said but what you did.
A B C D

94. Nowhere in the world you can find a man who is more foolish than John.
A B C D

95. Whoever leaves the classroom last should turn up the lights.
A B C D

96. Considering that she is a mere child, it is not safe to let her go lonely.
A B C D

97. They believe businesses in other countries is not as competitive as those in America.
A B C D

98. It is highly desirable that a new president is appointed for this college.
A B C D

99. Have no money but not wanting anyone to know, he simply said he would go without dinner.
A B C D

100. My wife said in her letter that she would appreciate to hear from you sometimes.
A B C D

改错答案：

91. C→had
92. D→success
93. A→what
94. B→can you
95. D→turn off
96. D→alone
97. B→are
98. C→be appointed
99. A→Having
100. C→hearing

Part V Error Correction (1×10)

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. He smashes up my car, and then expects me paying for the repairs.
A B C D

92. The book will show the readers how that they have observed can be used in other contexts.
A B C D

93. On the grassland lays the farmer and his family, enjoying the sunshine happily.
A B C D

94. He will surely finish the job on time in condition that he' s left to do in his own way.
A B C D

95. I can't boot my computer now. Something must have gone wrong in its operation system.
A B C D

96. Bob fails to attend the evening school. He may be sick, because he never asks for leave.
A B C D

97. The doctor attempted to reason the girl from her anxieties; nevertheless, he failed in the end.
A B C D

98. While taking down his instructions, you should take care not to leave away any sentences.
A B C D

99. While we are appreciating the good quality of your black tea, we regret that your price appears to be on the low side.
A B C D

100. The local health organization is believed to be set up thirty years ago when George became the first president.
A B C D

改错答案:

91. C→to pay   92. B→how what

93. A→lie   94. C→on

95. D→with   96. C→must

97. B→out of   98. D→leave out

99. D→high   100. B→have been set up

Part V Error Correction (1×10)

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. When I arrived at the station, I realized that the train has gone away.
A B C D

92. I should tell you that you will find it hard to make friend with that young man.
A B C D

93. Thousand of children are dying of drinking unclean water every day in the developing world.
A B C D

94. The sun warms the earth, this makes it possible for plants to grow.
A B C D

95. When the novel was finished, Miss Smith suggested to send it to the Oxford Press.
A B C D

96. Scarcely had we come into the classroom than the bell rang.
A B C D

97. Would you consider to give her another five minutes before giving up waiting for her.
A B C D

98. I am going to have my letter type tomorrow if I' ve got everything ready by then.
A B C D

99. The reason Tom has made great progress is for she has never wasted her time.
A B C D

100. The fire quickly spread to the first floor where it destroyed all the equipments in the language lab.
A B C D

改错答案：

91. D→had gone away
92. C→make friends with
93. A→Thousands of
94. B→which
95. D→sending
96. C→when
97. A→giving
98. B→have my letter typed
99. C→that
100. D→equipment

Part V Error Correction (1×10)

Directions: There are 10 sentences. Each of the following sentences has four underlined parts marked A, B, C and D. You are required to identify the incorrect part, then write the corresponding letter and the correct answer on the Answer Sheet.

91. A talk onChinese history will give in the school hall next week.
A B C D

92. That has been half a year since we came to study in this university.
A B C D

93. My uncle said that he couldn' t rememberto read the article the day before yesterday.
A B C D

94. The party, by which my grandfather was invited, was extremelyenjoyable.
A B C D

95. Not only she complained about the food, she also refused to pay for it.
A B C D

96. Staying in a hotel coststwice much as renting a room in a dormitory for a week.
A B C D

97. Your hair is too long. You'd better have it to cut tomorrow.
A B C D

98. By the end of this month, we have workedin this school for a year.
A B C D

99. The teacher, together with some students, are planning a sports meeting.
A B C D

100．I am excessive grateful for the many kindnesses you have shown my son.
A B C D

改错答案：

91．C→will be given
92．A→It
93．C→reading
94．A→to which
95．A→did she complain
96．C→twice as much as
97．D→cut
98．B→will/shall have worked
99．C→is
100．A→excessively

Part Nine

Composition
作　文

格言

An idle youth, a needy age.
少壮不努力，老大徒伤悲。

第一章　英语考试作文分析与要求

第一节　专升本英语考试短文写作要求及评分标准

一、专升本考试对作文的要求

专升本英文写作要求应试者写出一篇不少于120个词的短文；写作命题源于日常生活和有关科技、社会、文化等方面的一般常识，不涉及知识面过广，专业性太强的内容。其命题方式有：给出题目，或规定情境，或给出首句续写，或给出关键词写短文。要求内容切题，文理通顺，表达正确，语意连贯，无重大语言错误。

二、专升本考试作文评分原则、评分标准和评卷案例

1. 评分原则

专升本英语作文采用总体评分（GLOBAL SCORING）方法，即把内容和语言作为一个统一体进行综合评判。主要是看内容是否切题，表达是否充分，所用语言是否能清楚明确地表达思想。评卷人员根据思想内容和语言表达的总体印象给出奖励分（REWARDING SCORES），并不是按语言点错误的多少扣分。

2. 评分标准

阅读标准共分为五等

0分——白卷，作文题目毫不相关，或只有几个孤立的词而无法表达思想。

3分——条理不清，思路紊乱，语言支离破碎或大部分句子均有错误，且多数为严重错误。

7分——基本切题，表达思想不够清楚，连贯性差，有较多的严重错误。

11分——基本切题，表达思想清楚，文字连贯，但语言错误较多。

15分——切题，表达思想清楚，文字连贯，但有少量语言错误。

19分——切题，表达思想清楚，文字通顺，连贯性较好，基本无语言错误。

阅卷人员根据阅读标准，对照样卷评分，若认为与某一分数档次相似，即定为该分数；若认为稍优或劣于该档次，则可加一分或减一分，但不得加减半分。字数不足应酌情扣分。

The Importance of Social Skills

Among all the important skills of human beings，social skills are regarded as the most important. In an information age，communication with others in all walks of life plays an important role. No wonder that many students are deliberately working on their social skills.

Common sense has told us that those who have successful love affairs usually possess excellent social skills. They are good at promoting an easy-going relation with their partners，which naturally results in a romantic affair. The same is true for family life. Good social skills are essential to keep family members on good terms with each other，bringing about a happy family life. Secondly，statistics show that one’s career success depends heavily on his or her social skills. Professional skills are necessary，but without good social skills，a good teamwork is hardly imaginable，which would undoubtedly hinder the full play of professional skills.

In conclusion，if we are to lead a happy life and succeed in career，we must improve ourselves in such social skills as the ability of communicating on a feeling level，getting along well with others and so on.

三、常考写作类型

就专升本考试作文类型而言，在考过的各种写作类型中，考试真题以议论文为主，应用文为辅，而说明文很少涉及。这说明专升本写作近年来明显向实际应用、强调能力培养的方向发展。现总结近几年来的考试题目如下表8—1所示：

表8—1　近十年考试题目

年份	作文题目	题材	类型	命题形式
2006	Money	社会生活	议论文	提纲式
2007	Why I Attended College	校园教育	议论文	提纲式
2008	The Best Means of Transportation	社会生活	议论文	提纲式
2009	Getting to Know the Society	校园教育	议论文	提纲式
2010	An Application Letter	校园教育	应用文	材料式
2011	The Movement of Population	社会生活	议论文	提纲式
2012	The popularity of Micro-blog	社会生活	议论文	提纲式
2013	You Are the Only One Who Knows Whether the Shoes Fit Your Feet	社会生活	图画作文	图画式
2014	Environment and Travelling	社会生活	图画作文	图画式
2015	Happiness in My Mind	社会生活	议论文	命题式
2016	The Attitude towards Crisis	社会生活	议论文	命题式
2017	Frustration a Bad Thing	社会生活	议论文	提纲式
2018	On Lifelong Learning	社会生活	议论文	提纲式
2019	Part—time Jobs	校园教育	议论文	提纲式

第二章　短文写作方法

一、考场作文写作流程

英语专升本考试作文是命题作文，写作时间是 30 分钟。这就要求考生必须合理地支配时间，清楚写作步骤。这里，我们简要介绍一下写作的基本流程。其具体步骤和时间安排如下：

1. 解读题意，确定题型

根据考试题目以及给出的提纲或段首句，确定作文属于何种命题形式，快速确立自己的观点及论据。考生将确立的论点，罗列的论据及要明确的结论一一罗列出来，并尽可能的罗列出所有能想到的论据和关键词。这一过程对于理顺写作思路、确定文章的主线非常重要。此过程用时 3～5 分钟。

2. 确定框架和模版

在确定命题形式之后，迅速选择合适的写作框架和模版。这一过程用时 1 分钟左右。

3. 丰富框架和模版

将题目的具体写作要求有选择地填入模版中。虽然整个作文的框架已经由模版确定，但要拿到 16 分以上甚至满分，就必须注意具体的写作元素，使文章有“闪光点”。例如：多种句式的运用，使文章更为灵活；长短句的交错出现，使文章富有节奏感；若干长短句后出现一个短句可以明显地突出观点；连接词的运用，可使文章连贯、富有层次；通过举例、对比等，可使文章更为生动易懂；恰如其分地运用一些修辞手法、谚语或名言等，能起到“画龙点睛”的作用，使文章熠熠生辉。这一步骤需要 20～25 分钟左右。

4. 修改文章

在考试作文的修改过程中由于各种原因，难免会出现这样或那样的错误，因此最后的修改工作是必不可少的。由于考试时间的限制，诸如整篇作文是否符合题意这类情形已无法改变，所以我们修改文章时要秉承“只改语言、不改内容”的精神，主要考虑以下几点：

（1）语法，如主语和谓语在人称和数上是否保持一致；全篇时态是否保持一致；动词的语态、语气的使用是否正确；词组的搭配是否符合习惯等。

（2）标点符号与大小写的运用是否正确。

（3）有无单词拼写错误等。

这一步骤需要 3～5 分钟。

二、提高英语表达能力

英语短文的写作方法是学习语言综合能力的体现，它要求写作者具备扎实的语言基础和书面表

达能力。一般来说，专升本考生已经有一定的词汇量和英语知识，如何在此基础上进一步提高自己的英语写作能力，这是大家非常关心的问题。这里介绍几种提高英语写作能力的方法，仅供参考。

1. 训练遣词造句的能力

万丈楼高，始于基础。英语写作的基础在于遣词造句。参加考试时大家也有这种感觉，阅读理解部分并不太难，只要认识足够的单词加上掌握一定的阅读技巧，基本上能抓住文章的大意甚至细节，但写作则不然。作为成人，我们的思想已相当丰富，但书面英语表达能力却往往捉襟见肘，看到写作题目之后，头脑里大多是散乱的单词或词组，很难组合成完整的句子和段落来表达自己的思想。究其原因，这是平时缺乏遣词造句的训练所致。

在英语学习中，无时无刻不遇到地道的词组、句式、习语、短语和词语搭配，我们平时大多只注意认识他们，熟记他们，却忽略了通过使用将其内化成自己的语言这一过程，而运用这些表达法遣词造句恰恰是最好的使用。考生不妨把每天记忆的词组、句式、习语、短语、和词语搭配作为造句的素材，先用单个词组造单句，然后再用几个，十几个词组和句型造复合句、并列句，甚至段落。开始时，不必急于用英语去准确表达思想，只要能按照英语的习惯表达能自圆其说的句子和段落就行了。等进行了一段时间的训练之后，再试用语言去更准确地表达自己的思想。

造句时，还要有意识地使用最近学过的词汇和表达方式，使用写作常用优秀句型对巩固新知识、提高语言的应用能力大有裨益。

2. 使用写作常用优秀句型

句子是表达完整思想的最小语言单位。同时句子又是最大的语言结构单位，其下有词、词组和从句等语法结构。句型是用作造句范例的语法结构模式，所以学习好的句型是非常有意义的。现举例几个作文中常见的句型：

（1）由 while 引导的让步状语从句。它能凸现两种观点的对比，又使句子显得非常精炼。While 一般用在逗号之后，如作文中 My View on Opportunity 的第一段可以写为：

Different people have different views on opportunity：some people believe that there are few opportunities in the world，while others argue that everybody will have some kinds of opportunity along his life routine.

这里第一句是说不同人持不同的观点，第二句是两种观点的对比，均使用了宾语从句，但使用不同的动词来引导。特殊的情况下第一段只有一句话，那么 while 前面就没有逗号了，如作文 Going on a Self-Tour or a Package Tour 的第一段可以写为：

When it comes to traveling，some of people will choose to go on a self-tour while others want to go on a package tour.

当然这里叙述的是两类不同人的做法，与上述观点的对立有所不同。

（2）those who 句型。those 是一个指示代词，指代上文中出现的人们，而 who 引导的是定语从句，一般引出持何种观点，句子后面就可以说他们如何如何，这个句型非常精炼。

如作文 Advantage and Disadvantage of the Internet 第二段的起始句可以套用该句型写为：

Those who are in favor of the Internet claim that it has a lot of advantages.

第三段的起始句可以写为：

Those who are opposed to the internet hold that disadvantages are many.

这里的对比是非常明显的。注意下一句中的反对是 oppose 或 be opposed to，而 oppose to 是错误的。正如“面临”一词可以用 face 或 be faced with，但不能用 face with 一样。另外，这一句中的最后一个词 many 前不宜加 also，因为这是将利与弊处理为两组人的观点，如果将他们写成事物或现象本身的特征，就应该加了。

这种句型的变体一是 Those people who…，例如 Going on a Self-tour or a Package Tour 第二段首句可以写为：

Those people who decide to go on a self-tour argue that they love the freedom and flexibility when they travel by themselves. You can stay longer if you enjoy the beautiful scenery there.

另一种变体是将定语从句用一个形容词词组代替，如下面一段文字：

Those in favor of this research believe that it could help cure many diseases，such as cancer，Alzheimer's disease，Parkinson's disease and diabetes，and this research uses only embryos that otherwise would be discarded. Those opposed to this type of research argue that it goes against ethics by using cells from human embryos，when this research can be done on animals or using other types of cells.

以第二个斜体句子为例，Those who are opposed to…. 变成了 Those opposed to…这是因为 opposed 是形容词化为的过去分词，关系代词能够而且必须与 be 这个助动词同时省略。如果原句是 Those who oppose…，改后应该是 Those opposing…

（3）倒装句。倒装句可由 only 引起，也可由一组否定词引起。only 是一个副词，only 置于句首，后面可以跟状语或状从，从句不倒装其后的主句需要进行半倒装。在办法类文章中最常用，一般出现在文章的末段。这样的句子力度非常强，强调要解决问题就必须如何做。

Only 后常接时间状语从句，比如作文 How to Eliminate Cheating on Campus 一文的最后一句话可以写为：

Only when all of us join in the efforts of eliminating cheating at all levels can we expect to have a cleaner society and a more beautiful future.

句子后面的情态动词放在了主语 we 的前面。此句后面的动词带了两个平行的宾语，均是形容词的比较级加名词的形式，这是一种高级写作技巧。

only 后面有时接条件状语从句。例如作文 My View on Opportunity 的最后一句话可以套用此倒装句：

Only if we get prepared can we seize opportunities instead of letting them slip by，just as the saying goes，“opportunities are only for the prepared mind.”

这句话后面又以最常用的句型引出了一条谚语，取得了非常好的效果。

有时候后面还可以跟一个介词词组，如：

Only by planning his time carefully can he improve efficiency and make achievements.

此句中有两个平行的动宾结构，引人注目，同时也告诉我们，平行结构可出现在多个层面上。如作文 How to Improve our Writing Ability 一文中也可以使用此句型：

Only in this way can we master the writing skills step by step.

这个介词词组实际上也是一个状语。

（4）条件状语从句。条件状语从句看似平凡，却正好符合适度的思想，即不宣称自己的观点在任何情况下都是对的，而是在何种情况下或是满足了何种条件才会正确。

If 引导的条件状语从句数目非常多，我们这里只谈论包含它的模版句式。比如作文 Buying a Home Downtown or in the Suburbs 一文的结束句可以这样写：

He will make the right choice if he knows his goal in the life and how to make decisions according to the goal.

除此之外，so long as 也可以引导条件状语从句，语气比 if 强。例如作文 Advantages and Disadvantages of Electronic Dictionary 一文中最后一句可以写为：

So long as we can make proper use of it，it can be most helpful for us in many respects.

“合理使用”可以用 make good use of it 或 make use of it reasonably. Most 放在形容词前面表示“非常”的和含义。这里大家应该细细揣摩从句在前和从句在后的差别，即句型调整多有调节语气的效果，从句在后的情形相对较多，语气大多客观和缓；而从句在前的情形相对较少，大多强调这一条件。

（5）强调句。强调语气强烈，能给阅读老师留下深刻的印象。如作文 How I Finance My College Education 一文中第二段第一、二句：

First of all，the main financial support comes from parents and other family members. For all the years it is they who give the student courage and determination to hold on and excel.

强调句可与 not…but…结构同时使用来凸显对比。

It is not the years in your life，but the life in your years that counts.

（6）反问句。反问句在很多时候能达到肯定句加上修饰成分也无法达到的效果。如作文 Daydreaming 的左后一段可以尝试使用反问句结尾：

Now that we can draw the conclusion that daydreaming is most beneficial，why not make good use of it to make life rich and rewarding?

上句中的 why not…是典型的表示建议的句型。有时反问句连续使用，效果会更为强烈，如作文 Is Failure a Bad Thing? 一文可以尝试写这样的话：

If you have only had wonderful things happen to you，how can you become brave? If you can only embrace success and will never accept failure，how can you become mature?

（7）结果状语从句。结果状语从句是由 so…that…或 such…that…引导的，可以译为“如此……以至于……”。比如作文 Is Failure a Bad Thing? 一文的首句可以写为：

Failure is such a common matter that every one of us meet it from time to time.

（8）让步状语从句。第一种让步状语从句是由 although 或 though 引起的，可译为“虽然”，注意不要和 but 连用。比如作文 My View on Double BA Degree 一文中可以尝试此句型：

Although it may bring unfavorable consequences，we can be sure to conclude that this practice is favorable on the whole.

Although（it is true that）…，it doesn’t mean…是一个非常好的句型，能批驳对方观点中推导的错误。另外这个句型的最大亮点在于以退为进，语气非常恰当。他告诉我们任何的观点都不是绝对的，我们所驳斥的观点也不是一无是处。例如下面一段话：

To begin with，although you may feel anxious to finish the work when the deadline is drawing near，it doesn't mean you can finish your job with high quality.

上述模版中的选词 although 可由 while 替代，而动词 mean 还可以由 follow 替代，是“推导出…的结果”的意思。如：

First，while it is true that you can do a lot of things with money，it doesn't follow that you can buy such things as love，friendship，health and happiness with money.

第二种让步状语从句是由 even if 或 even though 引起的，可译为“即使”。例如下面一句话：

What's more，many students lack self-control to such an extent that they play for long hours even if they know it is harmful to both their mental and physical health.

同时，此外还包含一个 such…that…引导的结果状语从句。

第三种让步状语从句是由 no matter how 或 however，whatever 等引起的，可译为：“不管……”如：

No matter how responsible the teachers are and how friendly the classmates are，you can only depend on yourself once you step into the examination room.

这句话的后半部分包含一个由 once 引导的时间状语从句。例如：作文 My View on Fate 一文中的第二段可以写这样一句话：

For another，if a person is diligent and determined，he will realize his dream no matter how poor，humble or unlucky he may be.

（9）not（never）…until…这个句型可译为“直到……才……”，其中 never 比 not 语气要强得多。如下面一段话：

For one thing，we can never wish people to be good to us until we become thoughtful and considerate.

这个句型有时可用在句末，如：

We can never wish to realize our dream of a cleaner and more beautiful environment until all of us take actions to build，protect and take care of it.

有时此句型可与反问句同时使用，这是一种高级写作技巧，如作文 How to Eliminate Cheating on campus 一文末段的首句可以使用本句型：

How can anybody expect to lead a meaningful life until he is far away from any kind of cheating behaviors?

请大家注意否定句与肯定句的区别：until 单独使用时表示主句中的动作延续到从句中的动作的发生，例如作文 Is Failure a Bad Thing? 也可以灵活运用此句型：

Other people view repeated failures as most natural on the way towards achievements-they will keep on trying until they succeed in the end.

建议应具体说明此处破折号用法是什么，而不是让别人注意又不给别人解释。补充：此处破折号是对上文的解释或补充作用。此句中的 achievement 是一个不可数名词，在这里等于 success。

有时 until 可提到句子的最前面，如作文 Noontime Rest 一文的首句可以改写为：

Until quite recently most people hold a hostile attitude towards taking a rest at noon.

（10）There is no such thing as…此句型语气非常强烈，译为“没有……这样的事情”。如作文 My View on Fate 一文可以在结尾段使用这样的句型：

Taking all these factors into consideration，we may safely come to the conclusion that there is no such thing as destined fate in our life.

（11）包含 never 的否定。never 一词表示完全否定，用在句中通常可取得强烈的效果。它可以与 too 同时使用，表示“再……都不为过”。如：

You can never be too good to your mother.

You can never be too careful when you drive a car.

它可以与其他否定词连用，构成双重否定，表达肯定意义。如作文 The Two-Day Weekend 一文第二段的首句可以尝试写为：

Though it does good to college students in many ways，the two-day weekend can never be said to bring no problem.

Never…because（since）…，表示“不因为……就……”，如：

Last but not least，it is for the first time in my life that I learn perseverance，and in the future I will never give up since a matter is difficult.

除了上面我们提到的 never…until 结构外，还可以与 unless 同时使用，如谚语类作文 Haste Makes Waste 一文第二段的末句可以使用本句型：

Similarly，you can never write a good research paper unless you concentrate on what you are doing and have a right attitude towards failure.

Never 可以与 fail 连用，表示“总能够……”，如作文 My View on Selective Course 一文第二段的末句可以写为：

On the other hand，selective courses can be informative，instructive and inspiring because different teachers，subjects，classrooms and environment will never fail to sparkle new thoughts.

（12）平行结构。平行结构可以出现在词、词组与句子等各个层面上，平行结构可增强文章的节奏感，使行文流畅，富有韵律，读起来朗朗上口，所以颇得阅卷老师的青睐。

在作文 My View on Fate 一文中的第二段中我们可以尝试使用这样的平行结构，非常引人注目。

For another，if a person is diligent and determined，he will realize his dream no matter how poor，humble or unlucky he may be.

三、掌握短文写作的要领

练习写作，考生需要注意的地方很多，归纳起来，可以从以下几个方面入手：

1. 使用规范的英语句子

“千里之行，始于足下。”句子是构成文章的基本要素。要写好英语作文，考生应首先提高自己组词造句的能力，训练规范英语句子的写作。

那么，什么是规范的英语句子呢？规范的英语句子应达到以下几个基本要求：

（1）句子要完整。不仅意思要求完整，结构上也应完整。意思的完整是指一个句子应该表达一个相对完整的意思。在英语学习者的作文中，常常看到意思不完整的病句，如：

Bikes are so popular in China.（病句）

此句应改为：

Bikes are so popular in China that almost every family has at least one.

结构的完整性是指句子在有语法结构方面没有缺损。中国学生在作文中常写残缺句，例如：

It is incredible to many people. Cigarette smokers spend money for illness.（病句）

It is incredible to many people that cigarette smokers spend money for illness.

修改后的句子以it做形式主语，替代that从句前置，这样句子的结构就完整了。

在作文中，还要避免错误的省略。这也是考生在写句子时常犯的毛病。例如：

I said I had more respect for him than his wife.（病句）

此句错误地省略了介词for，造成了句意不清楚。正确的表达应为：

I said I had more respect for him than for his wife.

在很多情况下，句子结构的不完整是由考生随意使用标点符号造成的。这主要是受汉语的影响，断句不严格，标点用起来也有些随意。在英语中一定要严格断句。请看一典型的滥用标点的句子：

We couldn't decide upon a new car，there were many attractive models.（病句）

英语语法规则要求，只要句子成分完整就应用句号断句，或用连接词将其与后句连接。在此两句间用了一个逗号，这个错误看似微不足道，但实际上却很严重。

此句可修改为：

We couldn't decide upon a new car，for there were many attractive models.

（2）句子要连贯。如果句子中的词或其它成分没有按照一定的语法规则排列，一个成分与其它成分及全句的关系含糊不清，句子就不连贯了。例如：

He was knocked down by a bicycle，but it was not serious.（病句）

句中的it所指不明确，句子缺乏连贯，应修改为：

He was knocked down by a bicycle，but was not seriously hurt.

还有一种常见的不连贯现象，那就是不定式短语、分词、动词的逻辑主语与句子主语的不一致。例如：

To succeed in a scientific research project，one needs to be persistent.

连贯性还应体现在英语的“平行结构”当中。学习者在造句时要注意使用相同的语法结构来表达两个或两个以上意思并列的成分。否则，语句就显得不连贯了，比如：Formerly，science was taught by the textbook method，while now the laboratory method is employed.（病句）

此句的毛病在于做主语的名词不平行，应该为：

Formerly，science was taught by the textbook method；now it is taught by the laboratory method.

在使用关联词语时，两个连词之后要用同样的语法结构，这些常用的连词有“both…and…”，“not…but…”，“not only…but also”，“neither…nor”，“either…or”等，例如：

It was both a long ceremony and very tedious.（病句）

句中的两个表语不平行，一个是名词，另一个却是形容词，应改为：

The ceremony was both long and tedious.

再如：

A man is judged not only by what he says but also by his deeds.（病句）

句中由“not only…but also”引导的成分不相配，一个是“what”从句，一个是名词，应修改为：

A man is judged not only by what he says but also by what he does.

在注意连贯性时，应结合英语语句结构的特点，突出重点。英语语句的结构成树状，主句就是树干，众多的从句和其他从属结构（如分词结构、不定式结构等）是大大小小的树枝。学生在练习造句和写作时，应善于对句子内容信息的重要性进行权衡，把重要信息放在主句中，次要信息放在从属结构中。例如：

The competition for college enrollment is extremely keen this year and the candidates spend days and nights preparing for the entrance examination and they neglect their health and so the newspapers carry articles urging teachers and parents to take up this problem seriously.

上例中句子拖沓，滥用“and”“so”等连词，信息主次不分，是一种幼稚句型。利用主从复合句这一典型的英语句型可将信息关系梳理清楚。如：

As the competition for college enrollment is extremely keen this year，the candidates spend days and nights preparing for the entrance examination，neglecting their health. In view of this，the newspaper carries articles urging teachers and parents to take up this problem seriously.

改写后，一句分解成两句，理清了因果关系，第一句“as…”表原因，把重要信息放在主句中，重点突出，在主句后使用了两个分词短语“preparing…”和“neglecting…”，表达从属信息，又达到了结构上的平衡。第二句用“in view of this”连接，承上启下。

（3）句子要简练，避免汉语式的赘述。句子冗长是考生在写作时最容易出现的毛病。有的考生错误地认为，句子越长，就越显示出自己的英语水平高超。这是造成句子冗长的原因之一。另一个原因是受汉语的影响，有的考生在造句是，头脑首先出现的是汉语句子，然后再翻译成英语，这不可避免地形成了汉语式的赘述。

明确了以上两个原因之后，考生应时刻力求用词的简练和表达的清晰，删除多余无关的词语，有意识地克服一味追求长句的弊病，学会灵活变换句式。同时还应当克服汉语的影响，不要用硬译的方法来组合语句，逐渐养成用英语进行思维的习惯。

比如，考生的作文中常出现这样的句子：

In my opinion，I think the picture is very meaningful.（病句）

这的 in my opinion 和 I think 是同义的，是不必要的重复。应改为：

In my opinion，the picture is very meaningful.

又如，The distant explosion was audible to the ear.（病句）

audible 译为“听得见的”，因此此句中的 to the ear 是多余的词语，应该删除。

再如，There are four companies is Shanghai，and any of them can supply us with spare parts.

（病句）

2. **熟悉和掌握常用句型**

英语写作的题材与我们的日常生活息息相关，通常涉及事物间的比较，说明其相似性和相异性、事物之间的因果关系，有时要求考生分析事实，找出原因或解决问题的方法，或对一个问题提出个人看法等，所以，考生在复习写作的时候，要尽可能地熟悉和掌握表达这些关系的常用句型。

（1）相似性

①A is to B what/as C is to D（ A之于B犹如C之于D）例如：

Moral corruption is to the State as physical disease is to an individual body.

Classic music is to my generation what pops are to her generation.

②just as…，so…（正如……，……也如此）例如：

Just as woods are indispensable to birds，so is the earth to human beings

Just as they must put aside their prejudices，so we must be prepared to accept their good faith.

③A and B have something in common（A和B有共同之处）例如：

As human beings，the American and Chinese have lots of things in common.

Tom and I have background in common.

④A is similar to B（A与B相似）例如：

My hobby is similar to his in that we both like collecting records，foreign and domestic.

My problems are very similar to yours.

⑤The same is true of/The same can be said of…（……也是如此）例如：

As the economies of all countries are closely interrelated no country can develop in self-seclusion. The same is true in China.

（2）相异性

①A is just the opposite（ to B)（A与B正相反）例如：

Beijing is populous and crowded，while Canberra is just the opposite.

② A differs（ is different）from B in that…（A不同于B在于……）例如：

China's condition differs from ours in that China has the largest population in the world.

The family sedans made in China are different from those made by the Americans. They are more compact and energy saving.

③…（the case）is not the same（……是不相同的）例如：

While it may be true that basketball and volleyball share certain features，the excitement each arouses in the spectators is not the same.

The development zones in the eastern coastal areas are mostly inhabited and supported by governments，but the case is not the same with those in the west.

④contrary to（ on the contrary） …（正相反）例如：

Contrary to our estimation，the economic situation of the country is gradually getting better.

You were not boring me with the question. On the contrary，I was much enlightened on the situation from the discussion.

（3）权衡

①The advantages outweigh the disadvantages.

It seems safe to say that the advantages of marriage outweigh its disadvantage.

As is shown by the arguments，the drawbacks of cloning technology outweigh its promising advances.

②nothing can rival…/there is no rival to（……是无与伦比的）例如：

Perhaps nothing can rival the pleasure from reading.

There was no rival to him as a poet.

③…has drawbacks as well as merits（……既有优点，也有不足）例如：

There could be no doubt that job-hopping has its drawbacks as well as merits.

④A is superior to B（A 优于 B）例如：

Men may be superior to women in physical affairs. Yet there is no difference in intelligence.

The computer is vastly superior to the abacus.

⑤vary from to（……是因人而异的）例如：

People's attitude towards drugs varied from person to person.

The picture varied in detail from place to place.

（4）过渡性句型（承上启下，使新观点不至于显得过于突兀、武断）例如：

①It is true that most jobs are a series of more or less unpleasant chores，but it doesn't follow that's all they are.

②This is true，no doubt，but it is not the whole story by any means.

③It is fairly well known that Vitamin C is indispensable to health. But it is probably less well known that taking it excessively may do harm to human body.

④This story also illustrate the importance of seizing an opportunity when it presents itself. It is one thing to be offered an opportunity；it is another thing to take it and use it well.

以上所列举的常用句型只起一种示范和启示性作用。限于篇幅，把所有类型的常用句型都一一列举是不可能的。考生在阅读不同类型的范文时，要注意观察，收集积累，认真记忆，这样才能在面对不同类型的作文题目时，表达自如。

3. 注意句与句之间的自然连接

与汉语相比，英语注重“形合”，上一句向下一句的发展较多地依赖过渡词语。如：表达句子间的递进关系用“in addition”“for instance”“take something（for example)”；罗列用“firstly”“next”“finally”等。恰当地使用这些词语可使句子之间的关系明了，行文通顺、流畅。不少考生已认识到使用过渡词语的重要性。

但是，从近年来的写作情况来看，作文中出现了过渡词语用的过多、过滥现象。实际上，句语句之间意义的连接有时还可以通过其他手段来实现，对此，考生也应该注意学习和掌握。

下面简要介绍几种常用的手法：

（1）用反义词或互补词实现句子间的连接。例如：

Years ago，a TV set was regarded as a luxury. Today it is a necessity.

很明显，两句之间是转折关系，但我们并没有见到 but 之类的表转折的连接词语，其原因是第一句的“years ago”和“ a luxury”分别与第二句的“today”和“a necessity”构成了反义或互补关系，是这种关系使两句意义连贯。又如：

Discrimination is mainly practiced against women in the field of science. We don’t find men complaining about this.

两句中的“women”和“men”是互补词，他们将两句意义上的反义关系体现了出来。

（2）用概括词或上下义词来连接句子。例如：

An electron tube is generally used for amplification. Vacuum tube is another name for this device.

第二句中的“device”是第一句中“an electron tube”这个具体词的概括词，因此它也起到了连接句子的功能。再如：

Yesterday a pigeon carried the first message from London to Liverpool. The bird covered the distance in four hours.

两句间虽然没有连接词语，但语义上是连贯的。第一句的“ a pigeon”和第二句的“bird”构成了上下文义词的关系，这种关系也能起到连接的作用。

（3）用词汇链来连接句子。在写作时，我们通常在一个段落内讨论一个话题，或是某个话题的一个方面，这样在意义上相互联系的词语常常出现在同一语篇中。这些词语形成了词汇链，能够发挥连接句子的作用。例如：

Brain injures do not heal as do hurts in other parts of the body. A broken leg can be set. A black eye clears up. But the brain，once damaged，never recovers. The destruction of brain cell is permanent.

这个语段共 5 个句子，句子中间只出现了一个连接词“but”，可能语段意义非常连贯，其原因就是词汇链的存在。“injures”“broken legs”“destruction”“damage”“hurts”都是指身体的伤害，而“heal”“clear up”“recover”说的是康复。“brain”“leg”“eye”都是指身体的组成部分，正式这些意义相近或相关词语的集中出现，将几个句子的意义紧密连接了起来。

以上的分析说明，连接词语的使用要适当，要善于利用词汇手段使段落文章达到连贯。不要一味地堆砌连接词语，把文章写成干瘪、空洞的“洋八股”。

4. 熟悉和掌握英语文章和段落的基本结构

就一篇英语文章而言，连贯性表现在结构上的“启、承、转、合”。“启”是文章的开头，作为引言段提出论点；“承”作为第一个推展段提出论据；“转”作为第二个推展段提出相反的或进一步的论据；“合”作为结论段最后强调或提升论点。例如：

Man and the Environment

引言段（启和承）

Man is closely related to the environment. Our environment provides man with fresh air to breathe，clean water to drink，various vegetables to eat and fertile soil in which to plant. Man could hardly survive if he couldn’t get the necessities he needed from the environment. Even when he sleeps，he needs quiet surroundings. Such a good environment is essential to man’s life.

推展段（转）

However，our environment is faced with many dangers. It is seriously polluted by chemical wastes from factories and sewage in the city. Farmland is also overworked and has lost its fertility. Some even has become sandy. Moreover，trees are being cut down，thus a large scale of forests，species of plants and animals are disappearing from the earth. The balance of nature is being destroyed.

结论段（合）

Effective measures must be taken to protect our environment. Laws must be passed to prohibit factories from emitting waste gases and releasing water before they are purified. Moreover，people should be forbidden to throw away rubbish whenever and wherever they like. And rare animals must be well preserved. Finally，new models of vehicles should be invented，which give off fewer exhausted fumes and less noise than the old ones. Only in this way can man have a pleasant environment to live in.

就一个段落而言，其基本结构和文章一样，也有“启、承、转、合”。专升本入学考试作文题材以说明文，议论文句子居多，这两种体裁的文章的段落有其比较规范的行文模式。一般来说，段落开头常以主旨句表示“启”，以结尾句表示“合”，中间的推展句多少视段落内容的需要而定，“承”或“转”的次序排列也因情况而变化。比如上面文章的第一段：

Man is closely related to the environment.（启）Our environment provides man with air to breathe，clean water to drink，vegetables to eat and fertile soil in which to plant.（承）Man could hardly survive if he couldn’t get the necessities he needed from the environment.（承）Even when he sleeps，he needs quiet surroundings.（承）Such a good environment is essential to man’s life.（合）

英语作文中，常用于引言段开头的词语和句型有：at present；currently；generally speaking；it goes without saying that…；it is（quite）clear that…；it is often said that…；lately；many people often ask this question…；now；recently 等。如：

（启）
Generally speaking，
In general，
It goes without saying that，
On the while，
At present/lately/now，
Currently/recently，
many teachers expect their pupil
to do more work they can.

常用于第一段的推展段（承）开头的词语和句型有：Also；At the same time；Besides this；Everybody knows that；For example；Furthermore；I’m of the opinion that；In addition；In particular；It can be easily proved that；It is true that；meanwhile；No one can deny that；One thing which is equally important to the above mentioned is；The chief reason why…is that…；This can be expressed as follows…；To take…for example；We must realize that…；What is more serious is that…；What’s more；（now that）we know that…；We have reason to believe that…等。

（承）
What is more，
In addition，
Also，
What’s more serious，
At the same time，
Besides this，
parents do not realize that driving their children to study…is harder than…

常用于第二推展段（转）开头的词语和句型有：Another special consideration in this case is that…；Besides，we should not neglect that…；But it is a pity that…；But the problem is not so simple. Therefore…；However；Nevertheless；On the contrary；Others may find this to be true，but…；On the other hand；Otherwise；Perhaps，you’ll question why…；So long as you regard this as reasonable，you may…；Still；There is a certain amount of truth in this，but we still have a problem with regard to…；Though we are in basic agreement with…；Unfortunately；Unlike…；What seems to be the trouble is…；Whereas；Yet differences may be found in…等。如：

（转）
However，
Nevertheless，
On the other hand，
Unfortunately，
But it is a pity that
Still，
many students have no choice but to burn the candle at both ends in order to get good gardes and please their parents.

常用于结论段开头的词语和句型有：Above all；As a consequence/result；As has been noted；As I have said；At last/length；By and large；By doing so；Consequently；Eventually；Finally；Hence；In conclusion；In short；In summary；On the whole；Therefore；Thus；To speak frankly；To sum up；To summarize 等。如：

（合）
Accordingly，
As a result，
Therefore，
Thus，
To sum up，
Eventually，
some students may very possibly fail in school because of this pressure to study in excess of what is required.

当然，以上罗列的词语和句型只是用于段落开头的一些较为典型的语句。接下来，段落的扩展要靠考生自己发挥。在确定了段落结构和文章结构之后，应该说写作基本完成了一半。至于文采和风格，就要看考生自己的语言功底了。

第三章　短文写作的固定表达

第一节　写作常用逻辑衔接词

衔接词是指在文章中用来说明上、下或前、后句间关系的词组，是连接句与句、段与段的纽带，是使文章具备连贯性的主要工具。在作文中恰当的使用衔接词可以保证作文段落结构清晰、逻辑合理、过渡自然流畅。能够熟练运用写作模版的考生，在熟练掌握衔接词的用法以后，可以更加灵活的运用各种句型，甚至发挥更为适用的句型。

1. 衔接词本身在文章中根据的作用，主要分为以下四类，即“启”“承”“转”“合”

(1) 表示“启”的词/词组：用于开篇引出扩展句

at first 最初
at present 现在；至今；
recently 最近
in general 一般来说
for one thing…（for another）首先……（其次）……
currently 目前；最近
first（ly）第一
in the beginning 最初
on the one hand…（on the other hand）一方面……（另一方面）
to begin with 首先；第一
in the first place 首先；第一
lately 最近
to start with 首先；第一
now 现在
first of all 首先；第一
generally speaking 总的来说
on the whole 总起来说
It goes without saying that…不用说
presently 现在；此刻

(2) 有关“承”的常用词汇：用来承接上文

after/after that/afterwords 此后
after a few days 几天以后
after a while 过了一会
also/too 并且；又
at any rate 无论如何
at the same time 同时
besides 此外
furthermore 而且；此外
in addition 此外
in addition to…除……之外，还
in fact 事实上
by this time 此时
certainly 无疑地；当然地
consequently 因此；结果
for example 例如
for instance 例如
for this purpose 为了这个目的
from now on 从此
second 第二；第二点
secondly 第二
similarly 同样地
so 所以

in other words 换句话说
in particular 特别（地）
in the same way 同样地
in deed 的确
meanwhile 与此同时
moreover 而且；此外
no doubt 无疑地
obviously 明显地
of course 当然
soon 不久
still 仍然
third 第三；第三点
thirdly 第三
for another 其次
such as 正如
later 后来
truly 事实上；真实地
unlike…不像……；和……不同

（3）有关“转”的常用词语：用来表示不同或相反的意见

after all 毕竟
anyway 无论如何
at the same time 同时；然而
but 但是
luckily 幸运地
nevertheless 不过；仍然
though/although 尽管
conversely 相反地
by contrast 对比之下
even though 即使
still 仍然
as a matter of fact 事实上
at this time 此时
fortunately 幸运地
however 然而；无论如何
in spite of 尽管…虽然…
spite 尽管…虽然…
specially 特别地
no doubt 无疑地
notwithstanding 虽然
on the contrary 相反地
otherwise 否则
unlike 不像……然而……
yet 仍；然而；但是

（4）有关“合”的常用词语：用于小结上文或结束本段落的内容

above all 最重要的是
as a consequence 因此
as a result 结果
as I have said 如我所述
at last 最后
at length 最后；终于
by and large 一般来说
by doing so 如此
consequently 因此
eventually 最后
finally 最后
hence 因此
in conclusion 总之；最后
in short 总而言之
accordingly 于是
in sum 总之；简而言之
in summary 简要地说
therefore 因此
thus 因此
to speak frankly 坦白的说
to sum up 总而言之
to summarize 简而言之
surely 无疑
no doubt 毫无疑问
undoubtedly 无疑
truly 的确
obviously 显然
certainly 当然地；无疑地

in a word 总之　　all in all 总之

2. 根据衔接词本身的意思和文章链接所需要的逻辑意义，可分为 14 类

（1）表示因果关系

as a result

He never studied hard，and as a result he failed in the last examination.

as a result of

He is late for work as a result of traffic accident.

accordingly

He wanted to buy a radio for studying English，and accordingly his mother bought it for him.

because（of）

We are delayed because of a traffic jam.

due to

His success is due to his excellent work.

owing to

Owing to his absence，our meeting is canceled.

thanks to

Thanks to a good teacher，she passed the examination.

now that

Now that you have grown up，you must earn a living by yourself.

so long as

You could accomplish your dream so long as you try it again and again.

since

Since you are here now，you'd better give a hand.

on account of

We delayed our departure on account of the bad weather.

in that

The policy is harmful in that it may encourage people to give up.

so that

The office speaks at the top of his voice so that every soldier could hear him.

consequently

It rained so heavily，consequently，we canceled the plan to climb the mountain.

hence

It is 12 p. m now，hence you must take a sleep.

therefore

There is a calculating mistake there，therefore，the answer is wrong.

（2）表示解释关系

as a matter of fact

I will go there this morning，as a matter of fact，I have only 10 minutes'drive from you.

as well

I will go there this morning，my friend will go with me as well.

frankly speaking

Frankly speaking，I am not very satisfied with your words.

in this case

In this case，I will go there as soon as possible.

（3）表示推理关系

or else

Make haste，or else you'll be late.

otherwise

You must bear this passport，otherwise you will be stopped by the guard.

if so

If so，it will make a great difference.

that implies

He is in panic now，so that implies he is lying.

to put it more precisely

He is rather strong，to put it more precisely，he is very sturdy.

under no circumstances

Under no circumstances will I go there.

（4）表示递进关系

additionally

I like playing cards. Additionally，playing chess is also my favorite game.

in addition

I need your help. In addition，I also need her support.

besides

First，we must work hard. Besides，we must work with a creative mind.

and moreover

The hat is the right size for you，and moreover，it goes well with your skin.

that is to say

The stock price is declining，that is to say，I am losing money.

furthermore

She is kind，and furthermore，she's beautiful.

in other words

I am not hungry. In other words，I really dislike the food in this canteen.

equally important

You should read more news from newspapers, and equally important, keep an eye on the news from the radio.

what's more

It is harmful to my health, and what's more, it is no good to my work.

last but not least

Last but not least, my thanks should go to every member of my class.

(5) 表示比较关系

equally

As a teacher, I should teach well, but equally, I should study well.

in comparison

In comparison with the red one, I would like to choose the blue cap.

in the same way

It is such a coincidence that we figure it out in the same way.

in contrast to

In contrast to your belief, I quite disagree with you.

instead

If you don't go, I'll go instead.

on the contrary

You thought I like it. On the contrary, I dislike it.

in contrast

It is hot in the daytime, but in contrast it's very cold at night.

while

We are happy in China, while most Africans live unhappily.

(6) 表示选择关系

alternatively

You may take the exam. Alternatively you take another one next year.

either…or

Either you or I will go there.

rather than

In this matter, the parents should be blamed rather than the children.

instead of

You should be reading books instead of lying there in bed.

not…but

She is not an English teacher, but a German student.

whether…or not

I wonder whether you will come or not this afternoon.

（7）表示转折关系

although

Although he is old，he still works every day.

despite

I will visit him despite the heavy snow.

at the same time

The little kid brings troubles，but at the same time you can't help liking him.

even though

Even though she is late，she walks slowly.

however

I planned to go there，however，the incident suddenly interrupted my normal work.

in spite of

In spite of the boy's sincerity，the teacher is still angry.

nevertheless

Nevertheless，I would try to make a remedy.

regardless of

Regardless of age，sex，race and economic level，all men are equal.

notwithstanding

I have determined，notwithstanding your disapproval.

on the contrary

I used to think that the result would be good. On the contrary，it turned out to be bad.

still

It's raining cats and dogs outside；still，I will visit him.

though

I will visit him though it is raining there.

otherwise

We must hurry，otherwise we cannot catch the bus.

while

Sadness is beautiful while loneliness is tragical.

yet

He is sentimental sometimes，yet I still like him.

（8）表示总结关系

all in all

All in all，we must cope with it well.

briefly

Briefly，I agree with you on the matter.

in conclusion

In conclusion，the first opinion is much more reasonable than the latter idea.

in summary

In summary，we cannot fully believe what we heard from others.

to sum up

To sum up，teaching students is not an easy task to perform.

on the whole

On the whole，the book is extremely valuable.

in all

In all，it's great to be a father.

in short

In short，to help others is to help yourself.

in a word

In a word，we will win while they will lose.

in terms

In practical terms，I believe it will work.

in sum

In sum，it is great to be a teacher.

to summarize

To summarize，spare the rod，and spoil the children.

to conclude

To conclude＝In conclusion

To conclude，it is true that we should pay more attention to this problem.

（9）表示次序关系

above all

Above all，remember to call me when you arrive.

afterwards

We played the whole day and afterwards walked home together in the evening.

eventually

Eventually，he rose to the position of vice president.

First/Firstly/First of all

First/Firstly/First of all，I'll mention the history.

second/secondly

Second/Secondly，I'll mention the present.

furthermore

Furthermore，it is not good enough in this respect.

finally

Finally，I agree with you on this matter.

last but not least

Last but not least，my personal effort also plays a small role in the accomplishment of the task.

to conclude

To conclude，life is not a battle if you want to be a normal man.

lastly

Lastly，I must say it will be remembered by people around the world.

in the end

In the end，they parted each other at the cross road.

（10）表示强调关系

above all

Above all，the good policy makes us dare to be rich.

of course

Of course you will fall behind if you don't study harder.

indeed

I am indeed very glad to see you are well and sound.

most important

Most important，it is a book for sale first.

with great emphasis on

He delivered a speech with great emphasis on the solar energy.

（11）表示过渡关系

as regards

As regards your school report，I don't quite agree.

as to/as for

She's very uncertain as to where he is now.

by the way

By the way，there is a letter for you in the president's office.

with reference to

With reference to further information，please let me know.

with regard to

With regard to your score in last examination，I am afraid it is not good news for you.

regarding

It is a book regarding the war at hastings.

concerning

Nobody has the information concerning his whereabouts.

talking of

Talking of philosophy，I know little about it.

incidentally

Incidentally，your proposal has drawn most people’s attention.

to resume

To resume our discussion，how do you think of Lincoln?

to get to the point

To get to the point，have you ever visited Mr. Johnson?

（12）表示举例关系

as follows

The reasons are as follows.

a case in point

A case in point，Qingdao is much a beautiful city.

for example

For example，Chairman Mao is such a great hero.

for instance

There are many advantages，for instance，it can make your book perfect.

including

There are many children there，including a two-day-old baby.

to illustrate

To illustrate，I can give you many examples.

（13）表示同指关系

that is

There are two persons there，that is Tom and Jack.

in other words

In other words，we must finish it before he comes.

that is to say

Let’s go back to the original plan，that is to say，you must go there.

（14）表示时间关系

after a while

After a while，he came back with smile in his face.

afterwords

Tom came in for a cup of tea，then he went out soon afterwards.

as long as

You may borrow this book as long as you return it.

at last

At last，we succeeded.

at length

At length，he told us the truth.

at that time

At that time，all people were poor.

eventually

We wait for her on and on，and eventually she came.

finally

After a heated discussion，finally he gave up.

in the past

In the past，he was very naughty.

meanwhile

Tom was listening to the radio，and meanwhile Adam was reading.

presently

He is presently the president of the U. S.

so far

So far，he’s been to China more than 3 times.

thereafter

Thereafter，they lived a happy life.

until

I did not feel hungry until midnight.

until now

He has not come until now.

when

I used to listen to the radio when I was young.

第二节　写作常用套句精选

一、引言段

1. At present/currently/lately/recently/nowadays/these days/in the past several years/over the last several years

目前/当前/最近/近来/现今/这些年来/在过去的几年里。

2. With the（rapid，marked，amazing，eye-catching，remarkable，fantastic）development/progress/growth/advance/improvement of economy/society/industry/living standard，great changes have taken place in…

随着经济（社会，工业，生活水平）快速的（显著的，惊人的，令人瞩目的）发展（进步，增长，提高），……发生了巨大的变化。

3. With the arrival/advent of the information age/the 21st century/the economy age

随着（信息时代，21 世纪，经济时代）的到来。

4. We are blessed with new opportunities and faced with new challenges.

我们被赋予新的机会，面临着新的挑战。

5. With the increasingly rapid economic globalization and urbanization，more problems are brought to our attention.

随着日益迅速的经济全球化和城市化，更多的问题受到我们的关注。

6. Along with the development of…，more and more…

随着……的发展，越来越……

7. In the past few years，there has been a sharp growth（/boom/decline）in…

在过去的几年里，……有显著增长（激增，明显滑坡）

8. While the rhythm/pace/tempo of people's living is speeding up，a lot of changes have taken place in…

人民生活节奏加快的同时，……也发生了很多变化。

9. As living tempo/pace quickens，…随着生活节奏的不断加快，……

10. It is commonly believed that the rise in…is the inevitable result of economic development.

人们普遍认为……的增长是经济发展的必然结果。

11. Recently the issue/problem of…has been in the inevitable result of economic development.

最近，……的问题是经济发展的必然结果。

12. Recently the phenomenon has aroused wide concern.

最近，这个现象引起了广泛关注。

13. Recently the issue/problem of…has become the focus/concern of the public.

最近这个问题（冲突）成了公众关注的焦点（中心）。

14. A public debate has arisen as to the phenomenon of…

关于……的现象引发了一场公众争论。

15. There is no denying that…has become the biggest concern of the present world.

不可否认的是……已成了当今世界最令人关注的问题。

16. Now it is commonly/greatly/widely believed/held/accepted/recognized that… They claim/argue/hold/that…But I wonder/doubt whether it…

现在人们普遍认为……他们认为……，但是我怀疑它是否……

17. According to a（n）survey/investigation/analysis/report released/conducted/made by…，there is a growing/increasing/declining number of…who/which…

根据……发表的（所做的）一份调查（分析，统计数据，报告），……的数目呈上升（下降）的趋势。

18. Those who criticize/oppose/object to/are against…contend/argue/hold that…but people who advocate/favor/are for…，on the other hand，maintain/assert/claim that…

那些批评（反对）……的人争论道（认为）……，但是赞成（支持）……的人则认为（声称）……

19. Some argue/hold that…，but others set forth a totally different argument about the issue of…

有些人争论到（认为）……，但另一些人则对……的问题提出了完全不同的观点。

20. Some people say that…；other people suggest that…But I can hardly share this point of view for several reasons.

有些人说……，另一些人则建议……，但有几个理由令我不能同意这些观点。

21. Personally，I side with the former/latter opinion.

就个人而言，我赞同前（后）者的看法。

22. I am of the opinion that priority should be given to…

我同意……具有优先权。

23. Personally，I stand on the side of…

就个人而言，我支持……

24. As far as I am concerned，I am in favor of the opinion that…

就我而言，我赞同……的观点。

25. For my part，I completely agree with the former/latter.

至于我，我完全同意前（后）者。

26. To be frank/To tell the truth，I should advocate/be in favor of the former/latter attitude/position in preference to the latter/former.

坦白说（老实说），我赞同前者（后者）的观点胜于后者（前者）。

27. Views on the issue in question vary from person to person/vary widely.

对正在讨论的问题每个人都有不同的看法。

28. People rarely reach an absolute consensus on a controversial issue.

人们很少在一个有争议的问题上达成绝对的一致。

29. People's views，however，are divergent on the matter in question.

然而，人们对正在讨论的问题的看法是有分歧的。

30. Some people hold the belief/view that…

一些人的意见是……

31. Some people are of the opinion that…

一些人的意见是……

32. Many people have the idea that…however，many others disagree that…both sides of the question of whether…are well supported by sound reasons.

许多人认为……，然而，也有许多人不同意……对是否……的问题，双方都有充分的理由。

33. To some people's mind/from some people's points of view，there are several advantages in…

有些人认为在……方面有几个优点。

二、正文段

1. My argument for this view goes as follows. 关于这个观点，我的论证如下。

2. There is considerable evidence in favor of…有相当多的证据支持……

3. Firstly/first/in the first place/first of all/to begin with/above everything else/in the first instance 首先

4. Secondly/in the second place 其次

5. Besides/in addition（to）/furthermore/moreover 再者，其次

6. Finally/last of all/last but not least 最后

7. Admittedly/I admit/conceding that/I concede 不可否认的是，我承认

8. To be frank/frankly speaking/honestly speaking 老实说，坦白地讲

9. As the product of modern civilization，…has/have been playing a vital role in the daily activities of human society…

作为现代文明的产品，……在人类社会日常活动中一直发挥着重要的作用。

10. But we must not lose sight of the fact that there are disadvantages/benefits to doing something.

但是我们不能忽略这样的一个事实，做某事有不利之处（有益）的。

11. As to whether it is a blessing or a curse，however，people take different attitudes/positions.

至于它是福还是祸，人们持有不同的态度（观点）。

12. …is a double-edged sword. ……是一把双刃剑

13. There are merits in both these points of view. /There are merits to both of these two arguments. 这两个观点都有优点。

14. There is probably some truth on both sides. 也许双方都有一定的道理。

15. There is probably a little bit of truth in both arguments. 争论双方可能都有些道理。

16. As the saying goes，“every coin has two sides”；…is no exception.

正如谚语所说：“每一个硬币都有两面”，……也不例外

17. No garden without its weeds. 没有无杂草的花园。(有利就有弊；有一利必有一弊)

18. As the old saying has it，“…”。正如古语所言：“……”。

19. There are two sides to every question. 每个问题都有两面。

20. Everything has double folds. 任何事物都有两面。

21. Every medal has its reverse. 每枚奖章都有反面。(有利就有弊；有一利必有一弊)

22. There are numerous reasons why…，and I would explore only a few of the most important ones here. 为什么……有很多理由，在此我仅仅探讨其中最重要的几条。

23. The social and economic advances，the quickening of living tempo and the ever increasing competition are deemed as the main contributors to…

社会经济的进步、生活节奏的加快和日益激烈的竞争对……起了重要作用。

24. There are many good reasons against doing something. 有很多有力的理由反对……

25. There are some major causes for…one cause is…another cause is…and the most frequently stressed cause is…

对于……有一些主要原因。其中一个原因是……，另一个原因是……，而最经常被强调的原因是……

26. It can not be denied that…不可否认的是……

27. Nowadays，it is generally/widely/commonly/prevalently held/accepted/assumed that…
当今，人们普遍认为……

28. It goes without saying that…/There is no doubt that…毫无疑问的是……

29. There is no denying that…不可否认的是……

30. It may create/cause/result in/lead to/give the rise to a host of/a set of/a serious of problems. 这有可能造成（带来）一系列问题。

31. The advantage of A far outweigh/are much greater than/carry more weight than the disadvantage of A. A 的利远远超过 A 的弊。

32. A number of factors could account for/contribute to/lead to/result in the change/success/increase. 许多因素可以说明（导致，引起）这个变化（成功，增长）。

33. There are a variety of reasons for this phenomenon. 关于这个现象有各种各样的原因。

三、结尾段

1. In general/On the whole/Generally 总的来说

2. All in all 总而言之

3. From the foregoing…从上面论述……

4. In brief/In summary/In conclusion/In short/In a word/To sum up/To conclude/To summarize
总而言之，综上所述

5. If it is up to me to make a choice between A and B，I would rather choose…over（than）…
若要我在 A 和 B 之间做出选择，我宁愿选择……

6. If I were forced to agree with one of the two，my choice would be…
如果非要我在两者之间选择一个的话，我会选……

7. From the above comparison and contrast，anyone can safely conclude that…
通过以上比较，任何人都可得出这样的结论……

8. When the advantages and disadvantages are carefully compared，the most striking conclusion is self-evident. 当仔细比较了长处和短处之后，最有力的结论就不言而喻。

9. Judging from all evidence offered，we may reasonably come to/draw the conclusion that…
从提供的证据来看，我们可以得出以下结论……

10. All these opinions make sense，and consequently it is hard to choose the best of them. In my opinion，such matters must be left to individual's conscience.

所有这些意见都说得通，因此很难从中作出选择。在我看来，这些问题应该由个人的良心去决定。

11. From what has been discussed above，we may safely arrive at the conclusion that…

由以上所提到的，我们可以得出结论……

12. Personally，I side with the former/latter opinion. 就个人而言，我赞同前者/后者……的观点。

13. I am of the opinion that priority should be given to…我同意……具有优先权。

14. Personally，I stand on the side of 就个人而言，我支持……

15. As far as I am concerned，I am in favor of the opinion that…就我而言，我赞同……的观点。

16. For my part，I completely agree with the former/latter.

至于我，我完全同意前（后）者的观点。

17. To be frank/To tell the truth，I should advocate/be in favor of the former/latter attitude/position in preference to the latter/former.

坦白说（老实说）我赞同前者（后者）的观点优于后者（前者）。

18. People from different backgrounds，however，put different interpretations on the same thing. 然而，不同背景的人对同一件事却有不同的观点。

19. Views on the issue in question vary from person to person/vary widely.

对正在讨论的问题每个人都有不同的看法。

20. People rarely reach an absolute consensus on a controversial issue.

人们很少在一个有争议的问题上达成绝对的一致。

21. Taking into account all these factors，we may reasonably come to the moral that…

全盘考虑所有的因素，我们可以得出这样的教训……

22. For the reasons presented above，I strongly commit to the notion that…

根据上述的理由，我坚持的观点是……

23. All the evidence justifies an unshakable conclusion that…

所有的证据证明了一个不可动摇的观点……

24. All the evidence supports an unmistakable conclusion that…

所有的证据证明了一个千真万确的结论……

25. To conclude my essay，I would like to quote an old saying…

我想引用一句古语来结束我的文章……

26. Both views have strong foundations，but，overall，I tend to agree with the latter.

双方的观点都有道理，但总的来说，我更倾向于赞成后者。

27. What we must do is to make sure that the positive ones are encouraged and the negative ones are eliminated as far as possible.

我们必须做到的是设法使积极的影响得到加强，而消极的影响尽可能消除。（扬长避短）

28. It is true that to do…brings about both positive and negative results. But we can try our best to reduce the negative influence to the least extent. Besides，compared with the positive effects，the disadvantages would not count much.

同时带来积极的和消极的结果。但我们可以努力使消极影响降到最低限度，而且，与积极的影响相比，这不利因素也算不了什么。

29. It is high time that we/the government did/should do… 我们（政府）早该……

30. To achieve this goal, however, we still have a great distance to cover.

然而，要达到这个目标，我们还有很长的路要走。

31. It is urgent/important/necessary that appropriate/effective/proper actions/measures/steps/methods be taken to end/correct/improve…

采取适当的（有效的，合适的）措施（行动，步骤，方法）去消除（纠正，改进）……是迫切的（重要的、必要的）。

32. These are believed/expected/supposed to be two effective measures practical schemes/sound solutions, one of which is…

人们相信（认为）有两种有效的措施（实用计划，合理的解决办法），其中一个是……

33. Both governments and ordinary citizens should join hands to make this world a better place to live in, not only for ourselves, but also for our future generations.

不仅仅是为了我们，更是为了我们的后代，政府和普通公民应该联合起来，使这个世界变成更美好的家园。

第四章　写作常用模版

模版写作有很多好处。例如，它能规范我们的写作思路，防止跑题，节约写作时间等，更重要的是它能使我们轻松掌握写作技巧和规律，快速提高作文成绩。我们知道一篇作文包含了词、句、段、章等各个层面上的信息，如果这些信息散落开来，要想学习它们的写作技巧，就需要花费很多时间和精力；而模版则给我们提供了一个平台，使我们能集中学习和把握一篇文章的整体结构、语言表达以及词语搭配等要素。考生有了模版，就能有的放矢地学习写作，很快的写出自己满意的文章，避免走许多弯路。

模版作文的学习可以分为三个阶段：

第一阶段：理解。大家在阅读模版作文的时候，应着重理解其结构与语言两个方面。在结构方面，模版作文层次清晰、段落分明，大家应努力熟悉文章的谋篇布局、起承转合，逐渐培养并形成正确的写作思路。在语言方面，模版作文用词准确，语言流畅，能帮助大家增强语感，了解什么样的语言表达是正确的，同时避免时态、语态、语气和拼写、大小写、标点等方面的错误，养成良好的写作习惯。另外我们还可以从中吸收好的语言，其中包括好的词和词组，还有具备多种写作功能的典型句式，以及谚语、名言、修辞手法等高级写作技巧。

第二阶段：模仿。在熟悉和理解了模版作文之后，就进入了非常重要的模仿环节。在熟悉了模版作文之后，将书合上自己来写，再对照一下是否正确。再看看自己填充的具体内容是否恰当。常有考生模版写得好，用自己的话一填充就错误百出，这样很难取得好成绩。开始错的多没关系，关键是写完后用心对比，看看相同的意思用什么样的表达好，自己的写法有哪些不足的地方。最好的办法就是重复写一篇文章，直到满意为止，千万不要只看模版，不去真正写作，或者浅尝辄止，写完之后就将其束之高阁。

第三阶段：活用。在模仿了一定量的模版之后，我们就可以进入灵活运用的阶段，模版通常是根据提纲中的两个或三个要点来将文章安排成两个或三个阶段，或者根据需要增加起始或结束段落，或者在特殊的情况下用两个或多个段落阐述一个要点。通过理解和模仿，我们看到，一个模版可以涵盖不同的多篇文章，一篇文章也可以运用相关的多个模版。模版与模版之间有许多互通的地方，在一个新的题目出现之后，可以通过模版的综合运用来达到良好的表达效果。

下面，本书选择了专升本各类型作文常用的模版：

一、议论文

观点论证型模版一（具体说明是观点对比中的选择对比）

“There is no consensus among ________（问题相关方）as to the view/issue/problem of ________（主题）. However，people’s opinions are different from one to another.

Some people hold the idea that ________（观点 A）. A case in point/A good reason is that ________（支持观点 A 的例子）”.

On the other hand, others may have a quite different view. According to them, ________（观点 B）. The most typical example/The most important reason is that ________（支持观点 B 的例子）.

Weighing the pros and cons of these arguments, I am inclined to agree with the former/latter. Admittedly, the former/latter point of view seems reasonable in saying to some extent, but the former/latter is more convincing.

例题分析

【题目】

1. 一些人认为大学校园应该对公众开放。
2. 另一些人认为大学校园不应该对公众开放。
3. 你的看法。

【范文】

Campus Tourist

There is no consensus among the people as to the issue of whether university campuses should be open to the public. However, people’s opinions are different from one to another.

Some people hold the idea that it will do great good to the society if campuses are accessible to every citizen. A good reason is that access to a campus will give the parents and their children a better chance to learn about the university so that they can make more sensible decision together on whether to choose this university or not.

On the other hand, others may have a quite different view. According to them, a university is intended to give the students a good place to study instead of an ideal scenic spot for all. The most important reason is that with more and more visitors frequenting a campus the students may not be able to enjoy a quiet and academic realm to study and learn.

Weighing the pros and cons of these arguments, I am inclined to agree with the former. Admittedly, the latter point of view seems reasonable in saying to some extent, but the former is more convincing.

观点论证型模版二（具体说明是观点对比中的正反对比）

Nowadays many people prefer ________（主题）because it plays a significant role in our daily life. Its advantages and disadvantages have been hotly discussed.

Generally, its advantages can be seen as follows. On the one hand, ________（主题的优点一）. On the other hand, ________（主题的优点二）.

But everything can be divided into two parts. The negative aspects are also apparent. One of the important disadvantages is that ________（主题的缺点一）. To make matters worse, ________（主题的缺点二）.

Through the above analysis, I believe that the positive/negative aspects far outweigh its nega-

tive/positive aspects. Whatever effects it has，one thing is certain，________ （主题）itself is neither good nor bad. It is the uses to which it is put that determine its value to our society.

例题分析

【题目】

1. 信用卡已经越来越普遍。
2. 信用卡的好坏。
3. 你的看法。

【范文】

Credit Card

Nowadays many people prefer to use credit card because it plays a significant role in our daily life. Its advantages and disadvantages have been hotly discussed.

Generally，its advantages can be seen as follows. On the one hand，it can save a lot of time and trouble to draw cash from bank. On the other hand，we can make purchase even when we do not have any money left in the card.

But everything can be divided into two parts. The negative aspects are also apparent. One of the important disadvantages is that we may unconsciously develop a bad habit of wasting money without even noticing how much we have spent. To make matters worse，it is no longer absolutely safe to spend money because there are now more and more criminals who embezzle our money by filching our card number and code.

Through the above analysis，I believe that the positive/negative aspects far outweigh its negative/positive aspects. Whatever effects it has，one thing is certain，credit card itself is neither good nor bad. It is the uses to which it is put that determine its value to our society.

问题解决型模版一（具体说明是问题解决型中的“why 型”）

With the development of modern society，there has arisen a problem that ________ （主题问题）.

What are the reasons for it? In the following paragraphs，I’ll venture to explore the reasons. To start with，________ （阐述原因 1）. Moreover，________ （阐述原因 2）. In addition，________ （阐述原因 3）.

In view of the seriousness of the problem，effective measures should be taken. For one thing，it is high time that ________ （问题相关方）realized the importance of ________ （解决主体问题）. For another，the government/authority/school should ________ （政府等部门应采取的措施）.

例题分析

【题目】

1. 近年来大学生就业越来越困难。
2. 产生这种问题的原因。
3. 你的建议。

【范文】

College Students'Job-hunting

With the ever-worsening of the world financial crisis, there has arisen a problem that more and more college graduates find it far more difficult to get employed.

What are the reasons for it? In the following paragraphs, I'll venture to explore the reasons. To start with, the world financial crisis has a profound effect on the economy so that many companies are laying off a great number of their employees and thereby the prospect of employment for the college graduates becomes even slimmer. Moreover, the college graduates always expect much more than they are actually deserved from their future employers. In addition, what the college graduates have learned more often than not turns out to be of little or no use for most jobs.

In view of the seriousness of the problem, effective measures should be taken. For one thing, it is high time the college graduates realized the importance of being realistic enough. For another, the government should offer opportunities to the graduates.

问题解决型模版二（具体说明是问题解决型中的“how 型”）

If the city residents ever want to improve living quality, the problem of ________ has to be solved. With more and more people ________, this problem has become more and more serious.

First of all, ________. what's more, ________. Only when all the people stop pursuing personal interests at the price of ________ can we hope to put an end to this unfavorable situation.

The ________ is of great importance to anybody at any time and place. If a person refuse to learn cooperation and discipline, how can he enjoy the privilege of higher living quality?

例题分析

【题目】

How to Solve the Problem of Heavy Traffic

1. 当前交通拥堵的现象很严重。
2. 解决这一问题的办法有……

【范文】

How to Solve the Problem of Heavy Traffic

If the city residents ever want to improve living quality, the problem of heavy traffic has to be solved. With more and more people flooding into cities and more and more cars and buses running on the road, this problem has become more and more serious.

First of all, highly technical inventions must not only be applied but also be put in order. Viaducts, metro and light rail are all good choices. what's more, all the bus drivers and pedestrians must be familiar with and strictly abide by the traffic regulation if they want to enjoy better traffic. Only when all the people stop pursuing personal interests at the price of violating traffic rules can we hope to put an end to this unfavorable situation.

The problem of heavy traffic is of great importance to anybody at any time and place. If a person refuse to learn cooperation and discipline, how can he enjoy the privilege of higher living quality?

谚语类模版

The well-know proverb ________has long been accepted by all of us. It tells us that ________.

Let's take ________as an example. ________. Another good case in point is ________.

Judging from the example given above, we may safely come to the conclusion that ________. So why not ________?

【题目】

Practice Makes Perfect

1. 怎样理解“孰能生巧”?

2. 例如：在英语学习中……

3. 又如……

【范文】

Practice Makes Perfect

The world-known proverb “Practice makes perfect.” has long been accepted by all of us. It tells us that we have to practice again and again whenever we want to be an expert in a special field.

Let's take English study as an example. If you want to enlarge your vocabulary, you have to understand English words in the context and then learn by heart. It is also true with English writing. Listening to teachers attentively in class and reciting sample articles are far from necessary—you should practice writing weekly and ask teachers to go over it.

Another good case in point is skating. Nobody is born as a good skater, and one can only become a skilled skater after countless falls and injuries. Every Chinese was excited when Yang Yang won the first winter Olympics gold medal in salt lake city, but who knew what difficulties and hardships the girl had been through?

Judging from the example given above, we may safely come to the conclusion that practice makes perfect. So why not put what you are learning into practice? I am sure you will become experienced and skillful if you keep on doing it.

二、应用文

1. 投诉信

Dear ________,

I am ________. (自我介绍) I feel bad to trouble you but I am afraid that I have to make a complaint about ________.

The reason for my dissatisfaction is ________ (总体介绍). In the first place, ________ (抱怨的第一个方面). In addition, ________ (抱怨的第二个方面). Under these circumstances, I find it ________ (感觉) to ________ (抱怨的方面给你带来的后果).

I will appreciate it very much if you could ________ (提出建议和要求), preferably ________ (进一步的要求), and I would like to have this matter settled by ________ (设定解决事情最后期

限）. Thank you for your consideration and I am looking forward to your reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

2. **建议信**

Dear ________,

You have asked me for my advice with regard to ________, and I will try to make constructive suggestions here.

In my humble opinion, you would be wise to take the following actions: First and foremost, ________. In addition, ________. Last but not least, ________.（建议的内容）

I hope you will find these proposals practical, and I would be ready to discuss this matter with you in further details.

Good luck with your ________（祝福）.

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

3. **求职信**

Dear Sir or Madam,

I write this letter to apply for the position that you have advertised in ________（报纸名称）of ________.（广告发布时间）

Not only do I have the qualification for this job, but I also have the right personality for a ________（工作名称）. On the one hand, ________（第一个原因）. On the other hand, ________.（另一个原因）

Should you grant me a personal interview, I would be most grateful. If you need to know more about me, please feel free to contact me at any time at ________（电话号码）

Thank you for considering my application, and I am looking forward to meeting you.

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

4. **询问信**

Dear ________,

I am ________（自我介绍）. I am writing to see if it is possible for you to provide me with information regarding ________.（要询问的内容）

First of all, what are ________?（第一个问题）what's more, when will ________?（第二个问题）Finally, is ________?（第三个问题）

I would also like to inquire ________（将最重要的问题单独成段）. Could you be so kind as to send me some relevant booklets on the above-mentioned aspects.

Thank you for your kindness, and your prompt attention to this letter will be highly appreciated.

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

第五章　图表、图画作文

图表作文是写作中较为常见的题型之一、也是难度较大的一种写作题型。这类作文可综合提供题目、数据、图像、提纲，形式多样，但实际上只涉及5个方面：描述图表、指明寓意、分析原因、联系实际、给出建议，而每次考试只是从这5个方面的内容中选出3个结合在一起。从写作类型来看，基本上属于说明文。要求考生用文字材料把图表中所提供的信息准确、完整地表达出来。在写作图表作文时，首先要仔细观察并分析图表，以及题中所给出的有关信息，比如，作文标题、英文提纲、英文提示、英语关键词等。在分析图表时，要抓住与主题有关的信息，要发现数据呈现的规律，要充分利用图表中的图形、数据等来说明主题。但是注意不要过多地引用数据，以免造成滥用数据的后果，这就要求考生应该具有一定数据分析和材料归纳的能力，同时会运用一定的写作方法。

试题一般以三段式写作方法来组织文章，第一段总结归纳信息反映的整体情况，点出主题思想；第二段回答第一段所得出的问题，对数字、数据等做出有条理的分析比较或者分析造成这一问题或趋势的原因；第三段做出总结或给以简单的评论即展望未来或提出方法或建议。

第一节　图表作文的类型

图表作文可分为两大类：图作文和表作文。

一、图作文

图作文可细分为三种：圆形图作文、曲线图作文和条形图作文。

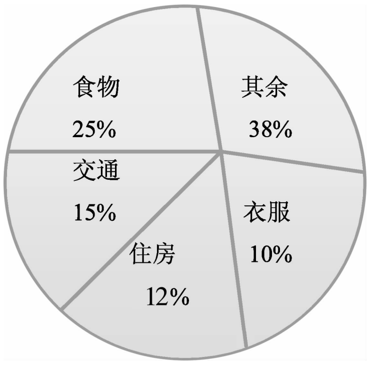
1. 圆形图作文

圆形图（Pie chart）也称为饼状图或圆面分割图。圆形图因为比较形象和直观，各部分空间大小差别容易分辨，所以常用来表示总量和各分量之间的百分比关系。整个圆表示总量，楔形块表示分量。有时圆形图还有数值表，两者结合可把各分量表示得更准确、清楚。

例如：

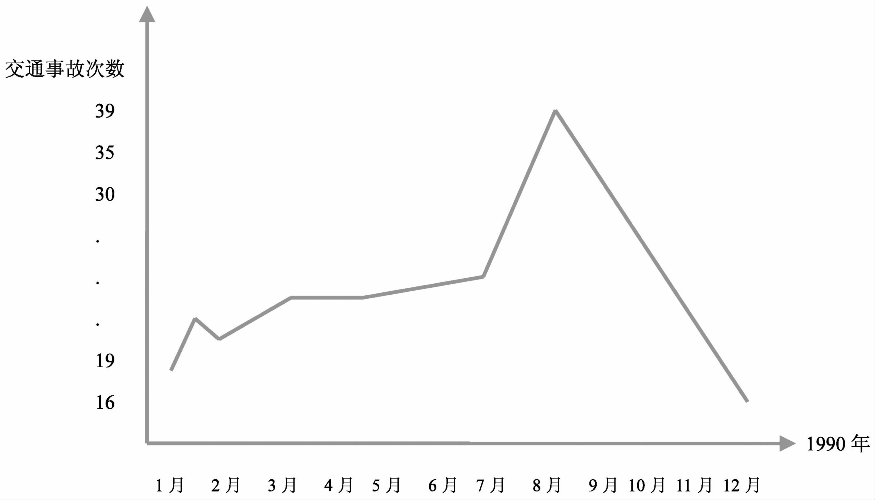
Expenditure

This is a pie chart of the average weekly expenditure of a family in Great Britain. As can be seen from the chart，the main expenditure of a British family is spent on food，which accounts for 25 percent of total expenditure. Another two significant expending items are transport and housing，which are 15% and 12% respectively. If we take into account clothing and footwear，which makes up 10%，the four essentials of life are food，transport，housing，and clothing and footwear，amounting to 62% of the total expenditure.



2. **曲线图作文**

曲线图（Line graph）也称为线性图或坐标图。曲线图最适合表示两个变量之间关系的发展过程和趋势。一般来说，曲线所呈现的形状比某一点所代表的变量的值更有意义。曲线图有横轴和纵轴。一般先看横轴所代表的数量或时间等，然后再看纵轴所显示的意义。同时必须找出线条所反映的最高或最低的变化。例如：

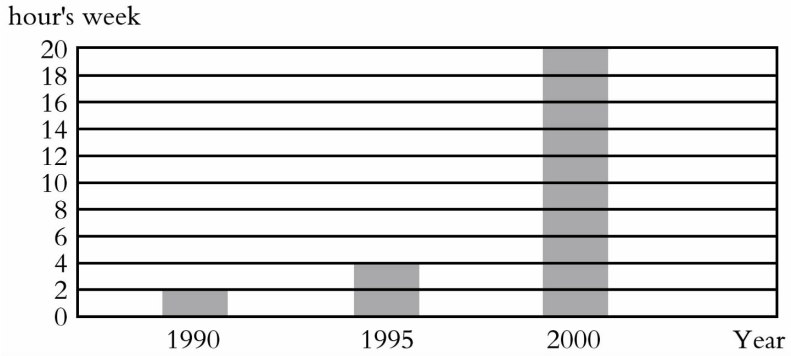


As can be seen from the line graph，the number of traffic accidents is different in every month in 1990. The number of the accidents from January to July is unobvious，but it has already increased the highest points—39 in August and it decreased the lowest points—19 in December. It is clear that the times of traffic accidents dropped in 1990.

3. **条形图作文**

条形图（Bar graph）也称为立柱图或圆柱图。条形图由宽度相同但长度不同的条块代表不同的量。当要比较几个项目或量时，常用不同颜色来区分。阅读条形图时，要先看图例，再看横轴、纵横各代表什么量，每一个刻度所代表的值是多少，最后找出图中各长条所表示的数据及各长条间的相互关系。例如：

Great changes have taken place in students’ use of computers in the university. The hours the student spent on computers per week skyrocketed from about 2 in 1990 to 20 in 2000，more than 9 times higher. This rapid increase proves that students were in closer contact with computers.



二、表作文

表格（Table）可以使大量数据系统化，便于阅读、比较。表格常由标题（Title）、表头（Box head）表格的第一行、侧目（Stub）——表格左边的第一列和主体（Body）部分——表格的其余部分等部分组成。见表8—2所示：

表8—2　表格组成示例

year / Food	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990
Grain	49%	47%	46.5%	45%	45%
Milk	10%	11%	11%	12%	13%
Meat	17%	20%	22.5%	23%	21%
Fruit and vegetables	24%	22%	20%	20%	21%
Total	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

As can be seen from the table，great changes have been taking place in people's diet in the past five years. Grain，as the main food of most Chinese，is now playing a less important role，while the proportion of some high energy foods，such as milk and meat，has increased.

第二节　图表作文的写作方法

图表作文着重说明事实，常常是通过对图表中所反映的具体数据的说明、分析、比较，对某种事物或现象的事实或变化情况等加以说明，并提出结论或看法。因此，图表作文常常采用议论文体的写作方法。写好图表作文，关键在于能否读懂图表中所提供的信息，把握各信息间的联系，用准确流畅的语言把这一信息表达出来，并就这一信息发表自己的看法。

写图表作文时，要注意遵循以下步骤：

1. 认真分析图表的含义，弄清图表中所含的信息及不同信息间的关系。
2. 确定文章的主题思想，构思出文章的基本框架，筛选出能说明图表主题思想的典型数据。
3. 编列文章的提纲，为全文的展开做好铺垫。
4. 根据文章的提纲，将各段的提纲内容扩展成段落，然后将各个段落组成文章，注意段与段之

间的衔接与过渡，尽量做到主题明确、条理清楚、文字简练。

5. 图表作文一般采用的时态为一般现在时，但如果图表中给出了具体时间参照，考生则应对时态进行相应的调整。

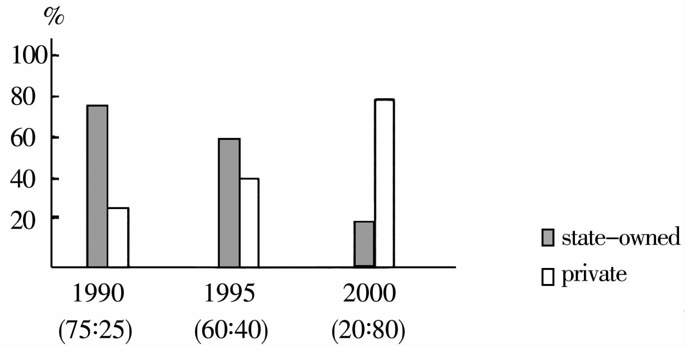
6. 图表作文有一些固定句型和表达法，考生应对此融会贯通。

7. 检查与修改，对图表作文的检查与修改应着重看文章中所列举的信息是否与图表所显示的信息一致，资料是否恰当。

【示例】

Directions: For this part, you are allowed thirty minutes to write a composition on the topic Ownership of Houses in a Big City in China. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the chart and the outline given below:

Ownership of Houses in a Big City in China



1. 根据上图描述该市住房产权的变化
2. 分析产生这些变化的原因
3. 说明这些变化对个人和社会产生的影响

Great changes have taken place in the ownership of houses in cities in China from 1990 to 2000. While the number of state owned houses decreased, that of private houses increased. In 1990, seventy-five percent of the houses were state owned whereas only twenty five percent of the houses were private. In 2000, however, the proportion of state owned houses reduced to twenty percent and that of private houses increased to eighty percent.

There are many reasons for the great changes in the ownership of houses in cities. The development of the economy is the most important one. Thanks to this development, people make more money than they used to. As a result, they can set aside some money to buy houses after their daily necessities are satisfied. The measures the government adopts may be the next incentive. Nowadays, people can have access to various kinds of loans from banks when buying the house. The large supply of housing may be the last reason. Wherever you go, you can see houses of various designs and sizes available for people to choose.

These changes will have a great influence on both the living standard of the individual and the productivity of the society. People can live in the spacious houses of their own and the government can increase the productivity by using the money from selling the houses.

这篇文章属于图表提纲式作文，很明显除了第一段的描述之外，与我们之前的议论文中的社会热点型的写作手法完全相同。所以课下同学们重点背会第一段的描述句型。下面列举一些

图表作文常用句型：

(1) The picture/curve/pie chart shows…

(2) This table shows the differences between…

(3) The diagram represents…

(4) The chart above indicates/presents…

(5) The information represented in the graph indicates…

(6) As can be seen from the chart, …

(7) As is shown in the bar graph, there were…

(8) From the diagram it can be seen clearly that…

(9) From these figures one can easily see that…

(10) According to the graph given above, we can see that…

(11) This is an illustration of…/a typical example of…

(12) There was a great/slight increase/rise.

(13) There has been a sudden/slow/rapid fall/drop…

(14) Take the above chart as an example, …

(15) From the data (figures) presented in the table (graph/chart/curve) we can conclude that…

(16) There was a (very) slight/slow/gradual/small/steady drop (decline/fall/reduction/decrease in sth.

(17) There was a (very) sudden/dramatic/large/rapid/sharp/marked rise in sth.

(18) It can be seen/concluded/estimated from the table/statistics/figures that… (得出结论)

【模版句型一】

From the ________, we know the statistics of (图表主要信息) ________. It can be seen easily that (图表反映的现象或问题) ________.

There are many reasons responsible for this instance, and the following are the typical ones. For one thing, ________. In addition, ________. The main reason is that ________.

However, this graph may not predict the entire situation in the future. I believe (自己的评论) ________.

【模版句型二】

According to the figures given in the diagram/picture/pie chart, we can see that ________ is increasing in the past ________, while ________ is decreasing.

Possible reasons for this are as follows. On the one hand, ________. On the other hand, ________. Furthermore, ________.

From what has been analyzed, we can draw a conclusion that ________. As a matter of fact, with the improvements in ________, the trend will go on in the future.（提出改进的方法或措施）Therefore, ________.（最后再强调观点）

【模版句型三】

The chart gives us an overall picture of the ________. The first thing we notice is that ________. This means that ________.

From the statistics given, we can draw the conclusion that ________（结论）. The reasons for this, as far as I am concerned, are as follows. In the first place, ________. In the second place, ________. In the last place, ________.

From the above discussions, we have enough reasons to predict what will happen in the near future. The trend described in the graphic/table will continue for quite a long time/If we want to change this trend, effective measures should be taken.

【模版句型四】

It is obvious in the graphic/table that the rate/number/amount of Y has undergone dramatic changes. It has gone up/grown/fallen/dropped considerably in recent years. At the point of X1, Y reaches its peak value of…（多少）.

What is the reason for this change? Mainly there are…（多少）reasons behind the situation reflected in the graphic/table. First of all, …（第一个原因）. More importantly, …（第二个原因）. Most important of all, …（第三个原因）.

From the above discussions, we have enough reasons to predict what will happen in the near future. The trend described in the graphic/table will continue for quite a long time/if necessary measures ought to be taken.

第三节　图画作文写作攻略

图画作文是较难的题型之一，近几年写作试题均为图画题型，因此考生应该特别认真地对待。这类题一般要求考生仔细看图，根据题目要求写成自己的作文。实际上，图画作文也可以当作三段式的提纲作文来写。第一段用来描述图画并揭示其寓意（寓意一般用一句话来概括就可以），大家需要注意的是图画上可能没有任何文字，也可能在上面出现了一句话，也可以单个人物说话或两个人物对话，也可能在图画外写了总结性的一句话，这一句话或两句话一般是非常重要的，应予译出。第二段分析原因，最后一段发表评论或提出建议，其中第二、三段应该是写作的重点。面对此类题型，考生应首先确定主题，然后再动笔。我们想象中的最典型最理想的图画题提纲应该是下面这样：

①描述图画；②推导绘画者的意图；③做出评论。

对于这一提纲我们来做具体分析，其中第三点更要细致研究。首先由图画引出一种社会现象或社会问题，可以是好的，也可以是不好的。在推导绘画者的意图时多是展开说此现象或问题的表现，以证明其引人注目。还有一种可能性是说此现象或问题产生的原因，提纲可直接列出，或还用上述提纲。这时可把简单意图推导直接放到第一段描述图画之后，而在第二段中说原因。第三段做出评论，有可能只是简单评论、深化主题就结束，但这种可能性越来越小了。这一部分很可能说的

是办法，不好的事情就是如何解决的办法，好的事情就是如何进一步发展的方法，这就和我们之前的社会热点型极其相似了。

具体写作要点：

（1）仔细研究作文指令，弄清楚作文的要求，是否有标题？是否有提纲？然后从题目中找出中心词，分析修饰词，准确地抓住题目的中心思想。

（2）认真解读图画，因为图画是作文的信息基础。考生应对图画进行全面而细致的研究，尤其要注意图画中人或物（人与物）的体貌表情特征和背景，确定人物之间，人物与背景之间的主要关系，以便正确掌握图画所传达的信息。

（3）如果图画以系列形式（既两幅以上）出现，考生除需要掌握每一幅图画的信息外，还应该对图画之间的相互联系有所理解，在整体上把握图画所传达的信息。

（4）面对图画作文，考生应该展开合理而丰富的联想，用生动恰当的言辞抒发自己对图画的所思、所想、所感。

（5）注意图画作文中的文字说明。文字说明非常重要，通常十分清楚地提供一些写作要点，考生在看说明时要看清主、谓、宾，正确理解说明的意义。

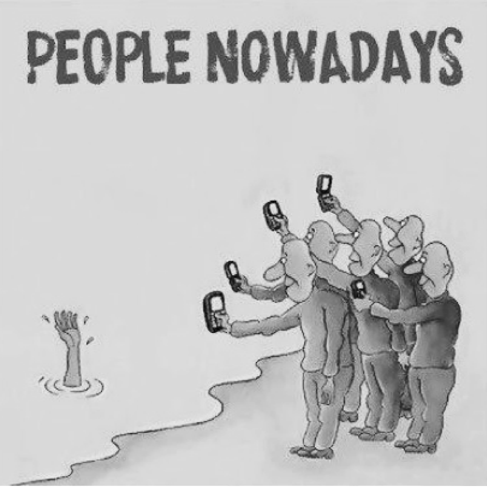
（6）草拟提纲，合理组织材料。根据图画内容的不同采用不同的段落发展方式。如图画式作文写作多要求进行描写图画。对于漫画式写作，漫画描写本身并不重要，但文章的寓意却要力求准确，不要拖泥带水。

（7）系统且突出地展开段落。展开段落要根据画面内容进行，最好能围绕每一段的主题句进行。

（8）检查与修改。考生应重点检查图画内容是否准确地被表达出来，题目所给提示是否完整地反映在文章之中。如果存在与画面不相符的内容，或未能完全涵盖题目所给提示，考生应对文章做出相应修订。

【示例】

Directions：For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay. Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture. You should write at least 120 words.



People Nowadays

This is a satiric but true-to-life drawing. As we can see in it，a man is drowning，with only one arm above water gesturing for help. Those standing on the bank, however, instead of lending a helping hand, are busy photographing with their mobile phones, most possibly taking the scene as another eyeball-attractor on the Internet.

Exaggerating as it might be, the phenomenon mirrored by the cartoon is not uncommon in modern society. Actually, both the picture and instances in real life point to the fact that many people nowadays ignore what they should do due to the use of mobile phones and the Internet. It is never too rare to see some people taking pictures of newly served dishes in a restaurant and upload them to their friend circle in We Chat. Nor is it to find people busy taking photos and updating their micro blogs when touring. Some even fail to take proper actions in case of emergency, just as the crowd in the picture do. Their only goal seems to be attracting as much attention online as possible.

Such being the case, it is high time that we pondered over the problem and figured out a solution. Among all measures, I believe, the central one should resist the temptation of vanity brought along by such modern self-media as micro blog, and coming more back to life itself.

这篇文章采用了图画作文的经典三段论写法，第一段对图画进行了详细的描述，第二段引出问题并说明产生这种现状的原因，第三段针对这个不好的现象，作者提出了自己的看法及措施。

【注】阅卷教师最重视的就是作文第一段，也是最难写的段落，盲目套用模版、空发议论，容易导致低分。

阅卷教师最希望看到的写法是：首句总体描述图画、点出人物、动作和环境；次句挖掘细节词、串连成句，将图中细节一网打尽。根据情况而定，末句点出文字说明或象征寓意。可以发表议论最好不要太多。剩余两段采用前面的社会热点型即可。下面介绍一下第一段经常用到描述图画的名词、形容词、副词以及文字的说明。

1. 有关图画的名词：

picture/drawing/cartoon

2. 描述图画的形容词：

thought-provoking 发人深省的
compelling/striking 引人注目的
instructive 有意义的
illuminating 富有启发性的
impressive 印象深刻的
enlightening 有启迪作用/使人感悟的
profound 含义深刻的
ridiculous 荒谬可笑的
particularly revealing or helpful 很有益的
exaggerative 夸张的

3. 修饰动词的副词：

graphically/vividly 生动地
subtly 巧妙地
symbolically 象征性地
conspicuously/clearly/explicitly 清晰地

4. 文字说明：

We are informed by the caption that“文字________.”/The caption reads/indicates that“（文字）________.”①As is vividly depicted in the cartoon above,（描述图画）. ②The cartoon subtly and symbolically depicts a thought-provoking scenario（场景）in which＋（描述图画）. ③What is clearly illustrated/presented/portrayed/described in the drawing above is that＋（描述图画）. ④It is symbolically/explicitly（明白地）/vividly illustrated/demonstrated in the drawing that＋（描述图画）.

下面简单的对图画描述举例：

①As is vividly depicted in the cartoon above，the boy expresses his worries about the disposal of nuclear waste，while his father asks him to empty the dustbin in the room first.

②The cartoon subtly and symbolically depicts a thought-provoking scenario in which a teacher asks his student to read a work of literature as if he were reading a long text-message.

③What is clearly illustrated in the drawing above is that a student holds the opinion that the basic math skill might be outdated by the time he is in the job market while his teacher is teaching mathematics.

④It is explicitly demonstrated in the drawing that two travelers are wading across mountains and grasslands with heavy baggage on their shoulders.

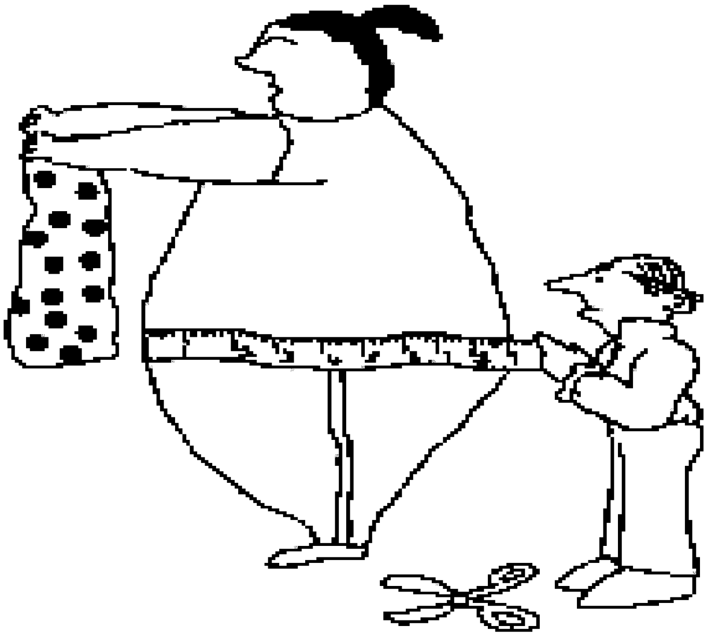
第四节　图画作文范文精选

1. Directions：Study the following cartoon carefully and write an essay in which you should

（1）describe the cartoon.

（2）interpret its meaning.

（3）point out its implications in our life.



量体裁衣

This cartoon is silly，and yet compelling：a large woman holds a hopelessly small piece of cloth as the tailor carefully measures. Such an image suggests that one needs to consider practical reality in achieving goals. If ignoring the facts at hand，one cannot lead to success.

The fact that currently there are more graduates than jobs reminds us of the importance of rational thinking. Every year approximately 3 million students graduate from universities and begin hunting for jobs. Many of them fail to find suitable employment because there are simply not enough opportunities to be offered to such great numbers of graduates. In addition，however，another reason is that one might also overestimate individual ability.

In order to create a realistic target for one's future，one must make reasonable decisions and prepare accordingly. In other words，customers would do well to take accurate measurements before purchasing their fabric. A small piece of cloth cannot adequately clothe a large person.

【译文】

这幅画很可笑，但引人注目。一位身体庞大的女人在裁缝仔细地为他量尺寸准备做衣服时，手里却拿着一块小得令人绝望的衣料。这幅画告诉我们，一个人在实现目标的过程中必须考虑到实际情况，如果一个人不顾眼前的事实，是不可能成功的。

当前大学生的就业率使我们意识到进行合理思考的重要性。每年有大约 300 万大学生从学校毕业寻找工作。他们中的很多人并没有找到一份适合自己的工作，有一个原因是没有足够的就业机会提供给数量如此庞大的毕业生。但除此之外，过高的自我估计也是可能的原因之一。

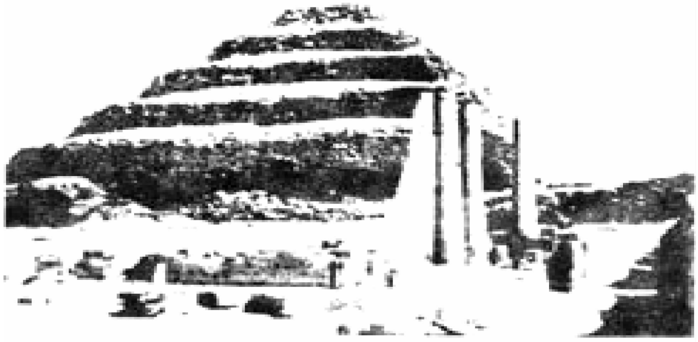
为了能够实现未来目标，一个人必须做出合理的决定，并做好相应的准备。换句话说，顾客在购买衣料前必须先量好准确的尺寸，一个大块头是无法穿上一小块布料的。

2. Directions：Study the following picture carefully and write an essay in which you should

（1） describe the picture.

（2） interpret its meaning.

（3） support your view with examples.



金字塔是由一块块石头积累成的

As we can see in the picture，a great Egyptian Pyramid towering is magnificent and high into the sky. At first sight visitors may be surprised and cannot help associating the spirit of patience and endurance of an Ancient Egyptian with it during this extended period of building.

The stones of the pyramid remind us of a famous saying，"Rome was not built in a day." That is，great things are never done without much time and labor. As human beings，it is，however，only patience as well as endurance that can help us to succeed in performing great deeds. In the case of Si Malian，without those brilliant qualities mentioned above，he could never have attained such great achievements. In the end，it is patience and endurance that counts.

Some people would give up halfway in the face of what seems to be impossible. Men of such a type can hardly expect to succeed. We must take a step-by-step approach to accomplish everything with patience and endurance until we get the final result.

【译文】

在这幅画中我们可以看到，一座伟大的埃及金字塔擎天而立，雄伟壮观。尽管游客们第一眼看到它时，都会被它的磅礴气势所震撼，然后他们都不禁会联想起在漫长的修筑过程中古埃及人民坚忍不拔的精神和毅力。

金字塔的巨石使我们想到这样一句名言：“罗马不是一天建成的。”也就是说，不付出艰辛的劳动和足够的时间就不会成就伟大的事业。对于人类，只有耐心和坚韧才能帮助我们完成伟大创举。以司马迁为例，假如他不具备上述优秀品质，成就那样的伟业绝无可能。说到底，有了耐心和坚韧才能成功。

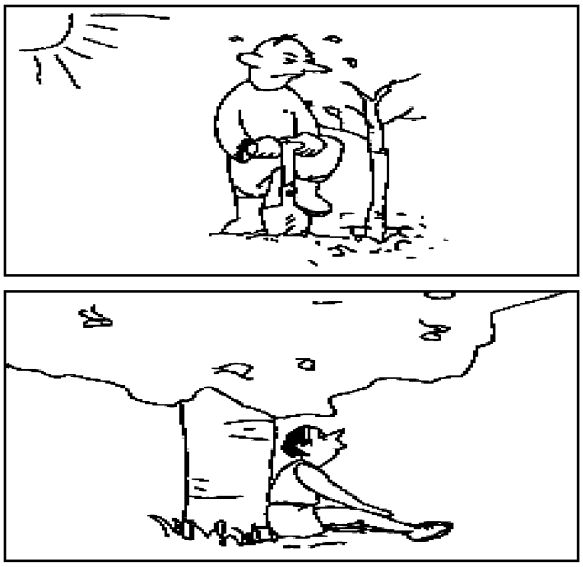
有些人在看上去貌似不可能的障碍面前中途放弃。这些人是永远不会成功的。我们在做任何事情时都要带着坚忍不拔的毅力脚踏实地，一步一步去实现我们最终的目标。

3. Directions：Study the following picture carefully. Write an essay which should cover：

（1）describing the set of drawings below.

（2）stating its main idea.

（3）giving your comment.



前人栽树,后人乘凉

As can be seen from the drawings，the father has planted a small tree that grows into a big one and is left to his son to enjoy. Years later，his son sits under the big tree enjoying its shade.

The pictures remind us that sustainable development has become a topic of heated debate in recent years. While it is able to satisfy current demands，we cannot neglect the needs of our descendants in the process because our children also depend on Earth's natural resources. Unfortunately，many people only think of their short-term，personal interests. An entire forest might be clear-cut，in the interest of making a profit. This reckless action can only turn the Earth into a cold and lifeless planet. People must be taught to protect our earth not only for themselves but also for their children and grandchildren.

From the point of view of sustainable development，we must consider whether our actions will affect future lives while making great efforts to increase our current quality of life.

【译文】

画中可见，一位父亲种了一棵小树，这棵小树将长成参天大树，他的儿子将会从中受益。多年以后，他的儿子坐在树下享受着大树带来的阴凉。

这幅漫画让我们想起来可持续发展是近几年的热点话题，虽然我们要满足自己当前的需要，但不能将子孙后代的需求抛置脑后，因为我们的孩子同样需要自然资源。不幸的是很多人只考虑他们短视的、自私的利益。为了获得利润，整片的森林被砍光。这种不顾后果的行为只会让我们的地球变成一个冷冰冰而无生气的行星。必须告诫人们的是：为了他们自己和他们的孩子和所有后代，我们应该保护我们的地球。

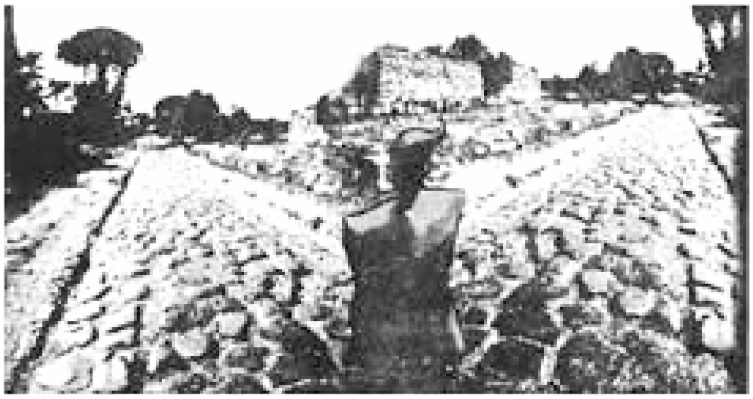
从可持续发展的角度来看，在努力提高今天的生活质量的同时，我们必须考虑到我们的行为会对未来的生命产生什么样的影响。

4. Directions：Study the following picture carefully and write an essay in which you should

（1） describe the picture.

（2） interpret its meaning.

（3） point out its implications in our life.



人生处处面临选择

In the picture，we can see a man standing at a crossroad with two similar roads，and trying to decide which way to take. In daily life we are often faced with such choices. This reminds us that the moment which everyone will go through is that we often have to make vital decisions independently.

In order to make a decision that we will not regret，we should bear these two principles in mind：thinking before acting，and never missing any opportunities that arise. On the one hand，we should have an apparent，objective judgment about ourselves and the world around us. On the other hand，we should also think about opportunities. Many people think that opportunities is so rare that only the luckiest people come across it. However，opportunity is open to everyone and one should make good use of it when confronted with it. Just like the proverb states：“Opportunities are only for the prepared minds.”

So when one is faced with choices，remember that using the mind and taking advantage of good opportunities will pave the way to success.

【译文】

从这幅画中我们可以看到，一个人正站在叉路岐途之前，等待他的是要决定究竟走哪条路。人生中我们经常会面临这样的选择。这让我们想起了我们每个人都要经历的重要时刻就是时常必须独立做出重大决定。

如果我们不想为自己做出的决定而感到后悔，就必须遵循这两个原则：一是三思而后行；二是不要错过任何机会。一方面，我们要对自身做出客观公正的判断，同时还要对我们周围的世界有一个清醒的认识。另一方面，我们对待机遇要用心思考。有些人认为机遇太少，而且只是那些幸运儿的专利。然而，机遇是属于每一个人的，所以在面对机遇时我们要充分利用它。正如这句名言所说：“机遇只留给那些做好准备的人。”

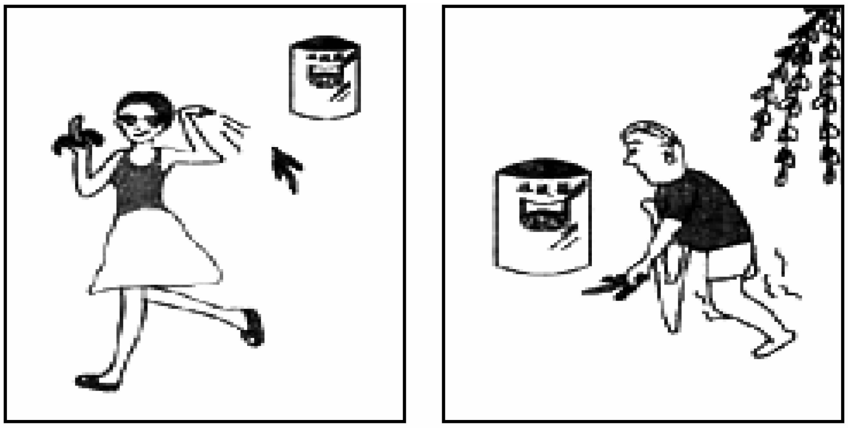
所以当你再一次面对机遇时，请不要忘记开动脑筋，莫失良机，成功一定属于你。

5. Directions：Study the following set of cartoons carefully and write an essay in which you should

（1）describe the cartoons.

（2）interpret their meanings.

（3）point out their implications in our life.



美丽不是表面的

In the cartoon，a young，well-dressed girl threw a banana peel onto the ground instead of the garbage bin. Afterwards an old，disabled man put it into the garbage bin.

Being well dressed is of great importance in keeping a good appearance. The way a person is dressed helps him to have a good appearance，which conveys his confidence and attitudes towards life. However，we should always bear this in mind：don’t judge a person by one’s appearance. One’s confidence and good impression on others do not usually develop from the way one dresses or looks，but the inner qualities one possesses. Because of this，the old man is displaying a more beautiful virtue even though he is disabled and somewhat ugly physically compared with the young girl.

No doubt beauty usually refers to what appeals to the eyes. However，beauty also refers to what appeals to the mind. Therefore，we should not only pay attention to our physical appearance，

but also improve our heart and spiritual soul.

【译文】

漫画中描绘了一个穿着入时的女孩把香蕉皮随手丢弃在地上，而不是把它放入垃圾桶内。之后，一位年长的残疾人把它拾起放入了垃圾桶。

穿着漂亮固然能够展现美丽的外表。一个人的穿着方式有助于其拥有漂亮的外表，这体现了一个人对生活的信心和态度。然而，我们应该始终记住这样的原则：不以貌取人。一个人的自信和良好的形象往往不只在于她的长相和穿着，而在于她的内在品质。正因如此，这位拥有高尚道德的长者看起来要比这位时髦女孩更加美丽，尽管他有残疾而他的外表也比不上这位年轻的女孩。

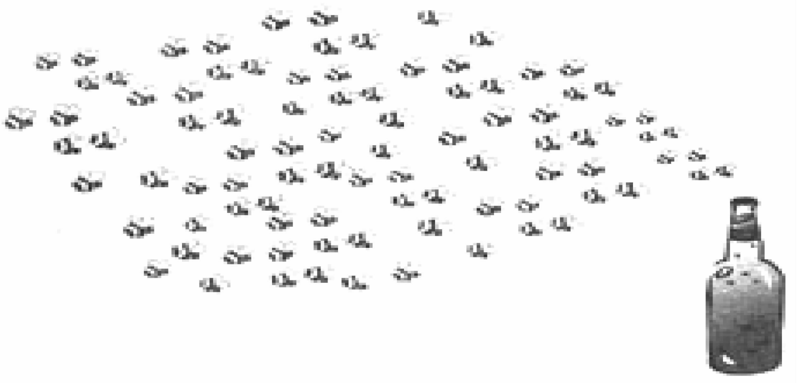
毫无疑问，美丽是指那些吸引人们目光的东西。然而，美丽还指那些能够吸引人们思想的东西。一言以蔽之，我们不仅要注意自己的外表，同时也要使我们的心灵得到升华。

6. Directions：Study the following drawing carefully and write an essay in which you should

（1） describe the drawing.

（2） interpret its meaning.

（3） support your view with examples.



奉献

As we can see from the drawing，a swarm of bees are flying here and there busily working to produce honey，which will be enjoyed by human beings rather than themselves.

Human beings show more respect to bees than to other animals，not for their diligence，but for their dedication to others. We live in a materialistic society and are trained from our earliest years to be greedy. It seems impossible to live in the modern society without money. Money is even regarded as a symbol of wealth and social position. There is a saying that goes，“money makes a mare go.” People seem to look more highly upon ones’possession of money rather than one’s dedication to society. Some people pursue their own personal benefits at the cost of others. Other people always ask for payment after their“dedication.”

As to me，dedication and expecting nothing in return is the highest level of devotion. One who devotes himself to society and people will have a lot of enjoyment from the process of dedication.

【译文】

我们从这幅画中可以看到，一群蜜蜂飞来飞去忙着采蜜，它们不是为了自己享受，而是为了给人类酿造甜美的蜂蜜。

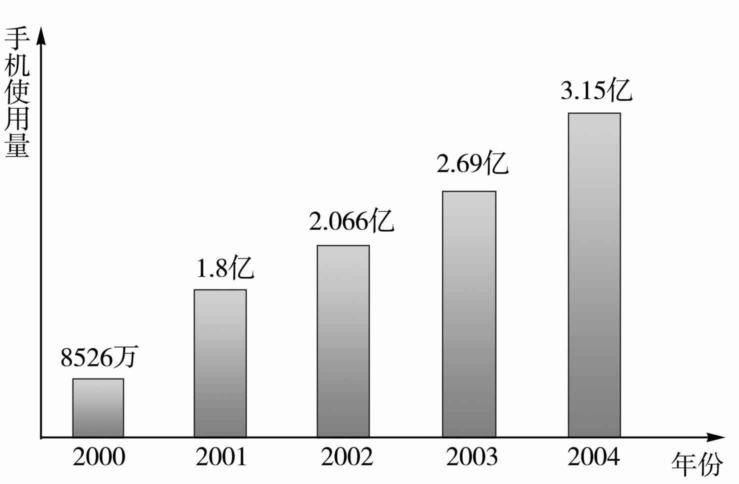
比起其他动物人们更加尊重蜜蜂，不是因为它们的勤劳，而是因为它们的奉献精神。我们生活在一个物质社会，从小就受到了贪婪索取的训练。在当今社会，没有钱是不能生存的。金钱甚至被看作是财富和社会地位的象征。俗话说，“有钱能使鬼推磨。”人们似乎更看中一个人财富的多少，而不是这个人对社会贡献的大小。有些人为了追求自己的利益而不惜牺牲他人的利益。有些人在所谓的“奉献”过后总是索取回报。

在我看来，只奉献不求索取才是奉献的最高境界。奉献能给我们带来幸福和成就感。奉献于社会和人民的那些人也一定会从奉献中得到极大的快乐。

7. Directions：Study the following graph carefully and write an essay in which you should

（1）analyze the graph.

（2）give your comments on the trend.



As is shown in the chart，cell phones are becoming more and more popular within China. In 2000，the number of cell phones in use was 85,260,000；in 2001，the number was 180,000,000；in 2002，206,600,000；in 2003，269,000,000. In 2004，the number is 315,000,000. From these statistics，we can see the increasing use of cell phones.

Why have cell phones gained so much dominance in our lives? There are many factors contributing to this development. Firstly，a cell phone can be carried everywhere easily. It can be a great help for you to be connected with the world. Secondly，a cell phone is something wonderful that we can have fun with：news，games，music. Thirdly，the drop in price and the improvement in the functions have made it possible for an average person to make use of a cell phone.

The wide use of cell phones has made them more and more indispensable in people's daily life. The many functions of the cell phones have made certain people reluctant to separate themselves from their cell phones.

【译文】

这个图表向我们展示了手机在中国变得越来越普遍。在2000年，全中国的手机使用量为8 526万部；2001年为1.8亿；2002年为2.066亿；2003年为2.69亿；2004年的手机使用量迅速增加到3.15亿。从这些数据中我们可以看到手机使用量在逐渐增长。

为什么手机会成为我们生活中的主导？有许多因素促成了它的发展。首先，手机可以无线通

话，并且携带方便。它很灵巧。如果你想打电话，只须按键，就能与对方通话。它为你与世界沟通提供了巨大的帮助。其次，我们可以从手机中获取很多乐趣，比如，看新闻、玩游戏、听音乐。最后，手机迅速降价，同时其功能迅速改进，使得普通人都使用。

手机的广泛应用，使它已成为人们日常生活中越来越不可或缺的一部分。手机的广泛功能使得一些人几乎离不开手机了。

第六章　应用文写作

第一节　书信作文

一、投诉信（抱怨信）（Letter of Complaint）

1. 写作方法

（1）首段：注意客观礼貌

①自我介绍；②引出投诉内容；③表明目的要求。

（2）主体：展开说明投诉原因、具体理由或后果，注意内容充实，符合交际习惯。

①详细说明情况，中肯提出问题；②提出改进建议，表明希望如何解决；③拓展题目内容，尤其要强调问题不解决所带来的后果。

（3）尾段：提出解决方案，不用展开，注意公平公正、礼貌原则。

①表达强烈愿望，希望上述问题得到迅速恰当的解决；②有时可就问题的解决限定时间；③对有关人员的努力表示感谢；④希望尽快得到满意答复。

2. 写作流程

第一步：提出抱怨并表示遗憾

（1）很抱歉打扰您，但我必须郑重提出投诉。

I am sorry to trouble you but I am afraid that I have to make a serious complaint.

（2）我很遗憾地告诉你投诉有关……的事由。

I am sorry to tell you that there should be causes to complain about…

（3）我真的很讨厌抱怨，但最近有一件事情确实令人烦心。

I really hate to complain，but one thing is really disturbing now.

第二步：阐述问题发生的经过

第三步：指出问题引起的后果

（1）噪音影响我的睡眠，使得我在上班时间无法集中精力。结果这些天我已经搞错了好几次。

The noise disturbs my sleep so that I can't concentrate on my work during the work time，and as a result，I have made several mistakes these days.

（2）在这样（嘈杂）环境下我无法进行研究，我需要一间安静的房间。

For me this environment is very difficult to make studies and I need a quiet room.

第四步：提出批评及处理的意见或敦促对方采取措施。

（1）我认为是你认识到……的时候了。

I think it's high time that you realized….

（2）我们深知你们并不经常出错，但我们希望能确保这类差错不再发生。

We know that you are not generally careless，but we hope your assurance that this will not happen again.

（3）我必须正告贵方，除非对目前状况采取措施，否则我将被迫诉诸法律。

I must warn you that unless you do something about the situation，I will be forced to take legal action.

（4）坦率地说，我不再准备忍受这种状况。

Frankly，I am not prepared to put up with the situation any more.

（5）如果您能尽快调查此事，我将不胜感激。期待您尽快回复。

I would be very grateful if you could look into the matter as soon as possible. And I am looking forward to an early reply.

【范文示例】

Directions：For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic A Letter to the University President about the Library Service on Campus. You should write at least 120 words，and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese：

假设你是李强，请你就本校图书馆的状况给校长写一封信，内容应涉及图书馆的藏书数量和更新状况、环境、服务等，可以是表扬，可以是批评建议，也可以兼而有之。

【审题】本文可以从批评着手，成为一封批评信。题目要求中规定了要涉及藏书、环境等内容，为作文提供了一些思路。同时注意，虽然是封批评信，但也要做到客观，不能把图书馆说得一无是处。

【写作思路】第一段：介绍写信的目的。

第二段：从三方面说明图书馆存在的问题。

第三段：指出图书馆给我们的帮助很大，但急需改进以及结束语。

【范文示例】

A Letter to the University President about the Library Service on Campus

January 6th，2006

Dear Mr. President，

I am writing to express my concern over the library service on the campus.

As a major in English，I find that most of the books in English in the library are outdated. So far，I have not come across a single book published after 1995. As a result，we fail to get the latest information of academic development both at home and abroad. In addition，the light in the reading room is far from bright，which does harm to our eyes. Worse than that，there is no air-conditioning and we are sweating heavily while reading. Last but not least，the newly developed electronic information system does not work well and needs further improvement. A great number of books should have been listed in the system.

There is no denying that the library has helped us a lot. But it is in urgent need of improvement. When improved, the library is certain to provide much more help for our study. Thank you for your time. I am looking forward to your reply.

Yours sincerely,
Li Qiang

二、咨询信（Letter of Inquiry）

1. 写作方法

（1）首段。①复述题目场景，表明写作目的；②遵守礼貌原则，只问相关信息；③简要介绍自己，表明写作目的。

（2）主体。①询问具体问题，注意疑问句式；②提供背景材料及询问原因；③强调所需信息重要性；④题目要求的内容均应涉及。

（3）尾段。①表明急切心情，提供联系方式；②结尾彬彬有礼，表示诚挚谢意；③希望得到对方帮助和合作。

2. 写作流程

第一步：说明写信的目的

（1）我是……，暑期计划到贵校学习。

I am a…and planning to study in your university this summer.

（2）我是一名中国学生，想到贵校学习。我计划下个学期开始上课，如果您能告知一些必要的信息，我将不胜感激。

I am a Chinese student who wishes to study at your university. My plan is to start my course from the next term, and I would be grateful if it's so kind of you to give me some essential information.

（3）我写信是要询问……

I'm writing to ask if…

第二步：介绍背景

（1）我获得……高校的……学士学位。毕业后便开始在……工作。

I received a Bachelor's…degree in…After graduation, I began working….

（2）是我的朋友建议我写这封信的。他去年毕业于贵校，热情地向我推荐贵校。

I am writing at the suggestion of a friend who graduated from your university last year and has warmly recommended it to me.

（3）我已经取得了生物学学士学位，并希望能在贵校继续学习。

I have had a bachelor's degree in biology and wish to continue my study at your university.

第三步：询问详情

（1）您能向我介绍一下贵校的……情况吗？

Could you please tell me something about your…?

（2）能否寄给我一份申请表及与申请有关的其他必要的材料?

Would you please send me an application form and other materials necessary for my application?

（3）您能尽快告知这些信息并邮寄给我相关表格吗?非常感谢!

Would you please send me all the information and the forms as soon as possible? Thank you very much.

（4）如果你能告诉我那些必须经过的程序，我将不胜感激。

I would be much obliged to you if you let me know the procedures I have to go through.

第四步：表示谢意，期盼回复

（1）很抱歉打扰您，对您的友善帮助不胜感激。

Sorry to bother you，your kind help would be greatly appreciated.

（2）如果您能回复，我将感激不尽。

I will appreciate it very much if you can give me a reply.

【范文示例】

Directions：For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic A Letter of Inquiry of Applying for an English Club. You should write at least 120 words，and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese：

假设你是王梅，就申请加入英语俱乐部给俱乐部负责人写一封信，内容应涉及自己的基本情况，并咨询相关事宜，如入会方式、条件、会费、活动等。

【审题】本文是一篇咨询信，但又涉及到申请方面的内容，有一定的难度。写作时，需要介绍一下申请的原因，然后对相关事项进行咨询，最后希望早日收到回信。

【写作思路】第一段：说明写信的目的，并介绍自身情况。

第二段：对相关事宜进行咨询。

第三段：希望对方给予解答。

A Letter of Inquiry of Applying for an English Club

October 8th，2005

Dear Sir，

I am writing to you to apply for the membership of the English Club. As a sophomore from the English Department，I love English literature very much. I often attend the English Corner held on Friday in the People's University of China and would like to discuss various topics in English with others.

I am eager to be one member of the English Club and further improve my English. I know there are some requirements，but I am not clear about the details. Is it necessary for me to pay for membership? If so，how much should I pay? And how often? I have also heard that the club will host various activities，and can you give me more details?

I would be very grateful if you can send me a reply as soon as possible.

Looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely，
Wang Mei

三、建议信（Letter of suggestion）

1. 写作目的

写作目的是提出建议或忠告。不是投诉信，观点要合情合理，注意礼貌当先。

2. 写作方法

（1）首段。①简介自己，不要啰嗦；②说明目的，注意语气。

（2）主体。①提出具体建议；②首先肯定优点，再写改进内容，否则变成投诉信；③经常进行交流，注意对方感受，时时提到你和我，否则容易跑题写成议论文，因为内容与议论文相似。

（3）尾段：总结建议，注意礼貌，易于接受。

3. 写作流程

第一步：说明写信的目的

（1）来信收到，得知你下个月要对中国进行一次为期十天的访问，我建议……

I have received your letter saying that you plan to have a visit to China for ten days next month. I recommend that…

（2）写此信是要提出我对饭店管理进一步提高和改进的建议——建立我们自己的网站来吸引更多的客户。

I am writing to you to present what I think on the further improvement of our hotel so as to establish a website of our own to attract more clients.

第二步：介绍详情、说明原因

第三步：提出建议

我建议……

I'd like to suggest that…

May I suggest that…

In my opinion…

I would like to make a recommendation that…

I am writing to advise you of…

If I were you，I would…

第四步：提出希望采纳建议，并表示谢意，盼望回复

（1）对你就此事的关注不胜感激。

Thank you for your attention.

（2）请仔细考虑我的建议，谢谢。

Please take good consideration of my advice. Thanks.

【范文示例】

Writing (30 minutes)

Directions：For this part，you are allowed thirty minutes to write a letter. Suppose you are Zhang Ying. Write a letter to Xiao Wang，a schoolmate of yours who is going to visit you during the weeklong holiday. You should write at least 100 words according to the suggestions given below in Chinese.

1. 表示欢迎。
2. 提出对度假安排的建议。
3. 提醒应注意的事项。

A Letter to a Schoolmate

June 23rd，2001

Dear Xiao Wang，

I am very glad to know that you are soon coming to Beijing to join me in the summer holiday.

I have been looking forward to your arrival. Since you can stay in Beijing only for a week，I am afraid that you will have a tight schedule for visiting the numerous places of historic interest. My suggestion is that you first visit some famous places that you have the greatest interest in，such as the Palace Museum，the Summer Palace，and the Great Wall. Then you can visit those places you think less important. I believe this kind of arrangement will make you have enough time to appreciate what you really want to see. Moreover，if you really want to be a good traveler，I advise you to read some introductory books about these places before you come to see them with your own eyes. With more knowledge about these places，you will have a better understanding of Chinese history and culture.

I am eager to meet you soon in Beijing. Wish you in advance a pleasant trip to Beijing.

Yours ever，
Zhang Ying

四、申请信（Letter of Application）

1. 写作方法

（1）首段。①自我介绍；②说明写信目的；③申请原因。

（2）主体。①详述有关背景资料：资历、教育、工作经历、兴趣爱好；②询问有关学校、课程等具体内容。

（3）尾段。①强调上诉材料重要性；②希望尽快得到满意答复；③要求手册及申请表；④表示感谢。

2. 写作流程

第一步：说明写信的目的

（1）我申请刊登在……上的……工作。

I am writing to apply for the post of…advertised in…

（2）见……上刊登的贵公司广告，我谨申请应聘贵公司的……职务。

In reply to your advertisement in…，I beg to apply for the post of…in your company.

（3）看到贵公司在报上招聘……的广告，我马上感到这正是我这段时间所要寻找的工作，并且我能胜任。

Immediately I saw your advertisement in the paper for…I felt it was just the kind of post for which I have the qualifications and for which I have been looking for some time.

(4) 我想申请入贵校学习。

I would like to apply for admission to your college.

(5) 我想在贵校……系继续深造。

I would like to further my studies in…department of your university.

第二步：介绍详情

(1) 我的专业爱好是……，我了解贵校在上述领域有极好的计划。

My major interest is…, and I understand your university has a good program in those fields.

(2) ……年，我出生于……。……年，我毕业于……大学……专业。毕业后一直在……工作，因此积累了该领域丰富的知识和经验。

Born in…in…I graduated from…University majoring in…I have been working in…since my graduation, and I have therefore attained a fair knowledge and experience in this field.

(3) 毕业后，我先担任……，随后担任……，现任职于……

Upon graduation, I first worked as…The following job was…and currently I am working for…

(4) 我现在就读于北京第二外国语学院，即将毕业于英语专业。

I am now studying at Beijing Second Foreign Language Institute and will soon be graduated as an English major.

第三步：说明申请职位或学位的原因

(1) 贵公司目前从事的这种工作特别使我感兴趣。

The kind of work in which your company is engaged particularly interests me.

(2) 我认为我具备了报上刊登的贵公司……一职所要求的必要条件和经验。

I feel I have the necessary qualifications and experience needed for the position of…advertised in the newspaper.

(3) 对我来讲，这些经验加上我的学历，使我具备了担任贵公司……一职的条件。

It seems to me that this experience, together with my education, has given me ideal preparation to assume the role of…in a firm such as yours.

(4) 受我所学课程的影响，我对饭店、酒店管理产生了浓厚的兴趣。

Under the influence of the courses I have taken, I have developed a special interest in Restaurant and Hotel Management.

第四步：恳请招聘单位或所申请的学校考虑自己的申请，并表示谢意，期望回复

(1) 如能尽快回复，将不胜感激。

Your prompt response will be much appreciated.

(2) 希望贵校能给我寄来空白申请表。

I hope you will kindly send me an application form.

(3) 如能收到所需的申请表和有关入学的指南我将十分感激。

I would greatly appreciate receiving copies of the required application forms and any instructions you may be so kind as to give me regarding my possible admission.

（4）希望同意面试，届时我可以更详细地说明我的条件。

I hope I may be granted an interview，when I can explain my qualifications more fully.

（5）我将乐意在您方便时接受面试，届时我将进一步介绍自己。

I should be pleased to attend for an interview at your convenience，when I could give you further details concerning myself.

【注】写入学申请信与工作申请信有相似之处，特别要注意两点：一是不要过分奉承对方，二是不要自吹自擂。如不要说 I always studied well，and all my teachers loved me. 而应用自己学习成绩单、获奖情况、发表论文情况说明问题。

【范文示例】

Dear Sir，

I should be very grateful if you would let me have information about admission to your university and details of any scholarships that may be offering to students from other countries.

I have finished my middle school studies here and hold the Middle School Graduation Certificate. Last year，I was elected to the school's honor society. And I had been editor of the school yearbook.

I would like to go to your university because it emphasizes learning. I also feel that it will provide me with greater opportunities to participate in extracurricular activities such dramatics and writing. I hope for a place for the next autumn.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully，

×××

【写作练习】

Directions：For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic A Letter of Application for a School Loan. You should write at least 120 words according to the outline given below in Chinese：

假设你是高鹏，是英语系的一名新生，请你就申请助学贷款一事给学校有关部门写封申请信。

申请信的内容须包括以下几点：①提出申请；②申请的理由；③恳请批准。

【审题】本文是申请信。注意申请的理由一定要充分，一般从经济困难着手，体现出申请的必要性。同时注意信中语气要得当。

【写作思路】第一段：说明写信的原因——申请助学贷款。

第二段：说明申请的理由——家里经济困难，交不起学费。

第三段：希望申请得到批准，表达了自己会珍惜贷款机会，不乱花钱、好好学习的决心，并承诺按规定还款。

A Letter of Application for a School Loan

Dear Sir or Madam，

I am writing to you to apply for a school loan. As a freshman from the English Department，I have much financial difficulty in continuing my study.

There are five members in my family. My father is the only breadwinner of the whole family while my mother was laid off two years ago. My grandmother has been suffering a chronic illness for more than five years. My younger brother is now studying in a high middle school. I took part-time jobs during the summer vacation，but what I have earned is far from enough for me to pay the required tuition fees. In order to continue my study，I have to apply for a school loan.

If my request is granted，I will make good use of the money and put my heart into study. I will definitely pay back the loan according to requirements. I hope that you will consider my application.

Looking forward to your reply.

Yours sincerely，
Gao Peng

五、祝贺信（Letter of Congratulations）

1. 写作方法

日常生活中，无论是亲朋好友毕业、晋升、获奖、开业、还是订婚、结婚、生日，都需要写上一封信表示祝贺。信中应表示为对方而高兴。祝贺信应当充满真诚和热情，收信人读后会感到喜悦和振奋。

祝贺信既可以正式写，也可以随便写，具体情况而定。对不太熟悉的朋友适合正式写，以表示礼貌和尊重；对熟悉的朋友则可以随便一些。但无论采用哪种方式，祝贺信必须表达由衷的感情，而且写信要及时。下面将具体举例说明：

2. 写作模版

Date：________，

Dear ________，

（1）I have learned with delight that you ____.	（1）获悉值得祝贺的消息，说出祝贺事由
（2）I would like to extend to you my utmost congratulations on ____.	（2）表达祝贺
（3）You must be very proud of your ____.	（3）描述对方的心情
（4）And I feel very happy for you.	（4）表达自己的心情
（5）____ is quite exciting news!	（5）被祝贺人所取得的成绩
（6）You are really ____.	（6）对对方的赞美
（7）I know this is surely owing to ____ .	（7）对方取得成绩的原因，被祝贺人过去的努力
（8）It is a reward you richly deserve for your ____.	（8）对对方取得成绩的肯定，说出被祝贺人的优点
（9）With your ____，I am sure that you will be a success in whatever you undertake.	（9）被祝贺人的优秀品质，表达对对方的祝福
（10）Kindly let me know when you ____.	（10）咨询对方的情况和时间
（11）I hope ____.	（11）表达愿望
（12）My best wishes for your further success.	（12）表达自己真诚的祝福

Sincerely yours，
×××

【写作练习】

Directions：For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write a letter to a good friend John，congratulating him on his admission to a famous university. You should write at least 120 words according to the outline given below in Chinese：

1. 对朋友进入大学表示祝贺。
2. 介绍大学生活和中学生活的异同。
3. 对如何成功地过好大学生活提出自己的建议。

【审题】本文是祝贺信。开篇首先要说明祝贺的理由，然后针对未来生活的注意事项加以说明—这是文章的主要部分，可以分几点来说明，注意各个事项之间的衔接。

【写作思路】第一段：向朋友表示祝贺，说明祝贺的原因。

第二段：指出大学生活和中学生活的异同。

第三段：建议朋友始终以乐观积极的态度面对大学生活，最后提出对朋友的期望。

【范文示例】

A Congratulation Letter

December 21st，2005

Dear John，

I'm very glad to hear that you have passed the entrance examination and been accepted by a very famous university. I feel very proud of you and I believe you really deserve the honor since you have been working so hard.

As you have mentioned in the letter，there are both some similarities and differences between the college life and the life in high school. On the one hand，you have to go on working hard as there are a lot of subjects for you to learn. On the other hand，in high school，teachers will probably tell you what to learn and how to learn in details and will also monitor your learning performance，while in college，teachers work like tour guides and you have to find out your own way to acquire knowledge and solve problems.

For you，I think to be optimistic is very important. If you hope to adapt yourself to the new environment，you'd better be positive no matter what difficulties you will experience in your college life.

May you adapt yourself to the college life as soon as possible!

Truly Yours，
Carl

第七章　短文写作历年真题及范文

Writing (20 points)

Directions：1. Title：Hobby

2. Word limit：100～150 words

3. Your composition should be based on the following outline and be written clearly and neatly.

Outline：1. 人人都有自己不同的爱好。

2. 我最喜欢的爱好。

3. 爱好给我带来的……

Hobby

When it comes to hobbies，different people may have different ones. Some are interested in singing，while others may love dancing. Still others may devote themselves to reading as their hobbies.

Personally speaking，my favorite hobby is sport，just as jogging and playing basketball. After my classes，I try to spend all my spare time in sporting with some of my classmates.

As far as I am concerned，my hobby can bring me a good many benefits. First of all，I can find a lot of fun from it. Secondly，sports will enable me to have good health. In addition，a good mood and relaxed feeling can be obtained out of my hobby.

Writing (20 points)

Directions：For this part you are supposed to write a composition about Staying Healthy in several paragraphs. Use the words and expressions given below. You are given the opening and concluding sentences of the composition. Your chart of the composition should be about 100 words.

Useful words and expression：

1. need care，in good health，right foods，enough sleep，and exercise regularly
2. proper nutrition，avoid，high protein foods，vegetable，fruits
3. finally，exercise，improve，heart and lungs，prevent，gain weight

Staying Healthy

首句：Good health is the most valuable possession a person can have.

尾句：If everybody were to do so，there would be much less complaining about poor health.

Good health is the most valuable possession a person can have. The desire for good health is universal. Especially nowadays，nearly everyone needs care，and hopes to be in good health. Therefore，people have right foods，enough sleep and exercise regularly as well.

In the first place, proper nutrition is of great importance. People should avoid high fat foods but have high protein foods, vegetables and fruits, instead. The fat and excess calories will do harm to our health. In the second place, you should give up some bad habits, such as smoking, drinking, and form some habits, such as keeping good hours, and going to see a doctor as soon as possible when you feel sick.

In the third place, regular exercises play a significant role in keeping healthy. Because sports can improve the function of our hearts and lungs. In addition, exercises can prevent us from gaining weight.

If everybody were to do so, there would be much less complaining about poor health.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: 1. Title: My View on Examination
2. Time limit: 30 minutes
3. Word limit: no less than 100 words

Outline: 1. 考试的必要性。
2. 考试的弊端。
3. 你对考试的看法。

My View on Examination

Nowadays, with rapid development of our society, there is a growing use of examination. It is absolutely necessary to hold an exam in China, because without exams, it can be impossible for teachers to check how much the students master the knowledge. In addition, it is only through exams, qualified person can be chosen for a proper job.

In the case of this issue, the necessity co-exist with many drawbacks. Just as the proverb goes, "Every coin has its two sides." On the one hand, the test will add to the students' burden, although they are already under considerable pressure from their course work. On the other hand, some students may take the shortcut by focusing on several guessed questions hoping for a coincidence to bring them good luck, which can hardly achieve the original goal of examination.

From my point of view, exams will do more good than harm, after weighing the advantages and disadvantages. Moreover, examinations will be kept in the long run. It's only hoped that mankind, while making the best use of examinations, will eventually find satisfactory solutions to the drawbacks in exams.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part you are required to write a composition about Smoking. You should write at least 100 words, and the first sentence of each paragraph has been given to you.

Smoking

It is almost known to all that smoking is bad for people's health.

____

____

Still, many people find it difficult to stop smoking.

Measures have been taken to help keep away from the harm of smoking.

Smoking

It is almost known to all that smoking is bad for people's health. Medical science has now proved that smoking can cause lung cancer and other diseases. Your chances of having a heart attack also increase if you smoke. Smoking is definitely a health hazard.

Still, many people find it difficult to stop smoking. Getting rid of the smoking habit is not easy. Many life long smokers are never able to quit completely. Those who try to give up smoking often experience depression, severe headaches and sometimes gain a lot of weight as they turn to food as a substitute. Some heavy smokers make up their mind to quit many times.

Measures have been taken to help keep away from the harm of smoking. In order to protect non-smokers from becoming smokers, effective measures have been taken to reduce the appeal of smoking. What is more, children have been warned of the danger of smoking and smoking has been banned in many public places. In a word, we should let the public realize smoking harms their health. With great efforts made, we are sure to enjoy better health.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you are required to write a composition on the topic "A letter to the President." You should write at least 100 words, and your composition should be based on the description given in Chinese below:

目前，大学生使用手机的现象很普遍，在一定程度上影响了课堂教学的秩序，人们对此褒贬不一。假如你是康言，请你给校长写一封信，就这一现象谈谈你自己的看法。请注意书信的格式。

Dear Mr. President,

Thank you for reading my letter. My name is Kang Yan, and I am a student at the college. I would like to say something about the usage of mobile phones among college students.

Nowadays, more and more college students use mobile phone on campus not for its convenience but for its fashion and popularity. On the other hand, using mobile phone affects the normal teaching order to some extent. In the lecture, sometimes we hear the phone ring here and there, and some of students send short messages now and then. As a result, we could not concentrate on our work.

People have different opinions about it. I think it is good to use the mobile phone, but the students should not use it in the lecture. Finally, I hope you can pay attention to the phenomenon.

Sincerely Yours,

Kang Yan

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you are required to write a composition on the topic "Money". You should write no less than 120 words and base your composition on the Chinese outline given below.

Outline: 1. 有人认为金钱万能。

2. 有人认为金钱是万恶之源（the source of all crimes）。

3. 我对金钱的看法。

Money

When it comes to money, people's opinions differ. Some agree that money is as important as air and water in the commercial world. Whatever we buy, wherever we go, we need money. Without it, there is nothing we can do, so to speak.

However, there are some who are against the former. They argue that human cannot take it for granted that money is everything. It has its negative effects, too. For example, some people may misuse money for gambling, or addicting themselves to drugs. Some others may even commit crimes in order to get more money.

In my opinion, money itself is neither good nor bad. What counts lies in how to make good use of it. We need money in our daily life, but we should not be the slaves of money.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you're required to write a composition on the topic. "Why I Attended College?" You should write at least 100 words, and your composition should be based on the description given in Chinese below.

Outline: 1. 你为什么会选择上大学。

2. 你认为上大学是否值得。

Why I Attended College

Why did I choose to attend college? Is the four-year academic life worthwhile? I have put these questions to myself many times in the past two years, and now I have reached a conclusion that college education is something that I truly want and it is worthwhile.

I choose to attend college because I enjoy learning. I have a strong desire to go on with my study. I simply can't end my education upon graduation from the high school and enter the working world so soon. I choose to attend college also because I feel college is more than a place which offers knowledge. It also exposes one to a rich variety of ideas and skills. Finally I feel that in today's world, a college education has become almost essential if one wishes to compete in the job market. Attending college is a practical and necessary step to ensure a secure future for myself.

For these reasons, I never consider myself unhappy, miserable or unfairly burdened, and I never think attending college is a waste of time and money.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic My Favorite Means of Transportation. You should write at least 120 words and you should base your composition on the following instruction (give in Chinese) below.

Outline: 1. 私家轿车越来越多，污染问题、交通问题随之产生。
2. 人们出行时其实有多种交通方式可以选择。
3. 从健康和环保节能出发，我认为最好的交通方式是……

The Best Means of Transportation

Nowadays, with the rapid development of science and technology, private cars are becoming much more popular in our daily life. With all the benefits of private cars, however, it also brings some problems, such as pollution, traffic jams and so on.

As a matter of fact, people have more chances to choose a transportation. Some maintain that people should ride the bike, while others insist that people should drive the private car. The former one believe that riding bicycles is superior in many ways. In the first place, they are cheap, convenient and easy to ride. In the second place, riding bicycle is good for health. In the last place, they bring no noise and air pollution. Nevertheless, the latter one emphasize that the private cars are quick and comfortable. Furthermore, they argue that they can go wherever they want if they have private cars. On that account, they prefer private cars to bicycles.

In view of people's health, environmental protection and energy saving, I argue that the best way of transportation is riding bicycles. If everybody were to do so, our city would become beautiful and people's health would be very promising.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you're required to write a composition on the topic "Getting to Know the Society" . You should write at least 120 words, and your composition should be based on the outline given in Chinese below and write your composition on the Answer Sheet.

Outline: 1. 大学生了解社会的必要性。
2. 了解社会的途径（大众媒体、社会实践活动等）。
3. 我在这方面是怎样做的。

Getting to Know the Society

With the rapid development of our society, there is an increasingly loud voice from the public over how to get to know the world outside the campus. There is no denying that more attention is paid to it.

There are many ways in which a student can get to know about the outside campus. In the first place, it is of great importance to some extent. It is obvious that the social practice does good to our life. We can know it by listening to the radio or surfing on the internet. In the second place, there is no denying that getting to know the world outside the campus can bring us happy leisure time. We can do some part-time jobs and make some friends. In the last place, the reason why we do it is that we can get much social experience before we enter the society. Any of these methods will enable students to get in touch with society.

I am quite sure, if everybody were to do so, we would have a promising future. Only in this way can we enjoy a colorful and meaningful life.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you're required to write An Application Letter. You should write at least 120 words, and your composition should be based on the outline given in Chinese below and write your composition on the Answer Sheet.

请以北方大学刘峰的名义，给上海世博会组委会相关负责人王先生写一封申请函，申请做一名上海世博会的志愿者。

写信日期：2010 年 3 月 2 日

申请函内容包括：

1. 个人信息（年龄、性别及外语能力等）。
2. 简要说明申请志愿者工作的理由。
3. 联系方式。

Words for reference:

北方大学 Beifang University

志愿者 volunteer

上海世博会 the Shanghai Expo

March 2nd, 2010

Dear Mr. Wang,

My name is Liu Feng, a 21-year-old boy from Beifang University. I am writing in response to the advertisement you placed on the internet for finding a volunteer of the Shanghai Expo. I believe that both my education and experience are directly related to your needs.

My reasons of application are as follows. Above all, as a college student, I have taken many courses in English and developed a great deal of practical experience. I have got the CET-4 certificate. When I was a college student in Beifang University, I was entitled as "the best student." What's more, I was given the scholarship in the year. I believe that if I can be a volunteer, I could get along well with each other and try my best to serve the Shanghai Expo.

Should my application be regarded favorably, I would appreciate your kindness and confidence on me. I hope to have an opportunity for an interview at any time that is convenient for you. Thank you for your consideration of my application. My e-mail: ＊＊＊@＊＊＊. com.

Yours,

Liu Feng

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you're required to write an article with at least 120 words based on the outline in Chinese below. Write your article on the Answer Sheet.

Movement of Population

1. 城乡人口互流现象。
2. 城乡人口互流的利与弊。
3. 自己的观点。

Movement of Population

Nowadays, with the development of modern society, there has been a steady rise in the number of movement of population. This phenomenon has aroused considerable concern from the whole society.

Just as a coin has its two sides, the movement of population is no exception. It has brought about many benefits. First and foremost, there is no denying that the limited land can no longer produce enough crops for an ever-increasing rural population. In addition, it is obvious that there are far more opportunities in big cities where rural laborers dream of earning money through hard work. However, it also has some problems. For one thing, it will increase the pressure of traffic. For another, it also does great harm to the environment.

On the basis of the above analysis I mentioned, we can confidently predict the future tendency. There is no denying that if city people and rural laborers have devoted themselves to constructing a healthy city, we will have a promising future.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: Write a composition on the topic "The Popularity of Microblog." You should write no less than 120 words and you should base your composition on the Chinese outline given below. Please write on the ANSWER SHEET.

The Popularity of Microblog

1. 现代社会利用微博进行交流越来越普遍。
2. 微博流行的原因。
3. 自己的看法。

The Popularity of Microblog

Micro-blog is no longer a strange word. More precisely, it has become a part of our life.

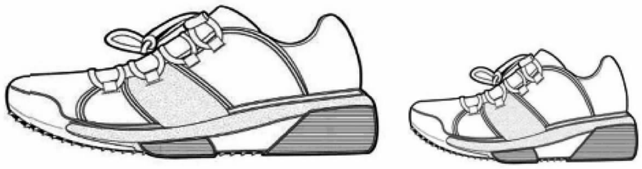
As for me, many factors contribute to the wide spread of Micro-blog. First, it is very convenient for people to express their instant feelings at any time. Second, it provides a chance for people to release their inner stress. By revealing their heartfelt emotions on the Micro-blog, their friends may also know about their conditions and can offer in-time comfort.

However, Micro-blog can also be potentially dangerous as it may give away people's privacy and other significant information. All in all, Micro-blog provides us comfort and also inevitably some concerns. We should be careful while using it.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you're required to write a composition with at least 120 words based on the following picture. Please entitle and write it on the Answer Sheet.

"You are the only one who knows whether the shoes fit your feet."



"You are the only one who knows whether the shoes fit your feet."

Your Shoes Are Comfortable with Your Feet or Not

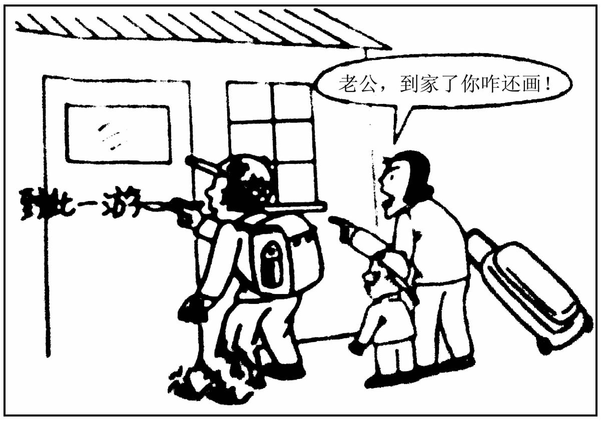
Only your feet can tell whether your shoes are comfortable or not. That means you are the judge of your own business. It is just this consciousness that enables you to enjoy a promising and successful future.

Why should we judge things according to our own situation? Nothing can be better explanations than the following factors. First and foremost, there is no doubt that you are the person who knows yourself best. You nearly know everything about yourself including merits and demerits. What's more, frequent and brave trials must make contributions to your final decision, which may be the most suitable for you. Last but by no means least, during the course of trying various things, it is definite that you will gain a large amount of social experience. Obviously it will enlighten you in the future.

To sum up, whether your shoes are comfortable or not all depends on yourself. Consequently, you are supposed to make a positive choice according to your own situation in that what suits you most is the best.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you're required to write a composition with at least 120 words based on the following picture. Please entitle and write it on the Answer Sheet.


老公，到家了你咋还画！
到此一游

It is time to stop doodling

From the picture, we can discover that a man is still carving "I have already travelled here" with a knife on the door of his own house after his return from a trip. Therefore, we can safely come to a conclusion that people tend to be doing some damage to the environment while traveling.

Why does this phenomenon take place? Several factors could account for it. To begin with, it is clear that people aren't aware of the importance of protecting the environment when they travel. What's more, most people are in the bad habit of leaving something in their scenic spot, of which their doodle is given the priority. Last but not least, the regulations and rules are not strict and specific enough in the travel destination.

In view of the seriousness of this issue, it is crucial that relevant laws and regulations be worked out to solve the problem. Meanwhile, people should be educated to pay special attention to environment protection while travelling. With joint efforts, I believe the bad phenomenon will be a thing of the past.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you're required to write a composition with at least 120 words on the topic of "Happiness in My mind" . Please write it on the Answer Sheet.

Happiness in My Mind

With the rapid development of our society, there is a growing concern over happiness among the public. It has a big influence on our society and life.

What is happiness in my mind? I am inclined to the following opinions. First of all, it is obvious that happiness means that I possess a happy family full of joy and harmony. What's more, there is no denying that happiness means that I have a great number of friends, who can give me support and company in my life and work. In the end, it goes without saying that happiness means that I have a suitable job, which can offer good economic support to my family and life.

All in all, happiness is very significant to us. We must pay much attention to it. If everyone were to pursue the happiness in a right way, our society and life would be much better.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: In this part, you are required to write a composition with at least 120 words on the topic of The Attitude toward Crisis. Please write it on the Answer Sheet.

The Attitude toward Crisis

In our life, there is not always plain road and we may confront various crises such as disease, accident, losing the way and so on. Toward these crises, different people have different attitudes.

Some people choose to face it directly and bravely. They believe that the difficulties and crises, can be defeated by their intelligence and bravery. Also the advanced high-tech can help them get over the crisis. However, others think that the crisis is so big that it can not be solved. So they give up the desire to fight against it and yield without any effort.

As for me, we must face the crisis bravely and fight against it. For example, when some students fail in the exam, they cry and give up. But some will make up their minds to study even harder from now on. I stand on the side of the latter. Only when you change the sorrow into power can you be a winner before the crisis.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you are supposed to write a composition on the topic: Is Frustration a Bad Thing You should write at least 120 words, and base you composition on the outline given in Chinese below.

1. 有些人认为挫折是坏事
2. 更多的人并不认为挫折是坏事
3. 我的看法

Is Frustration a Bad Thing

At present, the topic of frustration has been brought into public focus. It plays a quite vital role in our society and life.

Many people hold the opinion that frustration is totally a bad thing for us. On the one hand, it can bring a lot of difficulties to our study and work. We can hardly obtain what we want because of frustration. On the other hand, frustration can make us lose confidence in life. Most people consider they are losers while facing too much frustration.

As the saying goes, every coin has two sides. Other people don´t agree with the above points. They claim frustration should be a good thing for people. For one thing, people will become much braver and stronger when they try to overcome frustration. For another, we can acquire a great deal of experience when we cope with the frustration we meet with.

All the opinions make sense, consequently it is hard to choose the best of them. However, we must make a clear analysis, make full use of the positive aspects and avoid bad effects.

Writing (20 points)

Directions: For this part, you are supposed to write a composition on the topic: On Lifelong Learning. You should write at least 120 words, and base you composition on the outline given in Chinese below.

1. 什么是终身学习?
2. 为什么要终身学习?
3. 我的打算。

Lifelong Learning

During recent years, people have attached more and more importance to lifelong learning. Students are learning at school and they will continue their learning in society after graduation. Meanwhile, many old people are also trying to learn all kinds of new ideas and things. Lifelong learning makes a great difference to all aspects of life.

There are a variety of reasons that can account for this phenomenon, and I explore only a few of the most significant ones here. First of all, it is well known that lifelong learning can help us acquire a lot of useful knowledge, which always plays a vital role in our life. What' s more , there is no denying that competition in today' s society is so fierce that everyone should learn all kinds of knowledge to meet its demands. In the end, we must admit that we can set a good example to our children and encourage them to study hard if we insist on lifelong learning.

As far as I am concerned , lifelong learning is a good phenomenon from which we can benefit a lot. It should be advocated vigorously. As individuals, we should pay enough attention to it, seize every opportunity to learn, and make it bring much more influence to us.

Part VI Writing (20 points)

Directions: *For this part, you are supposed to write a composition on the topic*: ***How to Relieve My Pressure***. *You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given in Chinese below.*

1. 目前，越来越多的大学生做兼职
2. 大学生做兼职的利弊
3. 你的看法

Part-time Jobs

When it comes to part-time jobs, people's views vary from person to person. Some people believe that taking part-time jobs is good, while others do not agree with them.

As is often pointed out, taking part-time jobs has a great number of advantages. To begin with, there is no doubt that it can help us to make money, which will ease the burden of our families. In addition, we can accumulate some experience in this process, getting prepared for the future work.

However, there is also a different voice. On the one hand, nobody can deny that doing part-time jobs will take a lot of time. On the other hand, students' study may be influenced to some extent. That is why quite a few people do not encourage students to take part-time jobs.

From the above analysis, who is right I consider that both of the opinions have something reasonable and right. Given the chance, I would prefer the former view.

Part VI Writing (20 points)

Directions: *For this part, you are supposed to write a composition on the topic*: ***How to Relieve My Pressure***. *You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given in Chinese below.*

1. 目前大学生面临各种压力，如学习压力、经济压力、就业压力等等
2. 请列举你生活中有哪些压力，并举例说明；
3. 你通常是如何缓解这些压力的。

How to Relieve My Pressure

Nowadays, along with the rapid development of economy and society, college students are facing more and more pressure, such as academic pressure, economic pressure and employment pressure.

As for such a problem, we have to pay enough attention to it and find solution to relieve pressure. The following means can be tried. First of all, talking with friends or family members about our anxieties is a possible way. What's more, listening to some cheerful music can help relieve pressure to some extent. At last, when feel stressed, we can choose to travel or do some sports.

From the above analysis, it is clear that all these three methods are useful in easing our pressure. Facing such acommon, especially in this fast—paced society. As long as we take a positive attitude towards it, we can live happily in our daily life.